Contents

Before You Begin...........................................................................................................24
  Related Documentation.................................................................................................24
  Getting Help...................................................................................................................24
  Polycom and Partner Resources..................................................................................24
  The Polycom Community.............................................................................................24

Part I Getting Started.....................................................................................................25

Polycom RealPresence Resource Manager Overview.................................................26
  RealPresence Resource Manager Features and Capabilities......................................26
    Video Infrastructure Management.............................................................................26
    Video Endpoint and Polycom Unified Communication (UC) Device Management......26
    Conference Scheduling..............................................................................................27
    Directory Services.......................................................................................................27
    Managing Bandwidth for RealPresence DMA.............................................................27
    Session Border Control Integration............................................................................28
    Redundant Configuration.............................................................................................28
    Programmatic Access through API..............................................................................28
  Navigating the RealPresence Resource Manager System.........................................28
    Log In to the System.....................................................................................................29
    System Dashboard........................................................................................................29
    View Alerts..................................................................................................................36
    Field Input Requirements.............................................................................................36
    Searching in a List.........................................................................................................36
    Download Software Packages.....................................................................................36
    Change a Password.......................................................................................................37
    Log Out of the System..................................................................................................37
    Restart or Shut Down a System...................................................................................37
    Shut Down the System in Emergency..........................................................................38

Network Configuration....................................................................................................39
  Configuring your DNS Server.......................................................................................39
  Adding DNS SRV Record for RealPresence Resource Manager System Services........39
  Edit Network Settings...................................................................................................40
  Service Interface Settings..............................................................................................40
Virtualization Settings ........................................................................................................ 42
Edit Virtualization Settings .......................................................................................... 42
Time Settings .................................................................................................................. 42
Edit System Time Settings ........................................................................................... 42
User Data Collection ...................................................................................................... 43
Enable or Disable User Data Collection ........................................................................ 43
View the Collected Usage Data .................................................................................. 44

Integrating with an Enterprise Directory .................................................................... 45
Enterprise Directory Supported Configurations .......................................................... 45
  Single Forest Support .................................................................................................. 45
  Multiple Domains within a Single Forest .................................................................... 45
  Universal Group Support ............................................................................................ 46
Read-only Enterprise Directory Users ......................................................................... 46
How Global Catalog Searches Work ........................................................................... 47
Preparing to Use Active Directory ............................................................................. 47
LDAP Searches .............................................................................................................. 48
Using the Base DN to Manage Enterprise Directory Searches ..................................... 50

RealPresence Resource Manager System and Windows Authentication ..................... 53
Managing Directories .................................................................................................... 54
  Integrating with Enterprise Directory Server ......................................................... 54
  Allow Delegated Authentication to Enterprise Directory Server .............................. 58
  Give Enterprise Users Default Scheduler Role ....................................................... 58
  Change the Message for Enterprise Users without a Role ....................................... 58
  Select SMB Version .................................................................................................. 59
Endpont Directory and Directory Settings ..................................................................... 59
  Global Address Book Tips ......................................................................................... 59
  Including or Excluding Dynamically Managed Endpoints in the Global Address Book .................................................................................................................. 59
  Including or Excluding Guest Book Entries in the Directory ..................................... 60
  Allow Local Users to View Enterprise Directory Entries ......................................... 60
  Supporting LifeSize Endpoints in Directories ............................................................ 61

System Setup Overview ............................................................................................... 63
Setting Up Network Device Management ..................................................................... 63
Configuring Conferencing ............................................................................................ 63
  Setting up Site Topology ............................................................................................ 63
  Setting up Conference Templates ............................................................................. 64
  Set Up Directory Services .......................................................................................... 64
Configuring the Connection to an External Enterprise Directory .................................. 64
Setting Up Endpoint Management .............................................................................. 65
Scheduled Management of Endpoints (Polycom and Third-Party)..............65
Dynamic Management of Endpoints (Polycom Only).................................. 65
Setting up Unified Communication(UC) Endpoint Management...............65
Securing the System...................................................................................... 66
Configuring Redundancy................................................................................66
Distributing Polycom Applications...............................................................66

Part II  Network Device Management..........................................................67

Understanding Network Device Management.............................................. 68
Overview of Network Device Management.................................................. 68
  Service Integration......................................................................................68
  Monitoring..................................................................................................68
  Service Group Administration....................................................................69
  Licensing....................................................................................................69
Supported Network Devices.........................................................................69
Network Device Types....................................................................................70

License Management.....................................................................................71
System Licensing...........................................................................................71
  Video Endpoint and Phones License Control (Non - Polycom RealPresence Clariti)..............................................................................72
  Trial Licenses for Appliance Editions..........................................................73
  Adding System Licenses for an Appliance Edition for Non - Polycom RealPresence Clarity.................................................................73
  View Current Licensing...............................................................................74
  Reclaim Software Client Licenses...............................................................75
Licensing RealPresence Platform Components.............................................75
  Managing License for RealPresence Web Suite...........................................76
  Managing Licenses for Polycom ContentConnect™ Solution Server..........76
  Managing Licenses for a RealPresence DMA Supercluster.........................76
Enable Licensing for a Network Device.........................................................76
Online and Offline Mode...............................................................................77
Allocate Licenses for Polycom RealPresence Platform Components..............77
Reset Allocated Licenses...............................................................................78
Clean Unused Licenses..................................................................................78
Update the Licenses of Polycom RealPresence Platform Components...........78

Managing Instances....................................................................................80
View Network Device Instance......................................................................80
Network Device Details...............................................................................80
Add an Instance by IP................................................................. 81
Edit an Instance........................................................................ 81
View an Instance...................................................................... 82
Delete an Instance.................................................................. 82

Managing Service Groups................................................................. 83
Create a Service Group............................................................... 83
Edit Service Group Details......................................................... 84
Delete a Service Group.............................................................. 84
Configuring Common Settings for a Service Group..................... 84
  Configure Time Settings for a Service Group............................ 84
  Configure SNMP Settings for a Service Group......................... 85
Integrate a Service Group with Enterprise Directory...................... 88
Manage a Network Device within a Service Group......................... 90

Part III  Service Configuration............................................................ 91

Service Integration with a RealPresence DMA System.................. 92
  Integration Overview............................................................... 92
    Dedicated User Account for Integration.................................. 92
    NTP Servers........................................................................ 93
    MCU Management............................................................... 93
  Conference Types Supported By the RealPresence DMA system..... 93
  RealPresence DMA Conference Templates............................... 93
  Considerations for Site Topology............................................. 94
  Scheduling Capacity............................................................... 94
Integrating with a RealPresence DMA system................................ 95
  Requirements of Dedicated RealPresence DMA User Account........ 95
  Add a RealPresence DMA system by IP Address.......................... 95
  Integrating with a RealPresence DMA Supercluster.................... 97
  Configure the Default Territory............................................... 97
Managing a RealPresence DMA System.......................................... 98
  Edit a RealPresence DMA system............................................ 98
  Stop the Service Integration for a RealPresence DMA system......... 98
Working with RealPresence DMA Pool Orders................................ 98
  View Details of a RealPresence DMA system Pool Order.............. 99
  Associate a RealPresence DMA system Pool Order with an Area..... 99
Working with Endpoints Synchronized from a RealPresence DMA System... 100
  Required Unique H.323 Aliases for Endpoints.......................... 101
  Monitor RealPresence DMA-Synchronized Endpoints............... 101
Schedule RealPresence DMA-Synchronized Endpoints in Conferences.. 101
Licensing Threshold for RealPresence DMA-Synchronized H.323 Endpoints................................................................. 102

Service Integration with Session Border Controllers....................... 103
  Supported Session Border Controllers.................................................. 103
  Managing Polycom VBP Devices.............................................................. 103
    Add a Polycom VBP Device.............................................................. 103
    Edit a Polycom VBP Device.............................................................. 104
    Delete a Polycom VBP Device........................................................... 104
    Identify Endpoints Using the Polycom VBP Device.......................... 104
  Managing a Polycom RealPresence Access Director System............... 105
    Manually Add a RealPresence Access Director System.................... 105
  Managing SBC Devices........................................................................... 106
    Add an SBC Device........................................................................... 106
    Edit an SBC Device.......................................................................... 107
    Delete an SBC Device....................................................................... 107
    Identify Endpoints Using the SBC Device....................................... 107

Service Integration with Bridges....................................................... 108
  Add an MCU Manually........................................................................ 108
  Conference Scheduling Requirements.................................................. 109
  Edit an MCU.......................................................................................... 109
    MCU Settings..................................................................................... 110
  Delete an MCU Bridge......................................................................... 112
  View Device Details............................................................................ 113
  View Bridge Hardware.......................................................................... 113
  View MCU Services............................................................................... 113
  View MCU Conferences....................................................................... 113
  View MCU Ports................................................................................... 114
  View MCU Meeting Rooms................................................................... 114
  View MCU Entry Queues....................................................................... 114
  View Bridge Gateway Conferences.................................................... 115

Part IV Conferencing Configuration.................................................... 116

Setting Up Site Topology.................................................................. 117
  Understanding Site Topology.............................................................. 117
  Managing Sites.................................................................................... 118
    View the Graphical Site Topology................................................... 118
Setting Up the Global Address Book

Using Multiple Address Books
Edit an Address Book .................................................................................................................. 140
  Editing an Address Book Settings .............................................................................................. 141
Assign Address Books to User Groups ...................................................................................... 142
Delete an Address Book ............................................................................................................. 142
Change Address Book Priority ................................................................................................... 143
Set the Default Address Book ..................................................................................................... 143
Copy an Address Book .................................................................................................................. 144

Direct Conference Templates ........................................................................................................ 145
  Direct Conference Templates Overview ..................................................................................... 145
  Standalone Templates .................................................................................................................. 146
  Linked Templates .......................................................................................................................... 146
  Direct Conference Template Considerations for Multi-Tenancy .................................................. 146
  Direct Conference Template Best Practices .................................................................................. 146
View the Direct Conference Templates List .................................................................................. 147
Add a Direct Conference Template .............................................................................................. 147
Edit a Direct Conference Template .............................................................................................. 148
Delete a Direct Conference Template .......................................................................................... 149

RealPresence DMA Conference Templates .................................................................................. 150
  RealPresence DMA System Conference Templates for Multi-Tenancy ....................................... 150
  Establishing Naming Conventions for RealPresence DMA System Templates ................................ 150
  Anytime Conference Templates .................................................................................................. 151
  Considerations for Anytime Conference Templates ...................................................................... 151
    Configuring Auto-Terminate ......................................................................................................... 151
    Initiating Conference Dial-out ..................................................................................................... 151

Configuring Conference Settings .................................................................................................. 153
  Specify Conference Settings ........................................................................................................ 154
  Disable Conference Time Warning .............................................................................................. 154
  Automatically Include Conference Creator in Conference ............................................................. 155
  Overbook Dial-in Participants ...................................................................................................... 155
  Set the Conference and Chairperson Passcode Length .................................................................. 155
  Customizing Text to Email Notifications .................................................................................... 156
    Add Customized Text to Conference Email Notifications ............................................................ 156
    Edit Customized Text in Email Notifications .............................................................................. 156

Part V  Conference Scheduling and Management ....................................................................... 157
Conference Scheduling Overview.......................................................... 158
  Log into the System............................................................................. 158
  Conference Scheduler Roles............................................................... 158
  Scheduling Participants....................................................................... 160
  Scheduling Bridges and DMA Pool Orders.......................................... 160
    MCU Selection.................................................................................. 160
    Bridge Scheduling and Reassignment............................................. 161
    DMA Pool Orders.......................................................................... 161
    Conference Templates...................................................................... 162
  Recurring Conferences................................................................. 162
  Anytime Conferences......................................................................... 162

Scheduling Conferences........................................................................ 164
  Schedule a Conference....................................................................... 164
    Role Settings.................................................................................. 166
    Conference Settings....................................................................... 167
    Configure Advanced Settings......................................................... 168
  Schedule an Anytime Conference..................................................... 170
    Anytime Conference Role Settings.............................................. 171
  Scheduling a Point to Point Conference.......................................... 172
  Copy an Existing Conference........................................................... 172
  Edit a Future Conference.................................................................. 173
  Edit a Participant's Settings............................................................. 173
    Participant Settings....................................................................... 174
  View Scheduling Information for a Conference................................ 175

Managing Conferences and Participants............................................. 176
  Working with Conferences............................................................... 176
    View All Conferences................................................................. 176
    Filter the Conference List............................................................. 177
    Delete a Conference..................................................................... 178
    Export a List of Scheduled Conferences...................................... 178
  Managing Active Conferences........................................................ 179
    Manage an Active Conference..................................................... 179
    Write Conference Notes During a Conference............................. 180
    Add Additional Participants to an Active Conference.................. 181
    Add Guests to an Active Conference........................................... 181
    Add a Room to an Active Conference......................................... 182
    View a Participant's Video During a Conference.......................... 182
    Join an Active Conference........................................................... 182
Add a Participant from a Favorites List to an Active Conference .............. 183
Terminate an Active Conference ............................................................... 183
Managing Participants within an Active Conference .................................. 183
Add or Save a Participant to a Favorites List ............................................. 183
Manage a Participant's Endpoint During a Conference ............................... 184
View a Participant's Details During a Conference ....................................... 185

Managing the Guest Book and Favorites Lists ........................................... 188
Managing the Guest Book ......................................................................... 188
View the Guest Book ................................................................................ 188
Add a Guest to the System Guest Book ..................................................... 189
Edit a Guest in the Guest Book ............................................................... 192
Delete a Guest from the Guest Book ......................................................... 193
Managing Favorites .................................................................................. 193
Add a Favorites List ................................................................................... 193
Edit a Favorites List ................................................................................... 193
Delete a Favorites List ............................................................................... 194

Conference and Participant Details ............................................................ 195
Conference Image ..................................................................................... 195
Conference Details .................................................................................... 195
Conference Features ................................................................................ 198
Bridge (MCU) Features ............................................................................ 199
Participants ............................................................................................... 200
Participant Details .................................................................................... 201

Part VI Endpoint Management .................................................................... 202

Managing Endpoints and Peripherals ......................................................... 203
Managing Endpoints ................................................................................ 203
View the Endpoint List ............................................................................. 203
Customize the Endpoint List .................................................................... 205
View Endpoint Details ............................................................................. 206
Update Endpoint Model Definition .......................................................... 214
Download Endpoint Files ......................................................................... 215
Adding Endpoints .................................................................................... 215
Edit an Endpoint ...................................................................................... 219
Delete an Endpoint .................................................................................. 219
Change an Endpoint Group Association .................................................. 220
Manage an Endpoint Owner .................................................................... 220
Manage an Endpoint .................................................................................................. 220
View Call Information ............................................................................................... 221
View an Endpoint’s Video Feed .................................................................................. 225
Clear an Endpoint Help Request ............................................................................... 226
Send a Message to an Endpoint ............................................................................... 226
Reboot an Endpoint .................................................................................................... 226
Associate a User with an Endpoint ........................................................................... 227
Managing Meeting Information in the Endpoint Calendar ....................................... 227
Search for Endpoints in a Range of IP Addresses .................................................... 229

Working with Endpoint Groups .................................................................................. 229
Add an Endpoint Group .............................................................................................. 230
Edit an Endpoint Group .............................................................................................. 230
Copy an Endpoint Group ............................................................................................. 230
Customize the Endpoint Group List ........................................................................... 231
Reboot Phones in an Endpoint Group ......................................................................... 231
Set an Active Directory Password for Phones in an Endpoint Group ....................... 231
Refresh an Endpoint Group ....................................................................................... 232
View Endpoint Group Details .................................................................................... 232
Delete an Endpoint Group .......................................................................................... 232
Set an Endpoint Group to Top Priority ....................................................................... 232
Set Default Endpoint Group ..................................................................................... 233

Monitoring and Managing Peripherals ....................................................................... 233
Monitor Peripherals ..................................................................................................... 233
Link to the Management Web Interface of a Peripheral ............................................... 234
Deleting a Peripheral ................................................................................................... 234
Display Applications .................................................................................................... 235
Peripheral Software Update ....................................................................................... 235

Download an Endpoint Inventory Report .................................................................. 235
Endpoint Inventory Report ......................................................................................... 235

Supported Endpoints and Peripherals ....................................................................... 237
Supported Polycom Endpoints .................................................................................... 237
Supported Third-Party Endpoints ............................................................................... 239
Managing Third-Party Endpoints ............................................................................... 240
Scheduled Provisioning of Third-party Endpoints ....................................................... 240
Managing Cisco Endpoints ......................................................................................... 240
Managing LifeSize Endpoints .................................................................................... 242

Managing Endpoint Naming Schemes ...................................................................... 243
Using Custom Active Directory Attributes .............................................................. 243
Find the Attribute Name to Use ................................................................................ 244
Define an E.164 Address Scheme ................................................................. 246
E.164 Numbering Scheme Settings .............................................................. 246
Specify Base Field .................................................................................... 247
Define an Endpoint Naming Scheme and H.323 Alias ............................... 247
Endpoint Naming Scheme ....................................................................... 248
H.323 ID Scheme .................................................................................... 249
Auto-Generate SIP URIs for Dynamically Managed Endpoints ....................... 250
SIP Domain Information ........................................................................... 252

Managing Polycom Software Endpoints .................................................. 254
Distributing Polycom RealPresence Desktop for Windows Systems .......... 254
  Distribute the Client via an E-mail Link .................................................. 254
  Distribute the Client via the Management System .................................. 254
  Distribute the Client via a Desktop Management or Group Policy Object 254
  Distribute the Client via a ZIP File ....................................................... 255
Have Users Download RealPresence Desktop ........................................... 255
Distributing Polycom RealPresence Desktop for MAC Systems ............... 255
  Download the Client from the Polycom Support Page .......................... 255
  Distribute the Client for MAC client via an E-mail Link ......................... 255
  Distribute the Mac Client via the Management System ......................... 256
  Distribute the Mac Client via a .dmg File ............................................ 256

Scheduled Endpoint Management and Provisioning .............................. 257
Supported Endpoints for Scheduled Management ................................. 257
Scheduled Endpoint Management Settings .............................................. 258
  Enable Automatic Registration Synchronization ................................... 258
  Enable Use HTTPs for Cisco Endpoint Management ............................. 258
Configuring Passwords for Scheduled Management ................................ 258
Creating Scheduled Provisioning Profiles .............................................. 259
  Add a Scheduled Provisioning Profile .................................................. 260
  Edit a Scheduled Provisioning Profile .................................................. 260
  Clone a Scheduled Provisioning Profile .............................................. 260
  Delete a Scheduled Provisioning Profile .............................................. 261
Scheduling Endpoints for Provisioning .................................................... 261
  View a List of Eligible Endpoints ....................................................... 261
  Schedule Provisioning for Endpoints ................................................... 262
  Check the Status of a Scheduled Provisioning Update ......................... 263
  Clear the Status of Scheduled Provisioning ......................................... 263
  Cancel a Scheduled Provisioning ....................................................... 263
Endpoint Fields for Scheduled Provisioning Profiles ............................... 264
Part VII Dynamic Management........................................................................286

Understanding Dynamic Endpoint Management.................................287

Supported Polycom Endpoints and Peripherals........................................287
Presence Service for Dynamically Managed Endpoints...........................288
Overview of Dynamic Management Setup......................................................288
  Configure Endpoints to use a Provisioning Service.............................288
  Define Endpoint Naming Schemes...............................................................289
  Create Video Endpoint Provisioning Profiles..........................................289
  Create Provisioning Rules.........................................................................289
  Create Access Control Lists.....................................................................289
  Create Software Updates..........................................................................289
Selective Provisioning of Dynamically Managed RealPresence Group Series Systems.................................................................290
Dynamically Manage RealPresence Immersive Studio Systems.........................290

Dynamically Updating Endpoint and Peripheral Software......................291

Supported Endpoint Types for Dynamic Software Update.........................291
Software Update Considerations for RealPresence Desktop........................292
Creating Dynamic Software Updates for Endpoints......................................292
  List the Serial Numbers for the Endpoints to be Updated.......................292
  Download the Required Software Package..............................................294
  Request Upgrade Activation Keys..............................................................294
  Upload the Software Update for Dynamic Software Updates..................295
Using Dynamic Software Updates.................................................................296
  Decide the Software Version.................................................................296
  View Dynamic Software Update Status....................................................297
  View Software Update Details for an Endpoint........................................298
  View Dynamic Software Update Packages..............................................300
  Set Maintenance Window for Dynamic Software Updates.......................301
Set Up a Trial Dynamic Software Update.....................................................301
  Creating a Local Trial Group.................................................................302
  Create a Trial Software Update Package..................................................302
  Promote the Trial Software Update Package to Production....................302
  Delete the Trial Software Update Package..............................................303
Populate Domain Name for Software Endpoints........................................303
Enable Software Endpoints to Save Password............................................303
Dynamic Software Updates for Peripherals..................................................304
  View Software Updates for Polycom Touch Controls..............................304
Delete a Bundled Provisioning Profile................................................................. 344
Re-associate Devices with a Different Profile.................................................... 345
Settings included in a Bundled Provisioning Profile for an HDX...................... 345
Settings included in a Bundled Provisioning Profile for a RealPresence Group
System and RealPresence Immersive Studio System........................................ 353

Using Access Control Lists.............................................................................. 357
Understanding Access Control Lists................................................................. 357
Planning Implementation of Access Control Lists.............................................. 357
Using Access Control Lists in a Multi-Tenancy Environment............................ 358
Add a New Access Control List.......................................................................... 358
Edit an Access Control List................................................................................ 359
Access Control List Fields.................................................................................. 359
Delete an Access Control List............................................................................ 360

Scheduling Endpoint Software Updates......................................................... 361
Software Update Considerations for Multi-Tenancy........................................... 361
Creating Scheduled Software Updates for Endpoints....................................... 361
List the Serial Numbers for the Endpoints to be Updated............................... 361
Download the Required Software Package....................................................... 363
Requesting Update Activation Keys.................................................................... 363
Upload the Software Update for Scheduled Software Updates......................... 363
Using Scheduled Software Updates.................................................................... 364
Supported Endpoints for Scheduled Software Updates...................................... 364
Schedule the Software Update for Endpoints.................................................... 364
Scheduled Software Update View....................................................................... 365
View Scheduled Software Update Information................................................... 367
View List of Software Update Packages............................................................ 367
Cancel Software Updates.................................................................................... 367

Dynamic Provisioning of Endpoints for SIP Server Integration....................... 369
SIP Server Authentication Requirements............................................................. 369
Provisioning Endpoints with SIP Server Settings............................................. 370
Create Authentication Information for SIP Endpoints....................................... 370
Import SIP URI Data........................................................................................... 370
Provision SIP Settings for SIP Server Integration............................................ 371
Provision Group for Microsoft Skype For Business or Microsoft Office
Communications Server Integration................................................................. 373
Using Machine Accounts.................................................................................... 374
Add a Machine Account...................................................................................... 374
Edit a Machine Account...................................................................................... 374
Using Zero-Touch Provisioning........................................................... 376
  Configure your DHCP Server................................................................. 376
  Configure Zero Touch Provisioning Settings........................................... 376
  Manually Associate an Endpoint with a Room or User.......................... 377
  Enable Calendaring Service.................................................................. 377

Dynamically Managing a RealPresence Access Director System...........378
  Creating a Site for the RealPresence Access Director System..................378
  Create a RealPresence Access Director Server Provisioning Profile..........378
  Creating a Network Provisioning Profile for Endpoints........................379
    Creating an Admin Config Provisioning Profile..................................379
  Creating a Provisioning Rule and Associate it with All Related Profiles...379
    Creating a User Account for the RealPresence Access Director System. 380
Available Settings for RealPresence Access Director Server Provisioning
  Profile................................................................................................. 380

RealPresence Video App SDK Monitoring and License Control...... 382

Part VIII  UC Endpoint Management................................................. 383

Provisioning Polycom UC Endpoints................................................. 384
  Task Overview of Setting Up UC Endpoint Provisioning..........................384
  Defining UC Endpoint Naming Schema................................................385
  Working with UC Configuration Profiles...............................................385
    Create a UC Configuration Profile......................................................386
    Edit a UC Configuration Profile.......................................................387
    Copy a UC Configuration Profile.......................................................387
    Customize the Configuration Profile List..........................................387
    View CSV Imported Configuration Profiles........................................388
    View a Configuration Profile Detail....................................................388
    Delete a UC Configuration Profile.....................................................388
    Export Configuration Profiles...........................................................388
    Register Phones to a SIP Server.......................................................389
    Monitor Phones Behind Firewall.......................................................389
    Working with Resource Files.............................................................390
    Uploading the Phone Files.................................................................391
  Setting Up UC Endpoint Software Updates...........................................392
    Upload the Software Update for UC Endpoint Software Updates..........392
    Customize Software Updates List......................................................393
Part IX  User Management............................................................................. 423

Working with Users.......................................................................................... 424
Local Users........................................................................................................ 424
Enterprise Users................................................................................................ 425
Managing Local Users...................................................................................... 425
  Add a Local User............................................................................................... 425
Import Local Users............................................................................................ 427
  Sample CSV file of User Information.............................................................. 428
  Updating Local Users by Import...................................................................... 430
Delete a Local User............................................................................................ 431
Managing Users................................................................................................... 431
  Search for a User............................................................................................... 431
  View User Information.................................................................................... 431
  Edit a User........................................................................................................ 433
Assign Users to Manage an Area(s).................................................................... 433
Enable/Disable Users........................................................................................ 434
Unlock a User Account...................................................................................... 434
Clear Orphan Active Directory Users/Rooms.................................................... 435
Managing Dial String Reservations for Users.................................................... 435
  Export User Aliases.......................................................................................... 436
  Importing User Aliases................................................................................... 436

Working with Management Roles and Permissions...................................... 441
Understanding User Roles................................................................................... 441
Managing User Roles........................................................................................ 442
  View the List of User Roles............................................................................ 442
  Add a User Role................................................................................................ 442
  Edit Permissions for a User Role..................................................................... 443
  Delete a User Role........................................................................................... 444
View the Groups and Users Associated with a User Role................................. 444
Default System Roles and Permissions............................................................. 444
Customized Roles and Responsibilities............................................................ 448

Working with Groups....................................................................................... 450
Local Groups....................................................................................................... 450
Enterprise Groups................................................................................................ 450
Managing Groups.................................................................................................450
  Add a Local Group..................................................................................... 450
  Import Enterprise Groups...................................................................... 450
  Edit a Group.......................................................................................... 452
  Delete a Group.......................................................................................... 452

Managing Meeting Rooms.................................................................................454
  View the Rooms List.................................................................................. 454
  Search for a Room.................................................................................... 454
  Add a Local Room.................................................................................... 455
  Room Information...................................................................................... 456
  Add an Enterprise Room.......................................................................... 456
  Edit a Room.............................................................................................. 457
  Delete a Room........................................................................................... 457

Part X  System Configuration...........................................................................459

Securing the System........................................................................................460
  Managing Security Baselines...................................................................... 460
    Create a Security Baseline...................................................................... 461
    View a Security Baseline....................................................................... 461
    Edit a Security Baseline........................................................................ 461
    Delete a Security Baseline...................................................................... 461
    Apply Security Baseline......................................................................... 462
    Audit Your System Against a Security Baseline..................................... 462
  Configure Secure Communication............................................................. 462
    Secure Communication Protocols.......................................................... 463
  Configure TLS Settings.............................................................................. 463
    TLS Settings.......................................................................................... 464
  Configure System Hardening...................................................................... 465
    System Hardening................................................................................... 466
  Session Security and User Access.............................................................. 466
    Change the System User Interface Timeout and Number of Sessions..... 466
    Disable Linux Console Access............................................................... 466
    Enabling and Editing Log in Banners...................................................... 467
    Set Local Account Lockout and Timeout............................................... 468
    Using Whitelist for IP Access............................................................... 469
    Set Sensitive Information Disclosure..................................................... 470
    Set Password Requirements.................................................................... 470
Viewing All Areas ................................................................. 495
View Information for a Specific Area ........................................... 496
Remove an Area ....................................................................... 496
Move the Contents of an Area....................................................... 497
Deleting an Area and its Resources ......... 497
Customizing the Area Logos (system and CMA Desktop) for the Area ... 498
Customize the CMA Desktop Log for an Area.............................. 498
Customize the CMA Desktop Logo ........................................... 498

System Redundancy ................................................................ 499
How Redundancy Works .......................................................... 499
Configuration Considerations for Redundancy ......................... 500
Interoperability Considerations for Redundancy ......................... 501
Local versus Geographic Redundancy ....................................... 501
Managing a Redundant System .................................................. 501
Manually Failover to a Redundant Server .................................... 501
Track System Failovers ............................................................ 502
Discontinue Redundancy ......................................................... 502
Restore Redundancy ............................................................... 503

Configuring Local System Redundancy ................................... 504
Optional: Perform a System Backup .......................................... 504
Ensuring the Servers Can Communicate .................................... 504
Network Configuration Requirements on Both Servers ............... 505
Enable the Root User Login and SSH Access .............................. 505
Optional: Change the Redundant Interface IP Address ............... 505
Network Interface IP Address .................................................. 506
Configure the System for Redundancy ....................................... 506
IP Settings for Local Redundant Configuration ......................... 506
License a Local Redundant System .......................................... 507
Provisioning Considerations .................................................... 507

Geographic System Redundancy ............................................. 508
Network Requirements for a Geographic Redundant System .......... 508
Optional: Perform a System Backup .......................................... 509
Perform Network Configuration on Both Servers ....................... 509
Enable the Root User Login ..................................................... 509
Configure DNS for the Redundant Servers ............................... 509
Configure the System for Redundancy ....................................... 510
IP Settings for Geo-redundant Configurations ........................... 510
License a Geographic Redundant System ........................................................... 511
Provisioning Considerations ............................................................................. 511

Part XI  System Maintenance ........................................................................ 512

System Management and Maintenance .................................................. 513
Administrator Responsibilities ......................................................................... 513
Administrator Best Practices ........................................................................ 513
Auditor Responsibilities .................................................................................. 514
Auditor Best Practices .................................................................................... 514
Recommended Regular Maintenance ......................................................... 514
Tracking System Alerts .................................................................................. 514
Creating Backup Archives ............................................................................. 514
General System Health and Capacity Checks ............................................. 515
Exporting CDR ............................................................................................... 515

System Reports ............................................................................................... 516
View Site Statistics Report ............................................................................... 516
Site Statistics .................................................................................................. 516
View Site Link Statistics Report ..................................................................... 517
Site Link Statistics .......................................................................................... 517
Call Detail Record Report Administration ................................................... 518
Modify the CDR Retention Period ................................................................. 518
Schedule Archives of the CDR Report ......................................................... 518
View Endpoint Usage Report ......................................................................... 519
Available Endpoint Usage Report ................................................................. 520
Generate Endpoint Usage Report Properties ............................................... 521
Summary CDR Report ..................................................................................... 521
detail CDR Report ........................................................................................ 522
Generate Network Device Usage Report ....................................................... 525
Create Conference Usage Report ................................................................. 525
Conference Usage Report ............................................................................. 525
Create Conference Type Report .................................................................... 526
Conference Type Report .............................................................................. 527

RealPresence Resource Manager System SNMP ...................................... 529
SNMP Framework ........................................................................................ 529
SNMP Notifications ...................................................................................... 530
SNMP Versions .............................................................................................. 530
Configuring SNMP ....................................................................................... 530
Backup and Delete Audit Files ................................................................. 561
View RealPresence Resource Manager System Report ................. 562
Troubleshooting Utilities ................................................................. 563
  Capture a Trace Using Filters ...................................................... 564
Working with UC Management Log .............................................. 564
  View UC Management Log ............................................................ 564
  Filter UC Management Log ........................................................... 565
  Download UC Management Log .................................................... 565
  Clear UC Management Window .................................................... 565
Troubleshooting Specific Types of Issues ..................................... 566
  Registration Problems and Solutions ........................................ 566
  Point-to-Point Calling Problems and Solutions ....................... 567
  MCU and Gateway Dialing Problems and Solutions .................. 567
Diagnostics for your Dell Server ..................................................... 567

Configuring Alert Settings ................................................................. 568
  Setting Up Remote Alerts ............................................................ 568
    Set Up System Generated E-mail Account ................................ 568
    Enable RealPresence Resource Manager System Remote Alerts .............................. 569
    Set RealPresence Resource Manager System Remote Alert Level
        Settings ............................................................................. 569
    Set RealPresence Resource Manager System Alert Threshold Settings ............ 569
    Set Endpoint Alert Level Settings ............................................ 570
  Configuring Remote Alert Profiles .............................................. 571
    Add a Remote Alert Profile ........................................................ 572
    Associate a Remote Alert Profile With a User ................................ 574
    Edit a Remote Alert Profile ........................................................ 574
    Disable a Remote Alert Profile .................................................. 575
    Delete a Remote Alert Profile .................................................... 575
  Disable System Remote Alerts ..................................................... 575
  Viewing and Deleting Network Device Alerts ................................ 575
    Viewing Alerts .......................................................................... 576
    Delete Active Alert ................................................................... 580
    View Endpoint Event Status ...................................................... 580
Before You Begin

Topics:

- Related Documentation
- Getting Help

This Guide provides information on how to configure RealPresence Resource Manager and how to use RealPresence Resource Manager to schedule and manage conferences, to do license control, and to manage and provision endpoints.

Related Documentation

The following documentation provides additional information on Polycom products.

You can view the following types of documents:

- Polycom Companion User Guide — Refer to this guide on how to configure and manage the Polycom Studio USB video bar and Polycom EagleEye Cube USB Camera.
- Polycom Studio Provisioning Reference Guide — This guide provides the parameters that RealPresence Resource Manager uses to manage your Polycom Studio USB video bar.
- Polycom UC Software Administrator Guide — This guide provides detailed information on how to install, provision, and manage Polycom phones.
- Polycom RealPresence Trio Administrator Guide — Refer to this guide for detailed information on the parameters to use the RealPresence Resource Manager system to manage your Polycom Trio™ system.

Getting Help

For more information about installing, configuring, and administering Polycom products, refer to Documents and Downloads at Polycom Support.

Polycom and Partner Resources

To find all Polycom partner solutions, see Strategic Global Partner Solutions.

The Polycom Community

The Polycom Community gives you access to the latest developer and support information.

Participate in discussion forums to share ideas and solve problems with your colleagues. To register with the Polycom Community, simply create a Polycom online account. When logged in, you can access Polycom support personnel and participate in developer and support forums to find the latest information on hardware, software, and partner solutions topics.
Part

Getting Started

Topics:

• Polycom RealPresence Resource Manager Overview
• Network Configuration
• Integrating with an Enterprise Directory
• System Setup Overview

RealPresence Resource Manager is an integrated scheduling and management platform for endpoints and video conferencing infrastructure management.
Polycom RealPresence Resource Manager Overview

Topics:

- RealPresence Resource Manager Features and Capabilities
- Navigating the RealPresence Resource Manager System

RealPresence Resource Manager is an integrated scheduling and management platform for endpoints and video conferencing infrastructure management.

In particular, it functions as the management and licensing platform for Polycom® RealPresence Clariti™.

RealPresence Resource Manager Features and Capabilities

RealPresence Resource Manager can schedule and monitor conferences, manage and monitor endpoints, and manage and control licenses.

Video Infrastructure Management

- Network device management. You can view and manage all of your Polycom video conferencing network devices from a single interface. Network device management and system monitoring and management including network typology by geography and visual alarm reporting.
- Configuration for service groups. You can create a service group of all the Polycom network devices within your video environment. This allows you to configure settings on a service group level.
- Licensing management. RealPresence Resource Manager system acts as the licensing interface between the Polycom Licensing Center and your RealPresence Clariti products.
- Solution monitoring for network devices. Monitor all the network devices within your video infrastructure environment.
- Multi-tenancy support.

Video Endpoint and Polycom Unified Communication (UC) Device Management

- Video endpoint management, including provisioning, updating, and troubleshooting.
- Video endpoint provisioning enables you to edit endpoint settings for the endpoints registered to the RealPresence Resource Manager. You can take advantage of dynamic (automatic) provisioning for Polycom endpoints, based on provisioning rules. For legacy and third-party endpoints, you can manually schedule provisioning profiles to be sent at intervals you define.
- Dynamic software updates for dynamically managed Polycom endpoint systems and scheduled software updates for third-party and legacy endpoints.
- UC device management includes phones and other Polycom UC devices provisioning, updating, and troubleshooting.
Conference Scheduling

- Conference scheduling and monitoring on both RealPresence Resource Manager RealPresence Collaboration Server and the Polycom® RealPresence® DMA® systems (when integrated with the RealPresence Resource Manager system).
- Advanced routing to distribute audio and video calls across multiple conferencing platforms (MCUs), creating a single seamless resource pool, when integrated with a Polycom RealPresence DMA system.

Directory Services

- Directory and user management including address books and presence. Integration with an enterprise directory for user management.
- Access to user and room directories for on-demand and scheduled calls. Directory services include:
  - Presence and contact list functionality for dynamically managed endpoints (except for RealPresence Mobile clients).
  - Global Address Book for a single directory structure or Multiple Address Books for multiple managed directories.

Managing Bandwidth for RealPresence DMA

The RealPresence Resource Manager system manages the bandwidth between sites and the bandwidth for calls that it schedules within the gatekeeper region it services.

The sites and bandwidth management is only possible with a RealPresence DMA system.

Users with administrator permissions can create bandwidth management policies by setting the following limits. The RealPresence Resource Manager system applies the lowest value from the settings described here to limit the bit rate of specific calls or conferences.

- **The maximum bit rate for a call at a site.**
  Set it by editing the site, selecting *General Info*, and setting the *Call Max Bit Rate*.

- **The total bandwidth between sites.**
  The link type and bandwidth are parameters of the site links between two sites. Set it by editing the site link.

- **The maximum speed (bit rate) for calls across a site link.**
  This value is also a parameter of the site links between two sites and is set by editing the site link.

- **The specific speed (bit rate) of calls in a conference.**
  This value is a parameter of the conference. It is inherited from the conference template. You can achieve granularity of bandwidth management by the following ways:
  - Creating a variety of scheduling roles.
  - Creating a variety of conference templates with different conference speeds.
  - Associating different scheduling roles with different templates.
  - Associating different users and/or groups with the different scheduling roles.
    For example, you can assign an executive user or group more bandwidth than your typical user. To do this, create a VIP role and assign it scheduling or advanced scheduling...
permissions. Then create a VIP conference template that has a higher video speed, say 4096 kpbs. Finally, associate the executive user or group with the VIP role.

There are some things to note in these situations.

◦ The RealPresence Resource Manager system may reduce bandwidth or fail a call if the requested bandwidth isn't available.

◦ Schedulers with advanced scheduling permissions can choose to change the speed of calls in conference by changing the value for a specific conference. However, the RealPresence Resource Manager system only allows a connection speed when it is within the parameters set for the site link.

◦ Endpoints in a conference may not be capable of transmitting at the requested speed. In this case, they'll transmit at the value they can achieve that is closest to the value set for the conference.

• The maximum speed (bit rate) for receiving calls and the preferred speed for placing calls provisioned on the endpoint.

These values are parameters of the endpoint. For endpoints in dynamic management mode, these values are provisioned as part of an Admin Config provisioning profile. For endpoints operating in scheduled management mode, these values can be provisioned with a scheduled provisioning profile or modified at the endpoint itself.

Note in this case that the endpoint can request a speed when placing a call. However the RealPresence Resource Manager system only allows a connection speed when it is within the parameters set for the site topology.

Session Border Control Integration
Integrate with session border control systems, which enable video conferencing across firewalls.

Redundant Configuration
An optional high-availability, redundant management server configuration.

Programmatic Access through API
Optional programmatic access through Application Programming Interfaces (APIs).

Navigating the RealPresence Resource Manager System
You can learn the basic tasks of working in a RealPresence Resource Manager system.

If more than one provisioning server is used within an environment, there's no knowledge or coordination between these environments including, but not limited to:

• No shared directory services
• No shared management or provisioning services
• No shared scheduling
• No shared licenses
Log In to the System

To log in to the RealPresence Resource Manager web interface, you need the IP address or host name of the RealPresence Resource Manager system server and your user name, password, and domain.

Note: For security reasons, don't save your user name and password.

User with Admin role is locked for 1 minute after three (default) failed attempts, while other users follow the rules of failed login that the Admin sets.

Procedure

1. Open a browser and enter the RealPresence Resource Manager system IP address or host name.
   - If prompted to install the Adobe Flash Player, click OK.
   - If you receive an HTTPS Security Alert, click Continue.
   - If you see a login banner, click Accept to accept the terms and continue. If you can't connect to the system, there may be certificate issues. Contact your RealPresence Resource Manager system administrator.

2. When the system Log In screen appears, enter your user name and Password.
   - If you're logging in with your enterprise directory account, include your domain (domain/username). Local users don't have to include a domain.

3. If necessary, select a different language from the bottom of the login page.

4. Click Login.

Because the RealPresence Resource Manager system is a role-based system, you see only the pages and functions available to your system roles.

If you log in as an administrator, you see the RealPresence Resource Manager system Dashboard.

Related Links

Working with Management Roles and Permissions on page 441

System Dashboard

When you log in to the RealPresence Resource Manager system with the Administrator role and permissions, the system first displays the system Dashboard.

Use the system Dashboard to view information about system health and activity levels.

The system Dashboard displays data in an array of charts, forms, data grids, and other graphical displays. You can modify your system Dashboard layout by moving, closing, and restoring panes. Also note that your changes to the system Dashboard are remain but between logouts and logins.

Dashboard Panes

Within the Dashboard, you can customize the panes you see by selecting the following panes under the Add Panes drop-down list.

Today’s Scheduled Conferences

The Today’s Scheduled Conferences pane displays information about the scheduled conferences managed by the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

For the current day (starting at 0:00 and ending at 24:00), it displays:
   - The number of Total scheduled conferences.
• The number of **Ongoing** scheduled conferences.

When the cursor stays on the bar, it displays:

• The number of scheduled conferences that were **Completed** that day.
• The number of scheduled conferences that are **Ongoing** at the current time.
• The number of scheduled conferences that are yet to occur (**Future**).

### Endpoint Number

The **Endpoint Number** pane displays the number of endpoints registered with the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

It displays the total endpoint number and the online endpoint number.

The bar displays the online and offline number of the registered endpoints. The green part is the number of online endpoints. The gray part is the offline number of the endpoints.

### CPU/Memory/Disk

This pane displays general information about the current CPU, memory, and disk usage of the system.

When the CPU and memory usage is under 75%, the color is green. When the usage is between 75% and 90%, the color is yellow. When the usage is over 90%, the color is red.

### Users

This pane displays:

• The total number of local users, enterprise users (with endpoints associated), and rooms.
• The number of the rooms.

When the cursor stays on the bar, it displays:

• The number of local users, enterprise users (with endpoints associated), and rooms.
• The number of guests.

### Today’s Adhoc Conferences

The **Today’s Adhoc Conferences** pane displays information about the adhoc conferences started by video endpoints registered to the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

For the current day (starting at 0:00 and ending at 24:00), it displays:

• The number of **Total** adhoc conferences.
• The number of adhoc conferences that are **Ongoing** at the current time.

When the cursor stays on the bar, it displays:

• The number of adhoc conferences that were **Completed** for the current day.
• The number of adhoc conferences that are **Ongoing** at the current time.

---

**Note:** Adhoc conferences that take place on MCUs that are managed by the RealPresence DMA system cannot be accurately monitored by the RealPresence Resource Manager. Monitoring information is incorrect and inconsistent.
Hardware Usage
This pane displays the temperature, battery, and cooling fan status.

You can only see this pane on the appliance edition.

- **Temperature**—Temperature status information provided by the Polycom-branded Dell server agent through its MIB.
- **Battery Status**—Battery status information provided by the Polycom-branded Dell server agent through its MIB.
- **Cooling Fan**—Fan status information provided by the Polycom-branded Dell server agent through its MIB.

Endpoint Type
The system enables you to add multiple Endpoint Type panes.

When you add an Endpoint Type pane, you can give the pane a meaningful name and select to display the endpoints by type, by site, or by endpoint group. The pie chart displays up to the six endpoint types. When there are more than six endpoint types by type, site or groups, the pie chart displays the top five endpoint types.

- **By Site**: The site name and endpoint number are displayed.
- **By Endpoint Type**: The endpoint type and endpoint number are displayed.
- **By Endpoint Group**: The endpoint group name and endpoint number are displayed.

You can save the pane and create others as needed. You can also reconfigure an Endpoint Type pane using the configuration tool.

When the cursor stays on a specific type of endpoint on the meter, the endpoint name and number are displayed.

Site Map
This pane displays the site topology.

If there are over 500 sites, the system does not display the Site Map pane. See for details.

Service Groups
This pane displays the service groups.

Today's Conferences Statistics
Select Scheduled Conference, Ad-hoc conference, or Both form the Type drop-down list to display the information about:

- Scheduled conferences managed by the RealPresence Resource Manager system. For the current day (starting at 0:00 and ending at 24:00), it displays a bar chart that displays time on the linear axis plotted against the number of scheduled conferences on the horizontal axis.
- Ad hoc conferences started by video endpoints registered to the RealPresence Resource Manager system. For the current day (starting at 0:00 and ending at 24:00), it displays a bar chart that displays the number of ad hoc conferences (vertical axis) plotted against time of day (horizontal axis).
System Info

This pane displays general information about the system, including:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Server Time</td>
<td>Displays the current time of the RealPresence Resource Manager system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last JServer Start Time</td>
<td>The last time when JServer started.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Server Address</td>
<td>The IP address of the RealPresence Resource Manager system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Software Version</td>
<td>The RealPresence Resource Manager system version number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hardware Version</td>
<td>The Dell hardware version of the system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Rev D, R620</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Rev E, R220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Rev F, R630</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Rev G, R230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Rev H, R640</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Note: If you use a Virtual Edition is not Dell hardware, the Hardware Version shows Unknown.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Remote Access</th>
<th>Displays whether or not Remote Desktop Connection is enabled.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Provisioning in Progress</td>
<td>Displays the number of scheduled endpoint provisioning processes that are currently underway.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Software Updates in Progress</td>
<td>Displays the number of scheduled endpoint software update processes that are currently underway.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Failed Logins (last 24 hours)</td>
<td>The total number of Failed Logins for Active Directory users in the last 24-hour period.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Endpoints

The system enables you to add multiple Endpoints panes so you can create your own scheme for grouping and monitoring endpoints.

When you add an Endpoints pane, you can give the pane a meaningful name and select which endpoints to monitor. You can save the pane. Create others as needed. You can also reconfigure an Endpoints pane using the configuration tool.

Each Endpoints pane can list up to 500 endpoints.

Endpoints panes display the following information:

• The number of endpoints being monitored
• The number of monitored endpoints that are **In a Call**
• The number of monitored endpoints that are **Online**
• The number of monitored endpoints that are **Offline**

**Precall Status**

The **Precall Status** pane displays information about the next conference or conferences that are scheduled to launch including:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Time to Conference</td>
<td>Displays the system-defined precall status reporting time of 10 minutes. In other words, the Pre-call Status pane always reports on conferences that are scheduled to start in the next 10 minutes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scheduled to Launch</td>
<td>Displays the number of conferences scheduled to start in the next 10 minutes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ready to Launch</td>
<td>Displays the subset of conferences that are scheduled to start in the next 10 minutes and that have passed the resource tests that the system executes before launching a conference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ready to Launch with Device in Call</td>
<td>Displays the subset of conferences that are scheduled to start in the next 10 minutes and that have passed the resource tests but that still have one or more devices in another call.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOT Ready to Launch</td>
<td>Displays the subset of conferences that are scheduled to start in the next 10 minutes but that haven't yet passed the resource tests. Also displays the conferences that aren't ready to launch.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**MCU Status**

The system enables you to add multiple **MCU Status** panes so you can create a pane for all or individual MCUs registered with the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

When you add an **MCU Status** pane, you can give the pane a meaningful name and either select an MCU to monitor or select All MCUs. You can save the pane. Create others as needed. You can also reconfigure an **MCU Status** pane using the configuration tool.

The **MCU Status** pane for **All MCUs** displays the following information:

**Note:** If your system has areas enabled, you'll be able to view only the MCUs that belong to areas that you've been assigned to manage.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Errors</td>
<td>Displays the cumulative number of alarms for all of the registered MCUs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warnings</td>
<td>Displays the cumulative number of warnings for all of the registered MCUs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active Conferences</td>
<td>Displays the total number of active conferences being hosted by all of the registered MCUs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The **MCU Status** pane for an individual MCU displays the following information:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Errors</td>
<td>Displays the number of alarms on the MCU.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warnings</td>
<td>Displays the number of conferences that are active on the MCU at the current time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active Conferences</td>
<td>Displays the number of active conferences currently being hosted by the MCU.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of Audio</td>
<td>Displays the number of dedicated audio ports configured on the MCU.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio Ports</td>
<td>Displays two views of the MCU audio port usage:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio Ports</td>
<td>• A sparkline that presents the audio port usage over time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio Ports</td>
<td>• A percentage indicator that shows the current usage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of Video</td>
<td>Displays the number of video ports configured on the MCU.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video Ports</td>
<td>Displays two views of the MCU video port usage:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video Ports</td>
<td>• A sparkline that presents the video port usage over time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video Ports</td>
<td>• A percentage indicator that shows the current usage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expected Port Utilization</td>
<td>A timeline that shows how many ports are scheduled for conferences within the next 45 minutes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This status information is sent by the MCU to the RealPresence Resource Manager system. In addition, the **MCU Status** pane identifies when the monitored MCU is experiencing alert conditions.

**Users Logged In**

The **Users Logged In** pane displays the type and number of users that are currently logged in to the system.

A sparkline presents the number of logins over time (30 minutes total; updated every 5 minutes so there are six data points on the sparkline) for each user type.

The system identifies three user types by their permissions: **Administrators**, **Operators**, and **Schedulers**.

Note that these three user types aren't necessarily the same as user roles. For example, users assigned the default **Administrator** and default **Device Administrator** roles appear in this pane as
Administrators. And users assign the default View Only Scheduler, default Scheduler, and default Advanced Scheduler roles appear in this pane as Schedulers.

Redundancy Status

The Redundancy Status pane displays information about the RealPresence Resource Manager system redundancy configuration, including:

- Whether or not the system is configured for redundancy. Possible values for Status are Configured or Not Configured.
- The Virtual IP Address for the redundant system. If it isn't configured for redundancy, the value is No.
- The IP address of the Active Server.
- The IP address of the Backup Server.

Video Endpoint Licenses (Non-Clariti Only)

The Video Endpoint Licenses pane displays:

- The total number of video licenses available on the system
- The number of free video licenses. When the cursor stays on the gray part of the bar, it also shows the number of free licenses.
- Used video licenses: when the cursor stays on the blue part of the bar, it shows the number of used licenses.

Audio and/or Content Endpoint Licenses (Non-Clariti Only)

The Audio and/or Content Endpoint Licenses pane displays:

- The total number of phone and content device (Pano) licenses available on the system.
- The number of free audio/content licenses. When the cursor stays on the light blue part of the bar, it also shows the number of free licenses.
- Used audio/content licenses: when the cursor stays on the blue part of the bar, it shows the number of used licenses.

Polycom RealPresence Video App SDK License

You can view the RealPresence Video App SDK endpoint license usage from the SDK Endpoint License pane.

The SDK Endpoint License pane displays:

- The total number of RealPresence Video App SDK endpoint licenses available on the system.
- The number of free licenses. When the cursor stays on the light blue part of the bar, it also shows the number of free licenses.
- Used licenses: when the cursor stays on the blue part of the bar, it shows the number of used licenses.
CUCM
The CUCM pane displays the information about the integrated Cisco Unified Communication Manager information.

DMA
The DMA pane displays the service information about the integrated RealPresence DMA system.
If the RealPresence Resource Manager system is integrated with a RealPresence DMA local cluster or super cluster, the DMA pane doesn't display the RealPresence DMA nodes status.

View Alerts
The triangle in the top-right corner of the Dashboard shows the overview of the system alerts.
The color of the triangle shows the highest level of the existing alert. For example, if there's a critical alert, the triangle is red. It also shows the total number of the system alerts.

Procedure
1. Click Alert in the top-right corner of the Dashboard.
2. View the alerts on the Alert > Alert View page.

Field Input Requirements
If you work in a language other than English, be aware that some RealPresence Resource Manager fields may accept only ASCII or extended ASCII characters.

Searching in a List
In the RealPresence Resource Manager system, information is often summarized in lists or grids.
Lists that include many items may have filters or searchable fields, which allow you to view a subset of items or search for a specific entry. You can search endpoints by Name, IP address, Dial String, Site, and other keywords.
In general, most text filter fields are ASCII only and the RealPresence Resource Manager search function is a case-insensitive, substring search. That means when you enter a search string, the RealPresence Resource Manager looks for that string wherever it occurs (beginning, middle, or end) in the word or number.

Download Software Packages
You can download the software packages of RealPresence Desktop for Windows and Mac or Polycom File Verification Utility directly from the system web interface.

Procedure
1. Click Username > Download at the top-right corner of the page.
2. Click the Download button of the software that you want to download.
   You can download:
   • Polycom RealPresence Desktop for Windows
   • Polycom RealPresence Desktop for Mac
• Polycom File Verification Utility

See Backup and Delete Audit Files for details on how to use Polycom File Verification Utility.

**Change a Password**

The RealPresence Resource Manager system administrator manages the system password for local users, while Microsoft Active Directory for enterprise users.

For local users, the system administrator can set password requirements, for example, password length and password age. Microsoft Active Directory can do the same for enterprise users as well.

**Procedure**

1. Click *Username > Change Password* in the top-right corner of the page.
2. Enter your *Old Password*.
3. Enter a password to the *New Password* and *Confirm Password* fields.
4. For users with admin role, you can select the check box on the bottom of the dialog to apply the same password to the admin users that you specified when adding the following servers as network instances:
   - RealPresence DMA
   - RealPresence Collaboration Server
   - Web Suite Services and Experience Portal

   **Note:** This operation doesn't apply to RealPresence DMA and RealPresence Collaboration Server with service integrated.

5. Confirm the new password and click *OK*.

**Log Out of the System**

You can log out of the system at any time.

**Procedure**

» Click *Username > Log Out* in the top-right corner of the page.

**Restart or Shut Down a System**

You have several options for an orderly shutdown or restart of a RealPresence Resource Manager system in nonemergency situations.

The options for an orderly shutdown or restart of the system include:

- Use the *Shutdown* option on the *Admin > Maintenance > Troubleshooting Utilities* page when you must disconnect the RealPresence Resource Manager system server for some reason; for example, to move it. All RealPresence Resource Manager system functionality is stopped during a *Shutdown*.

- If the system interface is not available and you must shut down the system, press once (but do not hold) the power switch on the RealPresence Resource Manager system server. This is equivalent to selecting the *Shutdown* option described previously.

If you use a Virtual Edition, you can shut down the system through the virtualization management software.
• Use the **Restart** option on the same page when you must cycle the RealPresence Resource Manager system for some reason; for example, if the system locks up or loses connection with Active Directory.

If you have access to the RealPresence Resource Manager user interface, you can also stop future scheduled conferences from starting automatically and wait for active conferences to end before performing an orderly shutdown or restart of the system.

**Procedure**

1. (Optional) To stop future scheduled conferences from starting before you perform the restart or shutdown:
   a. Go to **Dashboard**.
   b. Monitor the **Today's Scheduled Conferences** section to determine when all active conferences are completed.

2. Go to **Admin > Maintenance > Troubleshooting Utilities** and click **Restart** or **Shutdown** as required.

   In a redundant RealPresence Resource Manager system configuration, if you requested a shutdown of the primary server, the system displays a warning indicating that it's initiating a failover.

   If you select **Restart**, it may take the RealPresence Resource Manager system up to 10 minutes to restart all server processes.

**Shut Down the System in Emergency**

Only perform an emergency shutdown when necessary.

After an emergency shutdown, a system battery may continue to cache information until the battery runs out. In this case, the system enters an error state and you must recover the system.

**Procedure**

1. Shut down the system in one of the following ways:
   • Press and hold the power switch on the RealPresence Resource Manager system server.
   • Pull the system power cord.

2. Recover the system.
   a. Connect a keyboard and monitor to the RealPresence Resource Manager system.
   b. Boot the system to clear the error message.

   Then the system can begin recovery.
Network Configuration

Topics:
  • Configuring your DNS Server
  • Adding DNS SRV Record for RealPresence Resource Manager System Services
  • Edit Network Settings
  • Virtualization Settings
  • Time Settings
  • User Data Collection

Configure your network settings before you start to use RealPresence Resource Manager to manage your devices or conferences.

Configuring your DNS Server

You need to configure DNS server to discover the RealPresence Resource Manager system automatically.

This means you must add the DNS service record (SRV record) for the RealPresence Resource Manager system to:
  • resolve queries for the RealPresence Resource Manager by the RealPresence Resource Manager's host name or IP address.
  • dynamically manage endpoints (which includes dynamic provisioning, dynamic software update, and presence).

Adding DNS SRV Record for RealPresence Resource Manager System Services

To resolve queries to the RealPresence Resource Manager system using the system's host name or IP address, you must configure the DNS server.

Polycom recommends you to configure the DNS server using the system's fully qualified domain name (FQDN) to ensure that client systems running RealPresence Desktop and RealPresence Mobile can access the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

The DNS should also have entries for your Active Directory server (if different from the DNS).

To dynamically manage endpoints (which includes dynamic provisioning, dynamic software updates, and presence), they must be able to automatically discover the RealPresence Resource Manager system. This means you must add the DNS service record (SRV record) for the RealPresence Resource Manager system. The lookup key for this service record is _cmaconfig._tcp. So the record will resemble this:
The SRV record must point to the Provisioning Server (RealPresence Resource Manager system) that endpoints will use for auto discovery for Dynamic Provisioning. Two or more provisioning servers may co-reside on a network; however only one may be used for DNS-based discovery of provisioning services.

For more information about DNS, DNS records, and how DNS works, see Microsoft Technet (http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc772774(WS.10).aspx).

**Edit Network Settings**

You can edit the network settings to change the basic network information for the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

Some networks setting changes require a restart, such as updating the IP address or changing the subnet mask.

Some network changes also require you to install a new security certificate or certificate chain. When you use certificates, you must request and install a new certificate or certificate chain if you change the system name, DNS domain name or switch from supporting single to multiple IP protocols or vice versa.

**Procedure**

1. Go to Admin > Server Settings > Network.
2. Configure the settings on the Service Interface tab, as necessary.
3. Click Save Settings.
   - If you change the IP address, the system prompts you to restart the RealPresence Resource Manager system. We also recommend that you restart the system if you change the subnet mask.
4. As required, restart the system.
   - Ensure to connect RealPresence Resource Manager to the network before you restart system.

**Service Interface Settings**

Configure the service interface settings on the Service Interface tab.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Supported Network Types</td>
<td>Choose the type of network on which the RealPresence Resource Manager resides:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• IPv4 only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• IPv4 and IPv6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• IPv6 only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If you're using security certificates, you must request a new certificate if you change these settings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Name</td>
<td>The NetBIOS name (ASCII only) of the RealPresence Resource Manager system server. Must be between 6 and 16 characters long; dashes and underscores are valid characters. If you're using security certificates, you must request a new certificate if you change these settings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DSCP Marker</td>
<td>Enables the administrator to configure the Quality of Service level of the RealPresence Resource Manager. Set the level between 0 - 63. The higher the number the higher the Quality of Service level.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPv6 Address</td>
<td>IPv6 global address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPv6 Prefix length</td>
<td>Within IPv6 networks, the prefix length is the equivalent of the subnet mask in IPv4 networks. Should be 1-128.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPv6 Default Gateway</td>
<td>The IPv6 address of the gateway server/router. For IPv6 networks only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPv6 Link Local Address</td>
<td>Read-only field. The RealPresence Resource Manager system generates a value for this field when IPv6 is enabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPv4 Address</td>
<td>The static IPv4 address for the RealPresence Resource Manager system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPv4 Subnet Mask</td>
<td>The network subnet mask for the RealPresence Resource Manager system IPv4 address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPv4 Default Gateway</td>
<td>The static IP address of the RealPresence Resource Manager system IPv4 default gateway.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DNS Search Domain</td>
<td>The DNS domain name suffix for the network in which the domain name server and RealPresence Resource Manager system server reside. For example polycom.com, not the fully qualified path of hostname.polycom.com. If you're using security certificates, you must request a new certificate if you change these settings. If instead of entering a single domain controller, you enter an FQDN that maps to multiple servers, be sure that all of the mapped servers are directory domain controllers with global catalogs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preferred DNS Server</td>
<td>The IP address of the preferred domain name server for the network.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alternate DNS Server</td>
<td>The IP address of the alternate domain name server for the network.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Virtualization Settings

If you're running a RealPresence Resource Manager system, Virtual Edition, you must configure your RealPresence Resource Manager system to match the capacity of your virtual environment.

For additional system capability information, see the Release Notes.

Edit Virtualization Settings

For maximum performance, set the system capability of your virtual edition to match the supported number of endpoints.

See the RealPresence Resource Manager Release Notes for the supported number of endpoints.

Procedure

1. Navigate to Admin > Server Settings > Virtualization Settings.
2. In the System Capability field, enter the number of endpoints that matches your hardware configuration.
3. Click Update.

Time Settings

You can configure your system time manually or set it up to synchronize with an external NTP server.

If you use an NTP server, be sure to use the same NTP server that is used by your other video conference systems. This will ensure continuity, accurate scheduling, and accurate reports for all systems.

Edit System Time Settings

You can update your time settings manually or point your system to an external NTP server.

Make sure that the current system time is correct before synchronizing with an NTP server. If you set the system to use an external NTP server when the current date and time are incorrect, the system time may be wrong for the amount of time specified in the Minutes between synchronization attempts.

Procedure

1. Go to Admin > Server Settings > System Time.
2. Configure the system time settings, as necessary.
3. Click Update.

System Time Settings

Configure the system time settings.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>System Time Zone</td>
<td>The time zone in which the RealPresence Resource Manager system server resides.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use Current Time</td>
<td>Select this option to input the current date and time.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### User Data Collection

To continually improve the product, it's important to know how you use the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

By collecting this data, Polycom can identify both the system level utilization and the combination and usage of RealPresence Resource Manager features. This usage data will inform Polycom which features are important and are actually used on your system. Polycom will use this information to help guide future development and testing to concentrate on the areas of RealPresence Resource Manager that are most heavily used. If you choose not to send this information, Polycom is less aware of which features are important to you and that are used by you, which may influence future development to go in directions that are less beneficial to you.

Your decision to enable or not enable the sending of this data doesn’t affect the availability of any documented system feature in any way.

The system sends the data once per hour over a secure TLS connection (port 8443) to a Polycom collection point (customerusagedatacollection.polycom.com). There’s no access by any customer or others to view the data received at the collection point. The raw data will be viewable only by Polycom. To avoid any impact to starting and ending calls and conferences, data is never sent between 5 minutes before the hour and 5 minutes after the hour.

The following types of data are reported:

- License information
- Hardware configuration
- System resource usage: CPU, RAM, disk, database
- System configuration: number of servers, clusters
- Feature usage: Enterprise Directory integration, conference, endpoints, network topology, user management, alert management, and license management.
- Number of users, endpoints, sites, and MCUs.
- Security settings

When this information is reported, a customer's user and environment identifying information (such as internal IP addresses, and FQDNs, names of users, devices, and external systems) is made anonymous before being sent from the system. System serial numbers and license information are sent without anonymization and may be used to help improve customer experiences. In total, less than 100KB of data per hour is collected and sent.

### Enable or Disable User Data Collection

You can enable or disable this feature at any time.
Procedure
1. Go to Admin > Server Settings > Licenses.
2. Select or clear the Automatically send usage data check box.

View the Collected Usage Data
The system records data that has been sent and collected in the system logs.

Procedure
1. Log in to the RealPresence Resource Manager system as an Administrator.
2. Download the system logs.
3. On the PC where the logs have been downloaded, use an archiving or zipping tool to extract the file analytics.json.
   Analytics.json is a text file containing the hourly data reported most recently before the time when the system logs were created.
4. View the analytics.json file with Notepad or another common text editing tool.
Integrating with an Enterprise Directory

Topics:

• Enterprise Directory Supported Configurations
• RealPresence Resource Manager System and Windows Authentication
• Managing Directories
• Endpoint Directory and Directory Settings

In a large organization, integrating your RealPresence Resource Manager system with Microsoft Active Directory greatly simplifies the task of managing conference system security.

Directory management provides the following features.

• Single sign-on capability. Users get the benefits of pass-through authentication, allowing them to leverage their Active Directory user name and password to log in to the RealPresence Desktop system, RealPresence Mobile, or CMA Desktop system. This happens without the user having to enter their credentials, creating integration for logins.

• Single management environment. After the initial setup of the RealPresence Resource Manager system, adding groups into RealPresence Resource Manager system is no more complex than adding a group to a file share or database. Continue to manage your group memberships through Active Directory, then grant those groups rights within the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

• Enables you to continue leveraging the existing role-based security model that you have in place, though the RealPresence Resource Manager system only uses Universal groups.

Enterprise Directory Supported Configurations

There are many possible configurations available within Microsoft Active Directory, some of which aren't fully supported by the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

These topics describes the implications of different Microsoft Active Directory configurations for integrating with the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

Single Forest Support

Microsoft Active Directory may be set up in either a single-forest or multiforest configuration.

However, the RealPresence Resource Manager system requires that user accounts reside in a single forest.

Multiple Domains within a Single Forest

Microsoft Active Directory forests may contain one or more domains.

In either configuration, the directory must have a Global Catalog service. The RealPresence Resource Manager system can integrate to either single or multiple domains, so long as they reside in the same forest structure.

Microsoft Active Directory domains are organized into trees, each tree being a group of domains, which share a consistent DNS namespace (for example: polycom.com and na.polycom.com would be in the
same tree, while polycom.com and resouceManagerDevelopment.net would be separate trees, if they were in the same forest. The RealPresence Resource Manager system will integrate to all domains in a multitree forest.

You can either integrate to all domains of a multidomain forest configuration or restrict to a single domain tree in a multidomain forest through the use of LDAP Search base DN criteria.

**Universal Group Support**

Microsoft Active Directory provides three group scopes: Universal, Global, and Domain Local.

Both Global groups and Universal Groups are held on all Global Catalog servers in the forest. The RealPresence Resource Manager system supports only the Universal groups.

Microsoft Active Directory provides two group types: Security and Distribution. The RealPresence Resource Manager system supports either of these group types.

---


---

In addition to leveraging Active Directory Universal groups, the RealPresence Resource Manager system also has Local groups, which you can use to grant a standard set of rights to multiple users or groups. These RealPresence Resource Manager system Local groups can have as members, RealPresence Resource Manager system Local users, Active Directory users, or Active Directory Universal groups. In this fashion, you can nest a variety of users and groups into a RealPresence Resource Manager system Local group and assign those users rights through their RealPresence Resource Manager system Local group membership, simplifying management of rights on the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

**Read-only Enterprise Directory Users**

The RealPresence Resource Manager system supports both local and enterprise user accounts.

Local user accounts exist entirely on the RealPresence Resource Manager system. They can be created and managed whether or not the system is integrated to an enterprise directory. Enterprise user accounts exist in your enterprise Active Directory. The RealPresence Resource Manager system can't create or manage Active Directory accounts, except to modify their privileges on the RealPresence Resource Manager system itself.

If simultaneously using local and enterprise accounts, it's important to avoid duplication of account data. For example, if your Active Directory has a user named John Doe with a user name of jdoe, a local account for this user must possess a unique name, such as localjdoe or johndoetest. If duplicate user accounts exist in the same domain or across domains, the user associated with these accounts won't be able to log in to a dynamically managed endpoint.

The RealPresence Resource Manager system accesses the enterprise directory in a read-only mode. It doesn't create, modify, or delete Active Directory users or groups in any way.

Once you integrate with an enterprise directory, it's best to minimize your dependency on local users. A single local administrative user account must exist, and it should be used only when there's a problem connecting to the enterprise directory.

This configuration provides flexibility and varying security levels as follows:
• Restricted access: For security reasons, local user accounts don't have access to any data in Active Directory, though they can see the Active Directory users and groups as defined in the RealPresence Resource Manager system’s security.

• Administration: Active Directory users and their Active Directory group memberships are managed through your Active Directory. RealPresence Resource Manager system local users are managed through the RealPresence Resource Manager system’s web interface.

• Security: Local accounts have their own passwords, which are stored on the RealPresence Resource Manager system. Active Directory user accounts maintain the same users’ Active Directory credentials and password complexity policies, which are validated by the domain controllers.

How Global Catalog Searches Work

When you integrate the RealPresence Resource Manager system with Active Directory, you can configure it to integrate in one of two ways:

• It can access a specific global catalog server by host name or IP address (not recommended, due to a lack of redundancy).

  If you select this option, the domain name that you specify for the RealPresence Resource Manager system must match the DNS name suffix of the Global Catalog server (example: dc1.polycom.com configured as the Global Catalog, then you must enter polycom.com as the domain name of the RealPresence Resource Manager system server).

• It can auto-discover the server by querying the DNS for the closest Global Catalog server (strongly recommended).

  If you select this option, you can specify any domain in the Active Directory forest in the Domain Name criteria for the RealPresence Resource Manager system server. The DNS server must contain Active Directory-specific entries.

  It's recommended that you enter the forest root DNS domain name.

When configured to auto-discover the server, every time the RealPresence Resource Manager system needs to bind to a Global Catalog server for LDAP queries, the RealPresence Resource Manager system performs the following.

• Uses Microsoft's LDAP Ping mechanism to determine the site in which the system is located.

• Uses a DNS SRV record query to find a Global Catalog server within the same site.

• Connects to the Global Catalog on the domain controller and queries for the object in question and any relevant information (such as GUID, userID, name, phone number).

You can secure the connection between the RealPresence Resource Manager system and the Active Directory server's Global Catalog using **LDAP-S** (via outbound TCP/UDP port 3269) or **Start TLS** (via outbound 3268 TCP/UDP). To implement the secure connection, the appropriate ports must be open on any network equipment between the Global Catalog and the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

Preparing to Use Active Directory

To take full advantage of the RealPresence Resource Manager system, the enterprise Microsoft Active Directory must meet some requirements.

The Active Directory must:

• Have the Global Catalog turned ON. The Global Catalog enables searching for Active Directory objects in any domain without the need for subordinate referrals, and users can find objects of interest quickly without having to know what domain holds the object.
• Use universal groups. The Global Catalog stores the member attributes of universal groups only. It
does not store local or global group attributes.
• Have a login account that has read access to all domains in the Active Directory that the
RealPresence Resource Manager system can use. Polycom recommends an account with a
administrative username and a non-expiring password.
• Have the Active Directory Domain Name Service correctly configured. For more information about
Active Directory design and deployment, see the Microsoft best practices guides at http://
technet.microsoft.com.

For system and endpoint directory performance purposes, two best practices in regards to enterprise
groups are as follows:
• Do not import more than 500 enterprise groups into a RealPresence Resource Manager system.
• Do not mark more than 200 enterprise groups as Directory Viewable.

LDAP Searches
If the RealPresence Resource Manager system is integrated with an Active Directory, the RealPresence
Resource Manager system uses the LDAP search function for searches of the directory.
LDAP searches are prefix-searches that include an appended wildcard. In this case, when you enter a
search string, the system looks for that search string only at the beginning of the indexed fields.
For example, all of the following searches for a participant will find Barbara Smithe:

- Barbara
- Smithe
- Bar
- Smi

To optimize LDAP searches, the RealPresence Resource Manager system searches only indexed LDAP
fields and a limited set of attributes. The attributes include:

- ObjectCategory
- memberOf
- DisplayName
- GivenName
These are the requested attributes to be returned by the search:

- Sn
- Givenname
- Mail
- Ou
- Objectguid
- Telephonenumber
- Cn
- Samaccountname
- Memberof
- Displayname
Using the Base DN to Manage Enterprise Directory Searches

When the RealPresence Resource Manager system is integrated with an enterprise directory, the system uses the base DN to determine domains and manage directory searches.

The Base DN is the starting point in the Active Directory hierarchy at which your search will begin.

The Base DN field is where you specify the distinguished name (DN) of a subset of the Active Directory hierarchy (a domain, subset of domains, or organizational unit) to which you want to restrict the RealPresence Resource Manager system search. It acts like a filter.

By default, the Base DN field is empty. The first time you tell the system to connect to the enterprise directory server, leave the Base DN field empty. Once you've established a working connection with your Active Directory, then you enter a Base DN.

For complete documentation on using Base DNs, see the documentation for Microsoft Active Directory.

**Examples of Base DN Filter Expressions**

The following table illustrates some basic examples of Base DN filter expressions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Search base DN expression</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ou=ResourceManagerGroups,dc=example,dc=com</td>
<td>Include only groups and users, which reside within the ResourceManagerGroups OU in the example.com domain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dc=example,dc=com</td>
<td>Include only groups and users, which reside within the example.com domain or domain tree.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Expressions in the Base DN and exclusion filter fields must be formatted according to RFC-4514, section 2.4.

Some special characters are allowed in the Base DN field. They include:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Character</th>
<th>Character Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&quot; % &quot;</td>
<td>Percent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Integrating with an Enterprise Directory

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Character</th>
<th>Character Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&quot; &quot;</td>
<td>Space</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; &quot;</td>
<td>Double quote</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; &quot;</td>
<td>Question mark</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; { &quot;</td>
<td>Open brace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; } &quot;</td>
<td>Close brace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; ~ &quot;</td>
<td>Caret</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; ~ &quot;</td>
<td>Tilde</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; [ &quot;</td>
<td>Open bracket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; ] &quot;</td>
<td>Close bracket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; : &quot;</td>
<td>Single quote</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; &amp; &quot;</td>
<td>Ampersand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The special characters that aren't allowed in the **Base DN** field. The special escape character (backslash, \) are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Character</th>
<th>Character Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&quot; \ &quot;</td>
<td>Backslash</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; = &quot;</td>
<td>Equal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; , &quot;</td>
<td>Comma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; # &quot;</td>
<td>Pound</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; + &quot;</td>
<td>Plus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; ; &quot;</td>
<td>Semicolon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; &lt; &quot;</td>
<td>Less than</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; &gt; &quot;</td>
<td>Greater than</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Therefore, to use these characters as part of a name, they must be preceded in the **Base DN** field by a backslash. For example, the base DN of an ou named "tom,ann,bob" in the "myteam.example.com" domain must be entered as:

```
ou=tom\,ann\,bob\ dc=my team,dc=example,dc=com
```

Or the base DN of an ou named "#+,=<>\" in the "mydomain.example.com" domain must be entered as:

```
ou=\#\+\,\\=\<\>\\ ,dc=mydomain,dc=example,dc=com
```

Note that this applies only to attribute values, not the **ou=** or **dc=** structure.

**Examples of Base DN Exclusion Filters**

Using LDAP exclusion filters, you can exclude objects in your directory based on a wide variety of criteria within your Active Directory environment.

Any LDAP filters that you create must follow the LDAP standard and reference the LDAP display name of the attributes against which you are filtering.

The following table illustrates some basic examples of exclusion filter expressions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Search base DN expression</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Memberof=cn=Restricted Group,OU=users,dc=example,dc=com</td>
<td>Excludes all users who are members of &quot;Restricted Group&quot; within the Users OU in the example.com domain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>!(Memberof=cn=Video Users,OU=Users,dc=example,dc=com)</td>
<td>Excludes groups and users within the Video Users group in the Users OU in the example.com domain.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Creating exclusion filters can impact the performance of your LDAP queries. As a best practice, use indexed attributes and don't use medial searches when implementing exclusion filters.
Examples of Advanced Base DN Exclusion Filters

The following table illustrates some more advanced examples of exclusion filter expressions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Search base DN expression</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>!(</td>
<td>(memberof=CN=Sales,DC=europe,DC=example,DC=com) (memberof=CN=IT,DC=europe,DC=example,DC=com))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&amp;</td>
<td>(objectCategory=person)(objectClass=user) (userAccountControl:1.2.840.113556.1.4.803:=2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:**
- The expression should be in continuous line with no carriage returns or extra spaces (not possible in this document's format).
- By excluding an entity, we implicitly mean to include all other entities. Conversely, by including an entity, we're implicitly excluding all other entities. Hence, this exclusion filter will suffice for a case where, for example, the administrator wants to include Sales and IT but exclude Human Resources, Engineering, etc., within the specified domain.

RealPresence Resource Manager System and Windows Authentication

When the RealPresence Resource Manager system must be integrated with an Active Directory server and trusted by Active Directory, users with dynamically managed endpoints can securely log in to their endpoint without typing in their network credentials.

When the RealPresence Resource Manager system starts up, it performs the following actions.

- Uses Microsoft's LDAP ping mechanism to determine the site in which the system is located.
- Uses a DNS SRV record query to find a domain controller within the same site.

When an Active Directory user attempts to log in to the RealPresence Resource Manager system, it authenticates the user by connecting to the domain controller that it's connected to and passes the user's credentials using NTLMv2. The credentials are seamlessly passed to the RealPresence Resource Manager system utilizing a secure channel connection from the user's workstation, using the credentials with which they logged in to the workstation.
Note: Because the RealPresence Resource Manager system uses NTLMv2, the password isn't stored within and the RealPresence Resource Manager system never receives the user's password.

Some important notes about the RealPresence Resource Manager system Active Directory integration:

- The RealPresence Resource Manager system isn't joined to the domain. Other computers on the network can't browse its file system and it cannot be managed remotely by existing IT mechanisms such as SMS.
- The RealPresence Resource Manager system doesn't modify the Active Directory in any way.
- The RealPresence Resource Manager system can auto-discover the closest logical domain controller and Active Directory servers, but to do this the network DNS server must have a DNS SRV record for these servers. Once the domain controller's hostname and IP address have a record on the DNS, the RealPresence Resource Manager system can auto-discover the IP address of the domain controller. If your Active Directory doesn't publish the domain controller's hostname and IP address to the network DNS, you must edit the file to include it.
- The RealPresence Resource Manager system requires that you enable Digitally sign communications on the Active Directory server.
- After integration, you must start Active Directory before RealPresence Resource Manager starts up.

Managing Directories

Integrating the RealPresence Resource Manager with an enterprise directory server enables you to manage the directories from the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

Integrating with Enterprise Directory Server

Enabling the Integrate with Enterprise Directory Server option enables RealPresence Resource Manager system users who are included in the Active Directory to log in to the RealPresence Resource Manager system interface using their network credentials.

Enabling the Integrate with Enterprise Directory Server option also enables endpoint users to select conference participants and rooms from the enterprise directory. Because endpoint connections to LDAP use the endpoint user's credentials, the Active Directory access control lists identify which endpoint users and rooms each user can see.

Note: The RealPresence Resource Manager system supports only the Microsoft Active Directory for its enterprise directory.

In addition, administrative users can:

- View some enterprise user and group information.
- Import enterprise groups into the RealPresence Resource Manager system
- Assign roles to users in different enterprise groups.
- Identify enterprise resources, such as rooms, so that they can be treated as resources in the RealPresence Resource Manager system.
Create the RealPresence Resource Manager System Service Account

Before integrating the RealPresence Resource Manager system with an Active Directory forest, you must create a service account for it in Active Directory.

This service account is a read-only user account that the RealPresence Resource Manager system uses to perform LDAP queries against your Active Directory Global Catalog.

You need to create a service account in Active Directory for the RealPresence Resource Manager system to use.

Procedure

1. On the Active Directory server, open the **Active Directory Users and Computers** module (**Start** > **Programs** > **Administrative Tools** > **Active Directory Users and Computers**).
2. Click the node for your domain and then right-click the OU folder in which you want to add a user account and select **New** > **User**.
3. At a minimum, in the **First name**, **Full name**, and **User log on name** fields, type `resoucemanagerservice` or an appropriate name for your environment and click **Next**.
4. In the **Password** and **Confirm Password** fields, type a password for the service account to use during initial integration.
   
   This is the password you must enter on the RealPresence Resource Manager system **Enterprise Server** page.
5. Select the **Password never expires** option.
   
   Unselect the **User cannot change password** option, click **Next**, and then **Finish**.

**Note:** You can reset the password for this account manually, but to do so you must change it in Active Directory first and then update the RealPresence Resource Manager system LDAP Server page. The service account requires the rights to read all properties on all users and groups that will be used in the RealPresence Resource Manager system. Without these permissions, it may not function properly.

Create the RealPresence Resource Manager System Computer Account

The RealPresence Resource Manager system requires a computer account to enable secure channel communications with the Active Directory forest that is being leveraged for authentication.

This account must be pre-created and the password set by an administrator from a Domain Controller.

**Note:** When setting up a redundant RealPresence Resource Manager system, the redundant servers use the same computer account to create their secure channel connection. The computer account name doesn't have to match the host name of your RealPresence Resource Manager system server.

You need to create a computer account in Active Directory for the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

Procedure

1. On the Microsoft Active Directory system, open the **Active Directory Users and Computers** module (**Start** > **Programs** > **Administrative Tools** > **Active Directory Users and Computers**).
2. Select the node for your domain, right-click the OU folder in which to add the computer account and then select **New** > **Computer**.
3. In the **Computer name** field, type *PolycomResourceManager* or an appropriate name for your environment and then click **Next** and **Finish** (or simply click **OK** depending on your version of Active Directory).

4. Ensure that the **Active Directory Users and Computers** console will show all available computer options necessary for the remaining steps by enabling **View > Advanced Features**.

5. Right-click the computer account, select **Properties**, and then select the **Security** tab.

6. In the **Group or user names** section of the Security tab, select the **SELF** object.

7. In the **Permissions for SELF** section, select **Change password**, and then click **OK**.

8. Log in to the domain controller where the computer account was created and set the password using the following command:

   ```
   net user <computername>$ <password>
   ```

   **For example:** `net user polycomrm$ p@ssw0rd`

**Note:** Performing the net user command on any machine other than a domain controller won't assign the computer account password for the RealPresence Resource Manager system computer account. At initial integration, the RealPresence Resource Manager system will change its Computer Account password to a random 120 character string including special characters. This password will also be changed, to a new randomly generated password, every time the RealPresence Resource Manager system is rebooted, or every week if no reboots are performed. Because this is a Computer account, resetting the password to a known value requires use of net user commands on an Active Directory Domain Controller.

---

**Enable Integration with the Enterprise Directory Server**

Enabling the **Integrate with Enterprise Directory Server** option enables RealPresence Resource Manager system users who are included in the Active Directory to log in to the RealPresence Resource Manager system interface using their network credentials.

Enabling the **Integrate with Enterprise Directory Server** option also enables endpoint users to select conference participants and rooms from the enterprise directory. Because endpoint connections to LDAP use the endpoint user's credentials, the Active Directory access control lists identify which endpoint users and rooms each user can see.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Admin > Directories > Enterprise Directory**.
2. On the **Enterprise Directory** page, select **Integrate with Enterprise Directory Server**.
3. To have the system auto-discover the server by querying DNS, enable **Auto-discover** in the **Enterprise Directory Server DNS Name** section; otherwise, enter the **DNS Name** for the enterprise directory server.
4. As needed, configure the enterprise directory integration settings.
5. Click **Update**.

**Related Links**

[Secure Communication Protocols](#) on page 463
### Enterprise Directory Integration Settings
Configure the enterprise directory integration settings.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Domain\Enterprise Directory User ID</td>
<td>Domain and Enterprise Directory User ID for an account that the RealPresence Resource Manager system can use to access the enterprise directory server and retrieve group, user, and room information. This is the account created in the Create the RealPresence Resource Manager System Service Account section. This User ID must have read permissions so it can search the entire forest on the enterprise directory server. This User ID is automatically associated with the RealPresence Resource Manager system administrator role - by default it's the ONLY enterprise directory User ID with this role.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterprise Directory User Password</td>
<td>The password for the enterprise directory user account</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security Level</td>
<td>The level of security on the connection between the RealPresence Resource Manager system and the enterprise directory server. Possible values include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Plain—No security on the connection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• LDAPS—The connection is secured over outbound port 3269 using LDAPS in a manner similar to https.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If the “Domain Controller: LDAP Server signing requirements” setting on the Active Directory server is set to “Require Signing”, then you must use LDAPS to secure the connection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• StartTLS—The connection is secured over outbound port 3268 (the same port as Plain), but it then negotiates security once the socket is opened. Some LDAP servers reject any unsecured transactions, so the first command is the StartTLS negotiation command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use LDAP Filter</td>
<td>Specifies which user accounts to include (an underlying, non-editable filter excludes all non-user objects in the directory). The default expression includes all users that don't have a status of disabled in the directory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterprise Directory Search Base DN</td>
<td>If necessary and you understand the filter syntax, specify the top level of the enterprise directory tree (referred to as the base DN) to search. Don't edit these expressions unless you understand the filter syntax.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For more information, see Using the Base DN to Manage Enterprise Directory Searches.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable Support for Channel Binding Token in NTLM Message</td>
<td>This check box only displays when you select LDAPS from the Security Level drop down list. Select this check box to enable the support of a channel binding token in an NTLM message.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Allow Delegated Authentication to Enterprise Directory Server

The RealPresence Resource Manager system Use Single Sign on (Integrated Windows Authentication) option, enables endpoint users who are included in the enterprise directory to securely log in to their dynamically managed endpoint without typing in credentials.

Procedure
1. Go to Admin > Directories > Enterprise Directory.
2. On the Enterprise Directory page, select Allow delegated authentication to enterprise directory server.
3. Do one of the following:
   - in the Domain controller name section enable Auto-discover for the system to automatically discover the closest logical domain controller and enterprise directory servers. To use the auto-discover option, the network DNS server must contain the DNS SRV records for these servers.
4. To have the system auto-discover the closest logical domain controller and enterprise directory servers, in the Domain controller name section enable Auto-discover; otherwise, enter the fully qualified hostname of the domain controller (for example, dcl.mydomain.com).

Note: If you use an unstable Active Directory Resource Pool, Polycom recommends that to specify the fully qualified hostname of the domain controller to avoid issues.

5. Enter the Username (domain\ <computer name>) and Password and click Update.

Give Enterprise Users Default Scheduler Role

By default when local users are added to the RealPresence Resource Manager system, they’re assigned the Scheduler role.

By default, when you integrate a RealPresence Resource Manager system to an Active Directory, enterprise users aren't assigned a role. In this case, you must either assign each enterprise user a role, or you can use this procedure to give enterprise users the Scheduler role by default.

Procedure
1. Go to Admin > Directories > Enterprise Directory.
2. Select the Associate Enterprise users with basic scheduler role by default check box.
3. Click Update.

Change the Message for Enterprise Users without a Role

You can customize the message enterprise users see when they attempt to log in but don't have a user role assigned.

Procedure
1. Go to Admin > Directories > Enterprise Directory.
2. Edit the Message to be displayed to unauthorized users.
   For example, enter a message such as “Your user name and password are valid, but you have no permissions on this system. Contact your IT department for more information.”
3. Click Update.
Select SMB Version
You can select the version of the SMB protocol to connect with the enterprise domain controller.

Procedure
1. Go to Admin > Directories > Enterprise Directory.
2. Select a SMB version to use from Select SMB to connect with the Domain Controller.
3. Click Update.

Endpoint Directory and Directory Settings
When an endpoint registers with the RealPresence Resource Manager system, its information is automatically entered into the Global Address Book.

When information changes at the endpoint, the Global Address Book is automatically updated as well. If an endpoint is configured to Allow Directory Changes, additions and deletions to the Global Address Book are pushed to the endpoint.

Endpoints that get their global directory from the RealPresence Resource Manager system either get the Global Address Book or the enterprise LDAP directory. You can use the Directory Setup options to affect which devices and users appear in the endpoint directory.

Typically, endpoints that don't use the RealPresence Resource Manager system to register for Polycom GDS are listed in the RealPresence Resource Manager system Global Address Book. The Global Address Book enables standard endpoint users to call other standard endpoint users by selecting them by name. In this case, the Global Address Book is limited to 4000 entries, which is the limit that standard endpoint systems can manage.

Global Address Book Tips

- The RealPresence Resource Manager system Global Address Book lists endpoints. Endpoints may or may not have users or rooms associated with them. On an endpoint, the Global Address Book doesn't list users unless they have endpoints associated with them.
- If your company has more than 100 endpoints, don't limit the Global Address Book on the endpoint side or the endpoint user won't have access to all Global Address Book entries.
- The RealPresence Resource Manager system Global Address Book does not support unicode data.
- Nondynamically managed endpoints are listed in the Global Address book regardless of if they're associated with an owner.
- For Desktop 3.2 endpoints, the device model is also shown in the directory listing.

Including or Excluding Dynamically Managed Endpoints in the Global Address Book
By default the RealPresence Resource Manager system includes all dynamically managed endpoints in the Global Address Book.

The Include dynamically managed devices in the Global Address Book option changes the Global Address Book so that it also includes all dynamically managed endpoints. In this case, the Global Address Book limit is increased to 5000 entries. (Dynamically managed endpoints are always included in the enterprise LDAP directory.)
Include Enterprise Users
You can include enterprise users in the RealPresence Resource Manager system Global Address Book.

Procedure
2. In the Directory page, select Include dynamically managed devices in the Global Address Book.
3. Click Update.

Remove Enterprise Users
You can remove enterprise users from the RealPresence Resource Manager system Global Address Book.

Procedure
2. In the Directory page, clear Include dynamically managed devices in the Global Address Book.
3. Click Update.

Including or Excluding Guest Book Entries in the Directory
By default the RealPresence Resource Manager system includes Guest Book entries in the endpoint directory, regardless of whether the endpoint directory is the Global Address Book or the enterprise directory.

The Show Guest Book entries in the Directory option is also selected by default.

Include Guest Book
You can include Guest Book entries in the endpoint directory.

Procedure
3. Click Update.

Remove Guest Book
You can remove Guest Book entries from the endpoint directory.

Procedure
3. Click Update.

Allow Local Users to View Enterprise Directory Entries
You can allow local users to access Enterprise Directory entries when the RealPresence Resource Manager is integrated with an enterprise directory.

Procedure
2. In the Directory Setup page, select the Allow endpoint directories for local users to include enterprise directory user information check box.
3. Click Update.

Supporting LifeSize Endpoints in Directories

You can include LifeSize endpoints in the endpoint directory by configuring your directory setup. When you do this, you also need to ensure that your LifeSize endpoint is configured to use the correct LDAP settings.

Modify Directory Listings

You need to allow your directory listings to include support for LifeSize endpoints.

Procedure

2. In the Directory Setup page, select the Modify directory listings for LifeSize endpoint support check box.
3. Click Update.

Configure LDAP Settings

In addition to configuring directory listing support in the directory setup, you need to also ensure that the LifeSize endpoint is configured to use the RealPresence Resource Manager system's LDAP settings. You can provision these through a scheduled provisioning profile or configure them manually on the endpoint.

Procedure

1. Go to Admin > Scheduled Management > Provisioning Profiles.
2. Click + .
3. In the Add Profile dialog, select LifeSize in the Endpoint Type drop-down list, enter a name for the profile, and click OK.
4. As needed, complete the various settings that you would like to provision for your LifeSize endpoint.
   For more information about these fields, see Endpoint Fields for Scheduled Provisioning Profiles.
5. For Directory support, select the Directory > LDAP.
6. On the Directory > LDAP page:
   a. Select the Provision This Page check box.
   b. In the LDAP field, select Enabled from the drop-down list.
      • In the LDAP Username field, enter uid=ldapgab,ou=system
      • In the LDAP Password field, enter the password for the Polycom Global Address Book if you've one. If not, leave this field blank.
      • In the LDAP Base field, enter DC=Polycom,dc=com.
7. Click OK.
Enable Midstring Searches for Local Users

You can enable midstring searches to search local users by any character in the user ID.

By default, you can search for local users only by the initial letter(s) or number(s) of the user ID.

Procedure

2. Select the Allow mid-string search for local user/room/guest and legacy endpoint check box.
3. Click Update.

Midstring Search Results

Once you enable this function, you see the following results if you type oo:

TeslaRoom
TurinRoom
EinsteinRoom
System Setup Overview

Topics:

• Setting Up Network Device Management
• Configuring Conferencing
• Configuring the Connection to an External Enterprise Directory
• Setting Up Endpoint Management
• Setting up Unified Communication(UC) Endpoint Management
• Securing the System
• Configuring Redundancy
• Distributing Polycom Applications

Based on your system design and installation, you may need to complete some configuration tasks to complete your implementation of a Polycom RealPresence Resource Manager system after First Time Setup.

Setting Up Network Device Management

You need to set up your RealPresence Resource Manager system to monitor your video conferencing infrastructure as well as license any included Polycom infrastructure products.

• Add instance to the system for service integration, licensing, and monitoring.
• Configure service groups settings.

Configuring Conferencing

You need to configure the RealPresence Resource Manager system for conference monitoring and scheduling.

Setting up Site Topology

The video call routing setup includes site topology and bandwidth management.

You can perform the following tasks:

• Define a site for each physical location in which a LAN or an ISDN connection exists. If you use VPN connections, you can consolidate distinct physical locations into a single logical site to simplify management tasks. You can also define links between sites (site links).
• For each site, define the subnets in which the video endpoint systems are deployed. It is important that the IP addresses used by the endpoints belong to only one subnet at a site.
Setting up Conference Templates

The RealPresence Resource Manager system uses conference templates and global conference settings to manage system and conference behavior.

The RealPresence Resource Manager system has a Default Template and default global conference settings. You may want to create additional templates with different settings or change the global conference settings. See for more information.

Set Up Directory Services

Directory services provide information about all users, endpoints, and resources on your video communication network.

Procedure

1. For endpoints under scheduled management, set up and register endpoints.
   a. Set the Global Directory Server (GDS) to point to the RealPresence Resource Manager system IP address or DNS name.
      Polycom recommends using the IP address to prevent data inconsistencies.
   b. Register the endpoints to the Polycom RealPresence DMA system gatekeeper (when it is integrated with your RealPresence Resource Manager system).
      Most device information is automatically populated in the RealPresence Resource Manager system through the gatekeeper registration to an integrated RealPresence DMA system or Global Address Book access. You must review the information for these devices in the RealPresence Resource Manager system Directory Setup page and fill in missing information.

2. For endpoints under scheduled management, set up users and associate them with endpoints.
   Unless your RealPresence Resource Manager system is integrated with an enterprise directory, you must enter all user information manually including endpoint association. If your system is integrated with an enterprise directory, general user information (First Name, Last Name, User ID, Password, and Email Address) is directly pulled from the directory and cannot be changed. However, you must still associate enterprise users with endpoints.

3. Set up groups, add members, and associate them with provisioning profiles.

4. Set up rooms and associate them with endpoints.
   Unless your RealPresence Resource Manager system is integrated with an enterprise directory that includes conference rooms, you must enter all room information manually including endpoint association.

Related Links
Managing Meeting Rooms on page 454

Configuring the Connection to an External Enterprise Directory

Connecting to an enterprise directory enables users to enter their network usernames and passwords to log into RealPresence Resource Manager system and dynamically managed endpoints.

It also enables users to access the enterprise directory when selecting conference participants.
Your RealPresence Resource Manager system must be connected to an enterprise directory system of Microsoft Active Directory in order to dynamically manage the Polycom endpoints. Dynamic endpoint management enables rule-based provisioning profiles and dynamic software updates.

You can configure your RealPresence Resource Manager system to use an enterprise directory at any time.

**Setting Up Endpoint Management**

You can manage endpoints with the RealPresence Resource Manager system by either scheduled management or dynamic management.

**Scheduled Management of Endpoints (Polycom and Third-Party)**

Scheduled management enables you to push software updates and provisioning profiles to endpoints at intervals that you define.

Scheduled management uses server-to-client communication over HTTP. This management technique is appropriate for corporate networks where both the RealPresence Resource Manager and all endpoints are behind the same firewall.

**Dynamic Management of Endpoints (Polycom Only)**

Dynamic management enables the endpoint to poll the RealPresence Resource Manager system automatically to get dynamic provisioning profiles (configuration settings) and software updates on a regular basis.

Dynamic management is client-to-server over HTTPS which makes it more secure and firewall-friendly.

Dynamic management is:

- available only for Polycom video endpoints.
- optional when your system is integrated with an enterprise directory.
- recommended when Polycom endpoints are able to automatically discover the RealPresence Resource Manager. This means you must add the DNS service record (SRV record) for the RealPresence Resource Manager.

In dynamic management mode, when an endpoint starts up at designated intervals thereafter, it automatically polls the RealPresence Resource Manager system for a newer software update package or provisioning profile. If either is found, the package is sent in XML format over a secure HTTPS connection.

Endpoints do not poll the system if they are in a call. They restart polling after the call ends.

**Setting up Unified Communication(UC) Endpoint Management**

The RealPresence Resource Manager system can be used as a central provisioning server for supported UC endpoints.

When a UC endpoint is provisioned, it polls the RealPresence Resource Manager system for configuration profile settings and software updates at intervals that you define.
Securing the System

By default, the RealPresence Resource Manager system uses https and a self-signed certificate for its data interchanges.

As a best practice, we recommend replacing the RealPresence Resource Manager system self-signed certificate with a certificate from a certificate authority.

Configuring Redundancy

You can install the RealPresence Resource Manager system with a fault-tolerant, high-availability, and redundant configuration.

A redundant RealPresence Resource Manager system configuration requires the installation of two RealPresence Resource Manager system servers. During First Time Setup, you are instructed to assign these two servers physical IP addresses.

Distributing Polycom Applications

The RealPresence Resource Manager system enables you to download several Polycom applications for use in specific environments.

This includes two desktop video applications.
Part II

Network Device Management

Topics:

- Understanding Network Device Management
- License Management
- Managing Instances
- Managing Service Groups

You can use RealPresence Resource Manager to manage network devices, instances, and service groups.
Understanding Network Device Management

Topics:

- Overview of Network Device Management
- Supported Network Devices
- Network Device Types

The Polycom RealPresence Resource Manager system acts as network device management console for systems within your video infrastructure environment.

Network devices include any infrastructure device that the RealPresence Resource Manager system manages, licenses, or is aware of.

You can add network devices to the RealPresence Resource Manager system for monitoring, licensing, as well as service integration, depending on the product.

You can access individual products directly from the RealPresence Resource Manager system device management console after you have added them to the system. In addition, you can manage the time, SNMP, and Active Directory settings for all network devices via a service group.

You must have the Device Administrator role to add new network devices to the system or edit their properties. If your system supports multi-tenancy and areas have been enabled, users with the Area Administrator role can also perform some device management tasks.

The remaining user roles can view network devices, but not add new ones or modify settings.

Overview of Network Device Management

You can add network devices to the RealPresence Resource Manager system for monitoring, licensing, as well as service integration, depending on the product.

Service Integration

When you integrate a product's services with the RealPresence Resource Manager system, it uses those services for conference scheduling and management as well as endpoint provisioning.

Monitoring

When you add an instance of a network device to the RealPresence Resource Manager, it can monitor the system.

When the RealPresence Resource Manager monitors a system, it tracks the health of the system and you can also view whether or not the network device is available or offline.
**Service Group Administration**

When you add network devices to the RealPresence Resource Manager system, they are added to the default service group.

A service group is a group of network devices that can be monitored together and inherit some server settings from the service group settings. You can manage the following settings through service group settings: password settings, time settings, SNMP settings, and Active Directory integration settings.

When you configure settings for a service group, the settings are inherited by supported Polycom network devices within the group.

**Licensing**

The RealPresence Resource Manager provides the licensing interface between Polycom products and the Polycom Licensing Server.

Most RealPresence Clariti products can be licensed via the Polycom Licensing Server.

**Supported Network Devices**

The RealPresence Resource Manager system supports these network device types:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Network Device</th>
<th>Service Integration</th>
<th>SNMP Monitoring</th>
<th>API Monitoring</th>
<th>Licensing</th>
<th>Service Group Admin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RealPresence Collaboration Server</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y (Virtual Edition Only)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polycom MGC</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RealPresence DMA system</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Non-high availability systems only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RealPresence Access Director</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polcom VBP</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SBC</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RealPresence Web Suite</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RealPresence Media Suite</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Network Device Types

You can filter the network device on **Network Device > Instances** by device types.

- **VBP** (Video Border Proxy systems)—Displays the list of Polycom VBP systems registered to the RealPresence Resource Manager system.
- **SBC** (Session Border Control systems)—Displays the list of SBC systems registered to the RealPresence Resource Manager system.
- **RealPresence Collaboration Server/MGC** (MCU)—Displays the list of Polycom MCUs registered to the RealPresence Resource Manager system.
- **RealPresence DMA**—Displays the RealPresence DMA system registered to the RealPresence Resource Manager system.
- **RealPresence Access Director**—Displays the list of RealPresence Access Director systems registered to the RealPresence Resource Manager system.
- **RealPresence Web Suite Services/Experience Portal**—Displays the list of RealPresence Web Suite Service Portals and Experience Portals registered to the RealPresence Resource Manager system.
- **Cisco Unified Communications Manager**—Displays the information related to the Cisco Unified Communication Manager, if integrated with the RealPresence Resource Manager system.
- **RealPresence Media Suite**—Displays the list of RealPresence Media Suite licensed by the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Network Device</th>
<th>Service Integration</th>
<th>SNMP Monitoring</th>
<th>API Monitoring</th>
<th>Licensing</th>
<th>Service Group Admin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco Unified Communications Manager</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
License Management

Topics:

- System Licensing
- Licensing RealPresence Platform Components
- Enable Licensing for a Network Device
- Online and Offline Mode
- Allocate Licenses for Polycom RealPresence Platform Components
- Reset Allocated Licenses
- Clean Unused Licenses
- Update the Licenses of Polycom RealPresence Platform Components

RealPresence Resource Manager manages the licenses for both features and devices.

System Licensing

The device management capacity for a RealPresence Resource Manager system is from 100 to 50,000 devices.

The minimum capacity of a RealPresence Resource Manager system is of 100 client access licenses. Additional licensing is offered in 100, 500, and 1000 license pack sizes.

When applied to the system, an expansion license pack augments the device license count.

Device licenses are consumed based on a 1:1 basis for any managed device (endpoints, MCU, GW—including personal endpoints, and more). The devices can be added to the system by any means, including the user interface, registration for management services, or registration for Global Address Book services. This includes the following device types:

- Endpoints synchronized from an integrated RealPresence DMA system
- Any managed video endpoint, both dynamic and scheduled (RealPresence Immersive Studio systems and other Polycom ITP systems consume three device licenses, one for each codec.).
- Any managed audio endpoint
- A RealPresence Access Director system
- A RealPresence DMA system
- A RealPresence Collaboration Server
- A Cisco Unified Communications Manager

Note: Device licenses are consumed by managed devices, not by users. You may add any number of local or enterprise users to the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

The RealPresence Resource Manager system has the following feature licenses:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Multi-Tenancy</td>
<td>Enables you to use the areas feature to partition collections of resources.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video Endpoint License Management</td>
<td>Determines the number of endpoints that you can manage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If you are a RealPresence One customer, this license is disabled and governed by your RealPresence One subscription.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Video endpoints license can also be used to manage audio endpoints.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio Endpoint License Management</td>
<td>Determines the number of audio endpoints that you can manage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Audio endpoints license cannot be used to manage video endpoints.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service Provider API</td>
<td>Enables you to access RealPresence Resource Manager functionality via the API</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Redundant system licenses (primary and redundant licenses)</td>
<td>Enables you to set up redundant systems.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Media Encryption</td>
<td>Enables encryption for chat and presence (XMPP) service.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Licensing for RealPresence software clients is included with the RealPresence Resource Manager system. RealPresence software clients include Polycom CMA Desktop, RealPresence Desktop and RealPresence Mobile clients.

When a software client is provisioned by the RealPresence Resource Manager system, it automatically consumes a license. That license is then reserved for that client. However, you can configure the system to automatically release a RealPresence client license after a set time (days) of inactivity.

Dynamically managed Polycom endpoints (both hardware and software endpoints) are automatically deleted from the system after 6 months of inactivity, which is independent of the license reclamation for Polycom software endpoints.

Non-dynamically managed endpoints are never automatically released. To release a license from a registered endpoint, an administrator must manually delete the device from the system.

**Related Links**

[Reclaim Software Client Licenses](#) on page 75

**Video Endpoint and Phones License Control (Non - Polycom RealPresence Clariti)**

For a-la-carte and non - Polycom RealPresence Clariti appliance versions, video endpoint license and phones licenses are separately controlled.

Video endpoints license can be used to manage audio endpoints. Audio endpoints license cannot be used to manage video endpoints. Polycom Studio consumes video license.

Under a-la-carte mode, you can active phone and endpoint license on your license server on Polycom License Center. On the RealPresence Resource Manager GUI, you can view the audio and video endpoint license allocation on the **License > Allocation** page.
On the Dashboard, you can view the video and audio license usage information from the Video Endpoint Licenses and Audio Endpoint Licenses panes.

You can set video and audio license alert level on the Alert > Alert Level Settings page.

**Related Links**

- [Set Endpoint Alert Level Settings](#) on page 570

---

**Trial Licenses for Appliance Editions**

Appliance editions come with a trial license file that is valid for 60 days after activating your system.

The trial license also enables the optional Polycom RealPresence DMA system integration, multi-tenancy, and Service Provider API capabilities for 60 days.

With your system order for an appliance edition, you'll receive one or more License Certificates. You must activate the License Certificate to receive a license file, which you then upload to the RealPresence Resource Manager system. When you update this license file, it overwrites the trial license file.

---

**Adding System Licenses for an Appliance Edition for Non - Polycom RealPresence Clarity**

If you aren't a RealPresence Clariti customer, to add licenses to your RealPresence Resource Manager system, Appliance Edition, you need to request a software license file and then update it.

**Request a Software License File**

If you aren't a RealPresence Clariti customer and have an appliance edition, you need to request a license file from the Polycom technical support website.

**Procedure**

1. In a separate browser page or tab, log in to the RealPresence Resource Manager system server as an administrator.
2. Go to Admin > Server Settings > Licenses and record the RealPresence Resource Manager system server serial number.
4. In the Licensing & Product Registration section, select Activation/Upgrade.
5. Log in or Register for an Account.
7. In the Site & Single Activation page, enter the serial number you recorded for your system.
8. Click Next.
9. Accept the EXPORT RESTRICTION agreement.
10. In the new Site & Single Activation page, enter the serial number listed on your License Certificate and enter the license number (shipped with the product) and click Activate.
    
    If retrieving licenses for a redundant system, repeat this step for each server in your configuration. You'll need to load both license files onto your primary server, see System Redundancy.
11. In the Key Code field, click here to download to retrieve and save your license files.

**Related Links**

- [System Redundancy](#) on page 499

---

Polycom, Inc. 73
Update the License File

You can update the license file for your appliance edition system at any time. For example, if you purchase more device licenses or add features. After you update a license file, you must log out and relogin to the system to see newly licensed features.

Procedure

1. Go to Admin > Server Settings > Licenses.
2. Click Update License to view the Update License dialog box.
3. Click Choose File to navigate to the license file you received from Polycom.
4. Click Preview to preview the license features.
5. On the Update License dialog, click Update.
6. You must log out of the system and log back in to view any new licensed features such as multi-tenancy or RealPresence DMA integration features.

View Current Licensing

You can view the current licensing status and information.

Procedure

» Go to Admin > Server Settings > Licenses.

The Licenses page displays the following license related information when you have a virtual edition.

• System licensing is handled by the license server. Please check the license server for license details.
  ◦ License Server Address
  ◦ License Server Port
  ◦ Last time connecting to the license server successfully
  ◦ Last time attempting to connect to license server

• End User License Agreement
  ◦ Status
  ◦ Automatically send usage data

• Reclaim Inactive RealPresence Software Client Licenses

The Licenses page displays the following information when you have an appliance edition.

• Software Version
• Serial Number
• Supported Versions
• Server Type
• Licenses Status
• Site Duration
• End User License Agreement
  ◦ Status
  ◦ Automatically send usage data

• Reclaim Inactive RealPresence Software Client Licenses
Reclaim Software Client Licenses

Polycom RealPresence Desktop, RealPresence Mobile and CMA Desktop clients don't release licenses automatically when they aren't in use.

You can reclaim software client licenses by setting a reclaim threshold.

To reclaim licenses more quickly, lower the threshold. Set the threshold to zero to stop reclaiming licenses. The threshold time limit is measured in days.

However, unlicensed software endpoints are kept in the system until the total number of soft endpoints (licensed and unlicensed) exceeds 90 percent of four times the number of allowed licenses. This allows software endpoints to remain in the RealPresence Resource Manager system, retain their dial string reservations, and to be scheduled into conferences.

For example, if you have purchased a license for 500 endpoints, you can keep up to 90 percent of four times 500, or 1800 total endpoints (software and hardware) in the system at one time. While only 500 of those endpoints will be licensed, unlicensed software endpoints will remain associated with user dial strings so that the user can still be scheduled into conferences and remains in the system if the user wants to use the software endpoint at any time.

The RealPresence Resource Manager system automatically deletes unlicensed software endpoints when the 90 percent of four times the number of allowed licenses is reached. It started deleting software endpoints based on number of days of inactivity, starting with the most number of days.

Procedure

1. Go to Admin > Server Settings > Licenses.
2. Change the Threshold value in the Reclaim Inactive RealPresence Software Client (Mobile and Desktop) Licenses section of the Licenses page.
   The threshold time limit is measured in days.
   To reclaim licenses more quickly, lower the threshold. Set the threshold to 0 days, to stop reclaiming licenses.
3. Click Update.

Related Links
System Licensing on page 71
RealPresence Video App SDK Monitoring and License Control on page 382

Licensing RealPresence Platform Components

Polycom RealPresence Resource Manager is available as part of Polycom RealPresence Clariti, a Polycom collaboration infrastructure offer that features simplified concurrent user licensing and add-on options.

RealPresence Clariti customers should consult with their Polycom representative to ensure that they have the correct licensing information before upgrading.

If you're a RealPresence Clariti customer, you must use the RealPresence Resource Manager system to license your product. RealPresence Resource Manager to manage licenses for the following products that support RealPresence Clariti:
Managing License for RealPresence Web Suite

You can choose to manage your RealPresence Web Suite instances with RealPresence Resource Manager.

If you have RealPresence Web Suite included in your system, you can run those instances in either way:

• Install the instances outside of your RealPresence Resource Manager system and manage licenses using their existing license management process.
• Add the instances to your RealPresence Resource Manager system to manage them.

See the Polycom RealPresence Web Suite Administrator Guide for instructions on how to associate the RealPresence Web Suite Services and Experience Portals and set up licensing for those two servers within RealPresence Resource Manager.

Managing Licenses for Polycom® ContentConnect™ Solution Server

License features for a Polycom ContentConnect solution server (for example, Base License for ContentConnect software and High Availability) aren't displayed on the License Management page as uncounted licenses when you select the License > Allocation.

However, you can point the ContentConnect license server to RealPresence Resource Manager to retrieve uncounted licenses.

Managing Licenses for a RealPresence DMA Supercluster

RealPresence Resource Manager manages licenses for RealPresence DMA systems in a supercluster separately.

If you have a RealPresence DMA supercluster, you must add all the RealPresence DMA systems in a supercluster to the RealPresence Resource Manager system. In the RealPresence Resource Manager system, you can allocate licenses for the RealPresence DMA systems in a supercluster separately.

Enable Licensing for a Network Device

To use RealPresence Resource Manager as license server, you must enable licensing when you add the instance of the product that you want to license.

Procedure

1. Go to Network Device > Instances.
2. Select an instance of interest and click Edit.
3. Select a device type that you want to add.
4. For the device types that can be licensed, you'll see the License Configuration tab. Select the Enable Polycom License Server Licensing check box to enable license control.
5. Click OK to save the changes.

**Online and Offline Mode**

Licenses for RealPresence Resource Manager system components can be managed in online or offline mode.

If the data center where the RealPresence Resource Manager system is located has connectivity to the Internet, you must use online mode to manage licenses. If the data center doesn't have Internet connectivity, you can manage the RealPresence Platform components in offline mode.

**Allocate Licenses for Polycom RealPresence Platform Components**

You can allocate licenses for individual components of your RealPresence Platform deployment after you set up the license server and activate RealPresence Platform licenses within RealPresence Resource Manager.

All license allocations for individual product are managed through the RealPresence Resource Manager License menu.

A system component must be online within the RealPresence Resource Manager system, and the system component time must be synchronized with RealPresence Resource Manager before licenses can be successfully allocated to the component. If a system component is offline during license recovery, its allocated licenses will be cleared.

In addition, the credentials for the system user configured for the component within RealPresence Resource Manager must match the credentials for the system user as configured within the component system.

If a license allocation fails for a newly added Polycom RealPresence virtual instance, verify the following:

- The inbound ports required for license-related communications (3333 and 9333) are open on RealPresence Resource Manager.
- The IP address configured in RealPresence Resource Manager is the correct address for the instance. A license allocation will fail if the IP address selected for a virtual instance does not match the instance type to which features are allocated.

If you want to reinstall the old Polycom platform components or servers that have already been licensed, you must delete the old instances from RealPresence Resource Manager before reinstallation. After the reinstallation, you must redeploy and reallocate licenses for the instances. For a redundant system, servers switch may cause off line network components license allocation failure. In this case, you need to make the components online and reallocate licenses for them.

**Procedure**

1. Go to License > Allocation and do one of the following:
   - Select Allocate By: Type to select a product type and see the instances of that type managed by RealPresence Resource Manager. Then select a product instance to see a list of applicable licenses and allocate licenses to that specific instance.
Select Allocate By: Feature to see a list of all the activated licenses. Then select a license feature to see the product instances to which that license is applicable and allocate the license feature to specific instances. For count-based license features (such as max calls), note the number available and set the allocation input field to the number to allocate to the current instance.

2. Click Save.
3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 to allocate additional license features to the selected product instance or allocate the selected license feature to additional product instances.
4. After allocating licenses, go to the license settings page within each product instance you licensed to verify that the new licenses are available to the product.

See the product documentation for instructions on how to view licensing information.

**Note:** For RealPresence Collaboration Server and RealPresence Access Director products, license allocation changes take effect only after those systems have been rebooted.

### Reset Allocated Licenses

You can take the allocated licenses back per instance and re-allocate the licenses for the Polycom RealPresence Platform components.

**Procedure**

1. Go to License > Allocation.
2. Go to the feature for which you want to re-allocate the license.
3. Click Reset.

### Clean Unused Licenses

You can clean all the allocated, but unused licenses that do not take effect for the Polycom RealPresence Platform components.

Use this function only when you run into problems with license allocation.

**Procedure**

1. Go to License > Allocation.
2. Click Clean.

### Update the Licenses of Polycom RealPresence Platform Components

When you buy additional features or capacity for your RealPresence Platform components, you must allocate the newly available licenses to your RealPresence Resource Manager license server and activate them within RealPresence Resource Manager.

For counted licenses, you can now allocate them to one or more appropriate system components.

**Procedure**
1. In the RealPresence Resource Manager management interface, go to License > Setup and copy the System Identifier number listed on the page.

2. In a different browser window, log in to the Polycom Licensing Center using the URL and credentials sent to you.

   See the Polycom RealPresence Resource Manager Getting Started Guide for information about using the Polycom Licensing Center.

3. Click Search Servers, paste the copied system identifier number into the License Server ID field, and click Filter.

   Your RealPresence Resource Manager license server appears in the list below.

4. Click the license server ID in the list below.

   The View Server page displays license information for this RealPresence Resource Manager license server.

5. Click Map Add-Ons.

   The Map Add-Ons page displays a table of license information for your organization, showing usage and availability.

6. Find the license add-ons you want to allocate and verify that Available Units in Line Item are not zero.

7. In the Qty to Add field of the add-ons you want to allocate, enter the number of units to allocate to this RealPresence Resource Manager instance and click Map Add-Ons.

   The View Server page returns, displaying a list of the server's licenses. The status for newly allocated licenses is License not generated. The licenses must be generated (activated within your RealPresence Resource Manager system).

8. If you allocated too many license add-on units to this RealPresence Resource Manager instance and want to remove some, click Remove Add-Ons.

   The Remove Add-Ons page lists the license add-ons available on this instance.

9. In the Quantity to Remove field of the add-ons you want to change, enter the number of units to remove and click Remove Add-Ons.

   The View Server page returns, displaying a list of the server's licenses. The status for licenses with newly removed units is Copies decreasing. The removed licenses must be deactivated within your RealPresence Resource Manager system.

10. If your RealPresence Resource Manager instance doesn't have access to the Internet, click Download Capability Response to download a local copy of the license file.

    Note the location of the license file when you download it to your local computer.

    If your RealPresence Resource Manager system has access to the Internet, you must use the online method to license the system and its components. The offline method for managing licenses isn't an option when Internet access is available.

11. Return to the RealPresence Resource Manager License Setup page, and do one of the following:

    • Click Online if your virtual environment has access to the Internet and can use the online method for managing licenses.

    • Click Offline if your virtual environment doesn't have access to the Internet. Prompts guide you through the offline update process using the license file you previously downloaded from the Polycom Licensing Center.

12. Click Update to complete the license activation process.

    The licenses should be activated within a few seconds to a minute. You may need to refresh the browser window.
Managing Instances

Topics:

- View Network Device Instance

An instance is a Polycom video infrastructure component (network device) that runs on a virtual machine or a hardware appliance.

When you add a component to the RealPresence Resource Manager system, you can choose to use RealPresence Resource Manager to monitor the alarms, manage licensing for the components, or/and integrate this component with the RealPresence Resource Manager system. You can add both virtual and appliance edition products as instances in RealPresence Resource Manager.

If you work under vCenter environment, see Appendix A: Working in a vCenter Environment on how to manage instances, images, and providers.

View Network Device Instance

By default, all the instances that you have added are displayed on the Instances page.

Procedure

1. Go to Network Device > Instances.
2. Click Filter to filter the instances that you want to display.
   You can filter instances by Device Type, Device Name, IP Address, or Site.
3. Select an instance that you want to view.
4. Click View Details to display a summary of this instance.

Network Device Details

The Network Device list has the following fields:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Status</td>
<td>The state of the network device. Possible values include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Online ©</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Offline ©</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Unknown ©</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Device warnings 🚨 Click this icon to go to the Alert View page.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Service Integrated ©</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RealPresence Resource Manager uses ICMP to probe the status of instances.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device Name</td>
<td>The system name of the network device.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Field 
**Device Type**  
The type of network device.

**IP Address**  
The IP address assigned to the network device.

**Site**  
The site to which the network device belongs.

When areas are enabled on your system, this field shows a value of **Restricted** if you do not have permission to manage the area to which the site is assigned.

**Area**  
Available only when Areas are enabled. The area with which the network device is associated.

Users can only view area information for the areas they have been assigned to manage.

### Add an Instance by IP
You can add existing appliance instances and virtual instances by IP address.

Before you add an instance, verify that you are using the correct IP address and that the instance is running and accessible from its own user interface.

**Procedure**
1. Go to **Network Device > Instances**.
2. Click **Add**.
3. Select a device type that you want to add.
   - Based on the selected device type, you may see different fields under the **Device Type** tab. For most device types, you need to provide **Device Name**, **Version**, **IP Address**, **Admin User**, and **Admin Password**.
   - The format of **Version** is **X.X.X** and must be all numbers. For example, 6.4.0 is a correct version number but v6.4.0 is incorrect.
4. For the device types that can be integrated, you will see the **Service Integration** tab, select the check box under this tab to enable service integration.
5. For the device types that can be licensed, you will see the **License Configuration** tab, select the **Enable Licensing with the Polycom License Server** check box to enable licensing.
6. Select **IP or FQDN Address** from the **Add By** drop-down list.
7. Click **OK** to add the instance to the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

### Edit an Instance
Editing an instance allows you to update its certain parameters.

**Procedure**
1. Go to **Network Device > Instances**.
2. Select an instance you want to edit.
3. Click **Edit**.
View an Instance
You can view the summary of an instance name and version.

Procedure
1. Go to Network Device > Instances.
2. Select an instance you want to view.
3. Click View Details.

Delete an Instance
After you delete an instance, all its service integration and license control is deleted.

Procedure
1. Go to Network Device > Instances.
2. Select the instance you want to delete.
3. Click Delete.
4. Click OK to confirm the deletion.
Managing Service Groups

Topics:

- Create a Service Group
- Edit Service Group Details
- Delete a Service Group
- Configuring Common Settings for a Service Group
- Manage a Network Device within a Service Group

A service group is a logical collection of hardware appliances and/or virtual machine instances that are configured to work together.

A service group might consist of a RealPresence DMA instance, one or more RealPresence Collaboration Server Systems, RealPresence Web Suite Services and Experience Portals, and others.

The instances in a service group are typically configured to work together to provide video collaboration services to the users of various Polycom audio and video collaboration systems in your organization's locales. A service group could represent a service provider creating a group that serves a particular enterprise, one campus of an enterprise, a division or geographical locale within a company, or any other group recognized by your organization. With these related instances placed in a logical group, they can be monitored as a unit and measured to determine usage statistics.

With a service group, you can manage and monitor multiple types of instances on a single map and view a graphical representation of their usage.

The service group map allows you to navigate to any Polycom network device within the service group. When you navigate to a network device to manage it, you can view the web interface for that network device in a new tab on your browser.

You can also set service group-level settings such as time settings, SNMP, and Active Directory integration.

Create a Service Group

Create a service group to designate appliance and virtual instances that together provide a distinct service within your organization.

Procedure

1. Go to Network Device > Service Groups.
2. Click Add Service Group from the Service Group drop-down list.
3. Enter a Name and Description for the new service group.
4. Click OK to save the new service group.
5. From the Service Group drop-down list, click Edit beside the new service group.
6. Click the Instance tab.
7. In the Available section, select the instance(s) that you want to add to the service group and click the arrow icon to move the list to the Selected section.
8. Click OK.
Edit Service Group Details

You can edit the name and/or description of an existing service group.

Procedure
1. Go to Instance Deployment > Service Groups.
2. Select the Service Group you want to edit from the Service Group drop-down list from the top-right corner.
3. Click Edit besides the service group that you selected.
4. Update the Name and Description fields as necessary.
5. Add or remove instances as necessary.
6. Click OK to confirm the changes.

Delete a Service Group

You can delete the existing service groups that you created.

Procedure
1. Go to Instance Deployment > Service Groups.
2. Select the Service Group you want to delete from the Service Group drop-down list from the top-right corner.
3. Click Delete besides the service group that you selected.
4. Click OK to confirm the delete.

Configuring Common Settings for a Service Group

You can configure common settings for a service group.

When you configure settings at the service group level, all Polycom products within the service group inherit those settings from the service group settings. You can configure time settings, SNMP, and Active Directory integration at the service group level.

Note: Polycom RealPresence Collaboration Server 8.5 does not support the common settings.

Configure Time Settings for a Service Group

To configure the time settings for a service group, you can configure the group to use an NTP server (recommended) or manually set the system time settings for the service group systems.

The common time settings only apply to the following servers in a service group:

- Polycom RealPresence Resource Manager
- Polycom RealPresence DMA
- Polycom RealPresence Access Director
- Polycom RealPresence Collaboration Server
- Polycom RealPresence Web Suite
Procedure
1. Go to Network Device > Service Groups.
2. Select the service group you want to configure from the Service Group drop-down list in the right corner of the screen.
3. Click Time Settings.
   The Time Settings dialog box displays.
4. In the Time Settings dialog, select a time zone from the System Time Zone drop-down list.
5. To use an NTP server:
   a. Select the Use NTP Server radio button.
   b. Add the IP address or host name of the server you want to use.
6. To use the system time:
   a. Select the Use System Time radio button.
   b. Configure the system date and time using the fields provided.
7. Click OK.

Configure SNMP Settings for a Service Group
You can configure which version of SNMP to use as well as set up notification receivers to help you track network device activities.

The SNMP settings only apply to the following servers in a service group:
- Polycom RealPresence Resource Manager
- Polycom RealPresence DMA
- Polycom RealPresence Collaboration Server
- Polycom RealPresence Web Suite

Procedure
1. Go to Network Device > Service Groups.
2. Select the service group you want to configure from Service Group drop-down list in the right corner of the screen.
3. Go to SNMP Settings.
4. Select the Enable SNMP monitoring check box.
5. In the Agent Settings area, configure the settings.
6. Click Update.
7. In the Notifications Setting area, click +.
   You can configure the network devices in the service group to send SNMP messages to one or more notification receivers (e.g., a network management system).
8. Configure the settings in the Notification Settings dialog box.
9. Click OK.
   The agent appears in the Notification Setting list.
10. If you are using SNMPv3, click Add + in the Security User area to add a security user.
    Security users are only required if you are using SNMPv3. If you are not using SNMPv3, you can skip these steps.
12. Click **OK**.

   The user is displayed in the **Notification Users** list.

13. When finished configuring SNMP, click **OK**.

**Agent Settings**

Configure the settings in the **Agent Settings** area.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>SNMP Version</strong></td>
<td>Specifies the version of SNMP you want to use.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>v2c</strong>-Used for standard models. Uses community-based authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>v3</strong>-Used when you want a high security model. Requires a security user for notifications.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Transport</strong></td>
<td>Specifies the transport protocol for SNMP communications. SNMP can be implemented over two transport protocols:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>TCP</strong>-This protocol has error-recovery services, which assures message delivery, and messages are delivered in the order they were sent. Some SNMP managers only support SNMP over TCP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>UDP</strong>-This protocol does not provide error-recovery services, message delivery is not assured, and messages are not necessarily delivered in the order they were sent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Because UDP doesn't have error recovery services, it requires fewer network resources. It is well suited for repetitive, low-priority functions like alarm monitoring.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Port</strong></td>
<td>Specifies the port that the RealPresence Resource Manager system uses for general SNMP messages. By default, the RealPresence Resource Manager system uses port 161.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Community</strong></td>
<td>For SNMPv2c, specifies the context for the information, which is the SNMP group to which the devices and management stations running SNMP belong.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The RealPresence Resource Manager system has only one valid context (<strong>public</strong> by default), which is identified by the <strong>Community</strong> name. The RealPresence Resource Manager system will not respond to requests from management systems that do not belong to its community.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Local Engine Id</strong></td>
<td>For SNMPv3 only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Displays the RealPresence Resource Manager system <strong>contextEngineID</strong> for SNMPv3.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Setting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Security User</td>
<td>For SNMPv3 only. Specify the security name required to access a monitored MIB object. You must first add a security user before you can select a user from the drop-down list. This name cannot be <code>snmpuser</code>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Notification Settings

Configure the settings in the **Notification Settings** dialog box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enable agent</td>
<td>Select to enable the notification agent. Clear to stop using this agent without deleting it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transport</td>
<td>The transport protocol for SNMP communications to the host receiver (TCP or UDP).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Address</td>
<td>The IP address of the host receiver (the SNMP manager to which this agent sends notifications).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Port</td>
<td>The port that the RealPresence Resource Manager system uses to send notifications. Default port-162</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Notification type | The type of notification that this agent sends to the notification receiver:  
  • Inform-The agent sends an unsolicited message to a notification receiver and expects or requires the receiver to respond with a confirmation message.  
  • Trap-The agent sends an unsolicited message to a notification receiver and does not expect or require a confirmation message. |
| SNMP version   | The version of SNMP used for this agent (v2c or v3). |
| Security user  | For SNMP v3, the user name of the security user authorized to actively retrieve SNMP data. |

### Adding Security User Settings

Configure the settings in the **Add Security User** dialog box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Security user</td>
<td>The user name of the security user authorized to actively retrieve SNMP data.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Field Description

**Authentication type**
The authentication protocol used to create unique fixed-sized message digests of a variable length message.

The RealPresence Resource Manager system implements communication with authentication and privacy (the `authPriv` security level, as defined in the USM MIB).

Authentication type options:
- MD5-Creates a digest of 128 bits (16 bytes)
- SHA-Creates a digest of 160 bits (20 bytes)

Both methods include the authentication key with the SNMPv3 packet and then generate a digest of the entire SNMPv3 packet.

**Authentication password**
The authentication password that's used, together with the local engine ID, to create the authentication key included in the MD5 or SHA message digest.

**Encryption type**
The privacy protocol for the connection between the RealPresence Resource Manager system and the SNMP agent.

Encryption type options:
- No encryption
- DES-Uses a 56-bit key with a 56-bit salt to encrypt the SNMPv3 packet
- AES-Uses a 128-bit key with a 128-bit salt to encrypt the SNMPv3 packet

**Encryption password**
The password that's used, together with the local engine ID, to create the encryption key used by the privacy protocol.

---

**Integrate a Service Group with Enterprise Directory**

When you integrate a service group with Enterprise Directory, you integrate each network device within the service group with the same Enterprise Directory server and settings.

The Enterprise Directory Integration settings only apply to the following servers in a service group:
- RealPresence DMA
- RealPresence Resource Manager
- RealPresence Web Suite

After you enable the Enterprise Directory integration on RealPresence Web Suite Services Portal, you cannot disable the integration.

**Procedure**
1. Go to **Network Device > Service Groups**.
2. Select the service group you want to configure from **Service Group** drop-down list in the right corner of the screen.
3. Click **Enterprise Directory Integration**.
   - The **Enterprise Directory Integration** dialog box displays.
4. Select the **Integrate with Enterprise Directory** check box.
5. In the **Enterprise Directory Server DNS Name** section, choose one of the following:
   - Select the **Auto-discover** radio button to have the systems auto-discover the server by querying DNS.
   - Select the **FQDN** radio button and manually input the FQDN enterprise directory server.
6. As needed, configure the enterprise directory integration settings.
7. Click **OK**.

**Related Links**

*Using Custom Active Directory Attributes* on page 243

**Enterprise Directory Integration Settings**

Configure the enterprise directory integration settings.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Domain\Enterprise Directory User ID</td>
<td>Domain and Enterprise Directory User ID for an account that the RealPresence Resource Manager system can use to access the enterprise directory server and retrieve group, user, and room information. This User ID must have read permissions so it can search the entire forest on the enterprise directory server. This User ID is automatically associated with the RealPresence Resource Manager system administrator role - by default it is the ONLY enterprise directory User ID with this role.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterprise Directory User Password</td>
<td>The password for the enterprise directory user account.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security Level</td>
<td>The level of security on the connection between the RealPresence Resource Manager system and the enterprise directory server. Possible values include: - <strong>Plain</strong> No security on the connection. - <strong>LDAPS</strong> The connection is secured over outbound port 3269 using LDAP-S in a manner similar to https. If the “Domain Controller: LDAP Server signing requirements” setting on the Active Directory server is set to “Require Signing”, then you must use LDAPS to secure the connection. - <strong>StartTLS</strong> The connection is secured over outbound port 3268 (the same port as Plain), but it then negotiates security once the socket is opened. Some LDAP servers reject any unsecured transactions, so the first command is the StartTLS negotiation command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use LDAP Filter</td>
<td>Specifies which user accounts to include (an underlying, non-editable filter excludes all non-user objects in the directory). The default expression includes all users that don't have a status of disabled in the directory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterprise Directory Search BaseDN</td>
<td>If necessary and you understand the filter syntax, specify the top level of the enterprise directory tree (referred to as the base DN) to search. Don't edit these expressions unless you understand the filter syntax.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support Channel Binding Token in NTLM Message</td>
<td>This field is only available when you select <strong>LDAPS</strong> from the <strong>Security Level</strong> drop down list. Select this check box to enable Channel Binding Token in NTLM messages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Characters to Remove</td>
<td>This field is only for RealPresence DMA. You might need to strip characters from a phone number field's value to ensure a numeric conference room ID. The default string includes \t, which represents the tab character. Use \ to remove backslash characters. If generating alphanumeric conference room IDs, remove the following: ()&amp;%#@</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Manage a Network Device within a Service Group**

The service group map allows you to navigate to any Polycom network device within the service group.

When you navigate to a network device to manage it, you can view the web interface for that network device in a new tab on your browser. For example, if you have a RealPresence DMA system within your service group, you can access the RealPresence DMA system from the service group map. The RealPresence DMA system's web interface displays in a new tab on your browser.

You can manage the following RealPresence products:

- RealPresence DMA
- Polycom RealPresence Access Director
- Polycom RealPresence Collaboration Server
- RealPresence Web Suite Services Portal

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Network Device > Service Group**. The **Service Group** map displays.
2. Within the map area, Select the network device you want to manage.
3. At the top of the screen, click **Manage** at the top of the screen. The web interface for the selected network device displays on a new tab in your browser.
Part III

Service Configuration

Topics:

- Service Integration with a RealPresence DMA System
- Service Integration with Session Border Controllers
- Service Integration with Bridges

This section includes the topics needed to configure services for the RealPresence Resource Manager system video conference scheduling functionality and operations.
Service Integration with a RealPresence DMA System

Topics:

- Integration Overview
- Integrating with a RealPresence DMA system
- Managing a RealPresence DMA System
- Working with RealPresence DMA Pool Orders
- Working with Endpoints Synchronized from a RealPresence DMA System

You can use some RealPresence DMA functions by integrating your RealPresence Resource Manager system with a single RealPresence DMA system.

Integration Overview

The RealPresence Resource Manager supports RealPresence DMA core configuration and edge configuration.

- The integration with RealPresence DMA core configuration provides you with two main functions of the RealPresence DMA system: the Conference Manager function and the Call Server (gatekeeper and SIP proxy/registrar) function.
  - Conference Manager
  - Call Server
- RealPresence DMA with edge configuration provides similar functionality to the Polycom® RealPresence Access Director™ system. It is scheduled to replace RealPresence Access Director.

With RealPresence DMA edge configuration, RealPresence Resource Manager offers a software-based edge server to securely route communication, management, and content through firewalls without requiring special dialing methods or additional client hardware or software.

- RealPresence Resource Manager supports a combination of RealPresence DMA core configuration and edge configuration.

See the Polycom RealPresence DMA System Operations Guide for more information.

Dedicated User Account for Integration

When you integrate with a RealPresence DMA system you need to use a RealPresence DMA user account to authenticate the RealPresence Resource Manager system with the RealPresence DMA system.

This RealPresence DMA user account needs to meet the following requirements:

- Must have the Administrator role.
- Must be assigned gold class of service.
- Must be reserved only for integration with the RealPresence Resource Manager system.
You can also use this user account to help you track VMRs created when you schedule pooled conferences. Any created VMRs will be associated with the RealPresence DMA user you use to integrate with the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

**NTP Servers**

It's important that you configure the RealPresence Resource Manager system and the RealPresence DMA system to use the same NTP server.

This ensures that each has the same network time as the other and scheduled conferences start when intended.

**MCU Management**

A Polycom MCU system can be managed by the RealPresence Resource Manager system or the RealPresence DMA system, not both.

If your video network includes MCUs that are managed by both RealPresence Resource Manager and RealPresence DMA, you may want to use a naming convention that includes a qualifier that indicates to the RealPresence DMA system administrator that the MCU is directly registered to the RealPresence Resource Manager system; for example, `ResourceManager_RMX10`.

**Conference Types Supported By the RealPresence DMA system**

When you integrate your RealPresence Resource Manager system with a RealPresence DMA system the following RealPresence Resource Manager system conference types are supported.

- Anytime Conferences are conferences that are initiated when the conference owner dials in and where most other participants are dial-out participants. Conference templates for anytime conferences are created and maintained on the RealPresence DMA system.
- Pooled Conferences are conferences that are scheduled on resources managed by the RealPresence DMA system. Conference templates for pooled conferences are created and maintained on the RealPresence DMA system.

**RealPresence DMA Conference Templates**

You need to have created RealPresence DMA conference templates for schedulers to use when scheduling either a pooled conference (future) or anytime conference.

You do this in the RealPresence DMA system.

As a best practice, use a naming convention that helps identify the appropriate use for the conference template. For example, you can name conference templates intended for anytime conferences with an “anytime” prefix such as `anytime_corptemplate`.

**Multi-Tenancy Considerations**

RealPresence DMA system conference templates are not area-aware, which means they cannot be associated with a particular area.

An area scheduler can select any RealPresence DMA system conference template to use for a conference.

As a best practice, you should use a naming convention that helps the scheduler identify the correct template to use for his area conferences.
Considerations for Site Topology

When integrated with the RealPresence Resource Manager system, the RealPresence DMA system inherits site topology settings from the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

Site topology configuration for both products is managed by a RealPresence Resource Manager system user with the administrator role.

You should plan your site topology with RealPresence DMA system needs in mind. For example, when your RealPresence DMA system uses a supercluster environment, territories have specific functional roles. It's important to work with your RealPresence DMA system administrator to ensure the site topology meets your environments needs.

When your RealPresence Resource Manager system is integrated with a RealPresence DMA system, you need to configure the primary node of the Resource Manager Default territory to be the appropriate RealPresence DMA cluster after you integrate with a RealPresence DMA system.

See the *Polycom RealPresence DMA 7000 System Operations Guide* for more information.

Scheduling Capacity

When you integrate your system with a RealPresence DMA system, you can tune the scheduling capacity of the RealPresence DMA system.

You do this through the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

The number of ports used for a conference can vary according to the MCU that hosts the conference and the number/type of endpoints that join. Because schedulers can only choose from a pre-configured RealPresence DMA system pool order when scheduling pooled conferences, they rely on an administrator to tune the RealPresence DMA system's scheduling capacity to ensure efficient use of resources.

There are three ways an administrator can assess RealPresence DMA system scheduling capacity:

- View conference reports from the RealPresence DMA system. This method is preferred and provides the most accurate information.
- Monitor ongoing conferences to assess if resources were underbooked.
- View information on RealPresence Resource Manager CDR reports to review individual conferences.

Polycom recommends setting the RealPresence DMA system scheduling capacity more conservatively at first and then tuning for increased conference activity.

Related Links

[Add a RealPresence DMA system by IP Address](#) on page 95
Integrating with a RealPresence DMA system

RealPresence Resource Manager system users with the Device Administrator role can add a RealPresence DMA system to a RealPresence Resource Manager system.

Requirements of Dedicated RealPresence DMA User Account

When you integrate with a RealPresence DMA system, you need to create a dedicated RealPresence DMA user account to authenticate the RealPresence Resource Managersystem with the DMA system. This DMA user account needs to meet the following requirements:

• Must have the Administrator role.
• Must be assigned gold class of service.
• Must be reserved only for integration with the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

For more information on creating user accounts for the RealPresence DMA system, see the Polycom RealPresence DMA System Operations Guide.

Add a RealPresence DMA system by IP Address

You need to integrate with the RealPresence DMA system by adding it to your RealPresence Resource Manager system. You should be a Device Administrator for the RealPresence Resource Manager system. And your RealPresence DMA system is reachable via ICMP.

You can add a single RealPresence DMA system for service integration and license management. A local RealPresence DMA system cluster can also be added to RealPresence Resource Manager for service integration.

You can add a RealPresence DMA system by IP address, and choose to use RealPresence Resource Manager to do the license management or not from the License Configuration tab.

If you work in vCenter environment, see Appendix A: Working in a vCenter Environment on how to add new or existing RealPresence DMA instance by provider.

Procedure

1. Go to Network Device > Instances and click Add .
2. Select RealPresence DMA as Device Type.
3. Select IP or FQDN Address in the Add By drop-down list.
4. Specify the parameters in the table below
5. Click the Servers tab to specify a RealPresence DMA HA cluster if needed.
6. In the Available section, select the server(s) and click the arrow icon to move the list to the Selected section.
7. Select the two servers in the Selected section.
8. Click OK.

RealPresence Resource Manager will search the RealPresence DMA system. if it cannot find the RealPresence DMA system, it will report an error.

The RealPresence DMA system appears in the Network Instance list.
Related Links
*Scheduling Capacity* on page 94

**Polycom RealPresence DMA Integration Settings**

The following tables list the configuration settings for RealPresence DMA integration.

### Device Type

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>A unique name for the RealPresence DMA system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Version</td>
<td>The version of the RealPresence DMA system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Management Address</td>
<td>The virtual IP address or FQDN for the RealPresence DMA system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For RealPresence DMA systems with multiple clusters, indicate the FQDN or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>virtual IP of the cluster you want to use.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If your RealPresence DMA system is configured for a supercluster, be sure to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>use the Virtual IP address for a cluster that is co-located with the RealPresence Resource Manager system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Admin User</td>
<td>The RealPresence DMA system user you use to authenticate the RealPresence DMA system must have the Administrator role and gold class of service. You should use a RealPresence DMA user that is reserved only for integration with the RealPresence Resource Manager system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Admin Password</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Service Integration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Provider-side Proxy IP Address</td>
<td>If RealPresence DMA works as a software-based edge server, select this check box and enter the proxy IP address. Only RealPresence DMA versions 10.0 and later supports this feature. See the <em>RealPresence DMA Release Notes</em> available on the <a href="https://polycomsupportcenter.com">Polycom Support Center</a> for the supported RealPresence DMA versions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Integrate RealPresence DMA system's conference manager and call server services with RealPresence Resource Manager system's conferencing and endpoint services.</td>
<td>Select this check box to enable service integration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conference Manager (MCU Pool Orders)</td>
<td>A check mark displays if the RealPresence DMA system has been enabled for MCU pool orders (conference management).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Call Server</td>
<td>A check mark displays if the RealPresence DMA system has been enabled for use as a call server (gatekeeper). When you mark this check box, the site topology set up for the RealPresence Resource Manager system will be synchronized to the RealPresence DMA system. In addition, H.323 endpoints registered to the RealPresence DMA system will be synchronized to the RealPresence Resource Manager system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scheduling Capacity</td>
<td>The percentage of available ports to schedule for this RealPresence DMA system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support DMA Supercluster</td>
<td>Select this box if your RealPresence DMA system has been deployed as a supercluster. You must check this box if you want the RealPresence Resource Manager system to take advantage of the RealPresence DMA system's failover system and integrate with a backup RealPresence DMA cluster if the primary RealPresence DMA cluster goes down.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Integrating with a RealPresence DMA Supercluster**

You can integrate with a RealPresence DMA system deployed as a supercluster that uses single-node or dual-node clusters.

If you select **Support DMA Supercluster**, after you integrate RealPresence Resource Manager with a RealPresence DMA, the RealPresence Resource Manager automatically detects any changes to the RealPresence DMA system’s superclusters without needing to re-integrate.

**Configure the Default Territory**

You should configure the Resource Manager Default territory to be the primary RealPresence DMA cluster after you integrate with a RealPresence DMA system.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Network Topology > Territories**.
2. Select the **Default Resource Manager Territory**.
3. Click **Edit**.
4. In the **Edit Territory** dialog, select a RealPresence DMA cluster to use from the **Primary Cluster** drop-down list.
5. Click **OK**.
Managing a RealPresence DMA System

If your RealPresence Resource Manager is integrated with a RealPresence DMA system, you can view details about the system, edit the integration settings, as well as delete the integration.

Edit a RealPresence DMA system

You can edit the properties of an integrated RealPresence DMA system.

You must have the Device Administrator role in order to edit a RealPresence DMA system.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Network Device > Instances**.
2. Select the RealPresence DMA system and click **Edit**.
3. In the **Edit DMA** dialog, edit the properties of the RealPresence DMA system.
4. Click **OK**.

Stop the Service Integration for a RealPresence DMA system

You can disintegrate a RealPresence DMA system from the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

You must have the Device Administrator role.

When you do this, you can no longer use the DMA Pool Orders associated with the RealPresence DMA system for conferences. In addition, DMA-synced endpoints that have not been associated with users can no longer be monitored or managed by the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Network Device > DMA**.
2. Select the RealPresence DMA system and click **Delete**.
3. Click **OK** to confirm the deletion.

Working with RealPresence DMA Pool Orders

When the RealPresence Resource Manager system is configured to work with a RealPresence DMA system, conference schedulers can schedule conferences on RealPresence DMA system pool orders.

DMA Pool Orders are groups of MCU pools that are hierarchically organized.

RealPresence DMA system pool orders associated with your configured RealPresence DMA system are automatically displayed in the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

The RealPresence DMA system administrator is responsible for setting up pool orders to be used. You should work with your RealPresence DMA system administrator to determine the specifics about the pool orders associated with your RealPresence DMA system. This information can also be useful for schedulers who need to choose a pool order to use for a conference.

You cannot modify any properties of these pool orders through the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

Some uses for RealPresence DMA system pool orders:
• The RealPresence DMA system administrator can put all MCUs in a specific site or domain into a pool. Then, assign a pool order to all users in that site or domain (via group membership) ensuring that their conferences are preferentially routed to MCUs in that pool.

• The RealPresence DMA system administrator could put one or more MCUs into a pool to be used only by executives, and put that pool into a pool order associated only with those executives' conference rooms.

• The RealPresence DMA system administrator could put MCUs with special capabilities into a pool, and put that pool into a pool order associated only with custom conference rooms requiring those capabilities.

For more information about pool orders, see the *Polycom DMA 7000 System Operations Guide*.

**View Details of a RealPresence DMA system Pool Order**

After you integrate your RealPresence Resource Manager system with a RealPresence DMA system, you can view RealPresence DMA system pool orders that are available for scheduling.

For example, you can see how many ports are available in a pool order.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Network Device > Instances**.
2. Select a RealPresence DMA from the list.
3. Click **More > DMA Pool Orders**.
   
   The **DMA Pool Order Details** dialog lists the details for pool orders on the selected RealPresence DMA system. These details are configured on the RealPresence DMA system and cannot be modified with the RealPresence Resource Manager system.
4. Click **Close**.

**DMA Pool Order Details**

The **DMA Pool Order Details** dialog lists the details for pool orders on the selected RealPresence DMA system.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The unique name to identify the RealPresence DMA system Pool Order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actual Capacity</td>
<td>The total number of ports included in this RealPresence DMA system Pool Order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scheduling Capacity</td>
<td>The number of ports available to schedule for this RealPresence DMA system Pool Order. This number matches the scheduling capacity percentage that was configured for this RealPresence DMA system.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Associate a RealPresence DMA system Pool Order with an Area**

When you associate a pool order with a specific area, only users belonging to that area (or able to manage the area) can schedule conferences for that RealPresence DMA system pool order.

You need the Device Administrator role to associate a DMA pool order with an area.

Schedulers and area schedulers cannot select particular resources on which to schedule conferences.

**Procedure**
1. Go to Network Device > Instances.
2. Select a RealPresence DMA from the list.
3. Click More > DMA Pool Orders.
4. Select the DMA Pool Order of interest and click Associate Areas.
5. In the Available Areas section, select and move the desired area(s) to Selected Areas list.
   You can move the unwanted are(s) to the Available Areas list. Press Shift-click or Ctrl-click to select multiple items in the list.
   You must have the Device Administrator role to associate a RealPresence DMA system pool order with an area. The Available Areas list is limited to the areas that you manage.
6. Click OK.

Working with Endpoints Synchronized from a RealPresence DMA System

After integrating with the RealPresence Resource Manager system, the RealPresence DMA-registered endpoints are synchronized to the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

H.323 endpoints registered with the RealPresence DMA system's gatekeeper automatically display in a RealPresence Resource Manager system that has been configured with a RealPresence DMA system, using both the RealPresence DMA system's call server and conference manager. This allows you to track the endpoints registered to the RealPresence DMA system.

Once RealPresence DMA-registered endpoints are synchronized to the RealPresence Resource Manager system, you can include them in scheduled management operations such as provisioning and scheduled software updates. RealPresence DMA-registered endpoints are synchronized daily at 1 a.m. to ensure that endpoint data remains consistent between the RealPresence DMA system and the RealPresence Resource Manager system. You can also modify the properties of RealPresence DMA system-synced endpoints.

If you want to schedule the RealPresence DMA endpoint in a conference, you must first associate the endpoint with a user.

When you take any of the following actions for a RealPresence DMA system-synchronized endpoint, RealPresence Resource Manager system considers the endpoint to be a non-dynamically managed endpoint:

- Include the endpoint in a scheduled provisioning (may happen automatically)
- Include the endpoint in a scheduled software update
- Modify the properties of the endpoints (including associating a user)
- Add the endpoint to an address book

If the RealPresence DMA administrator deletes an endpoint from the RealPresence DMA system, it will also be cleared from displaying in the RealPresence Resource Manager system. RealPresence DMA-synchronized endpoints that you have associated with a user, scheduled in a conference, or provisioned will not be cleared during a RealPresence DMA action. Endpoints that you have started to manage in any way are seen by RealPresence Resource Manager as managed endpoints. If you want to remove them, you need to do so using the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

Each synchronized RealPresence DMA-registered endpoint consumes a video endpoint license in the RealPresence Resource Manager system.
Required Unique H.323 Aliases for Endpoints

For a RealPresence DMA-registered endpoint to synchronize and display in the RealPresence Resource Manager system, it must have a unique H.323 alias.

If a managed endpoint in the RealPresence Resource Manager system has the same H.323 alias as a RealPresence DMA-registered endpoint, the RealPresence DMA-registered endpoint information doesn’t display.

There is no automatic way to ensure unique H.323 aliases between RealPresence DMA-registered endpoints and endpoints directly managed by the RealPresence Resource Manager system. To determine if there is any overlap, you can export a list of the user-reserved H.323 aliases from the RealPresence Resource Manager system and do a comparison with those listed in your RealPresence DMA system.

Related Links
Export User Aliases on page 436

SIP-Only Endpoints

The RealPresence Resource Manager system doesn’t display SIP-only endpoints that register with the RealPresence DMA system.

SIP-only endpoints that register with the RealPresence DMA system instead of the RealPresence Resource Manager system’s provisioning service don’t display in the RealPresence Resource Manager system. You must manually add them to the RealPresence Resource Manager system to manage the endpoints. You can’t manually add endpoints that support only dynamic management such as RealPresence Group Series, RealPresence Desktop, RealPresence Mobile, RealPresence Debut, and RealPresence Centro. You must register these endpoints to the RealPresence Resource Manager system to provision them.

Monitor RealPresence DMA-Synchronized Endpoints

You can monitor H.323 endpoints that are synchronized from the RealPresence DMA system.

Procedure

1. Go to Endpoint > Monitor View.
2. Use the Mode column to determine if an H.323 endpoint has been synchronized from the RealPresence DMA system.
   - RealPresence DMA-synchronized endpoints display with the following icon: Synced RealPresence DMA Endpoints.
3. Optionally, you can filter the endpoint list to include only RealPresence DMA-Synced Endpoints.
   a. Click Filter.
   b. Click the Type box and select DMA-Synced Endpoints from the displayed list.

Schedule RealPresence DMA-Synchronized Endpoints in Conferences

If you associated a RealPresence DMA-synced endpoint with a user or room, you can also schedule that associated endpoint in conferences when you schedule that user or room.

Procedure

1. Go to Endpoint > Monitor View.
2. As needed, click Filter to customize the Endpoint list.
3. Select the endpoint of interest.
4. Click More > Associate User.
5. In the Last Name or Room Name field of the Associate User dialog, enter all or part of the user's last name and click Search.
   The system displays the list of user or rooms that meet your search criteria.
6. Select the user of interest and click Close.

Related Links
Conferencing Configuration on page 116

Licensing Threshold for RealPresence DMA-Synchronized H.323 Endpoints

H.323 endpoints registered to the RealPresence DMA system's gatekeeper are synchronized to the RealPresence Resource Manager system as soon as you integrate your system with a RealPresence DMA system for both conference management and call server functions.

These endpoints can be Polycom endpoints with full management capacity or third-party endpoints with limited management capacity in the RealPresence Resource Manager system. To avoid consuming too many device licenses by third-party endpoints, the RealPresence Resource Manager system has two thresholds to limit the number of RealPresence DMA-synced endpoints you can monitor.

Threshold for Stopping Synchronization

The RealPresence Resource Manager system will stop synchronizing RealPresence DMA-synced endpoints when 80% of your device licenses have been consumed.

The left 20% capacity is reserved for endpoints managed in other modes.

You can contact Polycom Support to change the threshold.

See for endpoint management modes.

Related Links
View the Endpoint List on page 203

Threshold for Deleting Inactive Synchronized H.323 Endpoints

The RealPresence Resource Manager system automatically deletes inactive RealPresence DMA-synced endpoints when the total used device licenses exceeds 90%.

This ensures that you always have enough device licenses for active and dynamically-managed endpoints. An endpoint is considered inactive when the RealPresence Resource Manager system detects that the it is not registered with the gatekeeper, the directory, Exchange, or the presence service.
Service Integration with Session Border Controllers

Topics:

- Supported Session Border Controllers
- Managing Polycom VBP Devices
- Managing a Polycom RealPresence Access Director System
- Managing SBC Devices

You can integrate Session Border Controllers service with RealPresence Resource Manager to perform network device management tasks.

Supported Session Border Controllers

The RealPresence Resource Manager system supports three types of session border controllers for specific signaling.

The supported session border controllers are:

- SBC (SIP endpoints only)
- Polycom VBP (H.323 endpoints only)
- RealPresence Access Director (both SIP and H.323 endpoints)

Managing Polycom VBP Devices

Polycom VBP devices, when installed at the edge of the operations center, secures critical voice, video, and data infrastructure components including VoIP softswitches, video gatekeepers, gateways, media servers, and endpoints.

The Polycom VBP 5300, 6400, or 7301 S/T platform has an access proxy feature that provides firewall traversal that enables the RealPresence Resource Manager system dynamic management features across a firewall.

Add a Polycom VBP Device

You can add a Polycom VBP device to the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

Procedure

1. Go to Network Device > Instances.
2. Click Add +.
3. Select VBP from the Device Type drop-down list.
4. Configure the settings for adding a Polycom VBP device.
5. Click OK.

You can also choose to add another Polycom VBP device.
The Polycom VBP device is added to the RealPresence Resource Manager system. However, more configuration may be necessary for the device to operate in your network. For example, you will probably need to as described in the next topic.

Adding Polycom VBP Settings

Configure the settings for adding a Polycom VBP device.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Settings</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>A unique name to identify the Polycom VBP device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provider-side Proxy IP Address</td>
<td>The Private Network IP address for the Polycom VBP device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subscriber-side IP Address</td>
<td>The Public Network IP address for the Polycom VBP device.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Edit a Polycom VBP Device

You can edit the settings of a Polycom VBP device.

Procedure
1. Go to Network Device > Instances.
2. Click Filter and select VBP as Device Type.
3. Select the Polycom VBP device of interest and click Edit.
4. Configure these settings as needed in the Edit Instance dialog.
5. Click OK.

Delete a Polycom VBP Device

You can delete a Polycom VBP device from the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

Procedure
1. Go to Network Device > Instances.
2. Click Filter and select VBP as Device Type.
3. Select the Polycom VBP device of interest and click Delete.
4. Click Yes to confirm the deletion.

Identify Endpoints Using the Polycom VBP Device

This procedure identifies only Polycom HDX® systems, Polycom® RealPresence® Group Series, Polycom CMA Desktop, Polycom RealPresence Mobile, Polycom® RealPresence Desktop, Polycom® RealPresence Debut™, and Polycom® VVX® systems have the following characteristics:

- Registered to the RealPresence Resource Manager system
- Using the Polycom VBP firewall
- Are dynamically managed
A Polycom HDX or legacy endpoint system in scheduled management mode, registered to the RealPresence Resource Manager system, and using the Polycom VBP firewall may also be displayed in the Endpoint list. This entry may represent multiple endpoints, since all Polycom HDX or legacy endpoint system operating in scheduled management mode register with the same information.

Procedure
1. Go to Endpoint > Monitor View.
2. Click Filter and select IP Address.
3. Enter the provider-side IP address of the Polycom VBP device and press Search.

The Endpoint list displays the dynamically managed endpoints that are registered to the RealPresence Resource Manager system and using the Polycom VBP firewall. All of the endpoints display the same IP address, which is the Provider-side IP address of the Polycom VBP device. However, the endpoints will have different aliases and owners.

Managing a Polycom RealPresence Access Director System

With the RealPresence Access Director system, Polycom offers a software-based edge server to securely route communication, management, and content through firewalls without requiring special dialing methods or additional client hardware or software.

If your video infrastructure environment includes a RealPresence Access Director system, you must ensure that your RealPresence Resource Manager system is aware of the RealPresence Access Director system. You need to either dynamically manage or manually add the RealPresence Access Director system to your RealPresence Resource Manager system. See for details.

Manually Add a RealPresence Access Director System

If you are not going to dynamically manage the RealPresence Access Director system, you can manually add it to the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

When you manually add a RealPresence Access Director system, you will not be able to monitor its status or view any call information for calls routed from the RealPresence Access Director system.

Note: When you use the RealPresence Resource Manager system to dynamically manage a RealPresence Access Director system, you should not manually add it to your system.

Procedure
1. Create a site that includes the subnet on which the RealPresence Access Director system resides.
   You cannot use the same site for more than one RealPresence Access Director system. You must create a unique site for each RealPresence Access Director system that you use.
2. Go to Network Device > Instances and click Add +.
3. Select RealPresence Access Director from the Device Type drop-down list.
4. Select IP or FQDN Address form the Add By drop-down list.
5. Configure the settings for adding a RealPresence Access Director system.
6. In the Service Integration tab, specify the Provider-side Proxy IP Address.
7. Click OK.

Adding a RealPresence Access Director System Settings
Configure the settings for adding a RealPresence Access Director system.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>A unique name to identify the RealPresence Access Director system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Version</td>
<td>The version number of the RealPresence Access Director system that you are going to add.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Management Address</td>
<td>The Private Network IP address for the RealPresence Access Director system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Admin User/Password</td>
<td>The user name and password of the RealPresence Access Director system.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Managing SBC Devices
Polycom supports the use of the Acme Packet Net-Net Enterprise Session Director session border control with the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

Add an SBC Device
You can add an SBC device to the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

Procedure
1. Go to Network Device > Instances and click Add ⬇.  
2. Select SBC from the Device Type drop-down list.  
3. Select IP or FQDN Address from the Add By drop-down list.  
4. Configure the settings for adding an SBC device.  
5. Click OK.  

   The SBC device is added to the RealPresence Resource Manager system. However, more configuration may be necessary for the device to operate in your network.

   You also have the opportunity to add another SBC device.

Adding an SBC Device Settings
Configure the settings for adding an SBC device.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>A unique name to identify the SBC.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provider-side Proxy IP Address</td>
<td>The Private Network IP address for the SBC device.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Field Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Subscriber-side Proxy IP Address</td>
<td>The Public Network IP address for the SBC device.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Edit an SBC Device

You can edit the settings of an SBC device.

**Procedure**

1. Go to Network Device > Instances.
2. Select the SBC device of interest and click Edit.
3. Configure the settings as needed in the Edit SBC dialog.
4. Click OK.

## Delete an SBC Device

You can delete an SBC device from the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

**Procedure**

1. Go to Network Device > Instances.
2. Select the SBC device of interest and click Delete.
3. Click OK to confirm the deletion.

## Identify Endpoints Using the SBC Device

You can identify Polycom HDX systems, Polycom Group Series, and RealPresence Mobile clients that are dynamically managed by the RealPresence Resource Manager system or using the SBC device.

**Procedure**

1. Go to Endpoint > Monitor View.
2. Click Filter and select IP Address.
3. Enter the provider-side IP address of the SBC device and press Enter.

The Endpoint list displays the dynamically managed endpoints that are registered to the RealPresence Resource Manager system and using the SBC firewall. All of the endpoints display the same IP address, which is the Provider-side IP address of the SBC device. However, the endpoints will have different aliases and owners.
Service Integration with Bridges

Topics:

- Add an MCU Manually
- Edit an MCU
- Delete an MCU Bridge
- View Device Details
- View Bridge Hardware
- View MCU Services
- View MCU Conferences
- View MCU Ports
- View MCU Meeting Rooms
- View MCU Entry Queues
- View Bridge Gateway Conferences

The Polycom RealPresence Resource Manager system can manage and monitor Polycom MCUs.

Add an MCU Manually

When you add an MCU device, MCU network services are added automatically at the time the IP card registers with the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

Polycom MGC systems may only have H.323/H.320 services.

Once an MCU registers with the RealPresence Resource Manager system, if you change an MCU service on the MCU, the update does not automatically get sent to the RealPresence Resource Manager system. To update the system, you must refresh the device.

When you enter network service information manually, remember that the RealPresence Resource Manager system does not create the service at the device. The service must have already been defined at the device. Enter information in the RealPresence Resource Manager system that matches the information in the device.

Polycom RealPresence Collaboration Server (RMX) systems cannot be managed by two management systems at the same time. When your deployment includes a Polycom RealPresence DMA system, you can manage an RealPresence Collaboration Server (RMX) system either in the RealPresence DMA system or with the RealPresence Resource Manager, not both. Back-end communication with the Polycom RealPresence Collaboration Server (RMX) system control units and IP service blades must be enabled.

Procedure

1. Go to Network Device > Instances and click Add  
2. In the Add Instance dialog, select RealPresence Collaboration Server or MGC as Device Type.
3. Select IP &FQDN Address from the Add By drop-down list.
4. Enter a Name for this instance.
If your system integrates with a Polycom RealPresence DMA system, make sure your MCU system name includes a qualifier that indicates to the RealPresence DMA system administrator that the MCU is directly registered to the RealPresence Resource Manager system; for example, ResourceManager_RMX10.

5. Specify the version of the MCU product in the Version field.
6. Specify the MCU Management Address.
7. Enter the Admin User and Admin Password for the MCU.
8. Click OK.
9. Indicate how you are integrating the MCU service.
   If you want to integrate the MCU with RealPresence Resource Manager conferences instead of the RealPresence DMA system, check the Conference Controlled by Resource Manager check box.
10. Complete the Identification, Addresses, Capabilities, MCU Resources, and MCU Cascading sections.
    Pay particular attention to the Capabilities options, because these settings determine how the MCU is used.
11. Click OK.
    The RealPresence Resource Manager system will find the MCU on the network.
    If the RealPresence Resource Manager system cannot find the MCU on the network, an Error dialog appears.
    If the MCU is added successfully, it will appear in the Network Device list. By default, the system:
    • Adds the MCU to the applicable site.
    • Sets the HTTP Port to 80.
    • Makes the MCU Available to Schedule.

Conference Scheduling Requirements
To schedule conference, you need to define network services and change the default entry queue setting.
If you do not define network services, you may not use an MCU or gateway in a conference. For example, if you do not define the H.323 service on the MCU, when the RealPresence Resource Manager system tries to schedule a video conference that requires this service, it will look for another MCU with this service. If another MCU with this service is not available, the conference will not be scheduled.
Additionally, you must change the default entry queue setting to “standard lobby”. The default entry queue mode is “ad hoc”. “Ad hoc” cannot be used because it allows participants to join and start a conference before start time and consume the conference ID that is reserved for the RealPresence Resource Manager system. Scheduled participants must be held in the standard lobby until the start time of the direct conference to ensure the conference uses a valid conference ID.

Edit an MCU
You can edit a managed MCU.

Procedure
1. Go to Network Device > Instances.
2. As needed, click Filter and select RealPresence Collaboration Server or MGC as Device Type to customize the MCU list.
3. Select an MCU and click **Edit**.
4. Complete the **Identification**, **Addresses**, **Capabilities**, **MCU Resources**, and **MCU Cascading** sections of the **Edit Instance** dialog.
   At a minimum, assign the MCU a **Name**.
5. Click **OK**.
6. Optionally, you can refresh the MCU to use the settings from the MCU itself.
   To do this, click 🔄.

**MCU Settings**

Edit the MCU settings.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Identification</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Name</td>
<td>The name of the MCU.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• MCU names must be unique.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The name must be in ASCII only and may have an unlimited number of characters. Spaces, dashes, and underscores are valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• When retrieved from the MCU, the name is taken from the H.323 ID if the MCU registered with the gatekeeper and it is a third-party system. In other cases, it is the system name, which might be different than the H.323 ID.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>A free-form text field (Extended ASCII only) in which information about the MCU can be added.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serial Number</td>
<td>The serial number (ASCII only) of the MCU. The serial number displays if the MCU is registered successfully or is managed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Software Version</td>
<td>The version of the software installed on the MCU (ASCII only). The MCU provides the version number if it registered successfully or is managed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HTTP URL</td>
<td>(Polycom RealPresence Collaboration Server (RMX) systems only)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The management URL for the endpoint, if available (ASCII only). This URL enables the RealPresence Resource Manager system to start the endpoint ’s management system using the <strong>Manage</strong> function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>All Polycom endpoints allow device management through a browser. For these endpoints, this field is completed when the endpoint registers with the RealPresence Resource Manager system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For third-party endpoints that do not register using an IP address, you must enter the URL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HTTP Port</td>
<td>(Polycom RealPresence Collaboration Server (RMX) systems only)  The HTTP port number for the MCU communications. The MCU provides the port number if it registered successfully and is managed. By default, in non-secure (HTTP) mode, the RealPresence Collaboration Server uses port 80 and in secure (HTTPS) mode, the RealPresence Collaboration Server uses port 443.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assign Area</td>
<td>The area in which the MCU resides. This field is only visible when Areas are enabled and the user manages more than one area. A user can only view area-specific information for an area(s) that he has permission to manage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Addresses</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISDN Video Number</td>
<td>The country code + city/area code + phone number for the MCU.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capabilities</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supported Protocols</td>
<td>The communications protocols that the MCU can support. Possible values include:  • IP (H.323) - A standard that defines the protocols used for multimedia communications on packet-based networks, such as IP.  • ISDN (H.320) - A standard that defines the protocols used for multimedia communications on switched networks, such as ISDN.  • IP (SIP) - A standard that defines the protocols used for multimedia communications on SIP networks.  The MCU automatically provides the protocols if it registered successfully or is managed.  Polycom MGC systems may only have H.323/H.320 services.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capabilities Enabled</td>
<td>Capabilities to enable on this MCU. Options are:  • MCU - The device can act as a control unit for multipoint conferences.  • Available to Schedule - Select this option to make the MCU available to users who are scheduling conferences.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCU Resources</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max Total Conferences</td>
<td>Maximum number of total conferences allowed at once on this MCU.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max CP Conferences</td>
<td>Maximum number of continuous presence (CP) conferences allowed, based on the number of licenses available.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max Video Ports</td>
<td>(Not available for MGC systems) Maximum number of video ports available on the MCU.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max Total Participants</td>
<td>Maximum number of total MCU participants allowed at once on this MCU.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use Entry Queue</td>
<td>Indicates whether the MGC device supports an IVR.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entry Queue Numeric ID</td>
<td>The IP number that conference participants dial to access the IVR prompt to join a conference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entry Queue ISDN Number</td>
<td>The ISDN number that conference participants dial to access the IVR prompt to join a conference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max Voice Ports</td>
<td>Set this to the maximum number of audio ports configured on the RealPresence Collaboration Server (RMX) device. Refer to the RealPresence Collaboration Server (RMX) 2000/4000 Administrator's Guide for more information about this field. You can convert up to 10 blocks of RealPresence Collaboration Server (RMX) video ports to 50 audio-only ports, and the maximum of audio-only ports is 200. Not available for MGC systems.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max CP Resolution</td>
<td>Set this to the highest available video format. Choices are: HD1080, CIF, SD15, SD30, and HD720. Refer to RealPresence Collaboration Server (RMX) 2000/4000 Administrator's Guide for more information about this field. Not available for MGC systems.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max Bandwidth Capacity (Kbps)</td>
<td>The maximum bandwidth supported by the Polycom RealPresence Collaboration Server (RMX) MCU. Not available for MGC systems.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Delete an MCU Bridge**

When you delete an MCU from the system, it is no longer managed and cannot be used on conferences.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Network Device > Instances**.
2. As needed, click **Filter** and select **RealPresence Collaboration Server** or **MGC** as Device Type to customize the MCU list.
3. Select the MCU of interest and click **Delete**.
4. Click **OK** to confirm the deletion.

The MCU list is updated.
View Device Details
You can view details about a managed MCU.

Procedure
1. Go to Network Device > Instances.
2. As needed, click Filter and select RealPresence Collaboration Server or MGC as Device Type to customize the MCU list.
3. Select the MCU of interest.
4. Click View Details to view detailed information.
5. Click Alert beside the integrated MCU to view its alerts if any.
6. Select your interested item from the More drop-down list to view other information.

View Bridge Hardware
You can view the hardware properties of a managed MCU.

Procedure
1. Go to Network Device > Instances.
2. As needed, click Filter and select RealPresence Collaboration Server or MGC as Device Type to customize the MCU list.
3. In the MCU list, select the bridge of interest and click View Hardware from the More drop-down list.
   A Hardware pane appears. It lists the hardware for the selected bridge and displays the Slot number, Card Type, Status, Temperature, and Voltage for each piece of hardware.

View MCU Services
You can view the services provided by a managed MCU.

Procedure
1. Go to Network Device > Instances.
2. As needed, click Filter and select RealPresence Collaboration Server or MGC as Device Type to customize the MCU list.
3. In the MCU list, select the bridge of interest and click View Services from the More drop-down list.
   A Services pane appears. It lists the network services for the selected bridge and identifies the Service Type, Service Name, and the default setting for the network service.

View MCU Conferences
You can view the conferences hosted by an MCU.

Procedure
1. Go to **Network Device > Instances**.
2. As needed, click **Filter** and select **RealPresence Collaboration Server** or **MGC** as Device Type to customize the MCU list.
3. In the MCU list, select the bridge of interest and click **View Conferences** from the **More** drop-down list.

   A **Conferences** pane appears below the bridge list. It lists the conferences for the selected bridge and identifies the conference **Status**, **Type**, **Conference Name**, **Start Time**, **Bridge**, and **Creator**.

   A user can only view area-specific information for an area(s) that he has permission to manage.

### View MCU Ports

The RealPresence Resource Manager system reports port numbers based on resource usage for CIF calls.

Version 8.1 and later Polycom MCUs report port numbers based on resource usage for HD720p30 calls. In general, 3 CIF = 1 HD720p30, but it varies depending on bridge/card type and other factors.

See your RealPresence Collaboration Server (RMX) system documentation for more detailed information about resource usage.

This option is not available for Polycom MGC systems.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Network Device > Instances**.
2. As needed, click **Filter** and select **RealPresence Collaboration Server** or **MGC** as Device Type to customize the MCU list.
3. In the MCU list, select a bridge and click **View Ports** from the **More** drop-down list.

   A **Ports** pane appears. It lists the ports for the selected bridge and identifies the **Audio Ports Available**, **CIF Ports Available**, **Audio Ports in Use**, and **CIF Ports in Use**.

### View MCU Meeting Rooms

You can view information about available meeting rooms:

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Network Device > Instances**.
2. As needed, click **Filter** and select **RealPresence Collaboration Server** or **MGC** as Device Type to customize the MCU list.
3. In the MCU list, select the bridge of interest and click **View Meeting Rooms** from the **More** drop-down list.

   A **Meeting Rooms** pane appears. It lists the meeting rooms for the selected bridge and identifies the meeting room by **Name**, **ID**, **Duration**, **Conference Password**, **Chairperson Password**, and **Profile**.

### View MCU Entry Queues

You can view information about the available entry queues available on a managed MCU.
Procedure

1. Go to Network Device > Instances.
2. As needed, click Filter and select RealPresence Collaboration Server or MGC as Device Type to customize the MCU list.
3. In the MCU list, select the bridge of interest and click View Entry Queues from the More drop-down list.

   An Entry Queues pane appears. It lists the entry queues for the selected bridge and identifies the entry queue by Display Name, Routing Name, ID, Profile, and Dial-In Number.

View Bridge Gateway Conferences

You can view information about gateway conferences on a managed MCU.

Procedure

1. Go to Network Device > Instances.
2. As needed, click Filter and select RealPresence Collaboration Server or MGC as Device Type to customize the MCU list.
3. In the MCU list, select the bridge of interest and click View Gateway Conferences from the More drop-down list.

   A Gateway Conferences pane appears below the bridge list. It lists the conferences for the selected bridge and identifies the conference Status, Type, Conference Name, Start Time, Bridge, and Creator.
Part IV

Conferencing Configuration

Topics:

• Setting Up Site Topology
• Setting Up the Global Address Book
• Using Multiple Address Books
• Direct Conference Templates
• RealPresence DMA Conference Templates
• Configuring Conference Settings

The RealPresence Resource Manager system can schedule, manage, and monitor video conferences.

Related Links
Schedule RealPresence DMA-Synchronized Endpoints in Conferences on page 101
Setting Up Site Topology

You can edit the default RealPresence Resource Manager system topology settings to support your company's network topology.

Understanding Site Topology

Site topology information describes your network and its interfaces to other networks.

It includes the following elements:

- **Site** — A local area network (LAN) that generally corresponds with a geographic location such as an office or plant. A site contains one or more network subnets, so a device's IP address identifies the site to which it belongs.

- **Network clouds** — A Multi-protocol Label Switching (MPLS) network cloud defined in the site topology. An MPLS network is a private network that links multiple locations and uses label switching to tag packets with origin, destination, and quality of service (QoS) information.

  Note that MPLS clouds are not associated with an IP address ranges, so they can be used to group multiple subnets. They could also represent a service provider.

  While links to MPLS clouds have bandwidth and bit rate limitations, the cloud is infinite. In this way, clouds reflect the way in which businesses control bandwidth and bit rate.

- **Internet/VPN** — A entity that represents your network's connection to the public Internet.

- **Site link** — A network connection between two sites or between a site and an MPLS network cloud.

- **Site-to-site exclusion** — A site-to-site connection that the site topology doesn't permit an audio or video call to use.

- **Territory** — A grouping of one or more sites for which a RealPresence Resource Manager system is responsible.

The site topology you create within the RealPresence Resource Manager system should reflect your network design. Consider the following information and best practices when creating your site topology:

**Note:** If your RealPresence Resource Manager system is integrated with a Polycom RealPresence DMA system, the RealPresence DMA system inherits all site topology settings from the RealPresence Resource Manager. Be sure to consult with your RealPresence DMA system admin before making any changes, see Considerations for Site Topology in the Multi-Tenancy Considerations section.
• If possible, connect all sites to an MPLS cloud. MPLS clouds are like corporate networks, used to connect multiple subnets in multiple sites, but all servicing a company.

• Avoid cross loops or multiple paths to a site; otherwise a call may have different paths to a single destination. The more cross, circular, and multi paths you have, the higher the number of calculations for a conference.

• Link sites that are not connected to an MPLS cloud directly to another site that is connected to an MPLS cloud. Do not create orphan sites.

• Calls are routed through a bridge, so bandwidth and bit rate limits for the site and subnet apply to all calls made using that bridge.

• Reserve the Internet/VPN “site” for IP addresses that fall outside your private or corporate network (for example remote workers), because all calls routed to the Internet/VPN site will be routed through the site on your private or corporate network that has Internet access.

Managing Sites

Sites are the primary way you organize your video and audio network.

The Network Topology > Sites page can display up to 1000 sites. For audio users, you can apply different configuration profiles to different sites when you provision.

If there are more than 500 sites, the system does not display the Dashboard > Site Map pane and the Site Topology map. The Site-Links, Site-to-Site Exclusions, Network Clouds, Territories, Reports > Site Statistics, Reports > Site-Links Statistics, and RealPresence DMA integration are not supported.

View the Graphical Site Topology

The RealPresence Resource Manager system site topology function uses a dynamic, embedded mapping tool that graphically displays the sites, clouds (network and Internet), and site links (site-to-site or site-to-cloud) in your network.

Within this global and graphical view of the video conferencing network, you can:

• Create and link up to 500 sites.

• Zoom and pan to view specific network components.

• View system and device alarms.

• View the video network capacity for sites and site links as indicated by the color and shape of its icons.

• Filter the view by site name, territory name, IP address, network devices, and alerts.

Procedure

» Go to Network Topology > Site Topology.

The Site Topology page appears. It graphically displays the sites and site links defined to the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

• Hover over a map element to view information about it.

• Use the slider bar to zoom in or out on the map.

• Select or deselect elements (Site Links, Bandwidth, or Site Names) to change what is displayed on the map.

• Click Filter to filter (by site name, territory name, IP address, network devices, and alerts) which sites are displayed on the map.
View the Sites List

The **Network Topology > Sites** page contains a list of the sites defined to the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

This page can show up to 1000 sites.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Network Topology > Sites**.
2. Filter the sites by **Site Name**.

   You can search the sites by entering a site name in the **Search** field. The **Sites** list appears.

**Related Links**

[Multi-tenancy Considerations for Network Clouds](#) on page 131

Site Details

The **Sites** list includes this information:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Site Name</td>
<td>Name of the site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Description of the site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country Code</td>
<td>The country code for the country in which the site is located.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Area Code</td>
<td>The city or area code for the site. Do not include a leading zero. For example, the city code for Paris is 01, enter 1 in this field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max Bandwidth (Mbps)</td>
<td>The total bandwidth limit for audio and video calls.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max Bit Rate (Kbps)</td>
<td>The per-call bandwidth limit for audio and video calls.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Territory</td>
<td>The territory to which the site belongs, which determines the RealPresence Resource Manager system responsible for it.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Add a Site

You can define a new site in the system's site topology and specify which subnets are associated with it.

You can define overlapping subnets within a site or between sites. Larger subnets can contain smaller ones. When the system determines which subnet a given IP address belongs to, it chooses the subnet with the longest IP match.

For example:

Subnet1 = 10.0.0.0/8
Subnet2 = 10.33.24.0/24

The IP address 10.33.24.70 belongs to subnet2, while the IP address 10.22.23.70 belongs to subnet1.

**Procedure**
1. Go to **Network Topology > Sites** or **Network Topology > Site Topology**.
   - To add a site in the **Sites** page, Click **Add**.
   - To add a site in the **Site Topology** page, go to **Site Actions > Add**.

2. In the **Add Site** dialog, enter a **Site Name** and **Description** for the site.

3. Complete the **General Info, H.323 Routing, SIP Routing, Subnet**, and if applicable **ISDN Number Assignment**, sections of the **Add Site** dialog.
   - The minimum information required is **Site Name, Description, Location, and Subnets**.

4. Click **OK**.

**Related Links**
- **Site Settings** on page 120

**Site Settings**
Configure the following site settings.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>General Info</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site Name</td>
<td>A meaningful name for the site, this name can be 64 characters (ASCII only) long.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>A brief description (ASCII only) of the site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable Mutual TLS</td>
<td>Enable Mutual TLS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Override ITU Dialing Rules</td>
<td>Check this box to override the standard dial rules established by the International Telecommunications Union.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PBX Access Code</td>
<td>The access code required to enter the site's PBX system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country Code</td>
<td>The country code for the country in which the site is located.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Area Code</td>
<td>The city or area code for the site. Do not include a leading zero. For example, the city code for Paris is 01, enter 1 in this field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td># of Digits in Subscriber Number</td>
<td>The number of digits in a phone number. For example, in the United States, subscriber numbers may have seven digits or ten digits depending upon the region.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Assignment Method                | The ISDN number assignment method for the site. Possible values include:  
|                                  |  • **No Auto Assignment.** Select this option when ISDN numbers are not assigned to IP devices.  
|                                  |  • **DID (Direct Inward Dial).** Select this option when you assign a range of phone numbers received from the telephone company service.  
|                                  |  • **Gateway Extension Dialing.** Select this option when you have a single gateway phone number and a range of extensions (E.164 aliases) that are internal to the company. In this case, calls go through a gateway. Endpoints are differentiated by the extension at the end of the dial string.  
|                                  | When a site is assigned an automatic assignment method, devices without an ISDN number are assigned one when they register. These numbers allow inbound calls to reach specific video endpoints. After an ISDN number is assigned to an endpoint, it is reserved for use as long as that endpoint remains registered with the RealPresence Resource Manager system.  
|                                  | **Note:** If you do not assign ISDN numbers automatically, you cannot call IP-only endpoints through an ISDN line.  
| Territory                        | Assigns the site to a territory, and thus to a RealPresence Resource Manager system.                                                          |
| Location                         | Specify the geographic location of the site either by longitude + latitude or country + city.                                                |
| Total Bandwidth (Mbps)           | The total bandwidth of the pipe at the site.                                                                                               |
| Call Max Bit Rate (kbps)         | The maximum bandwidth that can be used for each intrasite call at the site. The default and maximum value is 2000000 (2 GB).                |
| ISDN Number Assignment—Assignment Method = DID (Direct Inward Dial) | **# Digits in Call Line Identifier**  
|                                  | Enter the number of digits in the Call Line Identifier (CLID), which is the dialed number. The maximum is 17.  
|                                  |  • For example, in the United States, the number of digits in the CLID is often 7 for outside local calls, 4 for internal calls, or 11 for callers in a different area code.  
|                                  |  • This number indicates what part of the full dial string is sent to the gatekeeper for address resolution.  
|                                  | **# Digits in Short Phone Number**  
|                                  | Enter the number of digits in the short form of the dialing number.  
|                                  |  • For example, in the United States, internal extensions are usually four or five digits.  
|                                  |  • This number indicates what part of the dial string is sent to the gatekeeper for address resolution in gateway + extension dialing.  
| ISDN Number Range - Start        | The starting ISDN number to assign automatically to IP devices.  

Polycom, Inc.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ISDN Number Range - End</td>
<td>The ending ISDN number to assign automatically to IP devices.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISDN Number Assignment—Assignment Method = Gateway Extension Dialing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gateway Phone Number</td>
<td>Phone number of the site gateway.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| E164 Start                    | • The starting number in a range of available extensions to assign automatically to IP devices.  
                                 | • When a device without native ISDN registers, a number within the start and end range is assigned, so that the device can be called through an ISDN line. |
| E164 End                      | The ending number in the range of available extensions to assign automatically to IP devices. |
| H.323 Routing                 |                                               |
| Internet calls are not allowed| Disables call routing through the Internet.                                  |
| Allowed via H.323 aware firewall | Enables call routing through the Internet, using an H.323-aware firewall.    |
|                               | **Note:**                                                                    |
|                               | • For an outbound call to the Internet, you must enter the firewall gateway service (e.g. a Polycom VBP appliance) code before the IP address in the dial string. |
|                               | • If you select **Allowed via H.323 aware firewall** you must create a site link between this site and the Internet/VPN site. |
| Allowed via H.323 aware SBC or ALG | Enables call routing via the Internet, using an H.323-aware SBC (Session Border Control) or ALG (Application Level Gateway) server. |
|                               | **Note:**                                                                    |
|                               | For an outbound call to the Internet, you must enter the firewall gateway service (for example, a Polycom VBP appliance) code before the IP address in the dial string. |
| Call Signaling IP Address     | IP address (IPv4 only) or host name of the SBC or ALG server.                |
| Port                          | Port address of SBC or ALG server.                                           |
| Send Unmodified Dial String to SBC/ALG | Select this option if your SBC or ALG requires that the original dial string is passed to it. For example, an H.323 Annex O dial string such as user@company.com is passed directly to the SBC or ALG instead of resolving company.com to an IP address.  
<pre><code>                             | Deselect this option if your equipment requires a dial string that is converted from company.com to gatekeeper IP address. This option is appropriate for the Polycom VBP. |
</code></pre>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>SIP Routing</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internet calls are not allowed</td>
<td>Disables call routing through the Internet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allowed via SIP aware firewall</td>
<td>Enables call routing through the Internet, using an SIP-aware firewall.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note:</strong></td>
<td>• For an outbound call to the Internet, you must enter the firewall gateway service (e.g. a Polycom VBP appliance) code before the IP address in the dial string.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If you select <strong>Allowed via SIP aware firewall</strong> you must create a site link between this site and the Internet/VPN site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allowed via SIP aware SBC or ALG</td>
<td>Enables call routing via the Internet, using an SIP-aware SBC (Session Border Control) or ALG (Application Level Gateway) server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note:</strong></td>
<td>For an outbound call to the Internet, you must enter the firewall gateway service (for example, a Polycom VBP appliance) code before the IP address in the dial string.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Call Signaling IP Address</td>
<td>IP address (IPv4 only) or host name of the SBC or ALG server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Port</td>
<td>Port address of SBC or ALG server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The default port is 5070.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Subnets</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subnet IP Address/Mask</td>
<td>Specifies the subnets within the site. For each subnet, include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• IP Address range</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Mask Length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Total Bandwidth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note for sites that include a RealPresence Access Director system</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If this site is used for a site that includes a RealPresence Access Director system, be sure to include the subnet where the RealPresence Access Director system resides.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Enterprise Directory Settings</strong></td>
<td>Endpoints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterprise Directory security group settings</td>
<td>When in secure mode, search and select groups that are provisioned to the endpoints to represent the valid lists of users that can log in as a user or administrator. If a user is not a member of one of the selected groups then the user is denied access to the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Related Links**

Add a Site on page 119
View Site Information
You can view information about existing sites.

Procedure
1. Go to Network Topology > Sites.
2. In the Sites page, select a site and go to More > Site Information.
   The Site Information dialog appears

Site Information
The Site Information dialog displays the following site information.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Site Name</td>
<td>Name of the site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Description of the site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Location</td>
<td>The specified location of the site identified either by longitude + latitude or by country + city.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bandwidth (Mbps)</td>
<td>The specified total bandwidth limit for audio and video calls.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bandwidth Used</td>
<td>Identifies the percentage of the maximum bandwidth currently occupied with audio and video calls.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max Bit Rate</td>
<td>The per-call bandwidth limit for audio and video calls.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device Types</td>
<td>Identifies the type (Bridges, DMAs, VBPs, and Endpoints) and number of devices assigned to the site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alarms</td>
<td>Identifies the device alarms present within the site. Alarm information includes Status, Device Name, Device Type, and Description. Click Details to view more device details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subnets</td>
<td>Identifies the subnets within the site. Subnets information includes Bandwidth Used, Subnet (name), and (maximum) Bandwidth.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Assign Locations to a Site
Location has not always been a required field for sites.

If your existing sites do not include location information, use the Assign Locations action to update your sites.

Procedure
1. Go to Network Topology > Sites or Network Topology > Site Topology.
   a. In the Site Topology page, go to SITE ACTIONS > Assign Locations.
   b. In the Sites page, go to More > Assign Locations.
2. In the **Assign Locations to Sites** dialog, select the site of interest by selecting the associated check box and click **Specify Location**.

3. To specify a location by city name:
   a. From the **Enter Location By** drop-down list, select **Search for City**.
   b. If you know it, select the **Country** name for the location.
   c. Enter the name of the **City** and click **Search**.
      The system returns the list of cities that matches your query.
   d. Select the appropriate city using the **Country**, **Division**, and **Subdivision** fields to identify it and click **Select**.

4. To specify a location by latitude and longitude in decimal degrees format:
   a. From the **Enter Location By** drop-down list, select **Latitude/Longitude (Decimal format)**.
   b. Enter the **Latitude** and **Longitude** coordinates in decimal degrees (for example, Baltimore has a latitude of 39.3° and a longitude of 76.6°).
   c. Enter a **Location Name**.
      The system uses this location name for reference only; it does not validated the location name against the latitude and longitude coordinates that you enter.
   d. Select the **Country** name for the location and click **Select**.
      The system uses the coordinates you input to place the site in the proper location on its site topology map.

5. To specify a location by latitude and longitude in DaysMinutesSeconds format:
   a. From the **Enter Location By** drop-down list, select **Latitude/Longitude (DDD:MM:SS format)**.
   b. Enter the **Latitude** and **Longitude** coordinates in the required format and select
   c. Enter a **Location Name**.
      The system uses this location name for reference only; it does not validated the location name against the latitude and longitude coordinates that you enter.
   d. Select the **Country** name for the location and click **Select**.
      The system uses the coordinates you input to place the site in the proper location on its site topology map.

**Edit Site Settings**

You can define a new site in the system's site topology and specify which subnets are associated with it.

---

**Note:** Changing network topology may affect the accuracy of reports based on this information. To retain historical data for the current network topology, generate reports before making changes.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Network Topology** > **Sites or Network Topology** > **Site Topology**.
2. In the **Sites** list or **Site Topology** page, select the site of interest and click **Edit** or **SITE ACTION** > **Edit Site**.
3. Edit the **General Info**, **Site Routing**, **Site Subnet**, and if applicable **ISDN Number Assignment**, sections of the **Edit Site** dialog.

4. Click **OK**.

### Delete a Site

You can delete a site.

**Note:** Devices that belonged to a deleted site are automatically reassigned to support Internet and VPN calls.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Network Topology > Sites** or **Network Topology > Site Topology**.
2. In the **Sites** list or **Site Topology** page, select the site of interest and click **Delete** or **SITE ACTION > Delete**.
3. Click **OK** to confirm the deletion.

### Managing Site Links

When you add a site link, you enter the starting and ending sites of the link and the maximum bandwidth and bit rates available for calls (audio and video) that use the link.

Links are bidirectional. After you have created a link from Site A to Site B, you automatically have a bi-directional link from Site B to Site A, although the link appears as unidirectional.

A link can connect two sites, or it can connect a site to an MPLS network cloud.

**Note:** The bit rate can be set at the network level, the device level, and the conference level. If there is a discrepancy between these bit rate settings, the system implements the lowest bit rate setting. The only exception, is that the bit rate in the RealPresence Collaboration Server (RMX) profile takes precedence over the bit rate in the conference settings.

### View the Site Links List

You can view the list of site links.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Network Topology > Site-Links**.

   The **Site-Links** list appears.

**Site-Links Information**

The **Site-Links** list displays the following information.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Site-Link Name</td>
<td>Name of the link</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Description of the link</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Setting Up Site Topology

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>From Site</td>
<td>First site reached in the call route</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Site</td>
<td>Final site reached through this call link</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max Bandwidth (Mbps)</td>
<td>The maximum available bandwidth for audio and video calls, which you set at the gateway or router. Only applies to direct links.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max Bit Rate (kbps)</td>
<td>The maximum bit rate allowed for an audio and video call. Only applies to direct links.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Add a Site Link

Before you can create a site link, you must add two or more sites to the system.

**Procedure**

1. Go to [Network Topology > Site-Links](#).
2. In the [Site-Links](#) page, click [Add](#).
3. In the [Add Site-Link](#) dialog, enter a [Site-Link Name](#) and [Description](#) for the link and select the starting ([From Site](#)) and ending ([To Site](#)) sites.
4. Enter the [Bandwidth](#) and [Max Bit Rate](#) and click [Save](#).

The new link appears on the [Site Links](#) page.

### Edit a Site Link

You may need to edit site links when network changes are made.

If you make a bandwidth change, the current load is not affected; however, the bandwidth available for future conferences may be affected.

**Procedure**

1. Go to [Network Topology > Site-Links](#).
2. In the [Site-Links](#) list, select the link of interest and click [Edit](#).
3. In the [Edit Site-Link](#) dialog, edit the [Site-Link Name](#), [Description](#), [Bandwidth](#) or [Max Bit Rate](#).
4. Click [OK](#).

### Delete a Site Link

You can remove site links from the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

**Note:** Avoid removing a link on which a scheduled conference depends.

**Procedure**

1. Go to [Network Topology > Site-Links](#).
2. In the [Site-Links](#) list, select the site link of interest and click [Delete](#).
3. Click [OK](#) to confirm the deletion.
Managing Site-to-Site Exclusions

Create site-to-site exclusions to explicitly deny connection between two sites for audio or video calls.

View the Site-to-Site Exclusion List

You can view a list of site-to-site exclusions.

Procedure

» Go to Network Topology > Site-to-Site Exclusion.
   The Site-to-Site Exclusions list appears.

Add a Site-to-Site Exclusion

Before you can create a site link exclusion, you must add two or more sites to the system.

Exclusions are by definition bilateral. No call traffic is allowed to flow across the site-link in either direction.

Procedure

1. Go to Network Topology > Site-to-Site Exclusions.
2. In the Site-to-Site Exclusions page, click Add + .
3. In the Add Site-to-Site Exclusions dialog:
   a. Select the first site of the From/To site pair (by clicking the appropriate button).
      If needed, use the Search Site field to find the site.
   b. Select the second site of the From/To site pair (by enabling the appropriate check box) and click Continue.
      You can select more than one site, if needed.
   c. Review the site-to-site exclusion and if it is correct, click OK.

Edit a Site-to-Site Exclusion

You cannot edit a site-to-site exclusion; you can only delete it and then re-add it.

Delete a Site-to-Site Exclusion

You can delete a site-to-site exclusion.

Procedure

1. Go to Network Topology > Site-to-Site Exclusions.
2. In the Site-to-Site Exclusions page, select the exclusion of interest and click Delete 🗑.
3. Click OK to confirm the deletion.
Territories

A territory is a set of one or more sites for which a RealPresence Resource Manager system is responsible.

By default, there is one territory named **Default Resource Manager Territory**, and its primary node (the RealPresence Resource Manager system responsible for it) is set to this system.

**Note:** You should configure the Resource Manager Default territory to be the primary RealPresence DMA node AFTER you integrate with a RealPresence DMA system.

View the Territory List

You can view a list of territories.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Network Topology > Territories**.
2. The **Territories** list appears.

Add a Territory

You can define a new territory in the RealPresence Resource Manager system’s site topology.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Network Topology > Territories**.
2. In the **Territories** page, click **Add**.
3. Complete the **Territory Info** and **Associated Sites** sections of the **Add Territories** dialog.
4. Click **OK**.

**Related Links**

*Adding a Territory Settings* on page 129

Adding a Territory Settings

Configure the adding a territory settings.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Territory Info</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Territory Name</td>
<td>A meaningful name for the territory (up to 128 characters).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>A brief description of the territory (up to 200 characters).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary Cluster</td>
<td>The primary node of the RealPresence Resource Manager system responsible for this territory. You can assign this territory to either a RealPresence Resource Manager or a RealPresence DMA system. When integrating with a RealPresence DMA system, enter the management FQDN or IP address of the primary cluster that will manage this territory. You should do this step AFTER you integrate with a RealPresence DMA system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backup Cluster</td>
<td>The second node, if any, of the RealPresence Resource Manager system responsible for this territory. You can assign this territory to either a RealPresence Resource Manager or a RealPresence DMA system. When integrating with a RealPresence DMA system, enter the management FQDN or IP address of the primary backup cluster that will manage this territory. You should do this step AFTER you integrate with a RealPresence DMA system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Host Conference Rooms In This Territory</td>
<td>Enables this territory to be used for hosting conference rooms (VMRs, or virtual meeting rooms). The territory's primary and backup clusters must both be enabled for conference room hosting. No more than three territories may have this capability enabled.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Associated Sites**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Search Sites</td>
<td>Enter search string or leave blank to find all sites.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Search Result</td>
<td>Lists sites found and shows the territory, if any, to which each currently belongs. Select a site and click the right arrow to move it to the Selected Sites list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selected Sites</td>
<td>Lists sites selected and shows the territory, if any, to which each currently belongs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Related Links**

Add a Territory on page 129

**Edit a Territory**

You can edit an existing territory in the RealPresence Resource Manager system's site topology.

**Note:** You should configure the Resource Manager Default territory to be the primary RealPresence DMA node AFTER you integrate with a RealPresence DMA system.
Procedure

1. Go to **Network Topology > Territories**.
2. In the **Territories** page, select the territory of interest and click **Edit**.
3. Change the **Territory Info** and **Associated Sites** information of the **Add Territories** dialog as needed.
4. Click **OK**.

Delete a Territory

You can delete a territory.

Procedure

1. Go to **Network Topology > Territories**.
2. In the **Territories** page, select the territory of interest and click **Delete**.
3. Click **OK** to confirm the deletion.

Network Clouds

To simplify the network topology, define network clouds to represent a hub with many sites connected to each other such as a private network or VPN.

The **Network Clouds** page contains a list of the MPLS (Multi-protocol Label Switching) network clouds defined in the site topology.

Use the commands in the **Actions** list to add, edit, or delete an MPLS cloud.

**Multi-tenancy Considerations for Network Clouds**

When areas are enabled for your system, sites can be assigned to areas.

You must be sure that each site within a network cloud belongs to the same area.

**Related Links**

- [View the Sites List](#) on page 119

**View the List of Network Clouds**

You can view the list of network clouds.

**Procedure**

» Go to **Network Topology > Network Clouds**.

The **Network Clouds** list appears.

**Add a Network Cloud**

You can add a network cloud.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Network Topology > Network Clouds**.
2. In the **Network Clouds** page, click **Add**.
3. In the **Cloud Info** section of the **Add Network Cloud** dialog, enter a unique and meaningful **Cloud Name** and **Description** for the cloud.

4. To create a link between a site and the network cloud:
   a. Click **Linked Sites**.
   b. In the **Search Sites** field, enter all or part of the site name or location and click **Filter**.
      The list of sites containing the search phrase appear in the **Search Results** column.
   c. Select one or more sites to link with the network cloud and then click the right arrow to move them to the **Selected Sites** column.

5. Click **OK**.

**Related Links**

*Linked Sites Settings* on page 132

### Linked Sites Settings

Configure the linked sites.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Linked Sites</td>
<td>Enter search string or leave blank to find all sites.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Search Sites</td>
<td>Lists sites found and shows the territory, if any, to which each belongs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Search Result</td>
<td>Select a site and click the right arrow to open the <strong>Add Site Link</strong> dialog.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selected Sites</td>
<td>Lists sites linked to the cloud and shows the territory, if any, to which each belongs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Related Links**

*Add a Network Cloud* on page 131

### Edit a Network Cloud

You can edit the settings of a network cloud.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Network Topology > Network Clouds**.
2. In the **Network Clouds** page, select the network cloud of interest and click **Edit**.
3. Edit the **Cloud Info** or to create a link between a site and the network cloud:
   a. Click **Linked Sites**.
   b. In the **Search Sites** field, enter all or part of the site name or location and click **Filter**.
      The list of sites containing the search phrase appear in the **Search Results** column.
   c. Select one or more sites to link with the network cloud and then click the right arrow to move them to the **Selected Sites** column.
Delete a Network Cloud

You can delete a network cloud.

Procedure

1. Go to Network Topology > Network Clouds.
2. In the Network Clouds page, select the network cloud of interest and click Delete.
3. Click OK to confirm the deletion.
Setting Up the Global Address Book

Topics:

- View the Global Address Book
- Enable or Disable GAB Filter
- Set or Change the GAB Password

This section describes how to manage the Global Address Book in the Polycom RealPresence® Resource Manager system.

The Polycom Global Address Book is a system-managed endpoint directory that enables users with video endpoints to look up and call other users with video endpoints in their video communications network.

View the Global Address Book

You must have the Administrator role and permissions to view the Global Address Book.

Procedure

1. Go to Admin > Directories > Global Address Book.
2. As needed, click Filter to customize the Global Address Book.

   It can be filtered by Endpoint Name or IP Address.

Global Address Book Information

The user information found in the Global Address Book is listed in the table below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Endpoint Name</td>
<td>The name of the registered endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GAB Display Name</td>
<td>The name of the registered endpoint as it will be displayed to other endpoint users. This display name is an ASCII only field. The GAB display name is automatically generated when the user is associated with the endpoint. If you want to update the GAB display name, you can do so from the Endpoint &gt; Monitor View.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP Address</td>
<td>The IP address of the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alias</td>
<td>The alias associated with the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary ISDN</td>
<td>The primary ISDN number for the endpoint (if any).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary ISDN</td>
<td>The secondary ISDN number for the endpoint (if any).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Owner</td>
<td>The user associated with the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Enable or Disable GAB Filter

From a video endpoint system, users can locate other user's endpoints by name in the Global Address Book and initiate a call without knowledge of the other user's equipment.

The RealPresence Resource Manager system will filter incompatible endpoints out of the Global Address Book (GAB) results so that the GAB presented to H.323-only endpoints will not include ISDN-only endpoints and the GAB presented to ISDN-only endpoints will not include H.323-only endpoints.

Note: Global Address Book filtering applies only to Polycom endpoints. The Global Address Book is not filtered on third-party endpoints.

Procedure

1. Go to Admin > Directories > Global Address Book.
2. Click the Set GAB Filter button.
3. Check or cancel the Disable GAB Filtering to disable or enable GAB Filter.

Set or Change the GAB Password

You can require that endpoints be provisioned with a password in order to access the Global Address Book on the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

You must have the Administrator role and permissions, to set or change the Global Address Book password.

To do so, set a Global Address Book password as described here. Use the same procedure to change the Global Address Book password.

Note that even if the Global Address Book is password protected, some third-party endpoints may not be required to provide a password because they are not directory-password aware. They have unrestricted access to the Global Address Book.

To provision this password to endpoints, see Add a Scheduled Provisioning Profile.

Procedure

1. Go to Admin > Directories > Global Address Book.
2. In the Global Address Book, click Set GAB Password.
3. In the Set Client Password dialog, enter the Old Password and the New Password.
   Note that the password fields are ASCII only.
4. Confirm the new password and click Save.
   Once you set this password, endpoints that are not provisioned with this password cannot access the Global Address Book on the RealPresence Resource Manager system.
Using Multiple Address Books

Topics:

- Task Overview of Implementing Multiple Address Books
- Address Book Considerations for Multi-Tenancy
- View the Address Book List and Details
- Add an Address Book
- Edit an Address Book
- Assign Address Books to User Groups
- Delete an Address Book
- Change Address Book Priority
- Set the Default Address Book
- Copy an Address Book

Users assigned the **Administrator** role can create multiple address books in the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

Multiple address books are subsets of the Global Address Book (GAB) and let you manage which users (local and enterprise), endpoints, rooms, groups, and guests appear in each address book. For example, you can set up separate address books for each department in your organization. Each address book would include only RealPresence Resource Manager system users in that department and only rooms in that department's location.

Multiple address books support both the Global Address Book and LDAP protocols. Endpoints requesting directory information using either protocol receive either the default address book or the address book assigned to the user’s group.

Users not assigned the Administrator or Area Administrator role (available if you have enabled areas) will not be aware of address books. They will see only those users (local and enterprise directory), endpoints, rooms, groups, and guests in the same address book that the user is assigned to.

If you do not want to use multiple address books, you can leave the default address book set to **All Entries**. Using this default, all users will see all entries in the directory. Be sure that all groups are assigned either the **System Default** or **All Entries** option. **System Default** is the default group setting.

**Note:** An endpoint must be associated with a User and the User must be in a Group in order to specify an address book.
Task Overview of Implementing Multiple Address Books

You need to complete the following tasks to implement multiple address books.

RealPresence Resource Manager system users assigned the Administrator role can implement multiple address books.

Procedure

1. **Add an Address Book**
   You can create address books and associate users (local and enterprise directory), endpoints, rooms, groups, and guests with one or more address books. This process controls where each entity appears as an address book entry.

2. **Assign Address Books to User Groups**
   A group can be assigned to only one address book. This process controls the address book that users and endpoints have access to.

3. **Change Address Book Priority**
   The priority affects which address book a user has access to. For example, if a user is a member of two different groups and each group is assigned a different address book, the user can access the address book that is higher in priority.

Address Book Considerations for Multi-Tenancy

If you have enabled the Areas feature, you can only associate users and endpoints that are in the same area that you have been assigned to manage.

Users not assigned the Administrator or Area Administrator role will not be aware of address books or be allowed to edit them. They will see only those users (local and enterprise directory), endpoints, rooms, groups, and guests in the same address book and area to which the user is assigned.

When you manage more than one area, you can create address books that contain users and endpoints from each area that you manage. However, users in that address book will only be able to view users from the area to which they also belong.

View the Address Book List and Details

You can view an address book.

Procedure

1. Go to Admin > Directories > Address Books.
   The Address Book list appears, with details of the selected address book in the right pane.
### Address Book Details

The **Address Book** lists the details of the selected address book in the right pane.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Priority</td>
<td>The priority affects which address book a user sees. For example, if a user is a member of two different groups and each group is assigned a different address book, the user will see the address book that is higher in priority.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Address Book Name</td>
<td>Name of the address book.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>A brief description of the address book.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Add an Address Book

You can add many address books to the RealPresence Resource Manager system, and each address book can have up to 100 tiers.

- Tiers are only meant to allow you to organize the address book contents. They will not be visible to endpoint users when they access the directory. Each tier can have up to three subtiers, and you can have address book entries at any tier level.

- Associating users, endpoints, rooms, groups, and guests with an address book controls where these entities appear. For example, if you associate user A with address book A, the user will appear as an entry in address book A. You can associate any of these entities with more than one address book, and the entity will appear as entry in each address book.

- Groups in the RealPresence Resource Manager system control the address book users, endpoints, and rooms have access to.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Admin > Directories > Address Books**.
2. Click **Add** +.
3. Complete the fields in the **Add an Address Book** dialog.
4. To associate users with this address book, click **Associate Users**.
The Address Book/Tier column shows all of the address books the users appear in.

a. Search for the users you want to associate.
   Use the Filter to customize the list.

b. Select the users you want and click Specify Tier.

c. Select the tier you want for the users and click OK.

5. To associate endpoints with this address book, click Associate Endpoints.

Only endpoints that are not associated with a RealPresence Resource Manager system user appear in the list.

a. Use the Filter to customize the list.
   The Address Book/Tier column shows all of the address books the endpoints appear in.

b. Select the endpoints you want and click Specify Tier.

c. Select the tier you want for the endpoints and click OK.

6. To associate rooms with this address book, click Associate Rooms.

The Address Book/Tier column shows all of the address books the rooms appear in.

a. Use the Filter to customize the list.

b. Select the rooms you want and click Specify Tier.

c. Select the tier you want for the rooms and click OK.

7. To associate groups with this address book, click Associate User Groups.

The Address Book/Tier column shows all of the address books the groups appear in.

a. Use the Filter to customize the list.

b. Select the groups you want and click Specify Tier.

c. Select the tier you want for the groups and click OK.

8. To associate guests with this address book, click Associate Guests.

The Address Book/Tier column shows all of the address books the guests appear in.

a. Use the Filter to customize the list.

b. Select the guests you want and click Specify Tier.

c. Select the tier you want for the guests and click OK.

9. Click OK.

Adding an Address Book Settings

Complete the fields in the Add an Address Book dialog

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Address Book Information</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Address Book Name</td>
<td>A meaningful name to identify this address book.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Field Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>A brief description of the address book.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Address Book Tiers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>New Tier</td>
<td>Select where you want to add a tier and click to add a new tier to the address book.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit Tier Name</td>
<td>Select a tier and click to change a tier name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete</td>
<td>Select a tier and click to delete a tier.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Edit an Address Book

You can edit an address book to add or remove users, endpoints, rooms, groups, and guests.

You can find any of these entities that are not currently associated with an address book by selecting **Current Association** from any **Filter**, then selecting **Not Associated With An Address Book**.

If a group is set up with the **Enterprise Directory Viewable** option not selected, you can still add that group to an address book. The group itself will not appear as an entry in the address book, but the members of the group will.

#### Procedure

1. Go to **Admin > Directories > Address Books**.
2. Select an address book.
3. Click **Edit**.
4. Edit the fields in the **Edit an Address Book** dialog.
5. To associate users with this address book, click **Associate Users**.
   - The **Address Book/Tier** column shows all of the address books the users appear in.
     a. Search for the users you want to associate.
     b. Select the users you want and click **Specify Tier**.
     c. Select the tier you want for the users and click **OK**.
     d. To delete a user from the address book, select the user and click **Delete**.

6. To associate endpoints with this address book, click **Associate Endpoints**.
   - Only endpoints that are not associated with a RealPresence Resource Manager system user appear in the list.
   - The **Address Book/Tier** column shows all of the address books the endpoints appear in.
     a. Use the **Filter** to customize the list.
     b. Select the endpoints you want and click **Specify Tier**.
c. Select the tier you want for the endpoints and click **OK**.

d. To delete an endpoint from the address book, select the endpoint and click **Delete**.

   The endpoint is removed from the address book, but remains in the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

7. To associate rooms with this address book, click **Associate Rooms**.

   The **Address Book/Tier** column shows all of the address books the rooms appear in.

   a. Use the **Filter** to customize the list.

   b. Select the rooms you want and click **Specify Tier**.

   c. Select the tier you want for the rooms and click **OK**.

   d. To delete a room from the address book, select the room and click **Delete**.

   The room is removed from the address book, but remains in the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

8. To associate groups with this address book, click **Associate User Groups**.

   The **Address Book/Tier** column shows all of the address books the groups appear in.

   a. Use the **Filter** to customize the list.

   b. Select the groups you want and click **Specify Tier**.

   c. Select the tier you want for the groups and click **OK**.

   d. To delete a group from the address book, select the group and click **Delete**.

   The group is removed from the address book, but remains in the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

9. To associate guests with this address book, click **Associate Guests**.

   The **Address Book/Tier** column shows all of the address books the guests appear in.

   a. Use the **Filter** to customize the list.

   b. Select the guests you want and click **Specify Tier**.

   c. Select the tier you want for the guests and click **OK**.

   d. To delete a guest from the address book, select the guest and click **Delete**.

   The guest is removed from the address book, but remains in the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

10. Click **OK**.

**Editing an Address Book Settings**

Edit the fields in the **Edit an Address Book** dialog.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Address Book Information</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Address Book Name</td>
<td>A meaningful name to identify this address book.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>A brief description of the address book.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Address Book Tiers**

- **New Tier**: Select where you want to add a tier and click to add a new tier to the address book.
- **Edit Tier Name**: Select a tier and click to change a tier name.
- **Delete**: Select a tier and click to delete a tier.

---

**Assign Address Books to User Groups**

You can assign an address book to a group, but you cannot assign address books directly to users.

Group assignment controls to which address book users and endpoints have access. Each group can have just one address book assigned to it, but users can be in more than one group.

Address book priority affects which address book users and endpoints can access. For example, if a user is a member of two different groups and each group is assigned a different address book, the user will see the address book that is higher in priority.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **User > User Groups**.
2. Select the group you want to assign.
3. Click **Edit**.
4. In the **Edit Local Group** dialog, select address book you want from the **Assign Address Book** drop-down list.
5. Click **OK**.

---

**Delete an Address Book**

You can delete an address book when it is no longer needed.

Deleting an address book does not delete the users, endpoints, rooms, groups, or guests that were in the address from the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

Any entity that was assigned the deleted address book will have access to one of the following:

- Another address book if the entity is a member of another group that is assigned to an existing address book.
- The default address book.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Admin > Directories > Address Books**.
2. Select the address book you want to delete.
3. Click **Delete**.
   - A confirmation message appears.
4. Click Yes.

Change Address Book Priority

You can change the priority of address books.

The priority determines which address book a user sees. For example, if a user is a member of two different groups and each group is associated with a different address book, the user will see the address book that is higher in priority.

The All Entries address book always has the highest priority and None always has the lowest priority. If the address book for one of the groups the user belongs to is changed to All Entries, the user will see all entries regardless of the priority of the address book for the other group.

Procedure

1. Go to Admin > Directories > Address Books.
2. In the Priority column of an address book, enter the priority you want.
   Use only whole numbers and only numbers that fall within the total count of address books. For example, if you have four address books, only 1 through 4 are valid priority values.
3. Click Update Priority from the More drop-down list.
   The system changes the order of the address book list.

Set the Default Address Book

You can set the default address book.

The default address book sets the address book all new users have access to if no address book is assigned through a group.

If you do not want to use multiple address books in the RealPresence Resource Manager system, leave the default address book set to All Entries (the default). Using this default, all users will be able to see all entries in the directory. Be sure that all groups are assigned either the System Default or All Entries option. System Default is the default group setting.

If you create multiple address books, you can change the default address book to one of the address books you created.

Procedure

1. Go to Admin > Directories > Address Books.
2. Click Set Default from the More drop-down list.
3. In the Default Address Book dialog, select the option you want:
   • All Entries—Default setting. All users, endpoints, groups, rooms, and guests are in one address book and all have access to all address book entries.
   • None—No directory entries will be available.
   • Specify—Select the address book you want as the default.
4. Click OK.
Copy an Address Book

You can copy an existing address book as a shortcut to creating a new address book. The copy process can copy the entire address book or just the tier structure.

Procedure

1. Go to Admin > Directories > Address Books.
2. Select the address book you want to copy.
3. Click Copy from the More drop-down list.
4. In the Copy Address Book dialog, select the option you want:
   - Entire Address Book—This option copies all of the tiers and the users, endpoints, rooms, groups, and guests that are associated with the address book to the new address book. If areas are enabled, the address is copied to the same area to which the initial address book belongs.
   - Tiers only—This option copies only the tier structure to the new address book.
5. Enter a meaningful Name and Description.
6. Click OK.

You can now edit the new address book to add or delete entries.
Direct Conference Templates

Topics:

- Direct Conference Templates Overview
- View the Direct Conference Templates List
- Add a Direct Conference Template
- Edit a Direct Conference Template
- Delete a Direct Conference Template

You use MCU conference templates when you schedule conferences to take place on an MCU that has been integrated with RealPresence Resource Manager system's conferencing service.

Direct Conference Templates Overview

Direct templates are based on existing conference profiles that have been created on the MCU.

You can choose to have the template automatically synchronized with its associated RealPresence Collaboration Server (RMX) profile by maintaining the routing name of the RealPresence Collaboration Server (RMX) profile or download the profile directly to the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

Note: The RealPresence Resource Manager systems does not support scheduling conferences on third-party MCUs. Direct Conference template settings apply only to the RealPresence Collaboration Server (RMX) and MGC devices.

Users assigned the Administrator role can add Direct Conference Templates from any MCU that is integrated the RealPresence Resource Manager system's conferencing services. They can also identify (by user role) which users have access to which Direct Conference Templates. Conference schedulers can then select from the different templates available to them to switch between different combinations of conference settings.

Note: Direct conference templates do not display all available RealPresence Collaboration Server (RMX) settings. Nor or all conference settings defined in the template used by the RealPresence Resource Manager system when setting up a direct conference.

You create a direct conference templates in two ways:

- Standalone Templates: Download a conference profile from a managed MCU creating a "standalone" (free-standing) template independent of the profiles available on the system's RealPresence Collaboration Servers, or Polycom MGC systems.
- Linked Templates: Link the template to a RealPresence Collaboration Server profile that exists on some or all of the MCUs.

Linked conference templates are not supported for Polycom MGC systems.

Note: Conference templates for Pooled Conferences are created and managed on the Polycom RealPresence DMA system.
For more information about the RealPresence Collaboration Server (RMX) profile settings, see *Polycom® RealPresence® Collaboration Server (RMX®) 1500/2000/4000 Administrator’s Guide.*

**Standalon Templates**

Standalone templates defined in the RealPresence Resource Manager system free you from having to ensure that the exact same conference profiles exist on all the MCUs.

When it uses a standalone template for a conference, the system sends the specific properties to the MCU instead of pointing to one of its profiles.

**Considerations for Polycom MGC Systems**

Standalone or “downloaded” templates are the only ones allowed for use with Polycom MGC systems.

In addition, the RealPresence Resource Manager system does not support MGC templates that use the following dual stream settings: *Hi-Res Graphics or Live Video* setting.

**Linked Templates**

When you link a conference template to a template to a RealPresence Collaboration Server or RealPresence Collaboration Server (RMX) profile ensures that the template's properties match the capabilities on the MCU selected for the conference.

This means that when you use a linked template for a conference, you must also select the specific MCU that contains the profile on which the template is linked.

When you link a template to a profile, it's up to you to ensure that the profile exists on the MCUs you want to use with that template and that its settings are the same on all of them.

If do not select the MCU from which the template is based, the scheduled conference will not launch.

As a best practice, when linking templates to MCU profiles, this will make it easier for conference schedulers to select the bridge that corresponds with the template.

---

**Note:** This option is not supported for MGC conference profiles.

**Direct Conference Template Considerations for Multi-Tenancy**

- When areas are enabled, the templates available for a given conference depend on the area to which the conference owner belongs. Only templates belonging to the same area as the conference owner are available to use when scheduling a conference.
- When areas are enabled, be sure to give your area-specific names to your templates. This is particular helpful if you have schedulers who have been given permission to manage more than one area.

**Direct Conference Template Best Practices**

The RealPresence Resource Manager system has a *Default Template.*

Administrators with *Conference Setup* permissions can some settings of a standalone template.

When scheduling a conference, the *Default Template,* which is available to all users, is selected by default. Schedulers can select a different conference template from the list of templates an administrator
has made available to them. Users with advanced scheduling permissions can edit the template settings for a specific scheduled conference. These changes apply only to the specified conference.

Use these best practices when working with conference templates.

• For the **Default Template**, select settings that are the lowest common values for all device types. This ensures that all conferences scheduled with the **Default Template** can successfully launch on whatever devices the system has available at the time.

• The template names **Default Template** and **Default Audio Templates** are stored in the system database and their names are not localized into other languages. If you wish to localized their names into your language, edit the templates and enter new names for them.

When creating new direct conference templates, give them meaningful purposes and names so that your users can easily identify the differences between template choices. For example, identify templates according to maximum bit rate, specific features implemented by the template (for example, Lecture Mode or Chairperson Control).

• As a best practice, when linking templates to MCU profiles, give the template a name that includes the bridge name, this will make it easier for conference schedulers to select the bridge that corresponds with the template.

---

**Note:** If your RealPresence Resource Manager system has areas enabled, be sure to give your area-specific names to your templates. This is particular helpful if you have schedulers who have been given permission to manage more than one area.

---

**View the Direct Conference Templates List**

You can view a list of added direct conference templates.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Conference > Direct Conference Templates.**
   
   The **Direct Conference Templates** list appears.

2. Select the template of interest from the list and click **View**.

   You can expand the settings description in the right pane of the screen.

**Add a Direct Conference Template**

When you add a template to the RealPresence Resource Manager from an MCU, you can use it for conferences you want to schedule.

You can add conference templates from any MCU that is integrated with the RealPresence Resource Manager system's conferencing services.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Conference > Direct Conference Templates.**

2. On the **Direct Conference Templates** list, click **Add**.

3. In the **Select an MCU** dialog, choose an MCU from which to add a template and click **View Profile**.

4. In the **Select a Profile** dialog, choose an MCU conference profile to add as a template.
• To link the template to its MCU profile, click **Use Routing Name**. This option is not supported for MGC conference profiles.
• To create a standalone template, click **Download Profile**.

5. In the **Add Direct Conference Template** dialog, you can customize the profile summary.

6. Click **OK**.

The new template appears in the **Direct Conference Template** list.

**Note:** The RealPresence Resource Manager system does not validate the **Conference Template** settings. When you create a new conference template, you must make certain that the settings match the capabilities of the MCUs or endpoints.

---

**Related Links**

- **Direct Conference Template Profile Settings** on page 148

---

**Direct Conference Template Profile Settings**

This table explains the direct conference template profile settings.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>General Settings</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Template Name</td>
<td>Enter a unique and meaningful name for the template, which can be up to 50 characters long.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Enter a meaningful description (ASCII only) of the conference settings template.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio-Only Template</td>
<td>Select this option to designate the template as an audio-only template. Selecting this option disables many settings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Supported MCUs</strong></td>
<td>Specify the supported MCU type. Possible values include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RMX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MGC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RMX + MGC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Always Use MCU</td>
<td>When selected, an MCU is used for the scheduled conference, regardless of the number of participants. When not selected, an MCU is used only when necessary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dial Options</strong></td>
<td>These settings apply only to video conferences. The video dial options are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dial-In Only</td>
<td>(all participants dial into the conference)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dial-Out Only</td>
<td>(all participants are called by the system)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dial-In + Dial-Out</td>
<td>(The person setting up the conference can specify which participants must dial into the conference and which participants are called by the system.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Field Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assign Area</td>
<td>Select an area to which to assign this template. This field is only visible when Areas are enabled. A user can only view area-specific information for an area(s) that he has permission to manage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Template will be available to users with the selected roles...</td>
<td>Select the roles to which users must be assigned for them to see this template when scheduling conferences.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Available Roles</td>
<td>The list of roles defined to the RealPresence Resource Manager system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selected Roles</td>
<td>The list of roles that can use the conference template being defined.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Related Links

- Add a Direct Conference Template on page 147

### Edit a Direct Conference Template

You can edit the profile of a direct conference template.

**Procedure**

1. Go to Conference > Direct Conference Templates.
2. On the Direct Conference Templates list, select the template of interest and click *Edit*.
3. Edit the Customized Profile Summary as needed.
4. Click *OK.*

### Delete a Direct Conference Template

You can delete a direct conference template.

**Procedure**

1. Go to Conference > Direct Conference Templates.
2. On the Direct Conference Templates list, select a template and click *Delete*.
3. Click *Yes* to confirm the deletion.
RealPresence DMA Conference Templates

Topics:

- RealPresence DMA System Conference Templates for Multi-Tenancy
- Establishing Naming Conventions for RealPresence DMA System Templates
- Anytime Conference Templates
- Considerations for Anytime Conference Templates

Anytime conferences and conferences scheduled to take place on a DMA Pool Order use conference templates that are created and managed in the RealPresence DMA system.

RealPresence DMA System Conference Templates for Multi-Tenancy

RealPresence DMA system conference templates cannot be assigned to a specific area.

Area schedulers will be able to select from a list of all RealPresence DMA system templates, regardless of the area to which they manage. You should implement a template naming convention to indicate to an area scheduler which RealPresence DMA templates apply to his purview; for example, area1_template.

Establishing Naming Conventions for RealPresence DMA System Templates

By default, all RealPresence DMA system conference templates are made available to conference schedulers who have permission to create pooled conferences and anytime conferences.

To differentiate which RealPresence DMA system conference templates should be used for which conferences, you should implement a naming convention that informs the scheduler which conference template is appropriate.
Anytime Conference Templates

For example, you could prefix a template designed for use with anytime conferences with the word “anytime”; for example, anytimeconf_standard, anytimeconf_autoterminate, anytimeconf_nochair, and so on.

Considerations for Anytime Conference Templates

An anytime conference is initiated when the first person calls into the conference and triggers the hosting bridge to dial-out to the remaining conference participants.

Once an Anytime conference is configured, conferences can be started at any time by authorized participants. The following events occur when a new Anytime conference is added:

- A participant with scheduling permissions creates a new Anytime conference and the conference is assigned a virtual meeting room (VMR) number.
- A Chairperson passcode is automatically generated and may be required to launch an Anytime conference (depending on your conference template). The owner receives the owner passcode needed to launch the conference via the meeting email.
- Depending on the conference template settings, all dial-out participants are automatically called either when first participant dials the VMR number or the conference owner dials the VMR and enters the owner passcode.
- If the conference template requires a chairperson, dial-in participants are placed on hold until someone dials in and enters the chairperson passcode.
- The conference continues until all participants hang up the call, unless your template includes an auto-terminate setting.

Configuring Auto-Terminate

Anytime conferences do not have designated start and end times.

As a result, the conference may be left open and the VMR in use if the last caller does not hang up. You can mitigate this occurrence by configuring the RealPresence DMA conference template to use a RealPresence Collaboration Server profile that has Auto-Terminate enabled.

For more information about RealPresence Collaboration Server profiles and how to use an existing RealPresence Collaboration Server profile for a RealPresence DMA conference template, see Polycom RealPresence DMA System Operations Guide.

Initiating Conference Dial-out

You can configure the RealPresence DMA system conference template to define who can trigger the dial-out to participants.

You use the Conference requires chairperson setting to determine when dial-outs are initiated. Remember to use an intuitive naming convention for RealPresence DMA system conference templates.

- When you enable the Conference requires chairperson setting, the dial-out process will begin when the chairperson dials into the conference. An example name for a template with this setting could be Anytime Conference - Chair Starts Dial-Outs.
• If you do not select this check box, the dial-out process will begin when the first person dials into the conference. No chairperson passcode is needed. An example name for a template with this setting could be Anytime Conference - 1st Dial-in Starts Dial-Outs.
Configuring Conference Settings

Topics:

- Specify Conference Settings
- Disable Conference Time Warning
- Automatically Include Conference Creator in Conference
- Overbook Dial-in Participants
- Set the Conference and Chairperson Passcode Length
- Customizing Text to Email Notifications

You can configure conference settings.

Conference settings apply to conferences only. You can disable/enable time warnings, set whether the conference requires a passcode, automatically include the conference creator in conference, as well as enable overbooking of dial-in participants.

The settings you configure will be used for all conferences.

Conference settings apply to conferences scheduled using the RealPresence Resource Manager system. These settings include:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Conference Time Warning</td>
<td>Specifies whether or not the Polycom RealPresence Resource Manager system sends a message to video endpoints in a conference to warn the endpoint users that their conference is scheduled to end soon. The system sends the message 10 minutes, 5 minutes and 3 minutes before the conference is scheduled to end. To support this feature, the video endpoint system must be capable of receiving a system Send Message action. By default, Conference Time Warning is enabled. <strong>Note:</strong> This feature is not related to the MCU-based End Time Alert Tone feature. <strong>Note:</strong> Pooled Conferences This setting does not apply for Pooled Conferences.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatically Include Conference Owner (Scheduler) in New Conferences</td>
<td>Select this option when you wish the system to always include the person scheduling the conference as a conference participant. Do not select this option if your organization has assistants or operators schedule conferences for others.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow overbooking of dial-in participants</td>
<td>Select this option to allow schedulers to schedule dial-in participants to dial into multiple conferences, but the system reserves resources for the participant for only the first scheduled conference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conference and chairperson passcode length</td>
<td>Designate the required length of the system-generated conference and chairperson passcodes. The acceptable length for both of these passcodes is 4 to 16 characters. By default, the required length for both of these passcodes is set to 15 characters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note:</td>
<td>• Depending on the system settings, the scheduler may be allowed to change the conference or chairperson passcode. However, the passcode length requirement still applies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If an administrator changes the passcode length here at the same time a scheduler edits the passcode settings for a scheduled conference, the scheduling operation may use either the old or the new length, depending on the exact timing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Include the Web Suite URL in the notification email</td>
<td>Include the URL of the RealPresence Web Suite Experience Portal in the email notification for the meeting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Applicable for pooled and anytime conferences when the RealPresence DMA system is integrated with a RealPresence Web Suite.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Web Suite Server Address</td>
<td>The server address of the RealPresence Web Suite Experience Portal.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Specify Conference Settings

Navigate to the conference settings page to configure conference settings.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Conference > Conference Settings**.
2. On the **Conference Settings** page, make the required selections.
3. Click **Update**.

### Disable Conference Time Warning

You can disable the warning that alerts users that their conference is ending.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Conference > Conference Settings**.
2. In the **Conference Time Warning** section of the **Conference Settings** page, clear the **Enabled** check box.
3. Click **Update**.
Automatically Include Conference Creator in Conference

Select this option when you wish the system to always include the person scheduling the conference as a conference participant.

Do not select this option if your organization has assistants or operators schedule conferences for others.

Procedure
1. Go to Conference > Conference Settings.
2. Check the Automatically include conference creator (scheduler) in new conferences section of the Conference Settings check box.
3. Click Update.

Overbook Dial-in Participants

A user with the administrator role can configure the system to allow scheduler's to overbook dial-in participants.

In this case, dial-in participants can be scheduled to dial into multiple conferences, but the system reserves resources for the participant for only the first scheduled conference. Dial-out participants cannot be scheduled into multiple conferences.

Note: This setting does not apply to guest participants. Guest participants can always be overbooked.

Procedure
1. Go to Conference > Conference Settings.
2. In the Allow overbooking of dial-in participants section of the Conference Settings page, check the Enabled check box.
3. Click Update.

Set the Conference and Chairperson Passcode Length

You can designate the required length of the system-generated conference and chairperson passcodes.

The acceptable length for both of these passcodes is 6 to 16 characters. By default, the required length for both of these passcodes is set to 15 characters.

Depending on the system settings, the scheduler may be allowed to change the conference or chairperson passcode. However, the passcode length requirement still applies.

If an administrator changes the passcode length here at the same time a scheduler edits the passcode settings for a scheduled conference, the scheduling operation may use either the old or the new length, depending on the exact timing.

Procedure
1. Go to Conference > Conference Settings.
2. Mark the Conference and chairperson passcode length check box.
3. Click Update.
Customizing Text to Email Notifications

You can configure the system to send conference notification emails.

The same text will be used for all conference notification email notifications. Within these emails, you can include customized text.

Add Customized Text to Conference Email Notifications

You can customize the text for your conference email notifications.

This text field is limited to 650 characters. The text you type here will appear in plain text just as you typed it.

Procedure

1. Go to Admin > Server Settings > E-mail.
2. In the The text entered below will be included with scheduling reminder E-mails section of the E-mail page, type in the introductory text you want to appear at the start of all conferencing email notifications.
3. In the Text at the End of the Reminder E-mail section of the E-mail page, type in the closing text you want to appear at the end of all conferencing email notifications.
4. Click Update.

Edit Customized Text in Email Notifications

You can edit the customized text included in your conference notification emails.

Procedure

1. Go to Admin > Server Settings > E-mail.
2. To change the introductory text, replace the text in the The text entered below will be included with scheduling reminder E-mails section of the E-mail page with the new text you want to appear at the start of all conferencing email notifications.
   This text field is limited to 650 characters. The text you type here will appear in plain text just as you typed it.
3. To change the closing text, replace the text in the Text at the End of the Reminder Email section of the E-mail page with the new text you want to appear at the end of all conferencing email notifications.
   This text field is limited to 650 characters. The text you type here will appear in plain text just as you typed it.
4. Click Update.
Part V

Conference Scheduling and Management

Topics:

- Conference Scheduling Overview
- Scheduling Conferences
- Managing Conferences and Participants
- Managing the Guest Book and Favorites Lists
- Conference and Participant Details

The RealPresence Resource Manager system can schedule and manage conferences, participants, and guest books.
Conference Scheduling Overview

Topics:

- Log into the System
- Conference Scheduler Roles
- Scheduling Participants
- Scheduling Bridges and DMA Pool Orders
- Recurring Conferences
- Anytime Conferences

The RealPresence Resource Manager system can schedule and monitor video conferences.

Log into the System

To log into the RealPresence Resource Manager system web interface, you need the IP address or host name of the RealPresence Resource Manager system server and your username, password, and domain.

Generally, you get three opportunities to enter the correct password. After three failed attempts, the system returns an error message.

Procedure

1. Open a browser window and in the Address field enter the RealPresence Resource Manager system IP address or host name.
2. When the RealPresence Resource Manager system Log In screen appears, enter your Username and Password.
3. If necessary, select a different Language.
4. Click Login.

Conference Scheduler Roles

Users assigned a conference scheduling role can schedule conferences in a manner similar to other calendar applications.

In the Scheduler role, you can schedule conferences and view information about your ongoing, past, and future scheduled conferences. You can also add guests to and delete guests from the system Guest Book. You cannot view information for conferences that you did not schedule.

Users assigned the Advanced Scheduler role can also select bridges and templates and edit some conference settings.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role</th>
<th>Supported Actions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>View-Only Scheduler</td>
<td>View conferences that other users created</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Role</td>
<td>Supported Actions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scheduler</td>
<td>Add a new conference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Copy a conference you created</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>View details of a conference you created</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Delete a conference you created</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced Scheduler</td>
<td>Add a new conference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Specify bridges and select templates for new conferences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Copy a conference you created</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>View details of a conference you created</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Edit some conference settings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Delete a conference you created</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Area Scheduler</td>
<td>Add a new conference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Edit a future conference you created</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Copy a conference you created</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>View details of a conference you created</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Delete a conference you created</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operator</td>
<td>Add a new conference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Specify bridges and select templates for new conferences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Copy any conference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Edit any future conference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Delete any future conference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>View any conference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Manage any ongoing conference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Terminate any ongoing conference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Role</td>
<td>Supported Actions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Area Operator</td>
<td>All area scheduler functions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>All advanced scheduler functions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Manage any ongoing conference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Terminate an ongoing conference</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Scheduling Participants

When you schedule conferences, you select the participants you wish to join the conference from your user directory.

Depending on your system configuration, your user directory may be the enterprise directory, the Global Address Book, or one or more local address books. It may also include Guest Book entries.

For participants that have multiple endpoints registered with the RealPresence Resource Manager system, the system selects the participant's default endpoint. You can change to another endpoint by selecting it from the Call Info list or by editing the participant.

You can schedule participants without endpoints into conferences. You cannot schedule endpoints without owners into conferences. The RealPresence Resource Manager system can be configured to allow you to overbook dial-in participants. In this case, dial-in participants can be scheduled to dial into multiple conferences during the same time period, but the system reserves resources for the participant for only the first scheduled conference. Dial-out participants cannot be scheduled into multiple conferences at one time.

**Note:** Your RealPresence Resource Manager system configuration needs to include an NTP server to ensure successful scheduling. All resources of your video conferencing environment should be set to the same NTP server.

## Scheduling Bridges and DMA Pool Orders

When you schedule a conference, you can select a single bridge or a RealPresence DMA pool order to host the conference, depending on the permissions that you have been given by the administrator.

### MCU Selection

Users with the Advanced Scheduler or Operator role can select a MCU to host their conference by selecting the Single Bridge option.

When they select this option, the system presents a list of bridges that have the capabilities and resources required to host their conference.

Because this bridge list depends on the template selection, users should make their template selection before selecting a bridge. Otherwise, they may select a bridge that cannot meet their conferencing requirements. In this case, the conference will fail to schedule.
Bridge Scheduling and Reassignment

When you schedule a conference, the system automatically assigns the conference to a bridge unless a user with the default Advanced Scheduler or Operator role intercedes.

If that bridge is down at the time the system starts the conference, the RealPresence Resource Manager system attempts to dynamically reassign the conference to another bridge with sufficient capabilities and resources.

- If the system can successfully reassign the conference to another bridge, the conference starts on the newly selected bridge, and the system sends an updated conference email message to all scheduled participants. This updated email includes a new dial-in number that dial-in participants must use to join the conference.
- The system will chain bridge reassignments. This means that if the next bridge to which the system assigns a conference is down at the time the system tries to start the conference, the system will try to reassign the conference again.
- If the RealPresence Resource Manager system cannot find another bridge with the features and capacity needed to support a conference, the conference fails to start. The system does not attempt to modify the conference settings in any way. Instead, the system sends an email to notify the conference organizer of the failure.

DMA Pool Orders

Instead of selecting a bridge for your conference, you can select a RealPresence DMA pool order to manage your conference calls.

This means that you do not need to track bridge availability or status of the conference resources manually. When you select a DMA pool order for your conference, your scheduled conference is hosted by the RealPresence DMA system. Using RealPresence DMA system defined priorities, the RealPresence DMA system can manage resource allocation between RealPresence Resource Manager system scheduled conferences and the RealPresence DMA-initiated ad hoc calls in real-time.

Room ID Numbers

When you schedule your conference on a DMA Pool Order, you can also create a room ID and dial-in number for participants to use.

If you don't specify a room ID, the RealPresence DMA system will create one and the RealPresence Resource Manager associates it with the scheduled conference.

You can also use an existing VMR number that has been created on the RealPresence DMA system, as long as the VMR is not already scheduled for the time you need it. When you use an existing RealPresence DMA VMR, you can view the VMR settings on the RealPresence DMA VMR as "scheduled" (including the time), but until the conference is started other settings will not display such as dial-out participants or additional settings. These settings only get sent to the RealPresence DMA when the conference starts.

Limitations When Scheduling a Conference on a DMA Pool Order

When scheduling your conference on a DMA pool order, you are limited by the following:

- You must use a modified dialing number when scheduling an ISDN dial-out participant. Use the Use Modified Dial Number check box when scheduling an ISDN dial-out participant.
Conference Templates

Users with Advanced Scheduler or Operator permissions can also specify a conference template to use.

Note: Two conferences scheduled with the same template may have different settings and behavior if they are hosted on different types of MCUs. Minimize or eliminate such differences by ensuring that all MCUs are similarly configured.

When using conference templates, keep in mind:

• Conference templates provide default conference settings. When you select a different template, you are selecting the default conference settings for your conference.

• The Default Template and Default Audio Template are available to all users who can schedule conferences. Other templates may also be available if they have been assigned to users with your role.

• The Default Template and Default Audio Template are stored in the system database and their names are not localized.

Conference templates for MCUs are stored in the RealPresence Resource Manager system, while conference templates for Pooled Conferences are defined in the RealPresence DMA system.

Recurring Conferences

When you schedule recurring conferences, the VMR associated with that recurring conference remains associated with that conference.

You can use the VMR to schedule other meetings during its free time. For example, the VMR associated with a recurring conference scheduled at 9 a.m. to 10 a.m. on Mondays. You can still use this VMR to schedule other meetings from the 10 a.m. today to 9 a.m. tomorrow.

Anytime Conferences

Anytime conferences are scheduled RealPresence DMA conferences that do not have designated start and end times.

These conferences are not recurring. To be able to add Anytime conferences, the RealPresence Resource Manager system must be connected to a Polycom RealPresence Distributed Media Application™ (DMA) system.

Anytime conferences do not have designated start and end times. Once an Anytime conference is configured, conferences can be started at any time by authorized participants. The following events occur when a new Anytime conference is added:

• A participant with scheduling permissions creates a new Anytime conference and the conference is assigned a virtual meeting room (VMR) number.

• The Owner passcode is automatically generated and required to launch an Anytime conference.

• All Anytime conference participants receive an email indicating the VMR number. The owner will also receive the owner passcode needed to launch the conference. Optionally, you can also include a conference passcode that participants are required to enter.

• When a participant dials the VMR number and enters the owner passcode, all dial-out participants are automatically called. If a participant dials into the VMR, they are not allowed into the conference or placed on hold until someone dials in and enters the owner passcode.
• The conference continues until all participants hang up the call.
• You can terminate an anytime conference from the RealPresence Resource Manager UI. There is no impact on the VMR.
Scheduling Conferences

Topics:

- Schedule a Conference
- Schedule an Anytime Conference
- Scheduling a Point to Point Conference
- Copy an Existing Conference
- Edit a Future Conference
- Edit a Participant's Settings
- View Scheduling Information for a Conference

You can schedule different types of conferences and add participants to the conferences.

**Note:** Since Area Schedulers can perform both basic and advanced tasks, any references in this section to the Scheduler role also applies to the Area Scheduler role.

Schedule a Conference

When you schedule a conference, you specify the time, location and the list of participants.

Users with the following default user roles are allowed to schedule conferences: scheduler, operator, area operator and area scheduler.

Optionally, you can also assign conference roles to participants such as lecturer or conference chairperson. Users with advanced scheduler or operator permission can also select a specific bridge and configure conference settings.

You can include individual participants, conference rooms or guests in conferences.

**Note:** When scheduling conferences, be aware that the time displayed in the lower left corner of the RealPresence Resource Manager system is associated with the time clock of the local PC. Conferences are scheduled according to the time on the NTP server you configured to use.

**Procedure**

1. Go to Conference > Monitor View and click Add.

   **Note:** Dial-in participants can be scheduled to dial into multiple conferences during the same time period; dial-out participants cannot.

2. Click Participant to view the Add Participants and Rooms dialog.

3. To add a participant:
   
   a. Select the Add Participants radio button.
   
   b. Click Filter and type all or part of the participant's name (with wildcards) in either of the fields provided.
c. Click Search.

d. Select the participant you want from the search results.

4. To add a guest:

   a. In the Add Participants and Rooms dialog box, select the Add Guest radio button.

   b. Click Filter and type all or part of the participant's name (with wildcards) in either of the fields provided.

   c. Click Search.

   d. Select the participant you want from the search results.

5. To add a room:

   a. In the Add Participants and Rooms dialog box, select the Add Rooms radio button.

   b. Select a site from the Search for Rooms at a Site drop-down list.

   c. Select a room from the list of rooms associated with the site you selected.

6. When finished adding participants, rooms, or guests, click Close.

7. Enter a new Conference Name or accept the system-generated name.

8. Use the Bridge Selection drop-down list to select a bridge or RealPresence DMA pool order for the conference.

   You can only select a named bridge or pool order if you have the Advanced Scheduler or Operator role. If you do not have this role, select Auto Bridge or Auto Pool Order. RealPresence DMA pool orders are only available when your system is integrated with a RealPresence DMA system.

9. Select Start Time, Duration, and End Time for the conference.

10. If you want to make the conference recurring:

    a. Click Recurrence and in the Appointment Recurrence dialog, set:

       • Recurrence frequency (Daily, Weekly, or Monthly)
       • Recurrence day (Sunday through Saturday)
       • Recurrence range (Start date and End After occurrences or End by date)

       The maximum number of recurrences is 365.

    b. Click OK.

11. Assign roles to participants.

   If the conference type and template support conference roles, you can associate conference roles with participants.

    a. Expand the Role Settings area.

    b. Use the drop-down lists to select Lecturer, Video Chairperson, or Owner.

       You must first add participants before assigning them a role.

12. To modify conference settings, expand the Conference Settings area.

    Only users with the Advanced Scheduler or Operator role can modify conference settings.

13. Use advanced settings only if you are scheduling a conference directly on a bridge that is a Polycom MGC system.

    If you aren't using a MGC system, you can ignore these settings.

14. Click Schedule Conference.

15. Optionally, send a notification e-mail to participants.
a. To exit without sending an updated email message to your participants, click Skip E-mail.

b. To send an updated email to your participants, copy additional people on the notification and/or add notes about the conference.

   Note that the To, CC, and BCC fields are ASCII only.

c. Click Send.

Related Links
Role Settings on page 166
Conference Settings on page 167
Provisioning, Monitoring, and Upgrading Polycom G7500 Systems on page 397

Role Settings
Configure role settings for a conference.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Owner</td>
<td>Required for an Anytime conference. The owner is the participant who dials into the conference and enters a passcode to start the conference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video Chairperson</td>
<td>Video Chairperson: You can select a video chairperson to control the conference from his or her video endpoint system. The video chairperson must have a video endpoint system and Chairperson conferences require an MCU.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chairperson Passcode</td>
<td>If you enable Enable Chairperson passcode, the system assigns a Chairperson Passcode and provides this password to the video chairperson in a separate email. When enabled for a conference, the chairperson must enter this password at his or the video endpoint to assume control of the conference. The length of the password is specified in the Conference and chairperson passcode length drop down list on the Conference Settings page.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lecturer</td>
<td>Designates the participant as the main participant in the conference. If you designate a lecturer for a conference, that participant will not be muted if the video operator mutes all.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Related Links
Schedule a Conference on page 164
## Conference Settings
Configure conference settings.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Available for MCU or RealPresence DMA Pool Order Conference?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Conference Type</td>
<td>Select <strong>Video</strong> or <strong>Audio Only</strong>. Video conferences can include audio participants. If you choose an audio-only conference, video participants can only participate on audio channels only and no video will be displayed.</td>
<td>MCU conferences only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conference ID</td>
<td>By default, the system assigns a <strong>Conference ID</strong>. You can change this ID to permit integration with third-party scheduling tools. This identifier must be 8 or less numeric digits. Note that the same <strong>Conference ID</strong> cannot be used in conflicting time slots. For example, if you use the same <strong>Conference ID</strong> for a meeting (10:00 am - 11:00 am) and for another meeting (10:30 am - 11:30 am), the system will prompt you to enter a new <strong>Conference ID</strong>. Not available for Pooled Conferences.</td>
<td>MCU conferences only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Room ID</td>
<td>By default, the RealPresence DMA will assign VMR as a <strong>Room ID</strong>. You can leave this field empty.</td>
<td>RealPresence DMA Pool Order conferences only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conference Passcode</td>
<td>By default, the system assigns an 15-digit <strong>Conference Passcode</strong> and provides this passcode to participants within the content of the conference notification email. You can change this passcode to another 4-digit through 16-digit number.</td>
<td>MCU conferences and RealPresence DMA Pool Order conferences.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conference Template</td>
<td>The available conference templates are automatically filtered according to the <strong>Conference Mode</strong> you select and listed in alphabetical/numerical order. When choosing a template for a RealPresence DMA pool order conference, the template list is ordered by the priority that was defined for the template in the RealPresence DMA system.</td>
<td>MCU conferences and RealPresence DMA Pool Order conferences.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Billing Code</td>
<td>Billing code is listed if areas are enabled and billing codes have been assigned to the area. If areas are enabled and a billing code is not assigned, the call detail report will list the billing code as <strong>None</strong>.</td>
<td>MCU conferences and RealPresence DMA Pool Order conferences.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Available for MCU or RealPresence DMA Pool Order Conference?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conference Mode</td>
<td>All: Supports all conferences.</td>
<td>MCU Conferences only.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Video Switching (VSW):** | Enables a special conferencing mode that provides HD video while using MCU resources more efficiently. All participants see the current speaker full screen (the current speaker sees the previous speaker). If video switching mode is enabled:  
  - The minimum line rate available is 768 kbps (except for SD resolution, available only on v7 and newer Polycom MCUs with MPM+ or MPMx cards).  
  - All endpoints must connect at the same line rate, and those that don't support the specified line rate are connected in voice-only mode.  
  - The video clarity, layout, and skins settings are not available.  
  - LPR is automatically turned off, but can be turned back on. |------------------------------------------------------------|
| **Continuous Presence (CP):** | The MCU selects the best video protocol, resolution, and frame rate for each endpoint according to its capabilities. Select this mode if scheduling only AVC endpoints. This is the only mode that supports the use of Polycom MCU profiles, third-party and legacy endpoints, and legacy RealPresence Collaboration Server (RMX) MCUs. SVC conferencing is only possible with Polycom MCUs and endpoints that support H.264 SVC. CP and SVC:  
  - The MCU selects the best video protocol, resolution, and frame rate for each endpoint according to its capabilities. Select this CP and SVC if scheduling both AVC and SVC endpoints. |------------------------------------------------------------|

**Related Links**  
[Schedule a Conference](#) on page 164

**Configure Advanced Settings**  
Use advanced settings only if you are scheduling a conference directly on a bridge that is a Polycom MGC system. If you aren't using a MGC system, you can ignore these settings.
Advanced settings include parameters related to dialing options and configuration of a Polycom MGC system which include content options, as well specific bit rates or modes to use.

**Procedure**

1. Expand the **Advance Settings** area.
2. Complete the settings for the conference scheduled on a Polycom MGC system.

**Conference Advanced Settings**

Complete the settings for the conference scheduled on a Polycom MGC system.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dial Options</td>
<td>You have three options:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• To create a conference for which the same dial-in information and a PIN code are assigned to all conference participants, use the <strong>Dial-In</strong> setting. This setting enables participants to dial in from an audio or video endpoint and connect to the same conference on the MCU.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• To dial out to all participants in the conference, use the <strong>Dial-Out</strong> setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• To allow participants both options, select <strong>Dial-In+Dial-Out</strong>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** When you change a conference from **Dial-In** to **Dial In+Dial Out**, the selected resources remain set to **Dial-In**. You must change them manually.

Not available for Pooled Conferences.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Always Use MCU</td>
<td>Forces the conference to an MCU and prevents video endpoints from connecting to each other directly. This setting is automatically selected and cannot be changed when Audio Only is the conference type or when <strong>Enable Chairperson</strong> is selected.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Video Mode</td>
<td>Determines the initial layout on a video endpoint's monitor for a multipoint conference that requires an MCU. The options are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Switching. Indicates that the display changes each time the speaker changes, and everyone sees the current speaker.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Select a <strong>Frame Count</strong>, then select the specific layout for the frames.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Available layouts are Continuous Presence settings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bit Rate</td>
<td>Specifies the maximum connection speed for endpoints in the conference. Individual endpoints that specify a lower connection speed connect at that lower speed. Endpoints that specify a higher connection speed connect at the speed identified in the conference template. If you select a higher speed than an endpoint can support, the system reduces the speed that endpoint; however, the conference uses the default connection speed for endpoints that can match it. If you place the calls through an endpoint with an embedded MCU, the behavior depends on the capabilities of that endpoint. When the dial speed is higher than the number of channels defined in the H.320 service for the endpoint, you receive a warning. To continue, lower the dial speed to less than or equal to the ISDN capability of the endpoint. Higher speed is important for high-quality video in a conference. Because higher speeds use greater bandwidth, scheduling a high-bandwidth conference may limit the number of conferences that you can reserve at one time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T.120 Mode</td>
<td>For MGC-hosted conferences only, selects the protocols and specifications for multipoint data communication. In the T.120 menu, select the speed for the T.120 connection. See your IT department to determine the best combinations for your conferences. To disable the T.120 mode, select None. If you select T.120, these options may be available, according to the participant's endpoint and software: • Application Sharing. Enables two or more participants to work on the same document or application, even when only one participant has the application. In application sharing, one participant launches the application, and it runs simultaneously on all other computers. • File Transfer. Enables participants to send files to each other. • Chat or Whiteboard. Enables participants to communicate with each other by writing. In all of these modes, participants can view and hear each other. Not available for Pooled Conferences.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Schedule an Anytime Conference

If your RealPresence Resource Manager system is not integrated with a RealPresence DMA system, you cannot create an Anytime conference.

Users with the following default user roles are allowed to schedule Anytime conferences: Scheduler, Advanced Scheduler, Operator, Area Operator and Area Scheduler.

**Procedure**

1. Go to Conference > Monitor View and click Add .
2. Mark the Anytime check box which is to the right of the Bridge Selection drop-down list.
3. Click **Participants** to add participants to the conference.
   a. Select one of the following: **Add Participants**, or **Add Rooms** or **Add Guest**.
   b. Click **Filter** and type all or part of the participant or room name (with wildcards) in either of the fields provided.
      If searching for a room, use the Last Name or Room Name field.
   c. Click **Search**.
   d. Select the participant or room you want from the search results.
   e. To add a guest, select **Add Guest**, select a guest from the list and click **Add Guest**.
      You can also filter the list by clicking **Filter** and entering the last or the first name of the guest you want.
   f. Repeat these steps to add all required participants, rooms and guests and then click **Close**.
4. Enter a new Conference **Name** or accept the name that the system generated.
5. Use the **Bridge Selection** drop-down list to select a RealPresence DMA pool order for the conference.
6. Assign roles to participants.
   If the conference type and template support conference roles, you can associate conference roles with participants.
   a. Expand the **Roles Settings** area.
   b. Use the drop-down lists to select an **Owner** for the conference.
      You must first add participants before assigning them a role.
7. Configure conference settings.
   a. Expand **Conference Settings**.
   b. Enter a conference passcode.
8. (Optional) Enter a **Room ID** to use.
   If this field is empty, RealPresence DMA will assign a VMR number.
9. To save the conference details, click **Save**.

### Anytime Conference Role Settings
Configure the role settings for an anytime conference.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Owner</td>
<td>Required for an Anytime conference. The owner is the participant who dials into the conference and enters a passcode to start the conference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video Chairperson</td>
<td>Video Chairperson: You can select a video chairperson to control the conference from his or her video endpoint system. The video chairperson must have a video endpoint system and Chairperson conferences require an MCU.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Role</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chairperson Passcode</td>
<td>A chairperson passcode is required for an Anytime conference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If you use a Chairperson passcode, the system assigns an 15-digit Chairperson Passcode and provides this password to the video chairperson in a separate email.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When enabled for a conference, the chairperson must enter this 15-digit password at his or her video endpoint to assume control of the conference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You can change this password to another 4- through 16-digit number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lecturer</td>
<td>Designates the participant as the main participant in the conference. If you designate a lecturer for a conference, that participant will not be muted if the video operator mutes all.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Scheduling a Point to Point Conference**

Take the following into consideration when scheduling point to point calls:

- A point to point call only has two device participants.
- At least one endpoint should be a hardware such as Polycom HDX or RealPresence Group Series.
- Make sure the Always Use MCU property is galse in Customized Profile Summary of the selected conference template.
- Devices behind a firewall can be the caller side, but H.323 IP address call is not supported.
- The Bridge Selection should be Auto Bridge when scheduling a conference.

**Copy an Existing Conference**

You can copy an existing conference to be used as a template for a new conference.

By default, users with the scheduler roles see only their conferences in the All Conferences list, while users with the operator role see all the conferences on the system,

If you have configured areas, users with the operator role see all the conferences for the areas to which they belong. By default, users assigned other roles cannot view conferences.

**Procedure**

1. Go to Conference > Monitor View.
2. Select the conference of interest and click Clone.
3. If you used a template other than the default when you created the conference, re-select the template.
4. Make the required changes to the conference date, participants, rooms, or other settings.
5. When finished, click Schedule Conference.
   - The system verifies that it has a bridge with the capabilities and resources required for your conference. If it does, the conference notification email appears with a message indicating Conference Successfully Scheduled.
6. To exit without sending an updated email message to your participants, click Skip E-mail.
Edit a Future Conference

You can modify future conferences.

By default, users with the scheduler roles see only their conferences in the All Conferences list, while users with the operator role see all the conferences on the system.

If you have configured areas, users with the operator role see all the conferences for the areas to which they belong. By default, users assigned other roles cannot view conferences.

Note: When editing recurrence conferences, the system deletes the old recurrence conferences and creates new conferences. In this case, if you delete some conferences among a series of recurrence conferences and then edit the recurrence conference, the system also re-creates the deleted conferences.

Procedure

1. Go to Conference > Monitor View.
2. Click Filter to display future conferences.
3. Select the conference of interest and click Edit.
4. If you select a recurring conference, a dialog appears asking if you want to edit all conferences in the series or just the selected one.

Make the appropriate choice and click Edit.

The conference scheduling page appears.
5. Make the required changes to the conference date, participants, or other settings.

For information on performing these tasks.
6. When finished, click Schedule.

The system verifies that it has a bridge with the capabilities and resources required for your conference. If it does, the conference notification email appears with a message indicating Conference Successfully Scheduled.
7. To exit without sending an updated email message to your participants, click Skip Email.
8. To send an updated email to your participants, copy additional people on the notification and/or add notes about the conference.

Note that the To, CC, and BCC fields are ASCII only.
9. Click Send.

The system sends the updated conference notification email message. The Conference > Monitor View appears. Your conference appears in the conference list.

Edit a Participant's Settings

You can edit conference participant settings after you have added them to a scheduled conference.

If the conference is ongoing or already taken place, you can no longer edit the settings.

When you edit a participant's settings, those settings are valid only for the current conference that you are scheduling.

Procedure
1. Go to **Conference > Monitor View**.
2. Select a conference of interest and click **Edit**.
3. If you select a recurring conference, a dialog appears asking if you want to edit all conferences in the series or just the selected one.
   
   Make the appropriate choice and click **Edit**.
4. In the conference scheduling page, click **Edit** beside a participant to open the **Edit Participant Settings** dialog.
5. In the **Edit Participant Settings** dialog, you can edit the participant settings as required.
6. When finished, click **OK**.

### Participant Settings

Edit the participant settings in the **Edit Participant Settings** dialog.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Endpoints</td>
<td>Select an endpoint from the list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How will this participant/room/guest join the conference?</td>
<td>Select <strong>In Person, Audio Only</strong> or <strong>Use Video</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bit Rate</td>
<td>Select the Bit Rate at which the participant will join the conference. If you select Automatic, the participants bit rate will match the bit rate setting configured for the conference when it was scheduled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dial Options</td>
<td>Select either <strong>Dial-In</strong> or <strong>Dial-Out</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dial Type</td>
<td>Select either <strong>H.323</strong>, <strong>SIP (SIP URI)</strong> or <strong>H.320</strong>. If no dial type is selected, it defaults to <strong>E.164</strong>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| If H.323 is selected for Dial Type: | **Number:**  
| | • Completed automatically and is read-only when the user is not a guest.  
| | • Modify the number type if necessary (IP address, E.164, H.323, Annex-0)  
| | • Add an extension if needed.  |
| If SIP is selected for Dial Type: | **SIP URI:** Completed automatically and is read-only when the user is not a guest.  |
| | **Note**  
| | When scheduling a SIP dial-out participant, you cannot schedule the participant as audio-only, encrypted, or use and extension.  |
| If ISDN is selected for Dial Type: | Enter the country code, area code, and phone number as necessary.  
| | Use a modified dial number if you need to dial a prefix or an outside line first.  
| | **Note**  
| | You must use a modified dialing number if you are adding a dialout ISDN participant.  |
### View Scheduling Information for a Conference

You can view scheduling information for a conference.

By default, users with the scheduler roles see only their conferences in the All Conferences list, while users with the operator role see all the conferences on the system.

If you have configured areas, users with the operator role see all the conferences for the areas to which they belong. By default, users assigned other roles cannot view conferences.

**Procedure**

1. Go to Conference > Monitor View
2. From the Filter list, select the conference type of interest.
3. Select the conference to view from the list.

   Under Conference Actions, click View.

   The detailed information of this conference is displayed on the right.

For details on the type of information that is provided, see Conference and Participant Details.
Managing Conferences and Participants

Topics:

• Working with Conferences
• Managing Active Conferences
• Managing Participants within an Active Conference

You can manage conferences and participants in the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

Working with Conferences

You can view ongoing, past, and future conferences.
You can view them in a list view or calendar view.
What you see depends on your user permissions. For example, if you have the view-only scheduler role, you cannot see the details of any conferences. Those with the operation role can view all conferences, including details.

View All Conferences

You can view both scheduled and ongoing conferences in the conference monitor view.
You can toggle between a calendar and list view of all conferences.
When you view a conference, you can also view its status and any applicable alerts.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>State</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Future Conference</td>
<td>Scheduled conference that has not yet started.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Completed Conference</td>
<td>A scheduled conference that occurred in the past.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conference</td>
<td>A conference that is still /ongoing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alerts Conference</td>
<td>The bridge on which the /ongoing conference is being hosted has sent an alert.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Examples of events that will trigger a bridge alert are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• A participant is connected in secondary mode (audio only).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• A conference is not yet full (for example, not all scheduled participants have joined the conference).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note</td>
<td>This state does not apply to conferences scheduled on a RealPresence DMA Pool Order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conference End Warning</td>
<td>The conference is ending. For example, the conference is in its last five minutes unless someone extends it.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Procedure

1. Go to Conference > Monitor View.
   The All Conferences list displays a list of all conferences.
2. Select the 50, 100, or 200 from the Items per page list to display the conferences by page.
3. To view the list in calendar view, click Calendar View.
   The All Conferences page displays the conferences in a calendar view. Click Day, Week, or Month to change the calendar view.
4. To view the list in list view, click Calendar View again.

Filter the Conference List

You can filter the conference list to identify specific conferences you want to view.
You must be in list view to filter the conference list. Filtering is not available in calendar view.
You can filter by a number of criteria including date, bridge, conference name and so on.

Procedure

1. Go to Conference > Monitor View.
   The All Conferences list displays a list of all conferences.
2. Click Filter to filter the All Conferences list.
   The Filter dialog allows you to filter on the various criteria.
3. To filter by date:
   a. Click Today to filter on conferences happening today.
      Optionally, you can change the date to filter on conferences for a specific day.
   b. Click From and To to filter on conferences within a range of dates.
      Select From and/or To and fill in the dates in the following format: YYYY-MM-DD or use the calendar tool to select a date.
4. To filter by Anytime conferences:
   a. Mark the Anytime check box to see all Anytime conferences.
   b. Optionally, use the date filtering options in combination with the check box.
5. To filter by status:
   a. Click Status.
   b. Click the text box and select a status from the context menu.
      Available statuses include: All, Future, History, and Ongoing.
   c. Optionally, use the date filtering options in combination with the check box.
6. To filter by bridge:
   a. Click Bridge and fill in a bridge name in the text box.
   b. Optionally, use the date filtering options in combination with the check box.
7. To filter by dial in number:
   a. Click Dial in Number and enter a dial in number in the text box.
8. To filter by creator:
9. To filter by conference owner:
   a. Click **Owner** and fill in the owner’s name in the text box.
   b. Optionally, use the date filtering options in combination with the check box.

10. To filter by conference name:
    a. Click **Conference Name** and fill in the conference name in the text box.
    b. Optionally, use the date filtering options in combination with the check box.

11. To filter by endpoint name:
    a. Click **Endpoint Name** and fill in the conference name in the text box.
    b. Optionally, use the date filtering options in combination with the check box.

12. To filter by area:
    a. Click **Area** and fill in the area name in the text box.
    b. Optionally, use the date filtering options in combination with the check box.

13. When finished selecting criteria, press **Enter**.
    Only 1000 results can be returned when there are over 1000 results.

14. Click **Reset** to clean all the conditions before you do another search.

### Delete a Conference

You can delete scheduled or past conferences.

You cannot delete active conferences.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Conference > Monitor View**.
2. If necessary, filter the **All Conferences** list to include the conference you want to delete.
3. Select the conference of interest and click **Delete**.
4. If you select a recurring conference, a dialog appears asking you if you want to delete just the conference you selected or all conferences in the series.
   Make the appropriate choice. You cannot deleted active conferences in the series.
5. Click **OK** to confirm the deletion.
   The conference is deleted. For future conferences, the system emails the change to the conference owner and participants and releases the participant and room resources.

### Export a List of Scheduled Conferences

Users with the Operator or Admin role can export a list of future conferences to a CSV file.

You can export a list of scheduled conferences. Ongoing or past conferences cannot be exported.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Conference > Monitor View**.
2. In the **All Conferences** list, be sure you filter the conference list to include only scheduled conferences.
   You cannot export ongoing or past conferences.
Managing Active Conferences

Depending on your permissions, you can manage active conferences. For example, you can change the layout that participants see or add new participants.

**Note:** RealPresence Immersive Studio systems display as expandable folders containing an icon for each of the codecs associated with the endpoint. You can only perform actions on the master codec. The master codec is indicated by name of the codec that ends with “_1”.

Manage an Active Conference

You can manage an active conference.

Users with the operator or advanced scheduler role can make changes to the conference, such as add new participants, terminate the conference and so on.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Conference** > **Monitor View**.
2. From the list of **All Conferences**, select the conference of interest and click **Manage**.
   
   The conference page appears in a new tab displaying the **Participants** list.
3. Use these actions under the **Conference Actions** drop-down list as needed:
   
   • Extend Duration: Extend the duration of an active conference.
   • Change Layout: For applicable endpoints. Change the default video layout for the conference display.
     
     ◦ Switching. Indicates that the display changes each time the speaker changes, and everyone sees the current speaker.
     ◦ Select a Frame Count, then select the specific layout for the frames. The available layouts are Continuous Presence settings.
   • Add Favorites: Add participants from one of your Favorites lists to the selected conference.
4. Use these under the **Participant Actions** drop-down list as needed.
   
   See Manage a Participant's Endpoint During a Conference for details.

**Related Links**

- [Participant List Settings](#) on page 179

**Participant List Settings**

The **Participants** list displays these settings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Status</td>
<td>The state of the participant's connection as identified by an icon. Hover over the icon to determine the status.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>The type of conference as identified by an icon. Hover over the icon to determine the type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The participant's name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endpoint</td>
<td>The name assigned to the participant's endpoint when it registered or was added to the system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access</td>
<td>The endpoint's network interface type. Possible values include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• H323_E164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• H323_ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• H323_ANNEX_O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• ISDN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• SIP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Address</td>
<td>The IP address, E614 number, H323 alias, or ISDN number of the participant's endpoint (if a dial-out), or SIP URI.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bit Rate</td>
<td>The sum of the audio and video data transfer rate (in kbps) of the participant's endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dial Mode</td>
<td>How the participant joined the call. Possible values include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Audio or Video Dial-In</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Audio or Video Dial-Out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bridge</td>
<td>The MCU or RealPresence DMA pool order on which the participants call resides.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Related Links

- Manage an Active Conference on page 179
- Manage a Participant's Endpoint During a Conference on page 184

**Write Conference Notes During a Conference**

You can write conference notes when managing an ongoing conference.

**Procedure**

1. Go to Conference > Monitor View.
2. Click Filter to filter the All Conference list to include the conference of interest.
3. From the list of All Conferences, select the conference of interest and click Manage.
4. Expand the Conference Notes pane on the far right of the screen.
5. Click inside the text box to type a note.
   - If you type a note and then decide to undo your changes, click Escape to return to the original note.
6. Click Save.
The note becomes visible on any RealPresence Resource Manager browser session where other users are monitoring the same conference.

Add Additional Participants to an Active Conference

Users with the Operator role can add additional participants to an active conference.

Procedure

1. Go to Conference > Monitor View.
2. Click Filter to filter the All Conference list to include the conference of interest.
3. From the list of All Conferences, select the conference of interest and click Manage.
4. Go to Conference Actions > Add Participant.
5. If necessary, edit the new participants' settings.
6. To initiate the system dial out to new participants, select the participants of interest from the New Conference Participants list and click Connect New Participants.

   The system dials out to the participants and adds them to the conference.

Add Guests to an Active Conference

Users with the Operator role can add guests to an active conference.

Note: If guests with the same dialstring and different extensions are added into a RealPresence DMA ongoing meeting, and then disconnected to the meeting. The guests may not reconnect to the meeting successfully. You need to remove the guests and add them back to the meeting manually.

Procedure

1. Go to Conference > Monitor View.
2. Click Filter to filter the All Conference list to include the conference of interest.
3. From the list of All Conferences, select the conference of interest and click Manage.
4. Go to Conference Actions > Add Participant.
   a. Click Filter and type all or part of the participant's name (with wildcards) in either of the fields provided.
   b. Click Search.
   c. Select the participant you want from the search results. The guest's name appears in the underlying New Conference Participants list.
5. To add new guest participants (participants not available from the local directory, enterprise directory, or Guest Book), do the following:
   a. Click the Add Guest radio button.
   b. Fill in the necessary information in the Add Guest dialog.
6. Click OK.
7. Click Close when you are finished adding guests.

   The added participants are listed in the New Conference Participants list at the bottom of the page.
8. To initiate the system dial out to new participants, select the participants from the **New Conference Participants** list and click **Connect New Participants**.
   The system dials out to the participants and adds them to the conference.

### Add a Room to an Active Conference

You can add a room to an active conference.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Conference > Monitor View**.
2. Click **Filter** to filter the **All Conference** list to include the conference you want to manage.
3. Select the conference of interest and click **Manage**.
4. From the **Conference Actions** list, click **Add Room**.
   - Select a site from the **Search for Rooms at a Site** drop-down list.
   - Select a room from the list of rooms associated with the site you selected.
   The conference room name appears in the underlying **New Conference Participants** list.
5. Click **Close**.
6. To initiate the system dial out to the room, select the room from the **New Conference Participants** list and click **Connect New Participants**.
   The system dials out to the room endpoint system and adds the room to the conference.

### View a Participant’s Video During a Conference

You can view a participant’s video during an ongoing conference.

This is helpful to troubleshoot any video issues during the conference.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Conference > Monitor View**.
2. Click **Filter** to filter the **All Conference** list to include the conference you want to manage.
3. Select the conference of interest and click **Manage**.
4. Select a participant from the **Participants** list.
   The selected participant's video appears in the **Conference Image** section of the interface.
5. Click **Shuffle** to shuffle to the next participant’s video.

### Join an Active Conference

By default, users assigned the **Operator** role can join an active conference to offer conference support.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Conference > Monitor View**.
2. Click **Filter** to filter the **All Conference** list to include the conference you want to manage.
3. Select the conference of interest and click **Manage**.
4. From the **Conference Actions** list, click **Join Conference**.
   The **Join Conference** dialog appears.
5. If you have multiple endpoints, choose the endpoint to use to join the conference.
6. Click **Join Conference**.
   Your endpoint is added to the conference with your video blocked but your audio not muted.

**Add a Participant from a Favorites List to an Active Conference**

By default, users assigned the **Operator** role can work with favorites lists.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Conference > Monitor View**.
2. Click **Filter** to filter the **All Conference** list to include the conference you want to manage.
3. Select the conference of interest and click **Manage**.
4. From the **Conference Actions** list, click **Add Favorites**.
5. From the **Favorites List**, expand the list of interest.
   The names of the participants in the list is displayed.
6. Select the participant of interest from the list.
   The participant's name appears in the underlying **New Conference Participants** list.
7. Repeat steps 5 and 6 to add all participants from **Favorites List** and then click **Close**.
8. To initiate the system dial out to new participants, select the participants of interest from the **New Conference Participants** list and from the **New Participants Action** menu, click **Connect New Participants**.
   The system dials out to the participants and adds them to the conference.

**Terminate an Active Conference**

You can terminate an active conference.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Conference > Monitor View**.
2. Click **Filter** to filter the **All Conferences** list to include the conference you want to terminate.
3. Select the conference of interest and click **Terminate**.
4. Click **Terminate** to confirm the termination.

**Managing Participants within an Active Conference**

When monitoring a conference, you can manage the participants within the conference.

You can manage their endpoints, and view the technical details of their connection.

**Add or Save a Participant to a Favorites List**

By default, users assigned the **Operator** role can work with favorites lists.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Conference > Ongoing**.
2. Click **Filter** to filter the **All Conference** list to include the conference you want to manage.
3. Select the conference of interest and click **Manage**.
4. From the **Participants** list, select the participant of interest.

5. From the **Participant Actions** menu, click **Save as Favorite**.
   
The names of the participants in the list displays.

6. From the **Save as Favorite Participant** dialog, select the Favorite List to which to save the participant and click **OK**.

## Manage a Participant's Endpoint During a Conference

You can manage a participant's endpoint during a conference.

**Note:** When using the commands on the manage page, these context-sensitive commands only appear when the participant's endpoint supports the action, and the commands work for rooms on the participant list as well.

### Procedure

1. Go to **Conference > Monitor View**.
2. Click **Filter** to filter the **All Conferences** list to include the conference you want to manage.
3. Select the conference of interest and click **Manage**.
4. Select a participant to manage from the **Participants** list.
5. From the **Participants Actions** list, select **View**.
6. From the **View Participants Details** dialog, choose a manage option from the right section of the dialog.

### Related Links

- **Participant List Settings** on page 179
- **Participant Device Related Details** on page 186
- **Participant Call Related Details** on page 187

## Managing Participant Settings

The table explains the options on the **View Participants Details** dialog

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Use this action to...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mute or Unmute Audio</td>
<td>Mute or unmute the selected participant's audio line into the conference. This option appears only when the conference is running on an external MCU. The Audio column in the Participants list shows the current status of this setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Block or Unblock Video</td>
<td>Block or unblock the selected participant's video line into the conference. This option appears only when the conference is running on an external MCU. The Video column in the Participants list shows the current status of this setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connect or Disconnect</td>
<td>Disconnect or reconnect the selected participant to the conference. A disconnected participant is still associated with the conference and cannot be scheduled for other conferences.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remove</td>
<td>Remove the selected participant from the Participants list at which time the participant can be scheduled for another conference.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### View a Participant's Details During a Conference

You can view details for a participant's endpoint while the participant is in conference.

**Note:** RealPresence Immersive Studio systems display as expandable folders containing an icon for each of the codecs associated with the endpoint. You can only perform actions on the master codec. The master codec is indicated by name of the codec that ends with “_1”.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Conference > Monitor View**.
2. Click **Filter** to filter the **All Conferences** list to include the conference you want to manage.
3. Select the conference of interest and click **Manage**.
4. From the **Participants** list, select a participant to view.
5. Click **Participant Actions > View**.
6. Double-click on the participant of interest.

   The **View Participant Details** dialog appears with the **Call Properties** displayed. It includes the **Near End** and **Far End** video, the Participant's name, **Status**, **Errors**, **Warnings**, **Endpoint Type**, **Address**, **Access**, and **Bit Rate**.

7. To view additional participant details, change the selection in the **Call Properties** drop-down menu.

   - Select **Device** to view the participant device related details.
   - Select **Call Details** to view the participant call related details.
   - If you select **Call Quality of Service**, you'll see these standard service measurements: Total Packet Loss, % Packet Loss, Audio Packet Loss, Video Packet Loss, Audio Jitter, and Video Jitter.

**Related Links**

- **Participant Device Related Details** on page 186
- **Participant Call Related Details** on page 187
# Participant Device Related Details

The table explains the participant device related details.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Endpoint Type</td>
<td>Usually the endpoint model, such as Polycom HDX system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP Address</td>
<td>The IP address for the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site</td>
<td>The location of the endpoint as identified by its IP address and the subnet of the site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gatekeeper</td>
<td>The gatekeeper with which the endpoint is registered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presence</td>
<td>Whether or not the endpoint is registered with a Presence service, so that its availability can be reported.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device Managed</td>
<td>Whether or not the endpoint is registered with a Provisioning service, so that it can be configured automatically.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISDN Line Status</td>
<td>The status of the ISDN line. Possible values include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Operational</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Non-operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This field is blank for the following endpoint types: <strong>PVX, MGC, RMX, GW/MCU, Other, and TANDBERG</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alias Type</td>
<td>If the endpoint has an alias designation, the type of alias. Possible types include E.164, H.323 ID, URL, Transport Address, email, Party Number, and Unknown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alias Value</td>
<td>Value for the alias type shown.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Related Links**

- [View a Participant's Details During a Conference](#) on page 185
- [Manage a Participant's Endpoint During a Conference](#) on page 184
## Participant Call Related Details

The table explains the participant call related details.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Video Protocol</strong></td>
<td>The video connection protocol, both transmission (Tx) and reception (Rx), the endpoint is using. Possible values include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• H.261</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H.261 is an ITU standard designed for two-way communication over ISDN lines and supports data rates which are multiples of 64Kbit/s. H.261 supports CIF and QCIF resolutions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• H.263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H.263 is based on H.261 with enhancements that improve video quality over modems. It supports CIF, QCIF, SQCIF, 4CIF and 16CIF resolutions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• H.264</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Video Format</strong></td>
<td>The video format, both transmission (Tx) and reception (Rx), the endpoint is using.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Video Rate</strong></td>
<td>The video bandwidth negotiated with the far site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Video Rate Used</strong></td>
<td>The actual video bandwidth used in the call to the far site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Video Frame Rate</strong></td>
<td>Specifies the frame rate to use.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Video FEC Errors</strong></td>
<td>The number of Forward Error Correction (FEC) errors that have been corrected in the current call.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cause Code</strong></td>
<td>The cause code showing how the call ended.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Audio Rate</strong></td>
<td>The audio bandwidth negotiated with the far site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Audio Protocol</strong></td>
<td>The audio connection protocol, both transmission (Tx) and reception (Rx), the endpoint is using.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Related Links**

- [View a Participant's Details During a Conference](#) on page 185
- [Manage a Participant's Endpoint During a Conference](#) on page 184
Managing the Guest Book and Favorites Lists

Topics:

• Managing the Guest Book
• Managing Favorites

The RealPresence Resource Manager system provides two ways that you can customize and expand the user directories.

The system has a Guest Book and a Favorites List.

Managing the Guest Book

Users with the schedulers, operator, or administrator role have access to the Guest Book.

The Guest Book provides a way to store conference participants that aren't managed by the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

The Guest Book is a local system directory that includes guest participants who were either explicitly added to the Guest Book or saved to the Guest Book while being added as conference participants. Guest book entries are static and are not imported through the dynamically updated enterprise directory nor included in the system Global Address Book. The Guest Book is limited to 500 entries.

Users with the schedulers, operator, or administrator role have access to the Guest Book. The Guest Book provides a way to store conference participants that aren't managed by the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

View the Guest Book

By default, both system and area schedulers, operator, and administrators have access to the Guest Book.

When areas are enabled for your system, you can view only those guests who have been assigned to an area that you manage. If you can manage more than one area, you can view users from all areas that you manage.

Procedure

1. Go to User > Guest Book.
2. Click Filter to filter the guest book by entering the first or the last name of the guest you want to find.
3. Click Search to get a filtered list.
   Or click Reset to clear your inputs. The Guest Book pages includes a list of guest book entries.
## Guest Book Entries

The **Guest Book** pages includes a list of guest book entries that includes these fields.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Guest Name</td>
<td>The guest's first and last name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E-mail</td>
<td>The guest's email address. The system validates the email structure only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Location</td>
<td>The location of the guest's endpoint system. This is a free-form entry field that the system does not validate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>(Optional) The ISDN phone number for the user. This number is constructed from the Country code + Area/City code + phone number or entered as the modified dial number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Join Mode</td>
<td>Indicates whether the guest will use an audio endpoint or video endpoint to join conferences.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dial Options</td>
<td>Indicates whether the guest will dial into conferences or that the system should dial out to the guest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dial Type</td>
<td>Indicates whether the guest has an H.323 (IP), SIP (IP), or H.320 (ISDN) endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selected Area</td>
<td>This field is available when areas are enabled and the user can manage more than one area.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Add a Guest to the System Guest Book

You can add a guest to the guest book.

You can add as many as 500 guests, but each guest must be unique. The RealPresence Resource Manager validates each guest for a unique H.323 ID, E.164 number, IP address, and so on. The RealPresence Resource Manager verifies that the guest does not already exist in the guest book or as a user-associated endpoint.

**Note:** You can also add a new guest to the guest book when you are scheduling a conference.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **User > Guest Book** and click **Add**.
2. Configure the **Guest Information** section of the **Add New Guest** dialog.
3. If the guest has an H.323 (IP) endpoint, configure the H.323 (IP) settings.
4. If the guest has a SIP (IP) endpoint, configure SIP (IP) settings.
5. If the guest has an H.320 (ISDN) endpoint, configure the H.320 (ISDN) settings.
6. Click **OK**.

**Related Links**

- [Guest Information](#) on page 190
- [H.323 (IP) Settings](#) on page 191
Guest Information

The table explains the **Guest Information** section of the **Add New Guest** dialog.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First Name</td>
<td>The guest's first name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last Name</td>
<td>The guest's last name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Email</td>
<td>The guest's email address. The system only validates the structure of the email address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Location</td>
<td>The location of the guest's endpoint system. This is a free-form field that the system does not validate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dial Type</td>
<td>Specify the protocol that the guest's endpoint supports: H.323 (IP), SIP (IP), or H.320 (ISDN). This selection will determine what other sections of the <strong>Add New Guest</strong> dialog you will need to complete.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Join Mode</td>
<td>Specify whether the guest's endpoint is an audio or video endpoint.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:**

A guest may have multiple endpoints. Create a separate **Guest Book** entry for each endpoint.

| Dial Options | Specify whether the guest will dial into conferences, or require that the system dial out to the guest. |

**Note:**

To support both options, create a separate **Guest Book** entry for each.

| Assigned Area | This field is available when areas are enabled and the user can manage more than one area. |

**Related Links**

- [Add a Guest to the System Guest Book](#) on page 189
**H.323 (IP) Settings**

The table explains the H.323 (IP) settings for H.323 endpoints.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number and Number Type</td>
<td>The specific dial string for the guest, and the format of the number that the MCU must resolve to contact the guest. This may be an IP address, E.164 address, H.323, or Annex-O. For Annex-O dialing, in the Number field enter the H.323.alias@IP, for example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• 1001@11.12.13.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <a href="mailto:1001@domain.com">1001@domain.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <a href="mailto:username@domain.com">username@domain.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• username@11.12.13.14</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:**  
• Polycom endpoints must register with a gatekeeper before they will attempt an Annex-O call.  
• You can enter a dial string for another MCU as a guest. If so, you may need to specify the conference ID in the Extension field also.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Extension</th>
<th>Use this field to connect the conference to another conference on another MCU. In this field, specify the conference ID or passcode for the conference on the other MCU.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MCU Service</td>
<td>Choose from the list of MCU services defined on the MCUs with which the RealPresence Resource Manager system is registered. Leave this at Any Available Service unless you have specific knowledge of MCU services.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Related Links**

Add a Guest to the System Guest Book on page 189

**SIP (IP) Settings**

The table explains the SIP (IP) settings for SIP endpoint.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sip URI</td>
<td>The SPI URI the MCU must resolve to contact the guest.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
MCU Service
Choose from the list of MCU services defined on the MCUs with which the RealPresence Resource Manager system is registered. Leave this at Any Available Service unless you have specific knowledge of MCU services.

Related Links
Add a Guest to the System Guest Book on page 189

H.320 (ISDN) Settings
The table explains the H.320 (ISDN) settings for H.320 (ISDN) endpoints.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use Modified Dial Number</td>
<td>Select this option first (as needed) as it will determine the other fields you must configure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country</td>
<td>(Not available when Use Modified Dial Number is selected.) The country to which the system will dial out to the guest. Click Select to view a list of country codes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Area/City Code</td>
<td>(Not available when Use Modified Dial Number is selected.) The area code to which the system will dial out to the guest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>The participant's phone number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extension</td>
<td>Cannot be configured.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCU Service</td>
<td>Choose from the list of MCU services defined on the MCUs with which the RealPresence Resource Manager system has registered. Leave this at Any Available Service unless you have specific knowledge of MCU services.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Related Links
Add a Guest to the System Guest Book on page 189

Edit a Guest in the Guest Book
You can edit information associated with a guest in the guest book.

If you edit a guest that is already scheduled for a future conference or participating in an ongoing conference, the changes you make will not be reflected in the conference.

Procedure
1. Go to User > Guest Book and select the guest of interest.
2. Click Edit 
3. Change the Guest Information section and endpoint information sections of the Add New Guest dialog, as needed.
4. Click OK.
Delete a Guest from the Guest Book
You can delete a guest from the Guest Book.

Procedure
1. Go to User > Guest Book and select the guest of interest.
2. Click Delete.
   Click OK to confirm the deletion.

Managing Favorites
Users with the operator role or area operator role to create one or more Favorites list, which they can use to quickly select participants to participate in conferences.

Users with the operator or area operator roles with Monitoring permissions can view, add, edit, delete, or use Favorites lists and these Favorites lists cannot be shared with other operators.

Add a Favorites List
You can create a new Favorites list.

Procedure
1. Go to Conference > Favorites.
2. On the Favorites page, click Add.
3. Enter a unique name for the Favorites List Name.
4. Enter a description.
5. Click Filter and enter all or part of the person's last name or first name in the Search Available Members field and click Search.
   The system searches the Users list (local and domain) for users who are associated with endpoints and who meet your search criteria. The results appear in the Search Results column.

   Note: • Depending on the search domain, the search function may return different results.
   • The search results only include users associated with endpoints.

6. Select the user(s) of interest from the list and move them to the Favorite List Members column.
7. Repeat step 5 and 6 until you've added the users of interest to your Favorites list and then click OK.
   The new list appears in the Favorites page.

Edit a Favorites List
You can edit a Favorites list.

You can rename it or remove or add users to the list.

Procedure
1. Go to Conference > Favorites.
2. Select the Favorites list of interest and click Edit.
3. In the Edit Favorites List dialog, edit the Favorites List Name and Description fields as needed.
4. Remove or add users to the Favorite List Members column as needed and then click OK.

Delete a Favorites List

You can delete a Favorites list.

When you delete a Favorites list, the users remain in the system but are not associated with the deleted Favorites list.

Procedure

1. Go to Conference > Favorites.
2. Select the Favorites list of interest and click Delete.
3. Click OK to confirm the deletion.

The list is deleted from the system.
Conference and Participant Details

Topics:

• Conference Image
• Conference Details
• Conference Features
• Bridge (MCU) Features
• Participants
• Participant Details

When scheduling and configuring a conference, see the conference and participant detail fields.

Conference Image

The Conference Image section displays the selected participant's video.

Click Shuffle to shuffle to the next participant's video.

Conference Details

The Conference Details section has these fields.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Creator</td>
<td>Name of the person who created the conference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Not applicable for ad hoc conferences.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Owner</td>
<td>Name of the owner of the conference, if an owner is selected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start Date/Time</td>
<td>For a scheduled conference, the start date and time of the conference and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the time difference between the local time and the standard time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For an unscheduled conference, the date and time the conference started.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duration</td>
<td>For a scheduled conference, how long the conference is scheduled to last.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For a completed conference, how long the conference actually lasted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>End Date/Time</td>
<td>The date and time the conference ended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>The type of conference. Possible values include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Audio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Audio-Video</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Status</td>
<td>The state of the conference. Possible values include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Alerts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Declined</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Finished</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Future</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recurring</td>
<td>Whether or not the conference was scheduled as a recurring conference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connection</td>
<td>Connection information about the conference. Possible values include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Multipoint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Point To Point</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Gateway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Embedded Multipoint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bit Rate</td>
<td>The rate (in kbps) at which to transfer the conference audio or video data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conf Monitoring ID</td>
<td>System-assigned ID used for troubleshooting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Media Type</td>
<td>Describes the media type used for the conference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video Session Type</td>
<td>Type of video session:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VSW (Video Switching)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CP (Continuous Presence)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SVC (Scalable Video Coding) only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CP and SVC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video Layout</td>
<td>The video layout for the conference. For more information about layouts, see your MCU documentation. Possible values are: VIDEO_SWITCHING</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video Format</td>
<td>For a conference hosted on an MCU, the video format of the conference data stream. Possible values include: • Automatic • CIF • QCIF • 4CIF • 16CIF • VGA • SVGA • XGA • NTSC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video Protocol</td>
<td>For a conference hosted on an MCU, the video protocol of the conference data stream. Possible values include: • Auto • H.261 • H.263 • H.264</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Conference and Participant Details

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Audio Algorithm</td>
<td>For a conference hosted on an MCU, the audio compression ratio of the conference data stream. Possible values are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• AUTO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• G.711</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• G.722</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Siren 7 (16 kbps)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conference Area</td>
<td>Area or areas assigned to the selected conference owner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Participant Areas</td>
<td>List of areas to which participants belong.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Conference Features

The **Conference Features** section has these fields.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Conference Passcode</td>
<td>The conference passcode, which is assigned either by the system or the scheduler.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chairperson Option</td>
<td>Indicates whether or not the conference requires a chairperson.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The RealPresence Collaboration Server (RMX) 1000 system does not support the Chairperson feature.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chairperson Passcode</td>
<td>The passcode the chairperson must enter to take control of the conference. Not applicable when no chairperson is designated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chairperson</td>
<td>The name of the chairperson. Not applicable when no chairperson is designated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dial-in #</td>
<td>The number that can be used by participant not explicitly invited to the scheduled conference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lecture Mode</td>
<td>The type of <strong>Lecture Mode</strong>, if any, that was selected when the conference was created. Possible values are None, Lecture, and Presentation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The RealPresence Collaboration Server (RMX) 1000 system does not support Lecture Mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lecturer</td>
<td>The name of the lecturer. Not applicable when Lecture Mode is None.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lecture View Switching</td>
<td>Indicates whether or not automatic switching between participants is enabled.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Section Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dual Stream Mode</th>
<th>Possible values are:</th>
<th>Possible values are:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• None</td>
<td>• Duo Video</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• People+Content</td>
<td>• Unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Visual Concert PC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Visual Concert FX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T120 Rate</th>
<th>Possible values are:</th>
<th>Possible values are:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• None</td>
<td>• MLP - 62.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• HMLP - Var</td>
<td>• MLP - 46.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• HMLP - 384</td>
<td>• MLP - 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• HMLP - 320</td>
<td>• MLP - 38.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• HMLP - 256</td>
<td>• MLP - 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• HMLP - 192</td>
<td>• MLP - 30.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• HMLP - 128</td>
<td>• MLP - 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• HMLP - 6.4</td>
<td>• MLP - 22.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• HMLP - 62.4</td>
<td>• MLP - 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• HMLP - 14.4</td>
<td>• MLP - 14.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• MLP - Var</td>
<td>• MLP - 6.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• MLP - 64.4</td>
<td>• MLP - 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>End Time Alert</th>
<th>Whether or not the system alerts participants to the end of the conference by playing an end tone.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entry Tone</th>
<th>Whether or not an entry tone is played to all connected participants when a participant joins the conference.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exit Tone</th>
<th>Whether or not an exit tone is played to all connected participants when a participant disconnects from the conference.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### Bridge (MCU) Features

The **Bridge (MCU) Features** section, which applies only for conferences that use an MCU, has these fields.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MCU Name</td>
<td>If the conference is hosted on an MCU, shows the MCU device name hosting the conference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Not applicable when the conference is not being hosted on an MCU.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numeric ID</td>
<td>The unique conference identifier assigned by the MCU.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entry Queue Access</td>
<td>Whether or not the conference has an entry queue enabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> The RealPresence Resource Manager system enables entry queues on a per MGC basis and all conferences on an entry queue enabled MGC will be scheduled with entry queue access.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meet Me per Conf</td>
<td>Whether or not the conference is a Meet Me conference, for which a dial-in number is assigned, so that undefined participants can connect to the conference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conference on Port</td>
<td>(MGC only) Indicates whether or not the MGC is set to Conference on Port, which conserves bandwidth and ports. In this case, all participants are on a single video port and use the same connection speed and video format.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message Service Type</td>
<td>Displays the type of messages participants joining the conference hear. Possible values are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Welcome (No wait)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Attended (Wait)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• IVR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message Service Name</td>
<td>Name on the MCU of the Message Service. So, for example, a service name IVR70 which provides the IVR service.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Participants**

When you view a particular conference, the list of participants identifies users, rooms, and guests invited to participate.

When viewing a conference, the list of participants identifies participants on a call.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The participant's name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Call Info</td>
<td>How the participant joined the call. Possible values include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Video Dial-Out@&lt;Address&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Audio Dial-In</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Video Dial-In</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• In Person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Room Only</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Participant Details

The **Participant Details** section has these fields.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Name</strong></td>
<td>The participant's name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Type</strong></td>
<td>The type of conference connection. Possible values include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Audio Only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Audio-Video</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Other (for In Person and Room Only participants)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Endpoint Name</strong></td>
<td>The name assigned to the participant's endpoint when added to the system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Connection Status</strong></td>
<td>The state of the participant's endpoint connection. Possible values include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Connected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Connecting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Declined</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Disconnected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Disconnecting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Interface Type</strong></td>
<td>Possible values are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• H323</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• ISDN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• SIP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• H323_E164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• H323_ANNEX_O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• H323_ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Address</strong></td>
<td>Used to reach endpoints, such as IP address or E164 number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Number</strong></td>
<td>The IP address or phone number of the participant's endpoint (if a dial-out) or the participant's port address on the MCU (if a dial-in).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bit Rate</strong></td>
<td>The audio or video data transfer rate (in kbps) of the participant's endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Encryption</strong></td>
<td>Encryption is either enabled (True) or disabled (False).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Area</strong></td>
<td>Area or areas assigned to the participant.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Part VI
Endpoint Management

Topics:

- Managing Endpoints and Peripherals
- Supported Endpoints and Peripherals
- Managing Endpoint Naming Schemes
- Managing Polycom Software Endpoints
- Scheduled Endpoint Management and Provisioning

The RealPresence Resource Manager system can manage, monitor, and provision Polycom and third-party endpoints.

Endpoint management eliminates the need to configure each endpoint individually through the hand-held remote or the endpoint's web interface. It also helps you easily enforce network, group, and system policies for each device.

Endpoint management consists of two aspects of remotely configuring endpoints: updating software and provisioning settings.
Managing Endpoints and Peripherals

Topics:

- Managing Endpoints
- Working with Endpoint Groups
- Monitoring and Managing Peripherals
- Download an Endpoint Inventory Report

You can manage and monitor endpoints and peripherals using the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

Managing Endpoints

From the Monitor View page, you can view the endpoint status, customize endpoint list, edit endpoints, reboot endpoints, and manage the endpoint associations.

View the Endpoint List

You can view all the provisioned endpoints listed in the Monitor View screen.

Procedure

> Go to Endpoint > Monitor View.

Related Links

Threshold for Stopping Synchronization on page 102
Monitoring UC Endpoint Status on page 409
Managing UC Endpoints on page 402
## Endpoint Information

The following table explains the endpoint information.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Status</strong></td>
<td>The state of the endpoint. Possible values include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Online [✓]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Offline [✗]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Licensed [✓]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• In a call [✓]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Gatekeeper/SIP/Cloud Service Registered [✓]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Gatekeeper/SIP/Cloud Service/Signaling Unregistered [✗]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Registration Status Unknown/Not Applicable [✗]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Endpoints behind Firewall [✗]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Error [✗]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Warning [✗]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• All paired peripherals are connected without alerts [✓]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• One or more paired peripherals are turned off or no longer connected [✗]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• One or more paired peripherals has an error [✗]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** If a phone crashes while in a call, the phone status may not update after it reconnects to the RealPresence Resource Manager system. When the RealPresence Resource Manager system gets a new call status from the phone or detects that the phone is offline, the system updates the phone’s call status.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>The management mode for the endpoint. Possible values include:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Non-dynamically Managed Endpoints [✓]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Dynamically Managed Endpoints [✓]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Synced RealPresence DMA Endpoints [✓]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Synced CUCM Phones [✓]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Auto-Added UC Device [✓]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Manually Added UC Device [✓]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** Auto-added and Manually UC devices refer to the phones and other Polycom UC endpoints such as Polycom Studio.
### Field Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The assigned name of the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Model</td>
<td>The type of endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAC Address</td>
<td>The MAC address of the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP Address</td>
<td>The IP address assigned to the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Area</td>
<td>(Available only when Areas are enabled.) The area with which the endpoint is associated. Users can only view area information for the areas to which they belong or have been assigned to manage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dial String</td>
<td>The dial string for the endpoint. If the endpoint has more than one dial string, it displays one based on this order:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• SIP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• H.323</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• ISDN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Owner</td>
<td>The user associated with the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endpoint Groups</td>
<td>The endpoint group to which the endpoint belongs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Software Version</td>
<td>Endpoint's version.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Related Links
- Managing UC Endpoints on page 402

### Customize the Endpoint List

You can filter the endpoint list and customize the columns that appear on the screen.

#### Procedure
1. Navigate to Endpoint > Monitor View.
2. Click Filter to filter the endpoint list using the conditions.
3. Click Reset if you want to do another search.
4. Press Enter to do the search.
5. Enter a key word in the Search field beside filter Filter to search the key word among the filter results.
   - The key word search does not work for Area.
6. Click Columns to customize the columns that appear on the screen.
   - By default, the MAC Address, Endpoint Group, and Software Version is not displayed.
7. To hide a column, cancel the check box next to the column that you wish to hide.
8. To display a column, mark the check box next to the column that you want displayed.
### Endpoint Filter Conditions

The table explains the endpoint filter conditions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Filters the list by type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Model</td>
<td>Filters the list by model name entered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mode</td>
<td>Filters the list by one of the following management modes:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Dynamically Managed Endpoints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Non-dynamically Managed Endpoints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Synced RealPresence DMA Endpoints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Synced CUCM Phones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Manually Added Phones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Auto-added Phones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endpoint Group</td>
<td>Filters the list by endpoint group name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alerts</td>
<td>Filters the list by alert type: Help, Error, or Warning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connection Status</td>
<td>Filters the list by connection status: In a Call, Online, or Offline.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Filters the list by system name entered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP Address</td>
<td>Filters the list by IP address entered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dial String</td>
<td>The IP address of the gatekeeper to which the device is registered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site</td>
<td>Filters the list by site location entered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Area</td>
<td>Available only when Area is enabled. Filters the list by the area with which the endpoint is associated. You can only view area-specific information for area(s) that you have permission to manage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAC Address</td>
<td>(Phone Only) Filters the list by MAC address entered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serial Number</td>
<td>Filters the list by serial number entered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIP</td>
<td>Filters the list for VIP endpoints.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ignore reclaimed endpoint</td>
<td>Filters the list by endpoints with reclaimed licenses. When checked, endpoints with reclaimed licenses are not displayed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### View Endpoint Details

You can view more details about an endpoint listed in the Monitor View screen.
Procedure

1. Go to Endpoint > Monitor View.
2. As needed, Click Filter to customize the endpoint list.
3. Select the endpoint of interest and click View Details.

Depending on the selected endpoint type, you may see different information.

**Device Status**, **Device Alerts**, **Software Update Details**, **Provisioning**, and **Details** are only available for video endpoints.

**Endpoint Files** and **Configuration Profile Association** are only available for phones.

Related Links

[Managing UC Endpoints](#) on page 402

**Endpoint Details**

The table explains the endpoint details.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Device Summary</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The name of the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Endpoint names must be unique.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The name must be in ASCII only and may have an unlimited number of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>characters. Spaces, dashes, and underscores are valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The system name might be different than the H.323 ID.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>The type of endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>The system-generated ID for the device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Owner</td>
<td>The person to whom the endpoint is assigned.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP Address</td>
<td>The assigned IP address of the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VLAN ID</td>
<td>(Phone Only) Virtual Bridged LAN ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site</td>
<td>The network site for the endpoint. By default, endpoints are added to the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Primary Site</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note:</td>
<td>When areas are enabled on your system, this field shows a value of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Restricted</strong> if you do not have permission to manage the area to which the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>site is assigned.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Software Version</td>
<td>The version of the software installed on the endpoint (ASCII only). The</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>endpoint provides the version number if it registered successfully or is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serial Number</td>
<td>The serial number (ASCII only) of the endpoint. The endpoint provides the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>serial number if it registered successfully or is managed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAC Address</td>
<td>(Phone Only) The MAC address of the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIP URI</td>
<td>A SIP URI is the address used to call another person via SIP. In effect it's a user's SIP phone number. The SIP URI will be of the following format: &lt;username&gt;@host(domain or IP):Port</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Area</td>
<td>The area to which the endpoint is assigned. This field is only visible when Areas are enabled. A user can only view area-specific information for an area(s) that he has permission to manage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISDN Video Number</td>
<td>(Video Endpoint Only) For ISDN endpoints only, the country code + city/area code + phone number for the endpoint. When you add an endpoint without native ISDN, the ISDN gateway, country code, and area code are not captured. Only native ISDN is supported.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Available to Schedule</td>
<td>(Video Endpoint Only) It shows if this endpoint is available for conference scheduling.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitoring Level</td>
<td>(Video Endpoint Only) The monitoring level for the device. Possible values include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Standard. This device is monitored.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• VIP. This device is monitored closely. The VIP identifier and filters are available to operators to monitor and manage conferences.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supported Protocols</td>
<td>(Video Endpoint Only) The communications protocols that the endpoint can support. Possible values include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• IP (H.323) - A standard that defines the protocols used for multimedia communications on packet-based H.323 networks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• IP (SIP) - A standard that defines the protocols used for multimedia communications on SIP networks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• ISDN (H.320) - A standard that defines the protocols used for multimedia communications on switched networks, such as ISDN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For endpoints with the type Unknown, select H.323.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The endpoint automatically provides the protocols if it registered successfully or is managed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capabilities Enabled</td>
<td>(Video Endpoint Only) Capabilities enabled on this endpoint. Options are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• MCU - The endpoint can act as a control unit for multipoint conferences.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Gateway - The endpoint can act as a gateway for call management.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The MCU provides the capability if it registered successfully or is managed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Aliases</strong></td>
<td>(Video Endpoint Only) The aliases that allow you to connect to the endpoint. The RealPresence Resource Manager system converts the aliases to the IP address associated with the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Alias Type</strong>. Possible types include E.164, H.323 ID, URL, Transport Address, email, Party Number, and Unknown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Alias Value</strong>. Value for the alias type shown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The endpoint name is the system name, which might be different from the H323 ID.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The value of the E.164 alias is the extension dialed to reach this endpoint.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** These **Alias Values** are ASCII only: **H323 ID**, **URL**, **Transport Address**, and **Unknown**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>User</strong></th>
<th>(Phone Only) The user ID mapped to the phone's SIP URI.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Uptime</strong></td>
<td>(Phone Only) The time of the endpoint has been working and available.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Last Restart Time</strong></td>
<td>(Phone Only) Endpoint's last reboot or restart time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Last Touch Time</strong></td>
<td>(Phone Only) The last time that the endpoint connects to the RealPresence Resource Manager system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Last Provisioning Time</strong></td>
<td>(Phone Only) The last time that the RealPresence Resource Manager system sends provisioning configurations to the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Device Status (Video Endpoint Only)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Gatekeeper Registration</strong></th>
<th>The status of the device's registration with the gatekeeper service. Possible values include:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Registered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Unregistered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Directory Registration</strong></td>
<td>The status of the device's registration with the Global Directory Service. Possible values include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Registered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Unregistered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Presence Registration</strong></td>
<td>The status of the device's registration with the presence service. Possible values include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Registered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Unregistered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Exchange Registration</strong></td>
<td>The status of the device's registration with the Microsoft Exchange service.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SIP Registration</strong></td>
<td>The status of the device's registration with the SIP service.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device Managed</td>
<td>Indicates whether or not the RealPresence Resource Manager system is dynamically managing the device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gatekeeper Address</td>
<td>The IP address of the gatekeeper to which the device is registered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIP Server Address</td>
<td>The IP address of the SIP server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device Local Time</td>
<td>The local time as set within the device in a default format of `hh:mm:ss AM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISDN Line Status</td>
<td>The status of the ISDN line. Possible values include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Operational</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Non-operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This field is blank for the following device types: <strong>RMX, GW/MCU, Other, and TANDBERG.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISDN Assignment Type</td>
<td>How the ISDN type was assigned to the device. Possible values include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Administrator</strong>, when the ISDN type was assigned manually by an administrator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Endpoint</strong>, when the ISDN type was natively assigned in the endpoint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Auto-Assigned</strong>, when the ISDN type was automatically assigned by the RealPresence Resource Manager system based on the site configuration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>From Network</strong>, when the ISDN type was derived from the gateway and extension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Undefined</strong>, when the RealPresence Resource Manager system cannot identify the source for the ISDN type assignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This field is blank for the following device types: <strong>RMX, GW/MCU, Other, and TANDBERG.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device ISDN Type</td>
<td>The ISDN network interface type installed in the device. Possible values include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• ISDN_QUAD_BRI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• ISDN_PRI_T1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• ISDN_BRI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• ISDN_UNKNOWN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This field is blank for the following device types: <strong>RMX, GW/MCU, Other, and TANDBERG.</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Call Info

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Call Type</th>
<th>(Video Endpoint Only) Type of call, such as H.323, SIP, ISDN, or POTS.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video Protocol</td>
<td>(Video Endpoint Only) The video connection protocol, both transmission (Tx) and reception (Rx), the endpoint is using. Possible values include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• H.261</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H.261 is an ITU standard designed for two-way communication over ISDN lines and supports data rates which are multiples of 64Kbit/s. H.261 supports CIF and QCIF resolutions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• H.263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H.263 is based on H.261 with enhancements that improve video quality over modems. It supports CIF, QCIF, SQCIF, 4CIF and 16CIF resolutions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• H.264</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video Format</td>
<td>(Video Endpoint Only) The video format, both transmission (Tx) and reception (Rx), the endpoint is using.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio Protocol</td>
<td>(Video Endpoint Only) The audio connection protocol, both transmission (Tx) and reception (Rx), the endpoint is using. Possible values include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• G.711</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• G.722</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• G.728</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Far Site Name</td>
<td>The H.323 ID of the far site endpoint to which the selected endpoint is connected. When multiple endpoints are connected through the endpoint's embedded MCU, this field displays a concatenation of each endpoint's H.323ID separated by '</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Far Site Number</td>
<td>The address of the far site endpoint to which the selected endpoint is connected. The address value for the calling endpoint appears to be the dialed address. The address value for the called endpoint appears to be the IP Address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cause Code</td>
<td>(Video Endpoint Only) The cause code showing how the call ended.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Encryption</td>
<td>(Video Endpoint Only) The type of encryption the far site uses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Precedence Level</td>
<td>(Video Endpoint Only) Applicable only on AS-SIP calls. AS-SIP servers support a &quot;precedence level&quot; that defines a call's priority in terms of the order in which it is given access to network resources.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device Alerts (Video Endpoint Only)</td>
<td>Errors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Warnings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provisioning Details (Video Endpoint Only)</td>
<td>Last Provisioning Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last Provisioning Rule Applied</td>
<td>The name of the last provisioning rule that was applied to this endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last Profile Applied</td>
<td>The name of the last provisioning profile that was or was not successfully applied to the device. The <strong>Provisioning Status</strong> will be either <strong>Success</strong> or <strong>Failed</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last Bundled Profile Applied</td>
<td>The name of the last bundled profile that was applied to this endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provisioning Status</td>
<td>The device's current provisioning status. Possible values include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Clear</strong>. No provisioning has been done.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Pending</strong>. Provisioning is scheduled for this device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>In Progress</strong>. The device is currently being provisioned.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Success</strong>. Provisioning has been completed successfully on this device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Failed</strong>. Provisioning was not completed on this device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Some endpoint systems expect all configuration fields to be provisioned. If any of the fields are not provisioned, the status will indicate failed. However, the endpoint will often function successfully.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pending Profile</td>
<td>The name of the provisioning profile that is scheduled to be applied to the device. In this case, the <strong>Provisioning Status</strong> will be either <strong>Pending</strong> or <strong>In Progress</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This field is blank if the device is not scheduled for provisioning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scheduled</td>
<td>The date and time, in the default format of <code>yyyy-mm-dd hh:mm</code>, when the device is schedule to be provisioned.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This field is blank if the device is not scheduled for provisioning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last Attempt Date/Time</td>
<td>The date and time, in the default format of <code>yyyy-mm-dd hh:mm:ss</code>, of the last provisioning message exchanged with the device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Failure Reason</td>
<td>A text description of the reason the provisioning failed. Causes for failure include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The provisioning profile does not exist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The provisioning profile does not include provisioning information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The RealPresence Resource Manager system no longer manages the device</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• A password for the device is set in the video endpoint system, and you must enter it in the RealPresence Resource Manager system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The device is busy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• A network error occurred</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• An incomplete transfer of provisioning information occurred</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Provisioning has timed out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• An internal error occurred on the device, and you must reboot it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• An unknown error occurred. Reboot the device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Log Message</td>
<td>A read-only text box that contains messages related to the device provisioning status</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Software Update Details (Video Endpoint Only)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Software Update Status</td>
<td>The device's software update status. Possible values include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Clear. A software update has not been done.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Pending. A software update has been scheduled and is pending. The device may be offline or in a call.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• In Progress. The software update is in progress.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Success. A software update has completed successfully.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Failed. A software update could not be performed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scheduled</td>
<td>The date and time, in the default format of <code>yyyy-mm-dd hh:mm</code>, when the device software is scheduled to be updated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This field is blank if the device is not scheduled for provisioning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last Attempt Date/Time</td>
<td>The date and time, in the default format of <code>yyyy-mm-dd hh:mm:ss</code>, of the last software update message exchanged with the device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Failure Reason</td>
<td>A text description of the reason the software update failed. Causes for failure may include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The software update file location does not exist.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• A password for the device is set in the video endpoint system, and you must enter it in RealPresence Resource Manager.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• A network error has occurred.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The update has timed out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• An internal error occurred on the device, and you must reboot it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• A profile has not been configured.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• An endpoint is offline.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• An incorrect activation key is in the key file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• An unknown error has occurred. Reboot the device</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Log Message</td>
<td>A read-only text box that contains the log message text recorded during the execution of the software update.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Note that there are no log messages displayed for dynamically-managed endpoints.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Endpoint Files (UC Endpoints Only)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Provisioning Profiles</td>
<td>This file contains all the attributes applied to the selected UC endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Analytic Files</td>
<td>(UC Endpoint other than Phone) The analytic files that UC endpoint sends to the RealPresence Resource Manager system. Check the UC endpoint release notes for the supported UC endpoints and versions that support this feature.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phone Files</td>
<td>(Phone Only) This file contains the configuration data that set from the selected phone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Web Files</td>
<td>(Phone Only) This file contains the configuration data that set from the selected phone’s web GUI.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APP Logs</td>
<td>(Phone Only) This file contains the APP information received by the selected phone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boot Logs</td>
<td>(Phone Only) This file contains the phone’s boot information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crash Dump</td>
<td>(Phone Only) This file contains the logs for crash dump.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Others</td>
<td>Other files such as a file containing phone’s address book.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endpoint Group</td>
<td>This table lists the endpoint groups associated with the selected endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Association</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration Profile</td>
<td>(Phone Only) This table lists the configuration profiles associated with the selected endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Association</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Related Links
Managing UC Endpoints on page 402

Update Endpoint Model Definition

You can update the endpoint model definition in the RealPresence Resource Manager system to make the system always recognize the latest endpoint models.

If you do a local update, download the endpoint definition file (polycom-device-types.zip) from Polycom Support.

**Note:** You can’t update the endpoint types definitions. If a new version of RealPresence Resource Manager supports new endpoint types, you must upgrade your old version to the latest version to support the new endpoint types.

Procedure

1. Go to Admin > Maintenance > Update Endpoint Model Definition.
2. Do one of the following to update the endpoint model definition:
   - Click the Update from Local File button to upload the polycom-device-types.zip file.
   - Click the Update from Polycom Hosted Server button to get the latest endpoint model files from the specified Polycom server.
Note: Web proxy server is not supported for connecting Polycom Hosted Server. You need to configure the access from the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

3. Restart the system to apply the updates.

Download Endpoint Files

You can download the endpoint files to your local machine.

LOG files are cumulative, and content is appended with time stamps. The system creates a ZIP file if the log file is over 1024 KB by default. See Configure Your Phone Management Settings on how to set the size.

XML and CFG files are not cumulative. New files will replace old files.

Note: You can download the endpoint files only from the RealPresence Resource Manager GUI. Polycom does not support downloading files in other ways. You can view the endpoint files by opening them. RealPresence Resource Manager only can display text files correctly. Other files such as binary files can be opened, but can't be displayed correctly.

Procedure

1. Go to Endpoint > Monitor View.
2. If needed, Click Filter to customize the endpoint list.
3. Select the phone and click View Details.
4. Go to the Endpoint Files panel.
   Endpoint Files only show for phones.
5. Click Download to download the ZIP file to your local PC.

Adding Endpoints

You can manually add video endpoints or phones.

Add a Video Endpoint or Find an Endpoint on the Network

You can manually add video endpoints and find endpoints on the same network as the system.

You can't perform this action for RealPresence Mobile, RealPresence Desktop, RealPresence Group Series systems, and RealPresence Immersive Studio systems.

For most endpoints, you enter basic information. The system then locates the endpoint and retrieves its information.

Note: When a SIP-only endpoint registers with the RealPresence DMA system and doesn’t register with the RealPresence Resource Manager system’s provisioning service to become dynamically managed, you must manually add it to the RealPresence Resource Manager system to manage that endpoint.

Procedure

1. Go to Endpoint > Monitor View and click Add.
2. In the Add New Endpoint dialog, select a video endpoint as the Endpoint Type.
For endpoints not specified in the list, select Other.

3. Enter the IP Address of the endpoint.

4. Click Find Endpoint.

If you enter an invalid Admin ID or Password for an endpoint that requires that information, the RealPresence Resource Manager system may still find the endpoint. It depends upon the endpoint type.

- Polycom HDX systems don’t allow the RealPresence Resource Manager system to detect the endpoint type and complete the registration. You can manually add the endpoint, but the RealPresence Resource Manager system can’t communicate with it until you enter a valid Admin ID or Password for the endpoint. In this case, the RealPresence Resource Manager system records an error message in an error log.

- The Find Endpoint function only works for endpoints with a specified Endpoint Type. If you selected a Endpoint Type of Other, the RealPresence Resource Manager system reports an error.

- If the RealPresence Resource Manager system can find the endpoint on the network, the Add New Endpoint dialog populates with information retrieved from the endpoint. Review any information retrieved from the endpoint.

- If the RealPresence Resource Manager system can’t find the endpoint on the network, an error message of Endpoint Not Found appears.

5. Assign the endpoint a System Name.

Endpoint names must be unique, must be in ASCII only, and may have an unlimited number of characters. Spaces, dashes, and underscores are valid.

6. If necessary, enter the Admin ID and Password for the endpoint.

Some endpoints may not require this information. Other endpoints may require only a password.

7. Complete the Identification, Addresses, and Capabilities sections of the Add New Endpoint dialog.

Pay particular attention to the Capabilities options, because these settings determine how the endpoint is used throughout the RealPresence Resource Manager system. For example, you can select it as a VIP endpoint and determine whether it will be Available to Schedule through the scheduling interface.

Note: Many fields in this dialog are ASCII only. Depending on the selected type, some of these fields may not display or you can’t edit them.

8. Optional: Click Endpoint Group Association and select the endpoint group to associate with.

9. Click OK.

The endpoint appears in the Endpoint list.

Note: For third-party endpoints, the RealPresence Resource Manager system doesn’t capture HTTP URL, serial number, and DNS name during endpoint registration.

By default, the system may also do the following actions:

- Add the endpoint to the applicable site.
- Set the HTTP Port to 80.
- Add an Alias for the endpoint.
- Make the endpoint Available to Schedule.
- Set the Monitoring Level to Standard.
Once you add an endpoint, you can associate it with a user.

**Adding Endpoint Parameters**
The table explains the parameters for adding an endpoint.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Identification</td>
<td>A free-form text field (extended ASCII only) in which information about the endpoint can be added.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GAB Display Name</td>
<td>Enter a name for the endpoint as it will appear in the Global Address Book.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site</td>
<td>The network site for the endpoint. The system determines the site based upon IP address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> When areas are enabled on your system, this field shows a value of <strong>Restricted</strong> if you do not have permission to manage the area to which the site is assigned.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serial Number</td>
<td>The serial number (ASCII only) of the endpoint. The endpoint provides the serial number if it registered successfully or is managed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Software Version</td>
<td>The version of the software installed on the endpoint (ASCII only). The endpoint provides the version number if it registered successfully or is managed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HTTP URL</td>
<td>The management URL for the endpoint, if available (ASCII only). This URL enables the RealPresence Resource Manager system to start the endpoint's management system using the <strong>Manage</strong> function. All Polycom endpoints allow management through a browser. For these endpoints, this field is completed when the endpoint registers with the RealPresence Resource Manager system. For Cisco endpoints, you must manually enter the URL if you want to use the <strong>Manage</strong> function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HTTP Port</td>
<td>The HTTP port number for the endpoint. The endpoint provides the port number if it registered successfully and is managed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Area</td>
<td>Assign this endpoint to an area. This field is only visible when Areas are enabled. A user can only view area-specific information for an area(s) that he has permission to manage. If the user manages only one area, the endpoint will automatically be assigned to that area.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Addresses**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DNS Name</td>
<td>The name for the endpoint as entered on the domain name server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIP URI</td>
<td>The address used to call the endpoint via SIP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>&lt;username&gt;@host(domain or IP):Port</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aliases</td>
<td>The aliases that allow you to connect to the endpoint. The RealPresence Resource Manager system converts the aliases to the IP address associated with the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Alias Type.</strong> Possible types include E.164, H.323 ID, URL, Transport Address, email, Party Number, and Unknown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Alias Value.</strong> Value for the alias type shown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The following <strong>Alias Values</strong> are ASCII only: H323 ID, URL, Transport Address, and Unknown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• In other cases, the endpoint name is the system name, which might be different from the H323 ID.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The value of the E.164 alias is the extension dialed to reach this endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISDN Video Number</td>
<td>For ISDN endpoints only, the country code + city/area code + local phone number for the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When you add an endpoint without native ISDN, the ISDN gateway, country code, and area code are not captured. The RealPresence Resource Manager system only supports native ISDN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capabilities</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supported Protocols</td>
<td>The communication protocols that the endpoint can support. Possible values include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>IP (H.323)</strong> - A standard that defines the protocols used for multimedia communications on packet-based H.323 networks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>IP (SIP)</strong> - A standard that defines the protocols used for multimedia communications on SIP networks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>ISDN (H.320)</strong> - A standard that defines the protocols used for multimedia communications on switched networks, such as ISDN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For endpoints with the type <strong>Unknown</strong>, select <strong>H.323</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The endpoint automatically provides the protocols if it registered successfully or is managed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Required MCU Service</td>
<td>The MCU service selected for the endpoint to use.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Field Description

**Capabilities Enabled**
Capabilities enabled on this endpoint. Options are:
- **MCU** - The endpoint can act as a control unit for multipoint conferences
- **Gateway** - The endpoint can act as a gateway for call management

The MCU provides the capability if it registered successfully or is managed.

**Monitoring Level**
The monitoring level for the endpoint. Possible values include:
- **Standard**. This endpoint is monitored.
- **VIP**. This endpoint is monitored closely. The VIP identifier and filters are available to operators to monitor and manage conferences.

**Available to Schedule**
Identifies if the endpoint is available when users are scheduling conferences.

### Related Links

- **Edit a User** on page 433

### Edit an Endpoint

The system automatically detects IP address changes and updates its database with the new information for Polycom and third-party endpoints that are registered with the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Endpoint > Monitor View**
2. In the **Endpoint Name** column, click the endpoint name that you want to edit.
   
   As required, edit the **Identification**, **Addresses**, **Capabilities**, **Endpoint Group Association**, and **Configuration Profile Association** (phone only) sections of the **Edit Endpoint** dialog. For more information, see **View Endpoint Details**.
   
   Note that many fields in this dialog are ASCII only.
3. Click **Update**.

   The name of a dynamically-managed endpoint will be updated to the endpoint after the provisioning interval. To update other information, you need to use provisioning or change the information at the endpoint interface.

**Related Links**

- **Endpoint Naming Scheme** on page 248
- **H.323 ID Scheme** on page 249
- **Managing Dial String Reservations for Users** on page 435

### Delete an Endpoint

When you delete an endpoint, you remove the endpoint from the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

You also delete all the associations with the endpoint.

**Procedure**
1. Go to **Endpoint > Monitor View**
2. Select an endpoint you want to delete.
3. Click **Delete**.
4. If the endpoint is dynamically-managed, choose one of the following options:
   - **Delete Endpoint Only**: Deletes the endpoint
   - **Delete with dial string reservation**: Deletes the endpoint and any dial string reservations associated with the endpoint.
   - **Cancel**: Cancels the action.
5. Click **Delete** for other endpoints types.

**Change an Endpoint Group Association**

When you edit an endpoint, you can associate it with an endpoint group, delete its association with an endpoint group, or prioritize the associated endpoint groups in case of multiple ones.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Endpoint > Monitor View**.
2. Click the endpoint name that you want to edit from the **Endpoint Name** column.
3. In the **Edit Device** dialog box, click the **Endpoint Group Association** tab.
   - To associate the endpoint to an endpoint group, select the name of the endpoint group from the drop-down list and click **Add**.
   - To delete the association, click **Delete** at the right end of each line of the endpoint group list.
   - To prioritize an association, click the **Arrow** buttons to deprioritize or prioritize it, or give it the lowest or highest priority.
4. Click **OK**.

**Manage an Endpoint Owner**

The endpoint owner is the user associated with the endpoint.

You can manage an endpoint owner that uses scheduled management and UC endpoint management, but you cannot manage the owner of an endpoint that is dynamically-managed.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Endpoint > Monitor View**.
2. Select the endpoint of interest and click **More > Manage Owner**.
   - The **Edit User** dialog appears.
3. Edit any user properties you need.
4. Click **OK**.

**Manage an Endpoint**

You can navigate to the management interface of an endpoint from the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

The RealPresence Resource Manager system only supports manage endpoint via HTTPS. HTTP is not supported. You need to enable HTTPS from the endpoint that you want to manage. For example, if you
want to manage Polycom HDX or Polycom RealPresence Group Series, you need to enable HTTPS from Polycom HDX or Polycom RealPresence Group Series.

This function is not available for all endpoint types, including RealPresence Desktop, RealPresence Mobile, and CMA Desktop.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Endpoint > Monitor View**
2. Select the endpoint of interest.
3. Click **a**.

   A new browser instance opens and navigates to the web interface of the endpoint.

**Related Links**

*Provisioning, Monitoring, and Upgrading Polycom G7500 Systems* on page 397

*Managing UC Endpoints* on page 402

**View Call Information**

You can view an endpoint's call information.

You cannot view phone's call information.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Endpoint > Monitor View**
2. Select the endpoint of interest.
3. Click **More > Call Info** to view the call information.

**Call Information**

This table explains the call information.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Call Info &gt; Site</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Far Site Name</td>
<td>The H.323 ID of the far site endpoint to which the selected endpoint is connected. When multiple endpoints are connected through the endpoint's embedded MCU, this field displays a concatenation of each endpoint's H.323ID separated by '</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Far Site Number</td>
<td>The address of the far site endpoint to which the selected endpoint is connected. The address value for the calling endpoint appears to be the dialed address. The address value for the called endpoint appears to be the IP Address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Encryption</td>
<td>The type of encryption the far site uses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cause Code</td>
<td>The cause code showing how the call ended.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video FEC Errors</td>
<td>The number of Forward Error Correction (FEC) errors that have been corrected in the current call.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sync</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Call Type</td>
<td>Type of call, such as, H.323, SIP, ISDN, or POTS.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Call Info > Call Details**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Video Protocol</td>
<td>The video connection protocol, both transmission (Tx) and reception (Rx), the endpoint is using. Possible values include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• H.261&lt;br&gt; H.261 is an ITU standard designed for two-way communication over ISDN lines and supports data rates which are multiples of 64Kbit/s. H.261 supports CIF and QCIF resolutions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• H.263&lt;br&gt; H.263 is based on H.261 with enhancements that improve video quality over modems. It supports CIF, QCIF, SQCIF, 4CIF and 16CIF resolutions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video Format</td>
<td>The video format, both transmission (Tx) and reception (Rx), the endpoint is using.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video Rate</td>
<td>The video bandwidth negotiated with the far site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video Rate Used</td>
<td>The actual video bandwidth used in the call to the far site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video Frame Rate</td>
<td>Specifies the frame rate the endpoint is using.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio Protocol</td>
<td>The audio connection protocol, both transmission (Tx) and reception (Rx), the endpoint is using. Possible values include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• G.711&lt;br&gt; • G.722&lt;br&gt; • G.728</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio Rate</td>
<td>The audio bandwidth negotiated with the far site</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Call Info > Quality of Service (Not reported by all endpoint types)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Total Packet Loss</td>
<td>Specifies the total packet loss for the currently active call that is, the total percentage of packet loss for all currently active calls divided by the number of active calls.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>% Packet Loss</td>
<td>Specifies the average percentage of packet loss for the currently active call that is, the total percentage of packet loss for all currently active calls divided by the number of active calls.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio Packet Loss</td>
<td>Specifies the audio packet loss for the currently active call.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video Packet Loss</td>
<td>Specifies the video packet loss for the currently active call.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio Jitter</td>
<td>Specifies the audio jitter for the currently active call.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video Jitter</td>
<td>Specifies the video jitter for the currently active call.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Call Info > Video Feed

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Near Site</td>
<td>The video feed from the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Far Site</td>
<td>The video feed from the endpoint to which the endpoint is connected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>A free-form text field (extended ASCII only) in which information about the endpoint can be added.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GAB Display Name</td>
<td>Enter a name for the endpoint as it will appear in the Global Address Book.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site</td>
<td>The network site for the endpoint. The system determines the site based upon IP address.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** When areas are enabled on your system, this field shows a value of **Restricted** if you do not have permission to manage the area to which the site is assigned.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Serial Number</td>
<td>The serial number (ASCII only) of the endpoint. The endpoint provides the serial number if it registered successfully or is managed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Software Version</td>
<td>The version of the software installed on the endpoint (ASCII only). The endpoint provides the version number if it registered successfully or is managed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HTTP URL</td>
<td>The management URL for the endpoint, if available (ASCII only). This URL enables the RealPresence Resource Manager system to start the endpoint's management system using the <strong>Manage</strong> function. All Polycom endpoints allow management through a browser. For these endpoints, this field is completed when the endpoint registers with the RealPresence Resource Manager system. For Cisco endpoints, you must manually enter the URL if you want to use the <strong>Manage</strong> function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HTTP Port</td>
<td>The HTTP port number for the endpoint. The endpoint provides the port number if it registered successfully and is managed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Area</td>
<td>Assign this endpoint to an area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This field is only visible when Areas are enabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A user can only view area-specific information for an area(s) that he has permission to manage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If the user manages only one area, the endpoint will automatically be assigned to that area.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Addresses**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DNS Name</td>
<td>The name for the endpoint as entered on the domain name server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIP URI</td>
<td>The address used to call the endpoint via SIP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>&lt;username&gt;@host(domain or IP):Port</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Aliases**

The aliases that allow you to connect to the endpoint. The RealPresence Resource Manager system converts the aliases to the IP address associated with the endpoint.

- **Alias Type.** Possible types include E.164, H.323 ID, URL, Transport Address, email, Party Number, and Unknown.
- **Alias Value.** Value for the alias type shown.

**Note:**

- The following **Alias Values** are ASCII only: **H323 ID**, **URL**, **Transport Address**, and **Unknown**.
- In other cases, the endpoint name is the system name, which might be different from the H323 ID.
- The value of the E.164 alias is the extension dialed to reach this endpoint.

**ISDN Video Number**

For ISDN endpoints only, the country code + city/area code + local phone number for the endpoint.

When you add an endpoint without native ISDN, the ISDN gateway, country code, and area code are not captured. The RealPresence Resource Manager system only supports native ISDN.

**Capabilities**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Supported Protocols</td>
<td>The communication protocols that the endpoint can support. Possible values include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• IP (H.323) - A standard that defines the protocols used for multimedia communications on packet-based H.323 networks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• IP (SIP) - A standard that defines the protocols used for multimedia communications on SIP networks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• ISDN (H.320) - A standard that defines the protocols used for multimedia communications on switched networks, such as ISDN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For endpoints with the type Unknown, select H.323.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The endpoint automatically provides the protocols if it registered successfully or is managed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Required MCU Service</td>
<td>The MCU service selected for the endpoint to use.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capabilities Enabled</td>
<td>Capabilities enabled on this endpoint. Options are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• MCU - The endpoint can act as a control unit for multipoint conferences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Gateway - The endpoint can act as a gateway for call management</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The MCU provides the capability if it registered successfully or is managed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitoring Level</td>
<td>The monitoring level for the endpoint. Possible values include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Standard. This endpoint is monitored.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• VIP. This endpoint is monitored closely. The VIP identifier and filters are available to operators to monitor and manage conferences.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Available to Schedule</td>
<td>Identifies if the endpoint is available when users are scheduling conferences.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Sites

**View an Endpoint's Video Feed**

You can only view the video feed from the following endpoints:

- Polycom HDX system
- Polycom RealPresence Group Series system
- TANDBERG
- VSX-Series

**Procedure**

1. Go to Endpoint > Monitor View.
2. Select the endpoint of interest.
3. Click More > Call Info.
4. Click the Video Feed tab to see the video feed from the near and far site.
Clear an Endpoint Help Request

This action is only applicable for an HDX system.

Procedure

1. Go to **Endpoint > Monitor View**
2. As needed, use the **Filter** to customize the **Endpoint** list.
3. Select the endpoint of interest and click **More > Clear Help**.
   The Confirm Endpoint Help Clear dialog appears.
4. To send a message to the endpoint as well as clear the help request, check **Also send message to endpoint**.
5. Click **Clear**.
6. If you selected the **Also send message to endpoint** check box, enter the text message to send the endpoint in the **Send Message to Endpoint** dialog and click **Send**.
   The **Endpoint** list is updated and alerts for the endpoint are cleared.

Note: If the reason for the original alert still exists on the endpoint, the alert will likely reappear in the **Endpoint** list.

Send a Message to an Endpoint

In some situations, such as in response to a help request, you can send a message to some types of endpoints.

This action is not applicable for RealPresence Mobile, RealPresence Desktop, CMA Desktop systems, or phones.

Procedure

1. Go to **Endpoint > Monitor View**
2. Select the endpoint of interest.
   If the endpoint can receive text messages, a **Send Message** option appears in the **More** menu.
3. Click **More > Send Message**.
4. In the **Send Message to Endpoint** dialog, enter a text message and click **OK**.
   The message is sent to the endpoint.

Reboot an Endpoint

An endpoint must be online inside the firewall to get rebooted from the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

Procedure

1. Go to **Endpoint > Monitor View**
2. Click **Switch Selection Types** to enable multiple select.
3. Select the one or more endpoint(s) of interest.
4. Click **More > Reboot Device**.
5. To confirm the request, click **OK**.
Associate a User with an Endpoint

This action is available for endpoints that are not dynamically managed such as RealPresence DMA system-synchronized endpoints and phones.

For example, if you associate a user with a RealPresence DMA system-synchronized endpoint, you can manage that endpoint. Endpoints that are associated with user (or room) can be scheduled into conferences.

Procedure

1. Go to Endpoint > Monitor View
2. Select the endpoint of interest.
3. Click More > Associate User.
4. In the Last Name or Room Name field or the First Name field, enter all or part of the user's last name or first name and click Search.
   The system displays the list of user or rooms that meet your search criteria.
5. Select the user of interest.

Managing Meeting Information in the Endpoint Calendar

The following Polycom endpoints can display a meeting calendar when associated with a Microsoft Exchange user: RealPresence Group Series systems, Polycom HDX systems, RealPresence Desktop video collaboration software, and RealPresence Mobile applications.

This means that in general, users of these systems can join meetings by clicking in the calendar display instead of manually dialing into the conference.

For an endpoint user to be able to use the feature, you must configure the RealPresence Resource Manager system to be a connector for the Microsoft Exchange Server. When you do this, the Calendar Connector service ensures that the right meeting information is routed to the endpoint’s calendar.

The Calendar Connector interprets the meeting invitations sent to the user via Microsoft Exchange and ensures that the endpoint can correctly dial a meeting directly from its calendar interface. It modifies the dial string within the invitation to ensure it is valid.

As an administrator, you must do the following:

- Configure the RealPresence Resource Manager to be a Calendar Connector
  This enables the RealPresence Resource Manager to act as a proxy service for your Exchange Server.
- Set up connector rules that scan emails for call information to insert into a user-associated Polycom endpoint’s calendar.
- Provision the user-associated endpoint to use the RealPresence Resource Manager system as its Exchange Server IP address.
  OR
- Manually configure the endpoint to use the RealPresence Resource Manager system’s IP address for its Microsoft Exchange server.
Configure the Calendar Connector

If you manage a supported Polycom endpoint (RealPresence Group Series, HDX, RealPresence Desktop or RealPresence Mobile), you can use the Calendar Connector feature to ensure that those endpoint users can click to join meetings directly from the endpoint's calendar interface.

The Calendar Connector allows you to use the RealPresence Resource Manager system as a connector for your Microsoft Exchange Server. It interprets the meeting invitations sent to the user's endpoint via Microsoft Exchange and ensures that the endpoint can correctly dial a meeting directly from its calendar interface. It modifies the dial string within the invitation to ensure it is valid.

You must have Admin permissions to configure the Calendar Connector.

Procedure

1. Go to **Endpoint > Calendar Connector**.
2. Click **Add**.
3. In the **Add a Connector** dialog, select the General section to enter a server type and server information.
   - **Type**: Only **Exchange** is supported for this release. **Yahoo**, **Google**, **Office365**, and **Office365(China)** are not officially supported in this release.
   - **Server**: Enter the server details for the calendar server type you selected.
   - **Options**: Configure the max concurrent sessions allowed.
4. You need to add at least one Connector Rule before you click **OK**.
   - For more information about Connector Rule, see Add a Connector Rule.

Add a Connector Rule

You can create rules to help the connector find dial string information the meeting invitation to ensure it is in the user's calendar.

Connector rules are regular expressions that interpret meeting invite fields to retrieve VMR information for the calendar. For connector rules to work effectively, your users must schedule meetings with consistent conference room identifiers that can be read by the rules you create.

For example, when scheduling a meeting with Microsoft Outlook, a user can specify the meeting location as below:

Location: Conference Room Marconi; VMR: 734567

or

Location: Conference Room Marconi; Bridge: 734567

In this case, the following match string would extract the VMR number 735467 from the meeting invite contents:

`?:\|Bridge\:\|VMR\:\|vmr\:\}\s*\(\d+\)`

Procedure

1. Go to **Endpoints > Calendar Connector**.
2. Select a connector to edit and click **Edit**.
3. In the **Edit a Connector** dialog, select **Rules** to view the rule information.
4. Click **Add**.
5. In the **Add a Rule** dialog, enter the rule parameters you want to use.
6. Click **OK**.
Add a Filter for Unaccepted Meetings
You can add a filter to the endpoint calendar so that meetings that are not accepted are not displayed.

Procedure
1. Go to Endpoint > Calendar Connector.
2. Select a connector to edit and click Edit.
3. In the Edit a Connector dialog, select Filters to view the filter information.
4. Enter (Busy) in the Match field.
   This will create a filter that displays only meetings that are accepted (or busy).
5. Click Save.

Dynamically Provision Calendar Connector Information
If you have configured a Calendar Connector, you can dynamically provision Group and HDX systems
with this information by dynamically provisioning the endpoints with the RealPresence Resource Manager
FQDN instead of the Exchange Server address in a Network Config profile.

The Calendar Connector feature is only for supported Polycom endpoints: RealPresence Group, HDX
systems, RealPresence Desktop, and RealPresence Mobile systems.

Search for Endpoints in a Range of IP Addresses
You can search for endpoints within a range of IP addresses.

This search will only include endpoints that are not dynamically managed, which are not displayed in the
current endpoints list. The purpose of this function is to provide a quick approach to find out those non-
dynamically managed endpoints, so that RealPresence Resource Manager can add the endpoints in a
batch.

phones do not support this feature.

Procedure
1. Go to Endpoint > Monitor View and click More > Search Endpoints.
2. In the Search Endpoints dialog, enter the starting IP address and ending IP address for the
   search range and click Search.
   The system begins searching for endpoints. A progress bar displays the status of the search and a
   results message displays the number of endpoints searched and the number of endpoints found
   within the IP range.

Working with Endpoint Groups
Endpoint groups are logical collections of endpoints and are mainly used for phones' provisioning.

Users with the Endpoint Admin or System Setup permission can manage endpoint groups.

Related Links
Edit a User on page 433
Add a UC Endpoint Manually on page 404
Add an Endpoint Group
You can define a new endpoint group by selecting a list of existing endpoints in the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

Procedure
1. Go to Endpoint > Endpoint Groups.
2. Click Add.
3. Enter a name and description for this endpoint group.
4. In the Endpoint Association tab, select the endpoints you want to include in the group from the Available table and click the down arrow to move them to the Selected table.
5. In the Phone Configuration Profile Association tab, select a profile from the Configuration Profile Association drop-down list.
6. Click the Save and Apply button to associate this profile to the endpoint group.
7. Repeat step 5 and step 6 to associate more profiles.
   The associated configuration profiles only apply to the phones in the endpoint group.
8. Do one of the followings to save the changes:
   - Click Save and Apply to apply the phone configuration profiles to the on-line phones in this endpoint group immediately. This operation may reboot the phones. This operation only applies this time changes to the phones. It does not apply previous changes to the phones.
   - Click Save to only save the change. The RealPresence Resource Manager system will not apply the changes until the next polling interval.

Edit an Endpoint Group
You can edit an endpoint group and change its associated endpoints and phone configuration profiles at anytime.

Procedure
1. Go to Endpoint > Endpoint Groups.
2. Do one of the followings to open the Edit Endpoint Group dialog:
   - Click the endpoint group hyperlink.
   - Select the endpoint group and click Edit.
3. Make changes as needed.
4. Do one of the followings to save the changes:
   - Click Save and Apply to apply the phone configuration profiles to the on-line phones in this endpoint group immediately. This operation may reboot the phones. This operation only applies this time changes to the phones. It does not apply previous changes to the phones.
   - Click Save to only save the change. The RealPresence Resource Manager system will not apply the changes until the next polling interval.

Copy an Endpoint Group
You can create a new endpoint group by cloning an existing endpoint group and making necessary changes.

Procedure
1. Go to Endpoint > Endpoint Groups.
2. Select an endpoint group and click Clone.
3. In the Copy Endpoint Group dialog, enter a name and description for the new endpoint group.
4. Edit the associations as needed.
5. Do one of the followings to save the changes:
   - Click Save and Apply to apply the phone configuration profiles to the on-line phones in this endpoint group immediately. This operation may reboot the phones. This operation only applies this time changes to the phones. It does not apply previous changes to the phones.
   - Click Save to only save the change. The RealPresence Resource Manager system will not apply the changes until the next polling interval.

Customize the Endpoint Group List

You can customize your endpoint group list by using filter.

Procedure
1. Go to Endpoint > Endpoint Groups.
2. Click Filter to filter endpoint groups by Endpoint Group Name or Modified By condition.
3. Press Enter to do the search.
4. Click Reset if you want to do another search.
5. Enter a key word in the Search field beside Filter to search the key word among the filter results.

Reboot Phones in an Endpoint Group

You can reboot all the phones belonging to an endpoint group.

Procedure
1. Go to Endpoint > Endpoint Groups.
2. Select an endpoint group.
3. Select More > Reboot Phones.
4. Click OK to confirm the reboot.

Set an Active Directory Password for Phones in an Endpoint Group

You can only set an active directory password for Polycom phones that support REST API, such as RealPresence Trio and Polycom VVX phones.

Procedure
1. Go to Endpoint > Endpoint Groups.
2. Select an endpoint group.
3. Click More > Change Phone AD Password.
4. Enter a new password.
5. Click OK.

   After the operation is completed, click the Download Detailed Report button to view the detailed logs.
Refresh an Endpoint Group

Refresh the Endpoint Group page to see the endpoint group changes make by other users.

Procedure
1. Go to Endpoint > Endpoint Groups.
2. Click Refresh.

View Endpoint Group Details

The detail information containing name, description, and its associations are display on the right.

Procedure
1. Go to Endpoint > Endpoint Groups.
2. Select an endpoint group and click View Details.

Delete an Endpoint Group

If you delete an endpoint group with endpoints that are associated with phone configuration profiles, all the associations will be removed.

To delete an endpoint group:

Procedure
1. Go to Endpoint > Endpoint Groups.
2. Select an endpoint group and click Delete.
3. Click one of the followings to confirm the deletion:
   - Delete and Apply: Apply the phone configuration profile associations deletion to the related Intranet online phones now. This may reboot the phones.
   - Delete: Delete the endpoint group and all its endpoint and profile associations. The deletion applies to the related phones automatically at the next polling interval.

Set an Endpoint Group to Top Priority

This operation sets the selected endpoint group to the highest priority group in its all associated phones.

For each associated phone, the configuration profiles belonging to the selected endpoint group will have the highest priority comparing to other endpoint group associated configuration profiles for this phone.

Procedure
1. Go to Endpoint > Endpoint Groups.
2. Select an endpoint group.
4. Click OK.

The endpoint group becomes the group with the highest priority in all its associated endpoints.
Set Default Endpoint Group
This operation sets the default endpoint group(s) for new auto-added phones.

When a new phone is added to the system automatically via HTTP/HTTPS, the system adds the new phone to the specified default endpoint group(s). The system apply the configuration profiles associated with the default endpoint group(s) will be applied to the auto-added phones once phones are added to the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

Procedure
1. Go to Endpoint > Endpoint Groups.
2. Select More > Set Default Endpoint Group.
3. Select an endpoint groups from the Endpoint Groups drop-down list.
4. Click Add.
5. Repeat step 3 and step 4 to add more endpoint groups.
6. (optional) Click Arrow ▼ ▲ to adjust the priority of the specified endpoint groups for the phones that will be auto-added.
7. Click OK.

Monitoring and Managing Peripherals
If an endpoint is provisioned by the RealPresence Resource Manager system and this endpoint has one or more peripherals connected, the peripherals can be added and provisioned and you can view information about the peripherals.

Monitor Peripherals
Use the Peripherals View to monitor peripherals connected to dynamically managed endpoints.

Procedure
» Go to Endpoint > Peripherals View to view peripherals.

Customize the Peripheral List
You can customize the peripherals that you want to display by using filter.

Procedure
1. Go to Endpoint > Peripherals View.
2. Click Filter.
3. Use the filter choices to display other views of the Endpoint list, which include:
   • Endpoint Type  Filters the list by type.
   • Paired Endpoint Filters the list by the endpoint to which the peripherals are connected.
   • IP Address     Filters the list by IP address entered.
   • Hardware Version Filters the list by hardware version entered.
   • Software Version Filters the list by software version entered.
4. Press Enter to do the search.
5. Click Reset if you want to do another search.
Peripherals List in the Peripherals View

By default the Peripherals list displays a list of all peripherals that are connected or have been connected to endpoints managed by the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

The Peripherals list in this view has these fields.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Status</td>
<td>The state of the peripheral. Possible values include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Connected - Peripheral is connected to the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Disconnected - Peripheral is turned off or no longer connected to the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Error - Endpoint reports an error with the peripheral.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Blank - Endpoint is not reporting that the peripheral is connected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paired Endpoint</td>
<td>Name of the endpoint to which the peripheral is connected or Not Paired.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Not Paired designation means the peripheral was connected to an</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>endpoint, but it is not connected to one now.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>The type of peripheral.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serial Number</td>
<td>The serial number of the peripheral.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP Address</td>
<td>The IP address assigned to the peripheral, if applicable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hardware Version</td>
<td>The hardware version of the peripheral.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Software Version</td>
<td>The software version of the peripheral.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Link to the Management Web Interface of a Peripheral

You can navigate to the management interface of a peripheral from the RealPresence Resource Manager.

Procedure

1. Go to Endpoint > Peripherals View
2. Select the peripheral of interest.
3. Click More > Manage.
   
   A new browser instance opens and navigates to the web interface of the endpoint.

Deleting a Peripheral

When an endpoint is deleted, the peripherals connected with this endpoint are removed automatically.

When a peripheral is no longer connected to an endpoint, this peripheral is not in the Peripherals View list. You cannot delete peripherals manually.
Display Applications
For peripherals on which you can install multiple applications, you can display a list of installed applications and their version.

Procedure
1. Go to Endpoint > Peripherals View and select a peripheral.
2. Click More > Display Applications.
   The Applications Installed on dialog for the selected peripheral appears.
   • Application Name: Name of the peripheral application.
   • Version: Version of the peripheral application.
3. Click OK.

Peripheral Software Update
The following peripherals can be updated separately via the RealPresence Resource Manager system:
   • HDX Touch Control
   • RealPresence Group Series Touch Control
   • RealPresence Touch
Other peripherals can be updated with their connected endpoints.

Procedure
1. Go to Endpoint > Dynamic Management > Upload Software Updates.
2. Select one of the Touch Control peripherals from the Endpoint Type drop down list.
3. Click Add to upload the software update file.

Download an Endpoint Inventory Report
You can download an inventory report of endpoints if you have the Admin role.

Procedure
1. Navigate to Endpoint > Monitor View.
2. Click Download.
   The file is saved to the default download folder of your browser.

Endpoint Inventory Report
This report is in *.
CSV format and includes the following information about each endpoint.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Endpoint Attribute</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Endpoint Name</td>
<td>The name of the device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endpoint Type</td>
<td>The type of device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Endpoint Attribute</strong></td>
<td><strong>Value</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Model</strong></td>
<td>The model number of the device</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Manage Mode**          | Describes if the device is dynamically managed:  
|                          | • NON_DYNAMIC means it is not dynamically managed.  
|                          | • DYNAMIC means the endpoint is dynamically managed.                                                                                  |
| **Owner Name**           | The user associated with the device.                                                                                                   |
| **Endpoint Group**       | The endpoint group that the endpoint belongs to.                                                                                       |
| **MAC Address**          | Endpoint's MAC address.                                                                                                                 |
| **IP Address**           | The assigned IP address of the device.                                                                                                  |
| **ISDN Video Number**    | For ISDN devices only, the country code + city/area code + phone number for the device.  
|                          | When you add an endpoint without native ISDN, the ISDN gateway, country code, and area code are not captured. The RealPresence Resource Manager system only supports native ISDN. |
| **E.164 Number**         | The value for the E.164 number associated with this device.                                                                           |
| **H323 Alias**           | The value for the H.323 ID is the device name if the device registered with the gatekeeper and it is a third-party system. In other cases, the device name is the system name, which might be different then the H323 ID. |
| **SIP URI**              | The SIP URI address for the device.                                                                                                     |
| **Software Version**     | The version of the software installed on the device (ASCII only). The device provides the version number if it registered successfully or is managed. |
| **Serial Number**        | The serial number (ASCII only) of the device. The device provides the serial number if it registered successfully or is managed.         |
| **Sites**                | The network site for the device. By default, devices are added to the Primary Site.  
|                          | **Note:** When areas are enabled on your system, this field shows a value of Restricted if you do not have permission to manage the area to which the site is assigned. |
| **GK IP**                | The IP address of the gatekeeper to which the device is registered.                                                                     |
| **SIP server IP**        | The IP address of the SIP server to which the device is registered.                                                                    |
Supported Endpoints and Peripherals

Topics:

- Supported Polycom Endpoints
- Supported Third-Party Endpoints
- Managing Third-Party Endpoints

The RealPresence Resource Manager system supports managing and monitoring both Polycom and third-party endpoints.

Related Links
Edit a User on page 433

Supported Polycom Endpoints

The table describes the RealPresence Resource Manager system support for Polycom endpoints based on endpoint type and category of support.

Some things to note about supported Polycom endpoints:

- Dynamic Management and Scheduled Management are mutually exclusive functionality.
- Scheduling (Dial In Only) and Scheduling (Dial In and Dial Out) are presented as mutually exclusive functionality. Some endpoints, such as Polycom VVX systems do not have interfaces that can be asked to perform dialing. Some endpoints, such as CMA Desktop clients and VVX systems require external MCU resources for dial-in conferences.
- Standard RealPresence Resource Manager monitoring does not involve using SNMP. It includes endpoint monitoring (online/offline status) and alerts.
- Command and Control means the RealPresence Resource Manager system can send a command like Send Message and Reboot, and the endpoint can receive and act on the command.
- Reports for IP Calls are generated as part of standard gatekeeper functionality. Reports for ISDN Calls are additional system functionality. Endpoints that aren't registered with the gatekeeper or ISDN calls send an alert to the device management function to record CDR information. Some legacy endpoints do not send this alert so the CDRs are not written.
- Supported behind a Polycom VBP, Polycom RealPresence Access Director or SBC device with Access Proxy enabled.
- Polycom RealPresence Group Series systems must be dynamically managed. If a RealPresence Group Series system is not dynamically managed, it can still connect to the Global Address Book.
- The Polycom VVX 1500 cannot be dynamically provisioned when it is behind a Polycom VBP-ST firewall.

Note: The Polycom Telepresence M100 systems register as endpoint type of Other. As such, the RealPresence Resource Manager can schedule and perform limited monitoring of these systems.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Polycom Endpoint Types</th>
<th>Glo bal Add res s Boo k Ac cess</th>
<th>Dyn ami c Man age ment</th>
<th>Sch edu led Man age ment</th>
<th>Sch edu ling (Dia l In onl y)</th>
<th>Sch edu ling (Dia l In and Dial out)</th>
<th>Mo nito ring (Sta nda rd)</th>
<th>Co mmand and Con trol</th>
<th>Rep orts for IP Call s</th>
<th>Rep orts for ISD N Call s</th>
<th>Can be Man age d Beh ind a Fire wall</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RealPresence Desktop</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RealPresence Mobile</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMA Desktop</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polycom CX5100</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RealPresence Group Series (must be dynami cally managed)</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RealPresence Immersive Studio system (must be dynamically managed)</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RealPresence Debut</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RealPresence Centro</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polycom Pano</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDX Series (dynamic management mode)</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDX Series (scheduled management mode)</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VVX 1500 Series (dynamic management mode)</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VSX Series</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QDX Series</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Supported Polycom Peripherals**

The following peripherals are supported. The system can only monitor them.

- Polycom Touch Control
- Polycom RealPresence Touch Control
- Polycom EagleEye Producer
- Polycom EagleEye Director
• Polycom EagleEye Director II
• Polycom EagleEye Cube HDCI Camera

Note: People count information available from a Polycom EagleEye Producer or EagleEye Director II camera is available in the Call Detail Report.

### Supported Third-Party Endpoints

The table describes the RealPresence Resource Manager system support for third-party endpoints based on endpoint type and category of support.

Some things to note about supported third-party endpoints:

- Dynamic Management and Scheduled Management are mutually exclusive functionality. Third-party endpoints cannot be dynamically managed.
- Scheduling (Dial In Only) and Scheduling (Dial In and Dial Out) are presented as mutually exclusive functionality.
- Standard RealPresence Resource Manager monitoring does not involve using SNMP. It includes endpoint monitoring (online/offline status) and alerts.
- Command and Control means the RealPresence Resource Manager system can send a Reboot command, and the endpoint can receive and act on the command.
- Reports for IP Calls are generated as part of standard gatekeeper functionality. Reports for ISDN Calls are additional system functionality. Endpoints that aren’t registered with the gatekeeper or ISDN calls send an alert to the device management function to record CDR information. Some legacy endpoints do not send this alert so the CDRs are not written.
- Scheduled software updates are not supported on LifeSize Team or Express systems.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Endpoint Type</th>
<th>Global Address Book Access</th>
<th>Dynamic Management</th>
<th>Scheduled Management</th>
<th>Scheduling (Dial In only)</th>
<th>Scheduling (Dial In and Dial Out)</th>
<th>Monitoring (Standard)</th>
<th>Command and Control</th>
<th>Reports for IP Calls</th>
<th>Reports for ISDN Calls</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco T150 MXP</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cisco 95 MXP</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cisco C Series</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cisco MX Series</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cisco EX Series</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cisco SX Series</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LifeSize Team and Express</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Managing Third-Party Endpoints

The RealPresence Resource Manager system includes additional command and control for select TANDBERG C Series, Cisco SX series, Cisco EX series, and LifeSize Team and Express endpoints.

The RealPresence Resource Manager system can:
- Send a Reboot command to these endpoints.
- Discover these endpoints within a range of IP addresses.
- Complete the initial provisioning of these endpoints.
- Schedule and launch point-to-point conferences on these endpoints.
- Launch the management interface for these endpoints.

#### Scheduled Provisioning of Third-party Endpoints

You can set up scheduled provisioning profiles for third-party endpoints.

See for information on implementing scheduled provisioning of endpoints.

See the endpoint documentation for more information about endpoint configuration fields, acceptable values, restrictions in changing passwords for a specific endpoint.

#### Managing Cisco Endpoints

The RealPresence Resource Manager can provision Cisco endpoints using HTTP or HTTPS.

Cisco endpoints can access the Polycom Global Address Book via the RealPresence Resource Manager system.
Enable Cisco Endpoints Global Address Book Access

With the RealPresence Resource Manager system, users of the Cisco endpoints can access the Polycom Global Address Book, so they can see the endpoints in the Global Address Book.

Even if the Global Address Book is password protected, Cisco endpoints are not required to provide a password. They have unrestricted access to the Global Address Book.

When your Cisco endpoints are registered to a Cisco address book, the endpoint's directory status will display as unregistered on the RealPresence Resource Manager system Endpoint > Monitor View page.

Procedure

1. On Cisco endpoints, go to System Configuration > Phone Book Server.
2. Enter the information required for directory set up including the Polycom Global Address Book/RealPresence Resource Manager system IP address and the path.
   
   For example, http://<RPRM_IP_ADDRESS>/TMS/Public/external/phonebook/PhoneBookService.asmx

3. Wait for the connections to take effect.
4. At the RealPresence Resource Manager system, go to Endpoint > Monitor View and verify the endpoint's Global Address Book connection status is green.

Scheduled Provisioning of Selected Cisco Endpoints

You can set up scheduled provisioning profiles for third-party endpoints.

See the appropriate product documentation for more information about these endpoint configuration fields and their acceptable values.

For information about restrictions in changing passwords for a specific endpoint, see the documentation for the endpoint.

Enable HTTPS for Cisco Endpoints Management

RealPresence Resource Manager system supports using HTTPS when managing a Cisco endpoint.

The following Cisco endpoints are supported with HTTPS (and HTTP):

- Cisco C series
- Cisco SX series
- EX series
- Cisco MXP series

The Cisco T-150 series does not support HTTPS.

By default, the RealPresence Resource Manager system will try both HTTP and HTTPS when accessing a Cisco endpoint. For better performance, you can enable the system to try your preferred protocol first.

Note: When HTTPS is used, the Cisco endpoint cannot accept a software update.

Procedure

1. Navigate to Endpoint > Scheduled Management > Endpoint Management Settings.
2. Under Cisco Endpoint Management, select the Use HTTPs check box.
Managing LifeSize Endpoints
The RealPresence Resource Manager system can provision the LifeSize endpoints and their passwords.

Enable LifeSize Endpoints Management
To facilitate LifeSize endpoints management, you must enable the Default Passwords for LifeSize Endpoint Management option and enter the SSH and web UI passwords for the LifeSize endpoints.
Please see the LifeSize documentation for password parameters.

Procedure
1. On the RealPresence Resource Manager system, go to Endpoint > Scheduled Management > Endpoint Management Settings.
3. Enter the Password for User and confirm the password.
   Refer to the LifeSize system documentation for information on using SSH to connect to the endpoint, then enter the same SSH password here.
4. Enter the Password for Web UI User and confirm the password.
   Refer to the LifeSize system documentation for information on using a web browser to connect to the endpoint, then enter the same web UI password here.
5. Click Update.

Provisioning LifeSize Passwords
Take note of the following when provisioning passwords to LifeSize endpoints:
- The Auto password must be provisioned to meet the LifeSize and SSH/telnet rules for passwords.
- You cannot provision the Auto password to be blank. If you attempt to provision a blank value, the existing value of the password will not be overwritten. It will remain valid.
- The Web UI or User password can be provisioned to include the numbers 0-9 and/or the symbols * and #. The system will silently truncate these passwords to a maximum of 16 characters.
- You can provision the Web UI or User password to be blank.

Refer to the LifeSize documentation for more information about the requirements for these password.

Scheduled Provisioning of LifeSize Endpoints
The RealPresence Resource Manager system can provision many fields for LifeSize Team and Express endpoints.

See the appropriate product documentation for more information about these endpoint configuration fields and their acceptable values.
Managing Endpoint Naming Schemes

Topics:

• Using Custom Active Directory Attributes
• Define an E.164 Address Scheme
• Define an Endpoint Naming Scheme and H.323 Alias
• Auto-Generate SIP URIs for Dynamically Managed Endpoints

The RealPresence Resource Manager system enables administrators to configure the E.164 alias, endpoint naming schemes, and SIP URIs for dynamically managed endpoints and UC managed endpoints (except for phones).

For dynamically managed endpoints and UC managed video endpoints such as Polycom G7500, you choose to provision H.323 settings through a network provisioning profile or a UC configuration profile. You can also define the E.164 number and endpoint naming scheme used for endpoints and auto-generate SIP URIs for dynamically managed endpoints.

For UC managed cameras such as Polycom Studio and Polycom EagleEye Cube USB camera, you can only define the endpoint naming scheme and provision the rules through a UC configuration profile.

Note: The rules don’t apply to existing endpoints.

Related Links
Provisioning, Monitoring, and Upgrading Polycom G7500 Systems on page 397

Using Custom Active Directory Attributes

When your system is integrated with Active Directory, it only incorporates and displays attributes from the Active Directory record that are part of the Active Directory Global Catalog.

When you define E.164 numbers and SIP URIs, you can use Active Directory attributes that are not displayed in the RealPresence Resource Manager system user record.

For example, the following diagram displays some telephone numbers that can be configured in Active Directory. By default, when you integrate your RealPresence Resource Manager system with Active Directory only the default phone number field is used within the E.164 Numbering scheme.

If you wanted use the IP Phone attribute instead of the default phone number, you need to enter that specific attribute name that in RealPresence Resource Manager system when you create a naming scheme.
The following screen shot displays the IP Phone attribute being entered when you create an E.164 naming scheme:

**Related Links**

[Integrate a Service Group with Enterprise Directory](#) on page 88

**Find the Attribute Name to Use**

You must use the correct name of the attribute.

You can use the Active Directory management console to find the attribute name you want to use.

**Procedure**

1. Select **View > Advanced Features** to ensure advanced features are enabled in the console.
2. Navigate to an Active Directory user.
3. Right-click the user and select **Properties**.
4. In the **Properties** dialog, click the **Attribute Editor** tab.
5. Find the attribute to be used and record the attribute name.
6. Use the **Attribute** name as the value in **Mapping to Active Directory Name** field.

**Active Directory Global Service**

The Active Directory global catalog is a distributed data repository that contains a search-able, partial representation of every object in every domain in a multi-domain Active Directory Domain Services (Active Directory DS) forest.

The global catalog is stored on domain controllers that have been designated as global catalog servers and is distributed through multi-master replication. Searches that are directed to the global catalog are faster because they do not involve referrals to different domain controllers.

However, to minimize replication traffic and keep the global catalog's database small, only selected attributes of each object are replicated. This is called the partial attribute set (PAS). The PAS can be modified by modifying the schema and marking attributes for replication to the global catalog.

The Active Directory administrator can do this by ensuring that the corresponding attributes are included in the Partial Attribute Set. See [How to Modify Attributes That Replicate to the Global Catalog](#) for more information.

To take advantage of custom Active Directory attributes in RealPresence Resource Manager, your Active Directory administrator must ensure that the attributes you want to use have been added to the Active Directory Global Catalog service.

You must work with your Active Directory administrator to decide how to manipulate the Active Directory schema to ensure that the attributes you want to use in naming schemes are available to the RealPresence Resource Manager system.
Define an E.164 Address Scheme

You can define an E.164 address scheme that will be used when provisioning E.164 addresses to all dynamically managed endpoints and UC managed video endpoints such as G7500.

You can choose to use to define a number range, use the default phone number, or use a different Active Directory attributes.

Procedure

1. Go to **Endpoint > Auto-Generate Rules > E.164 Numbering**.
2. Define your numbering scheme according to the options provided.

   **Note:** The total number of digits specified for an E.164 number must be 15 or less. If the user’s phone number is used as the base field, the system reserves one digit to differentiate between the user's multiple devices. In this case the total number of digits configured cannot exceed 14 digits.

3. Click **Update**.

   The settings only apply to newly added dynamically managed endpoints and newly added UC managed video endpoints. Existing endpoints are not impacted.

Related Links

- [Managing Dial String Reservations for Users](#) on page 435

E.164 Numbering Scheme Settings

The administrator has the following options when implementing an E.164 numbering scheme:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Select Area</td>
<td>When areas are enabled, you can select an area to which you want to apply this E.164 numbering scheme.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This field is only available to users who manage more than one area. The drop-down list lists only those areas that the user has permission to manage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Users with the administrator role can always select an area when areas are enabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prefix</td>
<td>• <strong>No Prefix</strong> — The system will not append a prefix to create the E.164 assignment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>A Number</strong> — The system appends the prefix specified to create the E.164 assignment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Based on Endpoint Type</strong> — The system appends an Endpoint Type prefix to create the E.164 assignment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You can use the suggested prefix or click the <strong>Device Number</strong> field to edit the prefix for the device type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This options is not available if you choose to use a suffix based on the endpoint type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base Field</td>
<td>You can define a specific number range or indicate that a phone number be used for the Base Field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Option</td>
<td>Usage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Suffix       | • **No Suffix**—The system will not append a suffix to create the E.164 assignment.  
|              | • **A Number**—The system appends the suffix specified to create the E.164 assignment.  
|              | • **Based on Endpoint Type**—The system appends a pre-defined Endpoint Type suffix to create the E.164 assignment.  
|              | You can use the suggested suffix or click the Device Number field to edit the suffix for the device type.  
|              | This option is not available if you used a prefix based on the endpoint type.  |

### Specify Base Field

You can define a specific number range or indicate that a phone number be used for the **Base Field**.

#### Procedure
- In the **Base Field**, select one of the followings:
  - **Specify Number Range**—Use the **To** and **From** fields to define the number range.
  - **Use Phone Number**
    - If you want to use the main phone number field from Active Directory, leave the **Mapping to Active Directory Name** field blank.
      - If you want to use a number other than the one indicated in the **Phone Number** field in **Active Directory**, you can indicate another Active Directory attribute to use.
      - For example, if your Active Directory also includes mobile number information in an Active Directory Attribute called `mobilenum`, you should select **Use Phone Number** and then enter the name `mobilenum` in the **Mapping to Active Directory Name** field.
    - Enter the **Maximum number of digits to use** from the user's phone number (between 3 and 10 digits).
      - The digits from the phone number are selected from right to left.
    - Enter **Number range to use if phone number is empty** (reverts to **Specify Number Range**)—The system will revert to using a number range if the user's phone number is empty.

### Define an Endpoint Naming Scheme and H.323 Alias

You can define an endpoint naming scheme that the system provisions to all dynamically managed endpoints and UC managed endpoints except for phones.

When you define the endpoint name, you can choose to have the endpoint name also serve as the H.323 alias for the endpoint (default). Alternatively, you can use a different name for the H.323 alias and the endpoint name, and define a naming scheme for both.

#### Note:
- System names can’t exceed 36 characters or provisioning fails.

#### Procedure
1. Go to **Endpoint > Auto-Generate Rules > Endpoint Naming**.
2. Select up four naming fields and three separators from the drop-down list.
   Predefined fields include:
   - Last Name
   - First Name
   - User ID
   - City
   - Department
   - Endpoint Type
   - Domain
   - Title
   For example, define the following endpoint name by selecting **UserID**, **City** and **Endpoint Type** fields and by using two “.” separators: UserID.City.HDX.
3. (Dynamically Managed Endpoint Only) To use the endpoint name as the hostname for hardware endpoints (such as RealPresence Group Series, HDX, or RealPresence Immersive Studio systems), select the **Use the Generated Endpoint Name as the Hardware Endpoint’s Hostname** check box.
4. (Dynamically managed endpoint and UC managed video endpoint Only) Define the H.323 alias naming scheme using one of the following options:
   - To use same naming scheme for the endpoint and the H.323 alias, select the **Use Endpoint Naming for H323 ID** check box.
   - To use a different naming scheme for the endpoint and the H.323 alias, clear the **Use Endpoint Naming for H323 ID** check box and refer to Step 2 to build the H.323 ID scheme.
5. Click **Update**.
   The settings only apply to newly added dynamically managed endpoints and UC managed endpoints (except for phones). Existing endpoints are not impacted.

**Related Links**
- Defining UC Endpoint Naming Schema on page 385
- H.323 ID Scheme on page 249
- Endpoint Naming Scheme on page 248
- Managing Dial String Reservations for Users on page 435

**Endpoint Naming Scheme**

The administrator has the following options when implementing an endpoint naming scheme:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Select Area</td>
<td>When areas are enabled, you can select an area to which you want to apply this endpoint naming scheme. This field is only available to users who manage more than one area. The drop-down list lists only those areas that the user has permission to manage.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Naming Field

The following fields are available to use as a naming field. Be sure that the field you choose is populated for all users in your system. You cannot use the same naming field twice in the same scheme.

- Last Name
- First Name
- User ID
- City
- Department
- Endpoint Type
- Domain
- Title
- Area (only available when areas are enabled)

You cannot use the same naming field more than once within the same naming scheme.

### Separator

You can use a separator between each naming field. If you do not want to use a separator, you must select (none).

Choose from the following separators:

- (none)
- (space)
- ,
- _

You can use the same separator multiple times.

### Related Links

- Define an Endpoint Naming Scheme and H.323 Alias on page 247
- Edit an Endpoint on page 219

### H.323 ID Scheme

The administrator has the following options for an H.323 ID scheme.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Select Area</td>
<td>When areas are enabled, you can select an area to which you want to apply this endpoint naming scheme. This field is only available to users who manage more than one area. The drop-down list lists only those areas that the user has permission to manage.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Naming Field</td>
<td>The following fields are available to use as a naming field. Be sure that the field you choose is populated for all users in your system. You cannot use the same naming field twice in the same scheme.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Last Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• First Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• User ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Department</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Endpoint Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Endpoint Model</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Domain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Area (only available when areas are enabled)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You cannot use the same naming field more than once within the same naming scheme.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Separator</th>
<th>You can use a separator between each naming field. If you do not want to use a separator, you must select (none). Choose from the following separators:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• (none)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• _</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can use the same separator multiple times.

Related Links

- Define an Endpoint Naming Scheme and H.323 Alias on page 247
- Edit an Endpoint on page 219

## Auto-Generate SIP URIs for Dynamically Managed Endpoints

You can automatically generate a SIP URI for each dynamically managed endpoint and UC managed video endpoint according to a naming scheme you define.

You can choose to use the user email address as the SIP URI or define a custom URI from Active Directory attributes. When you define a custom SIP URI from Active Directory fields, you can choose one of the default fields or a different Active Directory attribute.

**Procedure**

1. Go to Endpoint > Auto-Generate Rules > SIP URI.
2. If areas are enabled, select an area from the Select Area drop-down list.
The **Select Area** drop-down list is available to users with the administrator or area administrator role. The areas included in the list are restricted to those areas that the user is allowed to manage.

3. Select the **Auto-generate SIP URIs for all users** check box.

4. Do one of the following:
   - To use the user’s email address as the SIP URI, select the **Use the user’s email address as their SIP URI** check box.
     
     **Note:** If you choose this option, you can’t further define the fields used for the SIP URI.

   - To define a SIP URI using predefined fields, select up four naming fields from the drop-down list (separated by "."), followed by the appropriate domain name.
     
     Predefined fields include:
     - Last Name
     - First Name
     - User ID
     - City
     - Department
     - Endpoint Type
     - Endpoint Model
     - Domain
     - Title

     For example, define the following SIP URI by selecting the **UserID**, **City**, and **Endpoint Type** fields (separated by ".") and the domain name "abc.com":
     UserID.City.HDX@abc.com.

   - To define a SIP URI using an Active Directory attribute, select **AD Attribute** from the drop-down list, enter the name of the attribute in the **Attribute Name** field, and include valid SIP Domain information in the SIP URI definition.
     
     **Note:** The attribute you enter must exactly match an existing Active Directory attribute. Talk to your Active Directory administrator if you have questions about which Active Directory attributes are available for use.

5. Optional: Select the **Keep URIs Unique** check box if you want unique SIP URIs for each endpoint regardless of user.

   If you leave this check box cleared, the system can use the user’s SIP URI for each endpoint associated with that user.

6. Click **Update**.

   The settings only apply to newly added dynamically managed endpoints. Existing endpoints are not impacted.

**Related Links**

[Managing Dial String Reservations for Users](#) on page 435
**SIP Domain Information**

The table explains the SIP domain information.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Naming Field</td>
<td>The following fields are available to use as a naming field. Be sure that the field you choose is populated for all users in your system. You cannot use the same naming field twice in the same scheme.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Last Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• First Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• User ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Department</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Endpoint Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Endpoint Model</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Domain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• AD Attribute.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>◦ When you select AD attribute, you must also enter an name in the <strong>Attribute Name</strong> field. The name must match an available Active Directory attribute. You cannot use the same naming field more than once within the same naming scheme.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Separator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You can use a separator between each naming field. If you do not want to use a separator, you must select (none).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Choose from the following separators:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• (none)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• _</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• @</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You cannot use the @ separator more than once and it cannot be used before the _ separator.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Managing Endpoint Naming Schemes
## Option

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Domain name suffix | Adds the domain suffix to the naming field you choose.  
You can either choose None or select "A String (specify) to enter the domain suffix as a string value.  
For example, *LastName.FirstName@domainsuffix.com* can be defined by selecting LastName and FirstName as naming fields with a "." separator. The Domain suffix in this example was entered as a string.  
**Caution:** Be sure to verify that the string you enter here is a valid SIP domain or the SIP URI will not be valid. |
Managing Polycom Software Endpoints

Topics:

- Distributing Polycom RealPresence Desktop for Windows Systems
- Distributing Polycom RealPresence Desktop for MAC Systems

You can distribute Polycom RealPresence Desktop for use in specific environments.

**Distributing Polycom RealPresence Desktop for Windows Systems**

Polycom provides you multiple options to deploy the RealPresence Desktop client to users.

You must implement DNS lookup and Windows authentication for single sign-on. On a Windows systems, you must sign in with administrative privileges to install the Polycom RealPresence Desktop.

**Distribute the Client via an E-mail Link**

You can an e-mail with the link for the client to users.

**Procedure**

1. Copy and paste the link from the Downloads page into an e-mail to be sent to users.
2. Include the IP address of the RealPresence Resource Manager system and usernames and passwords (as required) in the e-mail to users.

**Distribute the Client via the Management System**

You can provide users access to the RealPresence Resource Manager system, from which they can download the client.

**Procedure**

1. Copy and paste the link from the Downloads page into an e-mail to be sent to users.
2. Include usernames and passwords (as required) in the e-mail to users and instruct them to access the Downloads link.

**Distribute the Client via a Desktop Management or Group Policy Object**

Distribute the .exe installation file as a desktop management or group policy object to a location on client systems and provide directions to users on how to run the executable.

**Procedure**

1. build a desktop management or group policy object that writes the .exe installation file to a directory (for example, C:\temp) on the user's local system.
2. Include the command for executing the file in an e-mail to be sent to users.
For example: `C:\temp\RPD.exe"/s /v"/qn SBSERVERTYPE=2 SBSERVERADDRESS=nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn`

3. Include the IP address of the RealPresence Resource Manager system and usernames and passwords (as required) in the e-mail to users.

Distribute the Client via a ZIP File

You can zip the `.exe` installation file and send it in an e-mail to users.

**Procedure**

1. Include the IP address of the RealPresence Resource Manager system and usernames and passwords (as required) in the e-mail to users.
2. For endpoints on the public network that will be accessing the system through a firewall, include the IP address of the firewall system rather than the RealPresence Resource Manager system. The firewall system should then direct traffic to the RealPresence Resource Manager system.
3. Zip the `.exe` installation file and send it in an e-mail to users.

Have Users Download RealPresence Desktop

You can tell users to download Polycom RealPresence Desktop.

Users can download it from [Polycom support](#). With this option, you also need to email users the IP address of the RealPresence Resource Manager and the required user name and password.

Distributing Polycom RealPresence Desktop for MAC Systems

Polycom provides you multiple options to deploy the RealPresence Desktop client to users.

On a MAC system, the user installing the client must sign in with administrative privileges. You need to have implemented DNS lookup and MAC authentication for single sign-on.

Download the Client from the Polycom Support Page

You can download the installation package from the Polycom support center.

With this option, you also need to e-mail users

**Procedure**

1. Go to the [Polycom Support Page](#).
2. Select a Polycom RealPresence Desktop to download.
3. Send e-mails to users with the RealPresence Resource Manager IP address, username, and password.

Distribute the Client for MAC client via an E-mail Link

You can copy the link for the client for MAC clients from the RealPresence Resource Manager system [Downloads](#) page into an e-mail that you can send to users.

**Procedure**
1. Copy and paste the client for MAC link (e.g., http://10.47.9.136/SoftUpdate/vvl/CMADesktopMac_5_2_3/CMADesktop.dmg) from the Downloads page into an e-mail to be sent to users.

2. Include the RealPresence Resource Manager system IP address, usernames, and passwords (as required) in the e-mail to users.

**Distribute the Mac Client via the Management System**

You can provide users access to the RealPresence Resource Manager system, from which they can download the client.

**Procedure**

1. Copy and paste the IP address of the client system into an e-mail to be sent to users.
2. Include usernames and passwords (as required) in the e-mail to users and instruct them to access the Downloads link.

**Distribute the Mac Client via a .dmg File**

You can distribute the installation package via a .dmg file.

**Procedure**

1. Include the RealPresence Resource Manager system IP address, usernames, and passwords (as required) in the e-mail to users.
2. For endpoints on the public network that will be accessing the system through a firewall, include the IP address of the firewall system rather than the RealPresence Resource Manager system. The firewall system should then direct traffic to the RealPresence Resource Manager system.
3. Send the .dmg file in an e-mail to users.
Scheduled Endpoint Management and Provisioning

Topics:

- Supported Endpoints for Scheduled Management
- Scheduled Endpoint Management Settings
- Creating Scheduled Provisioning Profiles
- Scheduling Endpoints for Provisioning
- Endpoint Fields for Scheduled Provisioning Profiles

Scheduled management enables you to push software updates and provisioning profiles to endpoints at intervals that you define. You can use scheduled management features to manage Polycom as well as third-party endpoints.

This management technique is more appropriate for corporate networks where both the RealPresence Resource Manager and all endpoints are behind the same firewall.

You can schedule provisioning to occur immediately or for a date and time in the future. Scheduled management uses server-to-client communication over HTTP or HTTPS, and the provisioning data is sent in XML format over the HTTP or HTTPS connection.

You can schedule endpoint provisioning for an individual endpoint or group of endpoints. You can schedule provisioning for an unlimited number of endpoints, but the system may limit the number of active provisioning processes. Some provisioning operations may reboot the endpoint.

You must have Device Administrator or Area Administrator role to use scheduled provisioning features.

Supported Endpoints for Scheduled Management

In order to be provisioned, an endpoint's system name cannot exceed 36 characters or the provisioning will fail.

Scheduled provisioning is available for these endpoint types:

- Polycom VSX Series endpoints
- Polycom HDX Series—Polycom HDX systems that are not dynamically managed (are not configured to use a provisioning server)
- Polycom QDX Series endpoints
- Selected Cisco endpoints—Cisco 95, Cisco 150 MXP, Cisco C series, Cisco EX series, and Cisco SX endpoints
- LifeSize
Scheduled Endpoint Management Settings

When you use scheduled management for endpoints, you can configure several options that make management easier.

Enable Automatic Registration Synchronization

You can configure the RealPresence Resource Manager system to send registration server address information for the global directory server (GDS) when the endpoint is registered to the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

**Note:** For the RealPresence Resource Manager system, the GDS is the same as the global address book.

This automatic registration synchronization service only works for endpoints that register with the GDS or are manually added to the RealPresence Resource Manager system after the **Automatic Registration Synchronization** setting is enabled. Pre-existing endpoints cannot be registered to GDS automatically. If automatic discovery and configuration is not successful, you can manually add endpoints.

The RealPresence Resource Manager system only supports **Automatic Registration Synchronization** for Polycom and selected third-party endpoints that are not dynamically managed.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Endpoint > Scheduled Management > Endpoint Management Settings**.
2. In the **Automatic Registration Synchronization** section, select **Synchronize endpoint registration** and click **Update**.
   After you have changed this setting, all endpoints you added are automatically provisioned.

Enable Use HTTPs for Cisco Endpoint Management

When **Use HTTPs** is checked, the RealPresence Resource Manager system will check for an HTTPs connection first when managing Cisco endpoints.

If it is not checked, the system checks for an HTTP connection first.

**Procedure**

1. Navigate to **Endpoints > Scheduled Management > Endpoint Management Settings**.
2. In the **Cisco Endpoint Management** section, select the **Use HTTPs** check box.
   When this check box is selected, the RealPresence Resource Manager system will check for an HTTPs connection first when managing Cisco endpoints.

Configuring Passwords for Scheduled Management

A RealPresence Resource Manager system can manage Polycom endpoints only when the password in the device record matches the password in the endpoint.

Matching passwords are required to:

- Schedule provisioning of an endpoint through a RealPresence Resource Manager system.
- Use the Scheduled Software Update feature.
- Monitor the endpoint from the **Endpoint > Monitor View**.
You can update the password for certain endpoint systems through scheduled provisioning only after you have entered the matching password in the RealPresence Resource Manager system. In this case, you must instruct end-users not to change the password.

**Note:** Some companies select an administrative password that is used for all endpoints and regularly updated through provisioning.

For third-party endpoints, passwords may be required to access the endpoint management software. For information about restrictions in changing passwords for a specific endpoint, see the documentation for the endpoint.

### Use a Common Password for Endpoints

This feature enables you to manage endpoints with scheduled management (provisioning and software updates) that have the same global administrative password.

If you set a common password for endpoints, access to password-protected data within endpoints is granted if the specified common password matches the endpoints’ **Administrator Password**. Setting a common password does not reset the administrative password on endpoints.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Endpoint > Scheduled Management > Endpoint Management Settings**.
2. In the **Common Password** section, select **Use a Common Password**.
3. Enter the common **User Name** and a common password in the **Password** and **Verify Password** fields and click **Update**.

### Disable Common Password for Endpoints

You can disable common passwords for endpoints.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Endpoint > Scheduled Management > Endpoint Management Settings**.
2. In the **Common Password** section, clear **Use a Common Password** and click **Update**.

### Creating Scheduled Provisioning Profiles

The RealPresence Resource Manager system does not include a default profile for scheduled provisioning.

You must create a profile before you can schedule an endpoint for provisioning. Create a different profile for each endpoint type.

You must have the device administrator role to modify provisioning profiles. Users with the role of area administrator cannot modify provisioning profiles.

Some examples of when to use scheduled provisioning profiles:

- To apply a standard set of options to each new endpoint
  By creating templates of standard settings for different types of endpoints, or for the needs of different users, you can have the RealPresence Resource Manager system apply all the settings at once. After the endpoint is connected and registered with the RealPresence Resource Manager system, you can use a provisioning profile that defines a range of other options.

- To update the password for all endpoints of a particular type
For security purpose, you can create a provisioning profile to update the password for endpoints on a regular basis and reuse the same profile quarterly. You might have several profiles, one for each type of endpoint to update.

You may find more implementation details about these fields in the endpoint system documentation.

**Add a Scheduled Provisioning Profile**

You must create a profile for the endpoint type you want to provision.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Endpoint > Scheduled Management > Provisioning Profiles**.
2. In the **Provisioning Profiles** page, click **Add**.
3. In the **Add Profile** dialog, select the **Endpoint Type** for the provisioning profile, enter a name for the profile, and click **OK**.
4. On the **Edit Scheduling Provisioning Profile** dialog,
   - For Polycom endpoints and LifeSize, select **Provision This Page**. Each page has a **Provision This Page** check box. When this check box is selected, the system provisions all of the values on that page. When this option is not selected, the system does not provision any of the values on that page. At least one page must be selected, or the system returns an error stating.
   - For Cisco endpoints, select the parameters that you want to provision on each page. You can check the **Select All** check box to select all the parameters on each page.
5. Complete the settings on this page as needed.
6. Click **OK**.

**Edit a Scheduled Provisioning Profile**

You can edit an existing provisioning profile.

You cannot rename an existing profile. If you want to change the name of a provisioning profile, you can clone a profile and rename it.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Endpoint > Scheduled Management > Provisioning Profiles**.
2. In the **Provisioning Profiles** list, select the profile of interest and click **Edit**.
3. As needed, update the parameters on each page.
4. Click **OK**.

**Clone a Scheduled Provisioning Profile**

If you want to rename an existing provisioning profile or create a new profile based on an existing profile, you can use the **Clone** action.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Endpoint > Scheduled Management > Provisioning Profiles**.
2. Select a profile and click **Clone**.
3. In the **Clone Profile** dialog, enter a name for the new profile and click **OK**.
   - The provisioning profile appears first in the updated **Provisioning Profiles** list.
4. Edit the this profile as needed.
5. Click OK to save the changes.

Delete a Scheduled Provisioning Profile
You can delete a provisioning profile at any time.
Deleted profiles will no longer be sent during scheduled provisioning updates.

Procedure
1. Go to Endpoint > Scheduled Management > Provisioning Profiles.
2. In the Provisioning Profiles page, select a profile and click Delete.
3. Click OK to confirm the deletion.

Scheduling Endpoints for Provisioning
You can schedule provisioning for an unlimited number of endpoints, but the system may limit the number of active provisioning processes.
Keep in mind that provisioning may reboot the endpoint.
You must have Device Administrator or Area Administrator role to use scheduled provisioning features.
- If an endpoint scheduled for provisioning is In a Call, the system waits until the call ends before provisioning the endpoint. The system checks the endpoint at 15 minute intervals.
- If an endpoint scheduled for provisioning is Offline, the system attempts to connect to it at 60 minute intervals until the endpoint is Online.

View a List of Eligible Endpoints
You can view a list of endpoints registered to the RealPresence Resource Manager system that are eligible for scheduled provisioning.
You must have Device Administrator or Area Administrator role to use scheduled provisioning features.
You must have already created a provisioning profile to use before you can schedule a provisioning update for an endpoint.

Procedure
1. Go to Endpoint > Scheduled Management > Provisioning.
2. As needed, click Filter to filter the Endpoint list.
   The filter choice for endpoint types that can be scheduled for provisioning. Possible values include:
   - HDX Series—Displays the Polycom HDX systems operating in scheduled management mode.
   - Cisco®
   - LifeSize
   - QDX Series
   - V and VSX Series
Eligible Endpoints Information

The Endpoint list in this view has the following information.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Status</td>
<td>The status of the endpoint's last provisioning process. Possible values include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Success</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Pending</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Failed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Clear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endpoint Name</td>
<td>The system name of the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>The type of endpoint. Scheduled provisioning is only available for the endpoints types listed in this table as Filter selections.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP Address</td>
<td>The IP address assigned to the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last</td>
<td>The date and time of the endpoint's last provisioning, unless its status has been cleared.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pending</td>
<td>When the endpoint is scheduled for provisioning, this field shows the provisioning profile to be used for the scheduled provisioning process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scheduled</td>
<td>When the endpoint is scheduled for provisioning, this field shows the date and time for the next scheduled provisioning process.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Schedule Provisioning for Endpoints

You can schedule provisioning profiles to be sent to endpoints at times you specify.

You must have Device Administrator or Area Administrator role to use scheduled provisioning features.

Procedure

1. Go to Endpoint > Scheduled Management > Provisioning.
2. As needed, click Filter to filter the endpoint list.
3. Select the endpoints that you want to schedule provisioning updates.
4. Click More > Provision.
5. In the Scheduled Provisioning Profiles dialog, select the appropriate provisioning profile.
6. In the Schedule field, select Now or Later.
7. If you select Later, enter a Date and Time for the provisioning.
8. Select either Use Server Date/Time or Use Endpoint Date/Time as these may differ.
9. Click Schedule.
   The Scheduled Provisioning View reappears.
10. Click Refresh and check the Pending column for the provisioning status.
For each endpoint you selected, the name of the profile appears in the **Pending** column, and the date and time you entered appears in the **Scheduled** column.

### Check the Status of a Scheduled Provisioning Update

You can monitor the status of scheduled provisioning updates.

You must have Device Administrator or Area Administrator role to use scheduled provisioning features.

Until the RealPresence Resource Manager system successfully provisions an endpoint scheduled for provisioning, provisioning remains in the **Pending** state and the system attempts to provision the endpoint until it succeeds or until the provisioning is canceled.

Profile statuses include: **Pending**, **Failed**, **Success**, and **Clear**.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Endpoint > Scheduled Management > Provisioning**.
2. As needed, click **Filter** to filter the endpoint list.
3. Select the endpoint of interest.
4. Click **View Details** to open the **Device Details** section.
5. Expand the **Provisioning Details** tab.
6. View the **Status** field to see the current status of the update.

### Clear the Status of Scheduled Provisioning

You can reset the provisioning status so you can better monitor succeeding provisioning updates.

You must have Device Administrator or Area Administrator role to use scheduled provisioning features.

For example, you can clear all profile Success statuses.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Endpoint > Scheduled Management > Provisioning**.
2. As needed, click **Filter** to filter the endpoint list.
3. Select the endpoint of which you want to clear the status.
4. Click **More > Clear Status**.
   
   The endpoint provisioning status returns to **Clear**.

### Cancel a Scheduled Provisioning

You can only cancel provisioning of a **Pending** process.

You must have Device Administrator or Area Administrator role to use scheduled provisioning features.

You cannot cancel the provisioning of an endpoint while it is **In Progress**.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Endpoint > Scheduled Management > Provisioning**.
2. As needed, click **Filter** to filter the endpoint list.
3. Select the endpoints of interest.
4. Click **More > Cancel Provision**.
   
   The provisioning operation is canceled and the provisioning status returns to **Clear**.
Endpoint Fields for Scheduled Provisioning Profiles

The following tables show the fields you can configure when adding a new scheduled provisioning profile for a Polycom endpoint.

You may find more implementation details about these fields in the endpoint system documentation. For information about third-party endpoint fields, consult the respective documentation.

### General Settings > System Settings > System Settings 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>HDX Series</th>
<th>VSX Series</th>
<th>QDX Series</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Time in Call (minutes)</td>
<td>Specifies the maximum number of minutes allowed for a call. Enter 0 to remove any limit.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow Mixed IP and ISDN calls</td>
<td>Specifies whether users can make multipoint calls that include both IP and H.320 sites.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto Answer Point-to-Point Calls</td>
<td>Specifies whether to set the endpoint system to answer incoming point-to-point calls automatically.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto Answer Multipoint Calls</td>
<td>Specifies whether to set the endpoint system to answer incoming multipoint calls automatically.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow Directory Changes</td>
<td>Specifies whether users can save changes to the directory or contacts/favorites list.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Confirm Directory Additions Upon Call Disconnect</td>
<td>Specifies whether users are prompted to confirm deletions of directory entries.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Confirm Directory Deletions</td>
<td>Specifies whether users are prompted to confirm new directory entries when saving the information for the last site called.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow Access to User Setup</td>
<td>Specifies whether the User Settings screen is accessible to users via the System screen. Select this option to allow users to change limited environmental settings.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### General Settings > System Settings > System Settings 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>HDX Series</th>
<th>VSX Series</th>
<th>QDX Series</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Far Site Name Display</td>
<td>Specifies how long the far site name to appear on the screen when the call is first connected.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>HDX Series</td>
<td>VSX Series</td>
<td>QDX Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display Time in Call</td>
<td>Displays time that the current call has been connected.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Keypad Audio Confirmation</td>
<td>Allows the user to hear a voice confirmation of the numbers selected with the remote control.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Call Detail Report</td>
<td>Collects call data.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recent Calls</td>
<td>Provides navigational tool for call history.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color Scheme</td>
<td>Enables the customization of the look of the system with five different color schemes.</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screen Saver Wait Time</td>
<td>The time the system will delay before going into standby mode after nonuse.</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**General Settings > Home Screen Settings > Home Screen Settings 1**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>HDX Series</th>
<th>VSX Series</th>
<th>QDX Series</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dialing Display</td>
<td>• Dialing entry field - Includes the dialing entry field on the Home screen.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Display Marquee - Allows the addition of text to the dialing entry field of the Home screen.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enter Marquee Text</td>
<td>Enter the Marquee text that appears in the Dialing entry field when Display Marquee is selected.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Call Quality</td>
<td>Allow users to select the speed/bandwidth of the call.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display H.323 Extension</td>
<td>Displays the IP dialing extension on the main call screen</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Directory</td>
<td>Includes the Directory button on the Home screen.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System</td>
<td>Includes the System button on the Home screen.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multipoint</td>
<td>Includes the Multipoint navigational item on the Home screen.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### General Settings > Home Screen Settings > Home Screen Settings 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>HDX Series</th>
<th>VSX Series</th>
<th>QDX Series</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>System Name</td>
<td>Enable when the system name is to be displayed on the Home Screen.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP or ISDN Information</td>
<td>- Both - Displays both number types on the system's Home screen.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- IP only - Display the system IP number on the Home screen.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local Date and Time</td>
<td>Displays the local time on the Home screen.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable Availability Control</td>
<td>Displays availability icons on the Home screen.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sites</td>
<td>Displays icons created for frequently called sites on the Home screen.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last Number Dialed</td>
<td>Displays the last number dialed on the Home screen.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### General Settings > Security

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>HDX Series</th>
<th>VSX Series</th>
<th>QDX Series</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Access Password</td>
<td>Specifies the password for administrator access when logging in to the system remotely. The remote access password must not contain spaces. When the remote access password is set, users must enter it to manage the system from a computer.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>HDX Series</td>
<td>VSX Series</td>
<td>QDX Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meeting Password</td>
<td>Specifies the password users must supply to join multipoint calls on this system if the call uses the internal multipoint option, rather than a bridge. The meeting password must not contain spaces. Do not set a meeting password if multipoint calls will include audio-only endpoints. Audio-only endpoints cannot participate in password-protected calls. You cannot provision this setting for Polycom VSX systems.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable Web Access</td>
<td>Specifies that the endpoint system can be accessed via its web interface. The system restarts if you change the remote access settings. This setting does not deactivate the associated port, only the application. Use Web Access Port to disable the port.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable Telnet Access</td>
<td>Specifies that the endpoint system can be accessed via a telnet session. The system restarts if you change the remote access settings. This setting does not deactivate the associated port, only the application. Use Web Access Port to disable the port.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AES Encryption</td>
<td>Specifies how to encrypt calls with other sites that support AES encryption. • Off—AES Encryption is disabled. • When Available—AES Encryption is used with any endpoint that supports it, even if the other endpoints in the call don't support it. • Required for Video Calls Only—AES Encryption is used for all video endpoints in the call. Analog phone and voice over ISDN connections are allowed. Video endpoints must support AES Encryption to participate in the call. • Required for All Calls—AES Encryption is used for all video endpoints in the call. Analog phone and voice over ISDN connections are not allowed. All endpoints must support AES Encryption to participate in the call.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Field Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>HDX Series</th>
<th>VSX Series</th>
<th>QDX Series</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enable SNMP Access</td>
<td>Specifies that the endpoint system can be accessed via an SNMP monitoring system. The system restarts if you change the remote access settings. This setting does not deactivate the associated port, only the application. Use Web Access Port to disable the port.</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### General Settings > Date and Time 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>HDX Series</th>
<th>VSX Series</th>
<th>QDX Series</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Date Format</td>
<td>Specifies the preferred format preference for the date and time display and lets you enter your local date and time.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time Format</td>
<td>Specifies the preferred format preference for the date and time display and lets you enter your local date and time.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Month</td>
<td>Specifies the preferred format preference for the date and time display and lets you enter your local date and time.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Day</td>
<td>Specifies the preferred format preference for the date and time display and lets you enter your local date and time.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Year</td>
<td>Specifies the preferred format preference for the date and time display and lets you enter your local date and time.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hour</td>
<td>Specifies the preferred format preference for the date and time display and lets you enter your local date and time.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minute</td>
<td>Specifies the preferred format preference for the date and time display and lets you enter your local date and time.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AM/PM</td>
<td>Specifies the preferred format preference for the date and time display and lets you enter your local date and time.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto Adjust for Daylight Saving Time</td>
<td>Specifies the daylight savings time setting. When this setting is enabled, the system clock automatically changes for daylight saving time.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>HDX Series</td>
<td>VSX Series</td>
<td>QDX Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time Difference from GMT</td>
<td>Specifies the time difference between GMT (Greenwich Mean Time) and the endpoint system's location.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time Server</td>
<td>Specifies connection to a time server for automatic system time settings.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary Time Server Address</td>
<td>Specifies the address of the time server to use when Time Server is set to Manual.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Video Network > IP Network > Call Preferences

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>HDX Series</th>
<th>VSX Series</th>
<th>QDX Series</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enable IP H.323</td>
<td>Enables the system to make IP calls</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable H.239</td>
<td>Specifies standards-based People+Content data collaboration. Enable this option if you know that H.239 is supported by the far sites you will call. If callers experience issues when sharing content with other Polycom systems, disable this setting.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable Transcoding</td>
<td>Specifies whether the system enables each far-site system to connect at the best possible call rate and audio/video algorithm. If transcoding is disabled, the Polycom HDX system down-speeds all connections to the same call rate.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISDN Gateway</td>
<td>Enables users to place IP-to-ISDN calls through a gateway.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP Gateway</td>
<td>Enables users to place ISDN-to-IP or IP-to-IP calls through a gateway.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Video Network > IP Network > Gatekeeper

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>HDX Series</th>
<th>VSX Series</th>
<th>QDX Series</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use Gatekeeper</td>
<td>Specifies whether to use a gatekeeper. Gateways and gatekeepers are required for calls between IP and ISDN.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Off</strong> — Calls do not use a gatekeeper.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Auto</strong> — System attempts to automatically find an available gatekeeper.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Specify</strong> — Calls use the specified gatekeeper. Enter the gatekeeper’s IP address or name (for example, gatekeeper.companyname.usa.com, or 10.11.12.13).</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gatekeeper IP Address</td>
<td>If you chose to use an automatically selected gatekeeper, this area displays the gatekeeper's IP address. If you chose to specify a gatekeeper, enter the IP address.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use Gatekeeper for Multipoint Calls</td>
<td>Specify whether multipoint calls use the system’s internal multipoint capability or the Conference on Demand feature.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Video Network > IP Network > Gateway Number

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>HDX Series</th>
<th>VSX Series</th>
<th>QDX Series</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Country Code</td>
<td>Specifies the country code for the system’s location</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Area Code</td>
<td>Specifies the area or city code for the system’s location</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gateway Number</td>
<td>Specifies the gateway’s number</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gateway Number Type</td>
<td>Specifies the number type users enter to call this system:</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Direct Inward Dial</strong> — Users enter an internal extension to call this system directly. If you choose this setting, you must also register the number with the gatekeeper as an E.164 alias.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Number + Extension</strong> — Users enter the gateway number and the system’s extension to call this system.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>HDX Series</td>
<td>VSX Series</td>
<td>QDX Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of digits in DID Number</td>
<td>Specifies the number of digits in the DID number. The national or regional dialing plan for your location determines the standard number of digits. For instance, the US standard is 7 digits.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of digits in Extension</td>
<td>Specifies the number of digits in the extension used when Direct Inward Dial is selected. Your organization’s dial plan determines this number.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Video Network > IP Network > Quality of Service Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>HDX Series</th>
<th>VSX Series</th>
<th>QDX Series</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Type of Service Field</td>
<td>Specifies the service type and the priority of IP packets sent to the system for video, audio, and far-end camera control:&lt;br&gt;- <strong>IP Precedence</strong> — Represents the priority of IP packets sent to the system. The value can be between 0 and 7.&lt;br&gt;- <strong>DiffServ</strong> — Represents a priority level between 0 and 63. If this setting is selected, enter the value in the Type of Service Value field.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video Type of Service Value</td>
<td>Specifies the IP Precedence or Diffserv value for video packets. This value does not apply to the CMA Desktop system. It’s value is set by the client’s operating system.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio Type of Service Value</td>
<td>Specifies the IP Precedence or Diffserv value for audio packets.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FECC Type of Service Value</td>
<td>Specifies the IP Precedence or Diffserv value for Far End Camera Control packets.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable Dynamic Bandwidth</td>
<td>Specifies whether to let the system automatically find the optimum line speed for a call</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable PVEC</td>
<td>Enables the system to use PVEC (Polycom Video ErrorConcealment) if packet loss occurs.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>HDX Series</td>
<td>VSX Series</td>
<td>QDX Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use Fixed Ports</td>
<td>Specifies whether to define the TCP and UDP ports.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• You must open the corresponding ports in the firewall. You must also open the firewall's TCP port 1720 to allow H.323 traffic.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If the firewall is H.323 compatible or the endpoint systems are not behind a firewall, disable this setting.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If the firewall is not H.323 compatible, enable this setting. The endpoint systems will assign a range of ports starting with the TCP and UDP ports you specify. The endpoint system defaults to a range beginning with port 3230 for both TCP and UDP.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start TCP Port</td>
<td>Allows you to specify the beginning value for the range of TCP ports used by the endpoint systems. The endpoint systems will automatically assign a range of ports starting with the port you specify.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You must also open the firewall's TCP port 1720 to allow H.323 traffic.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start UDP Port</td>
<td>Allows you to specify the beginning value for the range of TCP ports used by the endpoint systems. The endpoint systems will automatically assign a range of ports starting with the port you specify.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAT Configuration</td>
<td>Specifies whether the endpoint systems should determine the NAT Public WAN Address automatically.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If the endpoint systems are behind a NAT that allows HTTP traffic, select <strong>Auto</strong>.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If the endpoint systems are behind a NAT that does not allow HTTP traffic, select <strong>Manual</strong>. Then specify a NAT Public (WAN) Address.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If the endpoint systems are not behind a NAT or are connected to the IP network through a virtual private network (VPN), select <strong>Off</strong>.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAT Public (WAN) Address</td>
<td>When <strong>NAT Configuration</strong> is set to <strong>Manual</strong>, specifies the address that callers from outside the LAN should use to call the endpoint systems.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Field Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>HDX Series</th>
<th>VSX Series</th>
<th>QDX Series</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NAT is H.323 Compatible</td>
<td>Specifies that the endpoint systems are behind a NAT that is capable of translating H.323 traffic.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Address Displayed in Global Directory</td>
<td>Specifies whether or not to include the endpoint system's information in the global directory</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Video Network > ISDN BRI Protocol

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>HDX Series</th>
<th>VSX Series</th>
<th>QDX Series</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enable ISDN H.320</td>
<td>Enables this system to make H.320 (ISDN) calls.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of ISDN Channels to Dial in Parallel</td>
<td>Specifies how many channels to dial at one time. You can specify up to eight channels. If you experience network problems, decrease the number. Set this value to 1 for serial dialing. Serial dialing is not recommended unless you have trouble connecting calls using parallel dialing.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISDN Switch Protocols</td>
<td>Specifies the protocol used by your network's switch.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outside Line Dialing Prefix</td>
<td>Specifies the ISDN dialing prefix used to call outside the network.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Video Network > Preferred Speeds

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>HDX Series</th>
<th>VSX Series</th>
<th>QDX Series</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Preferred Speed for Placing Calls (Kbps)</td>
<td>Determines the speeds that used for IP, ISDN, or International ISDN calls from this endpoint system when:</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The Call Quality selection is either unavailable or set to Auto on the Place a Call screen</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The call is placed from the directory</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If the far-site endpoint system does not support the selected speed, the endpoint system automatically negotiates a lower speed.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP Calls</td>
<td>Determines the speeds that used for IP calls.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>HDX Series</td>
<td>VSX Series</td>
<td>QDX Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISDN Video Call (H. 320)</td>
<td>Determines the speeds that used for ISDN calls.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>International ISDN calls</td>
<td>Determines the speeds that used for International ISDN calls.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Speed for Receiving Calls (Kbps)</td>
<td>Restricts the bandwidth used when receiving IP or ISDN calls. If the far site attempts to call the system at a higher speed than selected here, the call is re-negotiated at the speed specified in this field.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP Calls</td>
<td>Restricts the bandwidth used when receiving IP calls.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISDN Video Call (H. 320)</td>
<td>Restricts the bandwidth used when receiving ISDN calls.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Monitors > Monitors1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>HDX Series</th>
<th>VSX Series</th>
<th>QDX Series</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number of Monitors</td>
<td>The number of monitors of QDX.</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Monitor 1 Options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>HDX Series</th>
<th>VSX Series</th>
<th>QDX Series</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monitor 1</td>
<td>Specifies the monitor’s aspect ratio. • 4:3 — Select if you are using a regular TV monitor.</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>HDX Series</td>
<td>VSX Series</td>
<td>QDX Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video Format</td>
<td>Specifies the monitor’s format.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• DVI — Select if the monitor is connected to the DVI connector using a DVI or HDMI cable.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• VGA — Select if the monitor is connected to the DVI connector using a VGA cable.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Component YPbPr — Select if the monitor is connected to the DVI connector using component cables. Polycom HDX 8000 series and Polycom HDX 7000 series systems do not support 720p Component format for 50 Hz monitors.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• S-Video (Polycom HDX 9000 series only) — Select if the monitor is connected to the BNC connectors using an S-Video cable.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Composite (Polycom HDX 9000 series only) — Select if the monitor is connected to the BNC connectors using a composite video cable.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display Icons in Call</td>
<td>Specifies whether to display all on-screen graphics, including icons and help text, during calls.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Snapshot Timeout</td>
<td>Lets you choose whether to have slides and snapshots time out after a period of four minutes.</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dual Monitor Emulation</td>
<td>Specifies whether the system can show multiple views on a single display.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Output Upon Screen Saver Activation</td>
<td>Specifies whether black video or no signal is sent to the monitor when the system goes to sleep and the screen saver activates.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Select <strong>Black</strong> to display black video. This is the recommended setting to prevent burn-in for TV monitors.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Select <strong>No Signal</strong> to have the display react as if it is not connected when the system goes to sleep. This is the recommended setting for VGA monitors and projectors.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VGA Resolution</td>
<td>VGA Resolution of VSX.</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Monitor 2 Options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>HDX Series</th>
<th>VSX Series</th>
<th>QDX Series</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monitor 2</td>
<td>Specifies the second monitor’s aspect ratio:</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Off — Select if you do not have a second monitor.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• 4:3 — Select if you are using a regular TV monitor as the second monitor.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video Format</td>
<td>Specifies the monitor’s format:</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• DVI — Select if the monitor is connected to the DVI connector using a DVI or HDMI cable.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• VGA — Select if the monitor is connected to the DVI connector using a VGA cable.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Component YPbPr — Select if the monitor is connected to the DVI connector using component cables. Polycom HDX 8000 series and Polycom HDX 7000 series systems do not support 720p Component format for 50 Hz monitors.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• S-Video (Polycom HDX 9000 series only) — Select if the monitor is connected to the BNC connectors using an S-Video cable.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Composite (Polycom HDX 9000 series only) — Select if the monitor is connected to the BNC connectors using a composite video cable.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Output Upon Screen Saver Activation</td>
<td>Specifies whether black video or no signal is sent to the monitor when the system goes to sleep and the screen saver activates.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Select <strong>Black</strong> to display black video. This is the recommended setting to prevent burn-in for TV monitors.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Select <strong>No Signal</strong> to have the display react as if it is not connected when the system goes to sleep. This is the recommended setting for VGA monitors and projectors.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>People Display Mode</td>
<td></td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Content Display Mode</td>
<td></td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color System</td>
<td></td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Monitor 3 Options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>HDX Series</th>
<th>VSX Series</th>
<th>QDX Series</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monitor 3</td>
<td>Specifies the aspect ratio for recording.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Off — Select if you do not have a VCR or DVD player connected to record video conferences.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• 4:3 — Select to record for playback on a standard monitor.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• 16:9—Select to record for playback on a wide-screen monitor, if your recording device has this capability.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>See the endpoint product documentation for more information about these selections.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video Format</td>
<td>Specifies the VCR or DVD player’s format.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• S-Video — Select if the VCR or DVD player is connected to a Polycom HDX system using an S-Video cable.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Composite — Select if the VCR or DVD player is connected to a Polycom HDX system using a composite video cable and S-Video to RCA adapter.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Output Upon Screen Saver Activation</td>
<td>Specifies whether black video or no signal is sent to the VCR or DVD player when the system goes to sleep and the screen saver activates.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Select <strong>Black</strong> to send black video.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Select <strong>No Signal</strong> to have the VCR or DVD player react as if it is not connected when the system goes to sleep.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VCR/DVD Record Source</td>
<td>Specifies the video source to record to videotape or DVD.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Near</td>
<td>Enable to record the current near site speaker.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If you enable both <strong>Near</strong> and <strong>Far</strong>, the recorded video switches between the near and far sites, depending on the current speaker.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Far</td>
<td>Enable to record the current far site speaker.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If you enable both <strong>Near</strong> and <strong>Far</strong>, the recorded video switches between the near and far sites, depending on the current speaker.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Content</td>
<td>Enable to record any content sent during the call.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Field Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Screen Saver Wait Time</th>
<th>The time the system delays before going into standby mode.</th>
<th>HDX Series</th>
<th>VSX Series</th>
<th>QDX Series</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

#### Cameras > Camera 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>HDX Series</th>
<th>VSX Series</th>
<th>QDX Series</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Far Control of Near Camera</td>
<td>Specifies whether the far site can pan, tilt, or zoom the near-site camera. When a user selects this option, a user at the far site can control the framing and angle of the camera for the best view of the near site.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backlight Compensation</td>
<td>Specifies whether the camera should automatically adjust for a bright background. Backlight compensation is best used in situations where the subject appears darker than the background.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary Camera</td>
<td>Specifies which camera is the main camera.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camera Direction</td>
<td>Specifies the direction the camera moves when using the arrow buttons on the remote control.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Cameras > Camera Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>HDX Series</th>
<th>VSX Series</th>
<th>QDX Series</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Camera 1 Name</td>
<td>Specifies a name for camera 1.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camera 1 Icon</td>
<td>Specifies an icon for camera 1.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camera 2 Name</td>
<td>Specifies a name for camera 2.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camera 2 Icon</td>
<td>Specifies an icon for camera 2.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camera 3 Name</td>
<td>Specifies a name for camera 3.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camera 3 Icon</td>
<td>Specifies an icon for camera 3.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Cameras > Video Quality

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>HDX Series</th>
<th>VSX Series</th>
<th>QDX Series</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Camera 1 | Specifies Motion or Sharpness for the video input for Camera 1. The default is Sharpness.  
  • **Motion** — This setting is for showing people or other video with motion.  
  • **Sharpness** — The picture will be sharp and clear, but moderate to heavy motion at low call rates can cause some frames to be dropped. Sharpness is available in point-to-point H.263 and H.264 calls only. It is recommended for HD calls between 1 Mbps and 2 Mbps. | Y          | Y          | Y          |
| Camera 2 | Specifies Motion or Sharpness for the video input for Camera 2. The default is Sharpness.  
  • **Motion** — This setting is for showing people or other video with motion.  
  • **Sharpness** — The picture will be sharp and clear, but moderate to heavy motion at low call rates can cause some frames to be dropped. Sharpness is available in point-to-point H.263 and H.264 calls only. It is recommended for HD calls between 1 Mbps and 2 Mbps. | Y          | Y          | Y          |
| Camera 3 | Specifies Motion or Sharpness for the video input for Camera 3. The default is Sharpness.  
  • **Motion** — This setting is for showing people or other video with motion.  
  • **Sharpness** — The picture is sharp and clear, but moderate-to-heavy motion at low call rates can cause the system to drop some frames. Sharpness is available in point-to-point H.263 and H.264 calls only. Polycom recommends this setting for HD calls between 1 to 2 Mbps.                                               | Y          | Y          | Y          |

## Audio Settings > Audio Settings 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>HDX Series</th>
<th>VSX Series</th>
<th>QDX Series</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sound Effects Volume</td>
<td>Sets the volume level of the ring tone and user alert tones.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incoming Video Call</td>
<td>Specifies the ring tone used for incoming calls.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>HDX Series</td>
<td>VSX Series</td>
<td>QDX Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Alert Tones</td>
<td>Specifies the tone used for user alerts.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mute Auto Answer Calls</td>
<td>Specifies whether to mute incoming calls.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Incoming calls are muted by default until you press the mute on the microphone or on the remote control.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Line Input</td>
<td>Specifies the type of equipment that is connected to audio input 1.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Input Type Level</td>
<td>Sets the volume level for audio input 1.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Line Input Level</td>
<td>Sets the volume level for audio input 2.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Line Outputs</td>
<td>Specifies how the audio output behaves.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The default selection, <strong>Monitor - Far Site Audio</strong>, supplies audio to the Monitor 1 audio outputs only when the system is receiving audio from the far site.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If you have connected a VCR to record the conference, select <strong>Monitor - Far and Near Audio</strong> to supply audio from both the far site and the system's microphones.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Line Output Level</td>
<td>Sets the volume level for audio output.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Audio Settings > Audio Settings 2**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>HDX Series</th>
<th>VSX Series</th>
<th>QDX Series</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Master Audio Volume</td>
<td>Sets the volume level for audio from the far site.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Midrange Speakers</td>
<td>Specifies whether to use the system's built-in midrange speaker.</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You may prefer to turn off the midrange speaker if you connect the audio output to Monitor 1 or if you connect an external speaker system.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bass</td>
<td>Sets the volume level for the low frequencies without changing the master audio volume.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treble</td>
<td>Sets the volume level for the high frequencies without changing the master audio volume.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### LAN Properties > LAN Properties 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>HDX Series</th>
<th>VSX Series</th>
<th>QDX Series</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Connect to My LAN</td>
<td>Enables connection to the local area network</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP Address</td>
<td>Specifies how the system obtains an IP address.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Obtain IP Address Automatically</strong> — Select if the system gets an IP address from the DHCP server on the LAN.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Enter IP Address Manually</strong> — Select if the IP address will not be assigned automatically.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use the Following IP Address</td>
<td>If you selected <strong>Enter IP Address Manually</strong>, enter the IP address here.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### LAN Properties > LAN Properties 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>HDX Series</th>
<th>VSX Series</th>
<th>QDX Series</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DNS Servers</td>
<td>Displays the DNS servers currently assigned to the system.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If the system does not automatically obtain a DNS server address, enter up to four DNS servers here. Changing this setting causes the system to restart.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Gateway</td>
<td>Displays the gateway currently assigned to the system.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If the system does not automatically obtain a gateway IP address, enter one here. Changing this setting causes the system to restart.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subnet Mask</td>
<td>Displays the subnet mask currently assigned to the system.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If the system does not automatically obtain a subnet mask, enter one here. Changing this setting causes the system to restart.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WINS Server</td>
<td>Displays the server running the Windows Internet Name Service.</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WINS Resolution</td>
<td>Enables connection to the WINS Server for URL resolution.</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>HDX Series</td>
<td>VSX Series</td>
<td>QDX Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LAN Speed</td>
<td>Specify the LAN speed to use.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Note that the setting you choose must be supported by the switch. Mismatches with the network switch settings may lead to unexpected behaviors.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Choose Auto to have the network switch negotiate the speed automatically. In this case, the switch must also be set to Auto. Choosing Auto automatically sets Duplex Mode to Auto.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If you choose 10 Mbps, 100 Mbps, or 1000 Mbps you must set Duplex Mode to Half or Full.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Changing this setting causes the system to restart.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duplex Mode</td>
<td>Specify the duplex mode to use.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Note that the Duplex mode you choose must be supported by the switch.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Choose Auto to have the network switch negotiate the Duplex mode automatically. In this case, the switch must also be set to Auto. Choosing Auto automatically sets LAN Speed to Auto.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Changing this setting causes the system to restart.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**LAN/H.323 > Global Directory (GDS) > Preferences**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>HDX Series</th>
<th>VSX Series</th>
<th>QDX Series</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Show Addresses in Address Book</td>
<td>Specifies whether to show addresses in the Address Book.</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>HDX Series</td>
<td>VSX Series</td>
<td>QDX Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Preferred Speed for Placing Calls (Kbps) | Determines the speeds that used for IP, ISDN, or International ISDN calls from this endpoint system when:  
  • The Call Quality selection is either unavailable or set to Auto on the Place a Call screen  
  • The call is placed from the directory  
  If the far-site endpoint system does not support the selected speed, the endpoint system automatically negotiates a lower speed. | N          | N          | N          |
| IP Calls                          | Determines the speeds that used for IP calls.                               | N          | N          | N          |
| ISDN Video Call (H. 320)          | Determines the speeds that used for ISDN calls.                             | N          | N          | N          |
| International ISDN calls          | Determines the speeds that used for International ISDN calls.               | N          | N          | N          |

**LAN/H.323 > Global Directory (GDS) > Preferred Alias**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>HDX Series</th>
<th>VSX Series</th>
<th>QDX Series</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Preferred Alias   | Possible values include:  
  • Gateway Number  
  • ISDN Number  
  • Called Party Line Identifier  
  • Extension     | N          | N          | N          |

**Global Services > Directory Servers**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>HDX Series</th>
<th>VSX Series</th>
<th>QDX Series</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Global Directory (GDS)</td>
<td>Specifies the IP address or DNS address of the Global Directory Server.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>Lets you enter the global directory password, if there is one.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display Name in Global Directory</td>
<td>Specifies whether to display the system's name in the global directories of other registered systems.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>HDX Series</td>
<td>VSX Series</td>
<td>QDX Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display Global Addresses</td>
<td>Displays other registered systems in the global directory.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Register</td>
<td>Registers this system with the Global Directory Server.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Save Global Directory to System</td>
<td>Copies the global directory to this local system.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• When this setting is disabled, the system can display no more than 1,000 global directory entries.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• When this setting is enabled, the system can display up to 4,000 global directory entries.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Global Services > Account Validation**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>HDX Series</th>
<th>VSX Series</th>
<th>QDX Series</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Require Account Number to Dial</td>
<td>Specifies whether to require an account number for placing calls and whether that number should be validated by the system.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Validate Account Number</td>
<td>Specifies whether to require an account number for placing calls and whether that number should be validated by the system.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Global Services > My Info**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>HDX Series</th>
<th>VSX Series</th>
<th>QDX Series</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Contact Person</td>
<td>Specifies the name of the person responsible for this system.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact Number</td>
<td>Specifies the phone number of the person responsible for this system.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact e-mail</td>
<td>Specifies the e-mail address of the person responsible for this system.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact Fax</td>
<td>Specifies the Fax number of the person responsible for this system.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tech Support</td>
<td>Specifies the contact information for Technical Support for this system.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>HDX Series</td>
<td>VSX Series</td>
<td>QDX Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>City</td>
<td>Specifies the location (city) of the person responsible for this system.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>State/Province</td>
<td>Specifies the location (state/province) of the person responsible for this system.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country</td>
<td>Specifies the location (country) of the person responsible for this system.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Part VII
Dynamic Management

Topics:

- Understanding Dynamic Endpoint Management
- Dynamically Updating Endpoint and Peripheral Software
- Using Dynamic Provisioning Profiles
- Creating Dynamic Provisioning Rules
- Using Bundled Provisioning Profiles
- Using Access Control Lists
- Scheduling Endpoint Software Updates
- Dynamic Provisioning of Endpoints for SIP Server Integration
- Using Zero-Touch Provisioning
- Dynamically Managing a RealPresence Access Director System
- RealPresence Video App SDK Monitoring and License Control

When you dynamically manage an endpoint, you can remotely control the configuration settings and software version of the endpoint, according to policies you define.
Understanding Dynamic Endpoint Management

Topics:

- Supported Polycom Endpoints and Peripherals
- Presence Service for Dynamically Managed Endpoints
- Overview of Dynamic Management Setup
- Selective Provisioning of Dynamically Managed RealPresence Group Series Systems
- Dynamically Manage RealPresence Immersive Studio Systems

You can use the flexibility of a rule-based system to apply dynamic provisioning profiles.

You can create multiple rules and associate a profile with more than one rule at a time. A provisioning rule consists of one or more conditions that must be met before the dynamic provisioning profile can be applied.

Dynamic management enables a Polycom endpoint to poll the RealPresence Resource Manager system automatically to get provisioning updates (configuration settings) and software updates on a regular basis. It’s client-to-server over HTTPS, which makes it more secure and firewall friendly.

Dynamic management is available in the following situations:

- Only for Polycom endpoints
- When Polycom endpoints are able to automatically discover the RealPresence Resource Manager system. This means you need to add the DNS service record (SRV record) for the RealPresence Resource Manager system to your DNS server
- Optional when your system is integrated with an enterprise directory

In dynamic management mode, when an endpoint starts up and at designated intervals thereafter, it automatically polls the RealPresence Resource Manager system for a newer software update package or provisioning profile. If a either is found, the package URL is sent in XML format over a secure HTTPS connection.

Endpoints do not poll the system if they are in a call. They restart polling after the call ends.

Supported Polycom Endpoints and Peripherals

You can only dynamically manage some Polycom endpoints.

The following Polycom endpoints and peripherals can be dynamically managed:

- RealPresence Group Series systems (must be dynamically managed)
- RealPresence Immersive Studio systems (must be dynamically managed)
- RealPresence Group Touch Control
- RealPresence Mobile (must be dynamically managed)
- RealPresence Desktop (must be dynamically managed)
- Polycom VVX systems
Polycom HDX systems
• HDX Touch Control
• CMA Desktop (must be dynamically managed)
• Polycom CX5100

**Note:** You should use either scheduled or dynamic provisioning for an endpoint, never both.

**Presence Service for Dynamically Managed Endpoints**

The RealPresence Resource Manager system provides a presence service to dynamically managed endpoints.

The presence service maintains online status information for the users of dynamically-managed endpoints. The presence service enables users to access information about the online status of other users. This is important, because when you make a video call or start a chat, that action only takes you to an endpoint. It doesn’t ensure that you will reach the person you want to reach. The presence service provides information about the user’s availability, which improves your chances of reaching the user.

**Note:** The RealPresence Resource Manager supports presence services for all dynamically managed Polycom endpoints with the exception of RealPresence Mobile. RealPresence Desktop clients managed by the RealPresence Resource Manager can receive offline messages.

**Overview of Dynamic Management Setup**

Setting up dynamic management of Polycom endpoints is a multi-step process.

You’ll need to have your DNS server configured, the endpoint needs to be configured to use the RealPresence Resource Manager system as its provisioning server, and you need to set up provisioning profiles and software updates.

**Note:** You need to dynamically provision a Polycom endpoint BEFORE you integrate with the RealPresence DMA system. If you manually register the system with the RealPresence DMA system before you dynamically provision the endpoint, the RealPresence Resource Manager system will show two endpoints in the Monitoring screen instead of one.

**Configure Endpoints to use a Provisioning Service**

You can configure the endpoint to use the RealPresence Resource Manager system as its provisioning service via the endpoint's web interface or soft endpoint's utility.

You can do this on initial setup or at any time when you need to switch to dynamic management.

Some Polycom endpoints must be dynamically managed, such as RealPresence Desktop, RealPresence Mobile, RealPresence Group Series systems, and RealPresence Immersive Studio systems.

If you want to dynamically manage RealPresence Debut systems, you must use zero-touch provisioning. See for details.
Define Endpoint Naming Schemes

The RealPresence Resource Manager allows administrators to configure their E.164 alias, system naming schemes and SIP URIs for endpoints that are dynamically managed.

If you choose to provision H.323 settings through a network provisioning profile, you can also define the E.164 number and system naming scheme used for endpoints. You can also auto-generate SIP URIs for dynamically managed endpoints.

Create Video Endpoint Provisioning Profiles

Dynamic provisioning enables endpoints to poll the RealPresence Resource Manager automatically to get provisioning updates (configuration settings) on a dynamic basis.

The provisioning profiles the endpoint receives are based provisioning rules you define.

When you dynamically manage endpoints (have the endpoint use the RealPresence Resource Manager as its provisioning server), you can automatically configure them by using provisioning profiles.

You need to modify and create three types of video endpoint provisioning profiles:

- **Network Provisioning** profiles define Network settings such as security, quality of service, and gatekeeper address, SIP server address, and so on.
- **Admin Config** Provisioning profiles define endpoint administrative settings such as maximum and preferred call speeds for H.323 settings, calendaring settings, Microsoft Lync settings, and so on.
- **Bundled Provisioning** profiles allow you to control system settings that affect user experience.

Create Provisioning Rules

You can create rules that include conditions that need to be met before the RealPresence Resource Manager system sends a provisioning profile to an endpoint.

You can also prioritize these rules so that certain provisioning profiles get applied first.

Create Access Control Lists

Access Control Lists provide an additional level of endpoint provisioning security when you dynamically manage endpoints.

These lists allow you to group endpoints into “white lists” that can be dynamically provisioned. This is particularly useful when controlling Polycom’s soft endpoints such as CMA Desktop and RealPresence Mobile which use the provisioning credentials to authenticate with your video network. With Polycom RealPresence Mobile clients, you can also control access according to model (for example, RealPresence Mobile for the iPad).

Create Software Updates

You need to create software updates to automatically send to endpoints.
Selective Provisioning of Dynamically Managed RealPresence Group Series Systems

By default, each setting within the provisioning profile that you use is provisioned to the endpoint. The settings within the profile overwrite any settings that were set locally for the endpoint. In addition, some settings become read-only on the endpoint.

However, when you dynamically manage a RealPresence Group Series system, you can choose to selectively provision fields within the provisioning profile. This means you can unmark fields within the profile that you do not want to set with the dynamic provisioning profile. For example, you may want the endpoint administrator to locally configure the language or time zone of the endpoint. Choosing this option does not affect other dynamically managed endpoints that may use the same profile.

Dynamically Manage RealPresence Immersive Studio Systems

A RealPresence Immersive Studio system contains multiple endpoints (codecs).

When the RealPresence Resource Manager system dynamically manages (required) these devices, they display as a group of three codecs that following a specific numbered naming convention that helps specify the total number of codecs included in the system. This is in addition to any system name you have configured. For example, the three RealPresence Group Series in an RealPresence Immersive Studio system named wangle1PCTCDMAQAITP could display in the RealPresence Resource Manager system screens and reports with the following names:

wangle1PCTCDMAQAITP_3_1 wangle1PCTCDMAQAITP_3_2 wangle1PCTCDMAQAITP_3_3

In the Endpoint > Monitor View screen, dynamically managed RealPresence Immersive Studio systems display as expandable icons.

The RealPresence Resource Manager system also provisions settings as applying to a single system. You can only provision the primary codec (the device designated as 1); the RealPresence Resource Manager system automatically propagates any changes to the other devices in the ITP system.
Dynamically Updating Endpoint and Peripheral Software

Topics:

- Supported Endpoint Types for Dynamic Software Update
- Software Update Considerations for RealPresence Desktop
- Creating Dynamic Software Updates for Endpoints
- Using Dynamic Software Updates
- Set Up a Trial Dynamic Software Update
- Populate Domain Name for Software Endpoints
- Enable Software Endpoints to Save Password
- Dynamic Software Updates for Peripherals

The Polycom RealPresence Resource Manager system's software update feature, which requires a software update profile for the endpoint type and model, allows an administrator to upgrade the software on one or more endpoints with a standard software package. This eliminates the need to upgrade each endpoint individually.

The RealPresence Resource Manager system supports two exclusive software update processes: dynamic and scheduled. Dynamic and scheduled software update are exclusive endpoint management scenarios. Endpoints enabled for dynamic software update should not be scheduled for software updates through the system.

Note: Polycom recommends that all endpoints in a region (that is, a gatekeeper zone) be managed by a single management system. A multi-tenancy environment only supports scheduled update.

Supported Endpoint Types for Dynamic Software Update

The dynamic software update feature is only available for these endpoint types:

- Polycom HDX system endpoints deployed in dynamic management mode
- Polycom RealPresence Group Series deployed in dynamic management mode
- Polycom RealPresence Immersive Studio systems
- Polycom CMA Desktop systems (Windows and Mac)
- RealPresence Desktop systems (Windows and Mac)
- Polycom VVX systems
- Polycom Touch Controls for both HDX and Group Series
- Polycom RealPresence Debut
Polycom provides default dynamic software update profiles for RealPresence Desktop clients. Default software update profiles are not available for other endpoint systems.

Software Update Considerations for RealPresence Desktop

When you upgrade RealPresence Desktop clients, Polycom recommends that you temporarily configure the RealPresence Resource Manager system to reclaim soft endpoint licenses in a very short time (one day).

As soon as the client's license is reclaimed and re-distributed, the RealPresence Resource Manager system can accurately track the upgraded endpoints.

When you upgrade the RealPresence Desktop and RealPresence Mobile clients, you may see erroneous endpoint reports in the RealPresence Resource Manager system that show duplicate RealPresence Desktop endpoints. In addition, these erroneous duplicate endpoints will each consume a RealPresence Desktop license.

After upgrading your RealPresence Desktop and RealPresence Mobile clients, you can reconfigure the license reclamation to the value you need. The default is 30 days.

Creating Dynamic Software Updates for Endpoints

To implement a dynamic software update, you must first create respective software updates for your endpoints.

Related Links
- Delete the Trial Software Update Package on page 303
- Promote the Trial Software Update Package to Production on page 302
- Set Up a Trial Dynamic Software Update on page 301

List the Serial Numbers for the Endpoints to be Updated

You need to create a .txt file containing a list of the endpoint serial numbers to included in a software update key file.

Only users with the administrator role can create dynamic software updates.

Procedure

1. Go to Endpoint > Dynamic Management > Upload Software Updates.
2. Select the endpoint type for which to get serial numbers.
3. Click Get Serial Numbers from the More menu.

   The Endpoint Serial Number List lists the endpoints of the selected type and model that are eligible for software updates.
4. As needed, click **Filter** to customize the endpoint list.
5. Select the specific endpoints to be updated.
6. Click **Get Serial Numbers** from the **More** menu.
   The serial number(s) appear in the text box on the page.
7. Create a `.txt` file containing the serial number(s).
   a. Copy and paste the serial numbers from the endpoint serial number list to a `.txt` file that you can submit to the **Polycom Product Activation** site.
      Put one serial number per line as shown in the following example.
      82071007E1DACD
      82070407E010CD
      82041804878B2
      82040903E00FB0
   b. Save the `.txt` file.
   c. Return to the endpoint serial number list and click **Close**.
      The **Software Updates** list reappears.
8. Repeat steps 2 through 7 for the each endpoint or set of endpoints to be updated.
   You may include all of the serial numbers for all of the different endpoint types in the same `.txt` file.
9. Click **Close**.
   The **Software Updates** list reappears.

**Related Links**

**Endpoint Serial Number List** on page 293

**Endpoint Serial Number List**
The **Endpoint Serial Number List** lists the endpoints of the selected type and model that are eligible for software updates.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The name assigned to the endpoint system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP Address</td>
<td>The IP address assigned to the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Version</td>
<td>The current software version installed on the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site</td>
<td>The site to which the endpoint belongs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** When areas are enabled on your system, this field shows a value of **Restricted** if you do not have permission to manage the area to which the site is assigned.
## Related Links

- [List the Serial Numbers for the Endpoints to be Updated](#) on page 292

### Download the Required Software Package

You need to download the required software update.

**Procedure**

1. On your local system, create a directory to which to save the software package (if one does not already exist).
2. For Polycom endpoints:
   a. Open a web browser and go to Polycom Support.
   b. In the Downloads section, select the Product and Category for the required software package.
   c. Select the software package and save it to the directory created in step 1.
   d. Repeat steps a through c for each endpoint type to be updated.
      
      Note that the software package may contain the software for different models of the same endpoint type.
3. For third-party endpoints, follow the company’s recommended procedure for downloading a software package.
   Save it to the directory created in step 1.

### Request Upgrade Activation Keys

You need to request software upgrade activation keys.

And you can review your key history at Polycom Support.

**Procedure**

1. Go to Polycom Support.
2. Log in or Register for An Account.
4. In the Software Upgrade Key Code section, click Retrieve Software Key Code.
5. When upgrading a single endpoint:
   a. Enter the serial number of the endpoint to be updated into the Serial Number field of the Single Upgrade Key Code section.
   b. Enter the version number to which you are upgrading and click Retrieve.
   c. The key code is returned on the screen.
d. Record the key code and create a .txt file with the Serial Number - Key Code combination to be updated.

e. Close the Product Activation screens.

6. When updating multiple endpoints from a prepared .txt file (step a):
   a. In the Multiple Upgrade KeyCode section, click Add Attachment.
   b. Browse to the location of the .txt file you created and click Upload.
   c. A file containing the Serial Number - Key Code combinations will be emailed to the specified email account.
   d. When you receive the .txt file, save it to your local system.

   Note: Do not modify or rename the file that Polycom sends.

7. Close the Product Activation screens.

Upload the Software Update for Dynamic Software Updates

You can upload the software update for dynamic software updates.

Polycom recommends you to do software updates using the split packages available on Polycom Support to reduce system resource consuming.

Procedure

1. Go to Endpoint > Dynamic Management > Upload Software Updates.
2. Select an endpoint type to update.
3. Click Add .
4. If an activation key code is required to activate the software update:
   a. Select the Update Requires Key check box.
   b. In the Software Update Key File field, browse to the .txt key file (received in Request Upgrade Activation Keys).

   Some endpoints may not support this option.

   Note: The key is generated from the endpoint serial number and version number, and Polycom sends it as a text (.txt) file to the customer when new software is available. After uploading a software image, you cannot view and update the key file anymore. To update the file, you need to re-upload the software.

5. In the Software Update File field, browse to the software update file you downloaded.
6. Enter a meaningful description that will help other users to understand the purpose of the software update.
7. Click OK.

   A software image for the endpoint type and model type is created.

Update RealPresence Group Series Key File

You can update the key files of uploaded RealPresence Group Series software images.

Procedure

1. Go to Endpoint > Dynamic Management > Upload Software Updates.
2. Select the RealPresence Group Series software image that you want to update.
3. Click Edit.
4. Browse and select the new key file.
5. Click OK.

Using Dynamic Software Updates

Dynamic software updates, which controls the endpoint's software version level, is tied to the endpoint type and the policy you define.

In dynamic management mode, when an endpoint starts up at designated intervals thereafter, it automatically polls the RealPresence Resource Manager system for a newer software update package. If a software update is necessary, the package is sent in XML format over a secure HTTPS connection.

Endpoints do not poll for software update packages if they are in a call. They restart polling after the call ends.

Decide the Software Version

After creating a dynamic software update, you can use the Version to use and Allow this version or newer selections to manage the roll out of a software update package.

These selections also allow you to manage the release of multiple software packages for the same endpoint type.

All endpoints have a current version of software. You can automatically overwrite that current software with a different software version on all dynamically managed endpoint systems.

- **Version to Use**: After you change the Version to Use selection from the current value to the new version, the next time a dynamically managed endpoint polls the RealPresence Resource Manager system, the endpoint will detect that it has a different software version than the Version to Use selection. The endpoint will automatically download and install the identified software update package. Use this method to force users to use a specific software version. Until the Version to Use selection is enabled, the dynamic software update is not activated.

  You can also use the Version to use selection to roll endpoints back to older software versions. If you change the Version to use selection to an older software version and clear the Allow this Version or Newer selection, the RealPresence Resource Manager system will send the specifically identified software package to the endpoint even if it is an older version.

- **Allow this Version or Newer**: If you also enable the Allow this version or newer selection, anytime you upload a newer version of software into a dynamic software update that update will be automatically installed on all dynamically managed endpoint systems.

  Newer software is identified by the version number. If the Allow this Version or Newer selection is enabled, when a dynamically managed endpoint polls the RealPresence Resource Manager system, the system will compare the current software version number with the packaged software version numbers. The system will send the software package with the highest version number to the endpoint.

*Note:* To roll back a Polycom CMA Desktop or RealPresence Desktop client to an older version, you must first remove the existing Polycom CMA Desktop client via the Windows Add or Remove Software selection. Then you can install the older software package.

Procedure
1. Go to Endpoint > Dynamic Management > Upload Software Update.
2. Select the tab for the endpoint type of interest.
3. Choose one of these policies:
   - To specify an area to which to apply the update, use the Select Area drop-down to select the area to apply the policy. This feature is only available when areas are enabled and you manage more than one area.
   - To specify a minimum version of dynamic software update package, make that version the Version to use and select Allow this version or newer.
   - To require a specific version of dynamic software update package, make that version the Version to use and clear Allow this version or newer.
   - To turn off dynamic software update for an endpoint type, change the Version to use value to (none).
4. Click Update.

View Dynamic Software Update Status
You can view the list of endpoints that have registered to the system for dynamic software updates.

Procedure
1. Navigate to Endpoint > Dynamic Management > Software Update Status menu to view the list of endpoints that have registered to the system for dynamic software updates.
2. Click Filter to use for the list.
   Filter choices for this view include:
   - Endpoint Type—Filters the list by endpoint type.
   - Endpoint Name—Searches the list by the endpoint's system name.
   - IP Address—Searches the endpoint list by IP address.
   - ISDN Video Number—Searches the endpoint list by ISDN video number.
   - Dial String—Searches the endpoint list by dial string (SIP, H.323, or ISDN).
   - Site—Searches the endpoint list by site location.
   - Area—Filters the endpoint list by area. This filter is only available when areas are enabled and when the user manages more than one area.
3. Use the Items per page drop-down to customize the number of endpoints included per page.

Endpoint List for Dynamic Software Updates
The endpoint list includes the following information:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Status</td>
<td>The status of the endpoint's last software update. Possible values include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Success</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Failed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Clear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Timed Out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Skipped (only applied to CMA Desktop and RealPresence Desktop clients)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endpoint Name</td>
<td>The system name of the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>The type of endpoint. Dynamic software update is only available for these</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>endpoint types:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• HDX systems (when dynamically managed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• RealPresence Group Series (when dynamically managed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• RealPresence Immersive Studio systems (when dynamically managed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• CMA Desktop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• RealPresence Desktop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Polycom VVX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Polycom CX5100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Polycom Pano</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP Address</td>
<td>The IP address assigned to the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current Version</td>
<td>The current software version that the endpoint is using.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Area (Available only when Areas are enabled.)</td>
<td>The area with which the endpoint is associated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You can only view area information for the areas you have been assigned to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>manage. If you do not manage more than one area, this column is not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>displayed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

View Software Update Details for an Endpoint

Users with the Device Administrator, Administrator or the Area Administrator role can view details about dynamic software updates made to endpoints.

Procedure

1. Go to **Endpoint > Dynamic Management > Software Update Status**.
2. As needed, click **Filter** to customize the endpoint list.
   
   Filter choices include **Endpoint Type**, **Endpoint Name**, **IP Address**, **ISDN Video Number**, **Dial String**, **Site** and **Area**.
3. Select the endpoint of interest.
4. Click **View Details** and expand the **Software Update Details** section to view the details for the endpoint.
Dynamic Software Details
The endpoint list in the **Dynamic Software Details** pane has the following information.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Software Update</td>
<td>The device's software update status. Possible values include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Status</td>
<td>• Clear. A software update has not been done.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Pending. A software update has been scheduled and is pending. The device may be offline or in a call.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• In Progress. The software update is in progress.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Success. A software update has completed successfully.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Failed. A software update could not be performed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last Attempt Date/</td>
<td>The date and time, in the default format of <code>yyyy-mm-dd hh:mm:ss</code>, of the last software update message exchanged with the device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time</td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Polycom CMA Desktop systems and RealPresence Desktop clients are updated at the start of each session.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Scheduled</td>
<td>For dynamic updates, this value is N/A.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For scheduled updates, the date and time, in the default format of <code>yyyy-mm-dd hh:mm</code>, when the device software is schedule to be updated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This field is blank if the device is not scheduled for provisioning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Failure Reason</td>
<td>A text description of the reason the software update failed. Causes for failure may include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The software update file location does not exist.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• A password for the device is set in the video endpoint system, and you must enter it in RealPresence Resource Manager system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• A network error has occurred.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The update has timed out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• An internal error occurred on the device, and you must reboot it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• A profile has not been configured.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• An endpoint is offline.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• An incorrect activation key is in the key file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• An unknown error has occurred. Reboot the device</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Dynamically Updating Endpoint and Peripheral Software
## View Dynamic Software Update Packages

You can view a list of software updates available to dynamically managed endpoints and the update policies.

### Procedure

1. Go to **Endpoint > Dynamic Management > Upload Software Update**.
   
   The **Dynamic Software Policies** page appears and the uploaded software update packages are displayed.

2. To view the dynamic software update packages for other endpoints and peripherals, select the appropriate item from the Device Type drop-down list: **HDX, Group Series**, **CMA Desktop (PC or Mac OS)**, **VVX** or **HDX Touch Control, Group Series Touch Control**, and **RealPresence Desktop (PC or Mac OS)**.

### Dynamic Software Updates

The **Dynamic Software Updates** page includes this information.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Select Area</td>
<td>Enables you to specify an area to which to apply the update. This option is only available when areas are enabled and for areas that the user is allowed to manage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endpoint Type</td>
<td>The type of endpoint system. You can use dynamic software updates for the supported Polycom endpoints and peripherals.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Version to use</td>
<td>Displays the default dynamic software update profile to be used for the endpoint type and model.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow this version or newer</td>
<td>When checked, indicates that when a newer dynamic software update package for the endpoint type and model is added, that package should be used as the default package.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Version</td>
<td>The version of the software package associated with the dynamic software update package.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>The meaningful name given to the dynamic software update package when it was created.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uploaded</td>
<td>The date and time when the dynamic software update package was created.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Set Maintenance Window for Dynamic Software Updates

You can restrict dynamic software updates of dynamically managed endpoint systems to a scheduled maintenance window.

This feature only applies to dynamically managed HDX and RealPresence Group Series.

Typically, dynamic software updates occur as specified by the Software Update Polling Interval that is provisioned with the network provisioning profile for the endpoint.

Enabling the maintenance window feature in the RealPresence Resource Manager system overrides the Software Update Polling Interval. The RealPresence Resource Manager system provisions the maintenance window to the endpoints, and the endpoints hold their dynamic software update requests until the maintenance window starts.

To avoid dynamically updating the software on all HDX or RealPresence Group Series at the start of the maintenance window, the systems randomize their dynamic software update requests.

Procedure

1. Go to Endpoint Management > Dynamic Management > Upload Software Update.
2. Select the appropriate device type: HDX or Group Series.
3. Click Maintenance Window from the More menu.
4. In the Maintenance Window dialog, click Enable Maintenance Window and set a maintenance window Start Time and either an End Time or Duration.
   - Set the maintenance window start time to the endpoint's system local time, not the RealPresence Resource Manager system local time. For example, if you set the maintenance window start time to 3am, the maintenance window for each HDX system will start at 3am local time. Therefore, the maintenance window for HDX systems in Buffalo, NY will start at 3am EST; the maintenance window for HDX systems in Denver, CO will start at 3am MST; and the maintenance window for HDX systems in San Francisco, CA will start at 3am PST.
5. Click OK.

Set Up a Trial Dynamic Software Update

Set up a trial user group for trial software update.

Users with the administrator role can do this.

After you create a software update, you can set up a trial of a software update.

Related Links
Creating Dynamic Software Updates for Endpoints on page 292
Creating a Local Trial Group

To trial a software update with a specific group of local and/or enterprise users, create a local group that includes these users, as described in Add a Local Group.

The people in this group will receive the trial software update package when their endpoint goes through its normal, automated software update process.

Note:
- You can use an existing enterprise group as a trial group, but you will not be allowed to change the enterprise group in any way.
- If the trial software group is a parent group with children, all of its children will inherit trial permissions.

Related Links
Create a Trial Software Update Package on page 302
Add a Local Group on page 450

Create a Trial Software Update Package

You need to upload the software packages before you create a trial software update package.

Procedure

1. To trial the software with the group created previously, select Trial Software and from the Select Trial Group menu, select the trial group created in Creating a Local Trial Group.
2. Click OK.

A trial dynamic software update package for the endpoint type and model type appears in the Dynamic Software Update list. You can tell it is a trial package, because the Trial Group column includes your entry.

The next time members of the trial group log into the system, their systems will be upgraded with the trial software package.

Related Links
Creating a Local Trial Group on page 302

Promote the Trial Software Update Package to Production

If you determine that the trial software update package is acceptable for production, you can then promote it to production.

Procedure

1. Go to Endpoint > Dynamic Management > Upload Software Updates.
2. Select the endpoint type to update.
3. If areas are enabled, use the Select Area drop-down list to choose the area to which to promote the update.
   This drop-down list is only available if you manage more than one area.
4. Select the software update package of interest and click Promote to Production.
5. Click Yes to confirm the promotion.

The package becomes a production dynamic software update package.
Delete the Trial Software Update Package

If you determine that the trial software update package is unacceptable for production, you can delete it.

Procedure

1. Go to Endpoint > Dynamic Management > Upload Software Updates.
2. Select the endpoint type to update.
3. Select the software update package you want to delete and click Delete.
4. Click Yes to confirm the deletion.
5. To return your trial group to the last production version of software, clear the Allow this version or newer option and click Update.
6. When all endpoints are back to the last production version of software, reset your dynamic software update policy.

Related Links
Creating Dynamic Software Updates for Endpoints on page 292

Populate Domain Name for Software Endpoints

If you use only one domain, you can set the domain name in the RealPresence Resource Manager, which will automatically populate the domain name for your software endpoints.

Procedure

1. Go to Endpoint > Dynamic Management > Endpoint Management Settings > Default Domain Name Setting.
2. Select the check box of Set the default domain name for Enterprise user login from software endpoint.
3. In the Default Domain Name box, specify the domain name.
4. Click Update.

Enable Software Endpoints to Save Password

You can make the software endpoints save the passwords with the help of a provisioning attribute.

Both RealPresence Mobile endpoints and RealPresence Desktop endpoints support the setting.

By default, the setting is disabled.

Procedure

1. Go to Endpoint > Dynamic Management > Endpoint Management Settings > Remember Password Options.
2. Select the check box of Enable “Remember Password” for the software endpoints.
3. Click Update.
Dynamic Software Updates for Peripherals

You can update the platform (operating system) and applications (if applicable) for peripherals connected to endpoints.

Peripheral software updates can be in any of the following states:

- **Production** - The software update is configured for one or more groups that are using the software in production.
- **Trial** - The software update is configured for one or more groups that are trialing the software.
- **Both** - The software update is configured for one or more groups that are trialing the software and for one or more groups are using the software in production.

For peripherals that permit software updates from the RealPresence Resource Manager system, you can download the updates from Polycom Support and make them available from the RealPresence Resource Manager system web server. You can also configure which updates are for trial or production use.

View Software Updates for Polycom Touch Controls

You can view a list of the software updates available for Polycom Touch Controls.

This includes status information, the software version, and so on.

Procedure

1. Go to **Endpoint > Dynamic Management > Upload Software Updates**.
2. Select the **HDX Touch Control** or **Group Series Touch Control** tab to view the information.

Peripheral Software Updates

The **HDX Touch Control** or **Group Series Touch Control** tab includes this information.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Select Area</td>
<td>Enables you to specify an area to which to apply the update.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Production URL</td>
<td>URL where the peripheral can access software updates configured for production use. The URL consists of the IP dress of the RealPresence Resource Manager system plus /repo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trial URL</td>
<td>URL where the peripheral can access software updates configured for trial use. The URL consists of the IP dress of the RealPresence Resource Manager system plus /repotrial.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Package Name</td>
<td>Displays the name of the software update package. Updates listed as <strong>platform</strong> are updates to the peripheral's operating system. Other updates are for specific applications.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>The meaningful name given to the software update package when it was created</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Version</td>
<td>The version of the software package</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Field Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Status | The status of the software update. Possible values are:  
  - **None** - The software update has not been configured for production or trial.  
  - **Production** - The software update is configured for production. It is available only from the Production URL.  
  - **Trial** - The software update is configured for trial. It is available only from the Trial URL.  
  - **Both** - The software update is configured for both production and trial. It is available from both the Production URL and the Trial URL. |
| Uploaded | The date and time when the software update package was uploaded |

### Upload Peripheral Software Updates to the RealPresence Resource Manager System

After you download the software updates from Polycom Support and save them on your hard drive, you can upload them to the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Endpoint > Dynamic Management > Upload Software Updates**.
2. Select the endpoint type for the peripheral.
3. Click **Add**.
4. In the **Select File to Upload** dialog box, navigate to and select the software update that you saved to your hard drive.
5. Click **Open**.

   The update is added to the list on the peripheral tab.

**Note:** If this is the first update for the platform or an application, the update is automatically configured for production.

### Configure Peripheral Updates for Production

You need to configure software updates for peripherals to be used in production.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Endpoint > Dynamic Management > Upload Software Updates**.
2. Select the RealPresence Touch, HDX Touch Control, or Group Series Touch Control as the peripheral endpoint type.
3. Click **More > Configure Production** to configure the peripheral updates.
4. Click **OK**.

   From the peripheral itself, the configured software updates are now available using the Production URL.
## Configuring Production Settings

The **Configure Production** dialog box includes the following information.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Configure Platform</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Platform Description</td>
<td>The meaningful name given to the platform software update package when it was created</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Status</td>
<td>The current status of the platform software update. Possible values are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>None</strong> - The software update has not been configured as production or trial.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Production</strong> - The software update is configured as production. It is available only from the Production URL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Trial</strong> - The software update is configured as trial. It is available only from the Trial URL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Both</strong> - The software update is configured as both production and trial. It is available from both the Production URL and the Trial URL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Configure Application</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Application Description</td>
<td>The meaningful name given to the application software update package when it was created</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Platform Compatible</td>
<td>Column title shows the version of the currently selected platform. Use the drop-down list to select available application versions that match the platform version. The version selected must be compatible with the platform version listed in the column heading. If the application is not selected (no check mark), the application will not be configured for production.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Status</td>
<td>The current status of the application software update. Possible values are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>None</strong> - The software update has not been configured as production or trial.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Production</strong> - The software update is configured as production. It is available only from the Production URL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Trial</strong> - The software update is configured as trial. It is available only from the Trial URL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Both</strong> - The software update is configured as both production and trial. It is available from both the Production URL and the Trial URL.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configure Peripheral Updates for Trial
You need to configure the software updates to be used for the trial.

Procedure
1. Go to Endpoint > Dynamic Management > Upload Software Updates.
2. Select the endpoint type for the peripheral.
3. Click More > Configure Trial to configure the peripheral updates for trial.
4. From the Configure Platform section, select the platform version to configure for trial.
   You can select only one platform version for trial.
5. Click Configure Application.
6. For each application, select the version to configure for trial from the Platform Compatible drop-down list.
   The version selected must be compatible with the platform version listed in the column heading. If the application is not selected (no check mark), the application will not be configured for trial.
7. Click OK.
   From the peripheral itself, the configured software updates are now available using the Trial URL.

Configuring Trial Settings
The Configure Trial dialog box includes the following information.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Configure Platform</td>
<td>The meaningful name given to the platform software update package when it was created</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Platform Description</td>
<td>The current status of the platform software update. Possible values are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• None - The software update has not been configured as production or trial.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Production - The software update is configured as production. It is available only from the Production URL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Trial - The software update is configured as trial. It is available only from the Trial URL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Both - The software update is configured as both production and trial. It is available from both the Production URL and the Trial URL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configure Application</td>
<td>The meaningful name given to the application software update package when it was created</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Application Description</td>
<td>Column title shows the version of the currently selected platform. Use the drop-down list to select available application versions that match the platform version.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Status</td>
<td>The current status of the application software update. Possible values are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- None - The software update has not been configured as production or trial.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Production - The software update is configured as production. It is available only from the Production URL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Trial - The software update is configured as trial. It is available only from the Trial URL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Both - The software update is configured as both production and trial. It is available from both the Production URL and the Trial URL.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Using Dynamic Provisioning Profiles

Topics:

- Set up Dynamic Provisioning Profiles
- Working with Provisioning Profiles
- Admin Config Provisioning Profiles

The Polycom RealPresence Resource Manager system enables you to use provisioning profiles and provisioning rules as a way to dynamically manage endpoint settings.

Note: If your deployment includes a RealPresence Access Director system that you want to dynamically manage, you can create a RealPresence Access Director Server Provisioning Profile.

Related Links
Associate Provisioning Profiles with a Provisioning Rule on page 337

Set up Dynamic Provisioning Profiles

When you dynamically manage endpoints (have the endpoint use the RealPresence Resource Manager as its provisioning server), you can automatically configure them by using provisioning profiles.

Dynamic provisioning profiles are applied through a rule-based paradigm.

Dynamic provisioning consists of following steps:

Procedure

1. Create a dynamic provisioning profile.
2. Create one or more provisioning rules.
3. Associate a provisioning profile with a rule.

Types of Dynamic Endpoint Provisioning Profiles

The RealPresence Resource Manager provides three types of provisioning profiles for use when you dynamically manage endpoints.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dynamic Provisioning Profile</th>
<th>Summary of Provisioned Settings:</th>
<th>How applied:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Network provisioning profile</td>
<td>Defines network settings such as security, quality of service, and gatekeeper address, SIP server address, and so on.</td>
<td>Applied according to the provisioning rules you define.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic Provisioning Profile</td>
<td>Summary of Provisioned Settings:</td>
<td>How applied:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Admin Config provisioning profile</td>
<td>Defines endpoint administrative settings such as maximum and preferred call speeds for H.323 settings, calendaring settings, Microsoft Lync settings, and so on.</td>
<td>Applied according to the provisioning rules you define.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bundled provisioning profile</td>
<td>Allows you to configure endpoint system settings according to endpoint model and software version. Home screen settings related to user experience, monitor display and camera settings, password format settings and so on.</td>
<td>Applied according to model and software version of the particular endpoint.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Working with Provisioning Profiles**

Provisioning profiles contain parameters that apply to endpoints.

Navigate to **Endpoint > Dynamic Management > Provisioning Profiles** to work with both Network and Admin Config provisioning profiles.

**Create a New Provisioning Profile**

As soon as an endpoint is configured to use the RealPresence Resource Manager for its provisioning server, it starts polling for provisioning profile updates.

So to ensure out-of-box usability, the RealPresence RealPresence Resource Manager system comes with a default provisioning profiles. These default profiles cannot be customized with any rule but apply to all video endpoints by default.

You need to create new provisioning profiles to customize endpoint settings in your environment. New provisioning profiles are based on the default profiles. Any changes you make to the default profiles are not applied to pre-existing profiles.

Not all of the provisioning parameters apply to all endpoint systems being provisioned. If an endpoint system does not have a corresponding parameter, it ignores the parameter.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Endpoint > Dynamic Management > Provisioning Profiles**.
2. Click  
3. In the **General Info** section of the **Add New Profile** section, enter a name for the new provisioning profile.
4. Select a provisioning profile type from the drop-down list.
5. If the profile will be used for RealPresence Group systems, mark the **Selectable Provisioning for Group Series** check box.
When this check box is marked, the RealPresence Group systems that use this profile will only be provisioned with the settings you select. You can select settings by marking the respective check box next to the setting.

6. As needed, edit the provisioning details.
7. Click OK.

Related Links
Available Settings for a Network Provisioning Profile on page 313
Settings for Admin Config Provisioning Profiles on page 327

Edit a Provisioning Profile
You can edit a provisioning profile.

Procedure
1. Go to Endpoint > Dynamic Management > Provisioning Profiles.
2. In the Provisioning Profiles page, select a profile and click Edit.
3. If the profile will be used for RealPresence Group systems, mark the Selectable Provisioning for Group Series check box.
   When this check box is marked, the RealPresence Group systems that use this profile will only be provisioned with the settings you select. You can select settings by marking the respective check box next to the setting.
4. As needed, edit the provisioning details.
5. Click OK.
   The provisioning profile is updated.

Reset a Provisioning Profile
When you reset a provisioning profile, you reset the values of this profile to the default values of its profile type.

For example, profile_A is a Network Provisioning Profile. After you reset profile_A, the parameter values of profile_A will be the same as the default Network Provisioning Profile that comes with the system.

Procedure
1. Navigate to Endpoint > Dynamic Management > Provisioning Profiles.
2. In the Provisioning Profiles page, select a profile and click Reset.
   You cannot change the name of the selected provisioning profile.
3. Click OK.

Edit a Default Provisioning Profile
You can edit a default provisioning profile.

Procedure
1. Go to Endpoint > Dynamic Management > Provisioning Profiles.
2. In the Provisioning Profiles page, select a default profile and click Edit.
   You may find more implementation details about these fields in the respective system documentation.
3. If the profile will be used for RealPresence Group systems, mark the **Selectable Provisioning for Group Series** check box.

   When this check box is marked, the RealPresence Group systems that use this profile will only be provisioned with the settings you select. You can select settings by marking the respective check box next to the setting.

4. Click **OK**.

### Reset a Provisioning Profile

You can reset a provisioning profile you created.

When you reset a provisioning profile, its values revert to the values derived from the default template of the same type.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Endpoint > Dynamic Management > Provisioning Profiles**.
2. In the **Provisioning Profiles** page, select a default profile and click **Reset**.
   
   You may find more implementation details about these fields in the endpoint system documentation.

   You cannot change the name of a default provisioning profile.

3. Click **OK**.

   The default provisioning profile is updated.

### Copy a Provisioning Profile

You can clone a provisioning profile.

This enables you to re-name an existing profile.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Endpoint > Dynamic Management > Provisioning Profiles**.
2. In the **Provisioning Profiles** page, select the profile of interest and click **Copy**.
3. In the **Copy Profile** dialog, enter a name for the new profile and click **Save**.

   The provisioning profile appears last in the Provisioning Profiles list.

4. As needed, edit the profile.

### Delete a Provisioning Profile

You can delete a provisioning profile.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Endpoint > Dynamic Management > Provisioning Profiles**.
2. In the **Provisioning Profiles** page, select the profile of interest and click **Delete**.
3. Click **Yes** to confirm the deletion.

   The profile is deleted from the system.
Network Provisioning Profiles

With network provisioning profiles, you can ensure that all dynamically managed endpoints have the optimal and correct settings respective to their network location.

Network provisioning profiles allow you to provision endpoints with network settings such as security, quality of service, gatekeeper address, SIP server address, and so on.

You need to create new network provisioning profiles to have rule-based network settings in your video environment.

Available Settings for a Network Provisioning Profile

The following table provides available settings for network provisioning profiles.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>For the endpoint systems being provisioned...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>General Info</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Profile Name</td>
<td>Specify a unique name for the profile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provisioning Profile Type</td>
<td>Choose the profile type from the drop-down list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selectable Provisioning for Group Series</td>
<td>When you select this check box, you can manually select which settings within the provisioning profile are sent to a RealPresence Group Series system. Only the selected settings are provisioned to RealPresence Group Series systems. For example, if a provisioning setting is blank but still checked, the blank value is still provisioned to the system. By default, all settings are checked. If you don't want to provision the setting to the RealPresence Group Series system, you must uncheck the individual settings.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** If the RealPresence Resource Manager system doesn’t provision the H.323 or SIP settings of RealPresence Group Series, the system doesn’t monitor the H.323 or SIP dialing strings. Directory search of the dialing strings is not supported.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Date and Time Settings</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country</td>
<td>Specify the country code for their location.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date Format</td>
<td>Specify the date display format.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto Adjust for Daylight Saving Time</td>
<td>Specify whether or not to adjust the endpoint’s system clock for daylight savings time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time Format</td>
<td>Specify the time display format.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>For the endpoint systems being provisioned...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time Server</td>
<td>Specify whether to connect to a time server for automatic system time settings. Select Auto to require that the video endpoint system synchronize with an external time server that is identified by a network domain controller. Because it is identified by a network domain controller, you do not need to enter the IP address of the time server. Select Manual to require that the video endpoint system synchronize with an external time server that may not be identified by a network domain controller. In this case, you must also enter the IP address of the time server in the Time Server Address field. If Time Server is set to Off, or if the Time Server is set to Manual or Auto but the endpoint system cannot connect to the time server, the date and time must be manually reset at the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary Time Server Address</td>
<td>Specify the address of the primary time server when Time Server is set to Manual.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary Time Server Address</td>
<td>Specify the address of the secondary time server when Time Server is set to Manual.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timezone</td>
<td>Specify the time difference between GMT (Greenwich Mean Time) and the endpoint system's location.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Firewall Settings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use Fixed Ports</td>
<td>Specify whether to define the TCP and UDP ports.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If the firewall is H.323 compatible or the endpoint systems are not behind a firewall, disable this setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If the firewall is not H.323 compatible, enable this setting. The endpoint systems will assign a range of ports starting with the TCP and UDP ports you specify. The endpoint system defaults to a range beginning with port 3230 for both TCP and UDP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> You must open the corresponding ports in the firewall. You must also open the firewall's TCP port 1720 to allow H.323 traffic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start TCP Port</td>
<td>Lets you specify the beginning value for the range of TCP ports used by the endpoint systems. The endpoint systems will automatically assign a range of ports starting with the port you specify.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> You must also open the firewall's TCP port 1720 to allow H.323 traffic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start UDP Port</td>
<td>Lets you specify the beginning value for the range of TCP ports used by the endpoint systems. The endpoint systems will automatically assign a range of ports starting with the port you specify.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable H.460 Firewall Traversal</td>
<td>Enables the endpoint system to use H.460-based firewall traversal. For more information, see the Administrator's Guide for Polycom HDX Systems.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>For the endpoint systems being provisioned...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAT Configuration</td>
<td>Specify whether the endpoint systems should determine the NAT Public WAN Address automatically.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If the endpoint systems are behind a NAT that allows HTTP traffic, select Auto.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If the endpoint systems are behind a NAT that does not allow HTTP traffic, select Manual. Then specify a NAT Public (WAN) Address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If the endpoint systems are not behind a NAT or are connected to the IP network through a virtual private network (VPN), select Off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAT Public (WAN) Address</td>
<td>When NAT Configuration is set to Manual, specify the address that callers from outside the LAN should use to call the endpoint systems.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAT is H.323 Compatible</td>
<td>Specify that the endpoint systems are behind a NAT that is capable of translating H.323 traffic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Address Displayed in</td>
<td>Specify whether to include the endpoint system's information in the global directory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Global Directory</td>
<td>• Select Private to exclude the endpoint from the global directory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Select Public to include the endpoint in the global directory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable SIP Keep Alives</td>
<td>When checked, SIP Keep Alive messages are enabled.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**H323 Settings**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Enable IP H.323</th>
<th>Specify whether to enable IP H.323 calls.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use Gatekeeper</td>
<td>Select one of the following items:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Off: Do not use a gatekeeper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Auto: The RealPresence Resource Manager system finds an available gatekeeper automatically.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Specify: Specify the gatekeeper IP address in the Gatekeeper Address field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gatekeeper Address</td>
<td>When Use Gatekeeper is set to Specify, enter the gatekeeper address.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes for endpoints that will use a RealPresence Access Director system or Polycom VBP**

If this network provisioning profile is used for endpoints within a site that includes a RealPresence Access Director system or Polycom VBP system, the gatekeeper IP address should be the external or subscriber IP address of the RealPresence Access Director or Polycom VBP system.

| Use Gatekeeper for Multipoint Calls | Specify whether multipoint calls use the endpoint system's internal multipoint capability or the Polycom MCU's Conference on Demand feature. This feature is available only if the system is registered with a PathNavigator. |

**SIP Settings**

<p>| Enable SIP | Specify whether to enable SIP calls and enable the provisioning of SIP settings. |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>For the endpoint systems being provisioned...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Automatically Discover SIP Servers</td>
<td>The RealPresence Resource Manager system sends provisioning info telling endpoints to auto discover SIP servers. The endpoint then performs a DNS query to locate the SIP server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proxy Server</td>
<td>Specify the IP address or FQDN of the SIP proxy server for the network. If you leave this field blank, the registrar server is used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Notes for endpoints that will use a RealPresence Access Director system</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If this network provisioning profile is used for endpoints within a site that includes a RealPresence Access Director system, the Proxy Server IP address should be the external or subscriber IP address of the RealPresence Access Director.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Registrar Server</td>
<td>Specify the IP address or FQDN of the SIP registrar server for the network.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• In an Microsoft Office Communications Server 2007 or Microsoft Lync Server 2010 environment, specify the IP address or FQDN of the Office Communications Server or Lync Server server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If registering a remote HDX system with an Office Communications Server Edge Server or Lync Server Edge Server, use the fully qualified domain name of the access edge server role.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Notes for endpoints that will use a RealPresence Access Director system</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If this network provisioning profile is used for endpoints within a site that includes a RealPresence Access Director system, the Registrar Server address should be the external or subscriber IP address of the RealPresence Access Director.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backup Proxy Server</td>
<td>Specify the IP address or FQDN of a backup SIP proxy server for the network.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Notes for endpoints that will use a RealPresence Access Director system</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If this network provisioning profile is used for endpoints within a site that includes a RealPresence Access Director system, the Backup Proxy Server IP address should be the IP address of the RealPresence Access Director.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backup Registrar Server</td>
<td>Specify the IP address or FQDN of a backup SIP registrar server for the network.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Notes for endpoints that will use a RealPresence Access Director system</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If this network provisioning profile is used for a site that includes a RealPresence Access Director system, the Backup Registrar Server IP address should be the IP address of the RealPresence Access Director.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transport Protocol</td>
<td>Indicates the protocol the system uses for SIP signaling. The SIP network infrastructure determines which protocol is required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Auto enables an automatic negotiation of protocols in the following order: TLS, TCP, UDP. This is the recommended setting for most environments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• TCP provides reliable transport via TCP for SIP signaling.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• UDP provides best-effort transport via UDP for SIP signaling.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• TLS provides secure communication of the SIP signaling. TLS is available only when the system is registered with a SIP server that supports TLS. When you choose this setting, the system ignores TCP/UDP port 5060.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>For the endpoint systems being provisioned...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Server Type</strong></td>
<td>Specify the type of the SIP registrar server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You can provision the following SIP registrar servers:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Standard (Polycom DMA system)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Polycom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• BroadSoft (BroadWorks)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco (Cisco Unified Communications Manager)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Avaya (Avaya Communications Manager)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Siemens (OpenScape UC Server)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Microsoft (Lync of Office Communications Server)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Verify Certificate</strong></td>
<td>Enable this option when the endpoint system's certificate should be verified by the certificate authority.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Use Endpoint Provisioning Credentials</strong></td>
<td>Enable this option when the endpoint system should use the credentials the user entered at the endpoint for authenticating when registering with a SIP registrar server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Use Enterprise URI</strong></td>
<td>Enable this option with the endpoint should use the SIP URI of the enterprise user (domain user).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Common SIP User Name</td>
<td>Specify the name to use for authentication when registering with a SIP registrar server, for example, <a href="mailto:msmith@company.com">msmith@company.com</a>. If the SIP proxy requires authentication, this field and the password cannot be blank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Common SIP credentials (username and password) can be used when the SIP server does not require unique user credentials.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Common SIP Password</td>
<td>Specify the password that authenticates the system to the registrar server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Common SIP credentials (username and password) can be used when the SIP server does not require unique user credentials.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Provisioning Settings**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisioning Polling Interval (minutes)</th>
<th>Specify the frequency at which the endpoint systems poll the RealPresence Resource Manager system for new provisioning information.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>By default, this interval is 60 minutes. For performance reasons, the minimum positive value for this interval is 5 minutes. There is no maximum value enforced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Software Update Polling Interval</td>
<td>Specify the frequency at which the endpoint systems poll the RealPresence Resource Manager system for a new software update package.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(minutes)</td>
<td>By default, this interval is 60 minutes. For performance reasons, the minimum positive value for this interval is 5 minutes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>For the endpoint systems being provisioned...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable Pano Updates via HTTP</td>
<td>Enable HTTP transfer for Pano software updates. This option is disabled by default. If disable this option, HTTPS transfer will be used for Pano updates. In this case, you need to install an official certificate to allow HTTPS connection for Pano updates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quality of Service Settings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video Type of Service Value</td>
<td>Specify the IP Precedence or Diffserv value for video packets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio Type of Service Value</td>
<td>Specify the IP Precedence or Diffserv value for audio packets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FECC Type of Service Value</td>
<td>Specify the IP Precedence or Diffserv value for Far End Camera Control packets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type of Service Field</td>
<td>Specify the service type and the priority of IP packets sent to the system for video, audio, and far-end camera control:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>IP Precedence</strong> — Represents the priority of IP packets sent to the system. The value can be between 0 and 5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Diffserv</strong> — Represents a priority level between 0 and 63. If this setting is selected, enter the value in the Type of Service Value field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Transmission Unit Size (bytes)</td>
<td>Specify the Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) size used in IP calls. If the video becomes blocky or network errors occur, packets may be too large; decrease the MTU. If the network is burdened with unnecessary overhead, packets may be too small; increase the MTU.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable PVEC</td>
<td>Enables the endpoint system to use PVEC (Polycom Video Error Concealment) if packet loss occurs. PVEC delivers smooth, clear video over IP networks by concealing the deteriorating effects of packet loss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable RSVP</td>
<td>Enables the endpoint system to use Resource Reservation Setup Protocol (RSVP) to request that routers reserve bandwidth along an IP connection path. Both the near site and far site must support RSVP in order for reservation requests to be made to routers on the connection path.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable Dynamic Bandwidth</td>
<td>Specify whether to let the endpoint system automatically find the optimum line speed for a call.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Transmit Bandwidth (Kbps)</td>
<td>Specify the maximum transmission line speed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Receive Bandwidth (Kbps)</td>
<td>Specify the maximum reception line speed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operation and Management Type</td>
<td>Specifies the IP Precedence or Diffserv value for traffic not related to video, audio, or FECC.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Security Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>For the endpoint systems being provisioned...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Security Profile</strong></td>
<td>Read-only field. Displays the security level of the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Enable Dynamic Provisioning for ID/Passwords</strong></td>
<td>This check box must be marked if you want to provision IDs or passwords.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Enable Provisioning for Room Password</strong></td>
<td>Enable or disable room password provisioning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Use Room Password for Remote Access</strong></td>
<td>Specify whether the local endpoint system password and remote access password are the same.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Room Password</strong></td>
<td>Enter or change the local endpoint system password here. When the local password is set, you must enter it to configure the system Admin Settings using the remote control. The local password must not contain spaces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Administrator ID</strong></td>
<td>Enter the administrative account that should be used to access the endpoint system remotely.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Remote Access Password</strong></td>
<td>For endpoint systems, enter or change the remote access password here. When the remote access password is set, you must enter it to upgrade the software or manage the endpoint systems from a computer. The remote access password cannot include spaces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Meeting Password</strong></td>
<td>Specify the password users must supply to join multipoint calls on this endpoint system if the call uses the internal multipoint option, rather than a bridge. This field can also be used to store a password required by another endpoint system that this system calls. If a password is stored in this field, you do not need to enter it at the time of the call; the endpoint system supplies it to the system that requires it. The meeting password cannot include spaces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Enable Secure Mode</strong></td>
<td>Specify whether to operate in secure mode (also known as security mode), which uses TLS, HTTPS, AES, digital signatures, and other security protocols, algorithms, and mechanisms. These protocols encrypt management communication over IP, preventing access by unauthorized users. When devices at a site are provisioned to operate in secure mode, the RealPresence Resource Manager system can only perform the dynamic management operations of automatic provisioning, automatic software update, and directory and presence services for the devices. The RealPresence Resource Manager system cannot perform monitoring or control operations for the devices. For more information, see the Administrator's Guide for Polycom HDX Systems.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### AES Encryption
Specify how to encrypt calls with other sites that support AES encryption.

- **Off**—No encryption is used.
- **When Available**—AES Encryption is used with any endpoint that supports it, even if the other endpoints in the call don’t support it.
- **Required for Video Calls Only**—AES Encryption is used for all video endpoints in the call. Analog phone and voice over ISDN connections are allowed. Video endpoints must support AES Encryption to participate in the call.
- **Required for All Calls**—AES Encryption is used for all video endpoints in the call. Analog phone and voice over ISDN connections are not allowed. All endpoints must support AES Encryption to participate in the call.

### Enable Web Access
Specify whether to allow remote access to the endpoint system by the web.

**Note:** The endpoint systems will restart if the remote access settings are changed. This setting does not deactivate the associated port, only the application. Use the Web Access Port setting to disable the port.

### Enable HTTPS only
Select this check box to allow the endpoint to connect only using HTTPS.

### Enable Telnet Access
Specify whether to allow remote access to the system by Telnet.

**Note:** The endpoint systems will restart if the remote access settings are changed. This setting does not deactivate the associated port, only the application. Use the Web Access Port setting to disable the port.

### Web Access Port
This port setting only works for HTTP port.

Specify the port to use when accessing the endpoint system's web interface.

If you change this from the default (port 80), specify a port number of 1025 or higher, and make sure the port is not already in use. You will need to include the port number with the IP address when you use the Polycom HDX web interface to access the system. This makes unauthorized access more difficult.

**Note:** The system restarts if you change the web access port.

### Allow Video Display On Web
Specify whether to allow viewing of the room where the endpoint system is located, or video of calls in which the endpoint system participates, using the endpoint system's web interface.

**Note:** This feature activates both near site and far site video displays in Web Director.

### NTLM Version
Specify the NTLM version the endpoint system should use to authenticate.

### Security Settings 2

---

Polycom, Inc.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>For the endpoint systems being provisioned...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Idle Session Timeout in Minutes</td>
<td>When sessions are enabled, Specify the number of minutes your system can be idle before the session times out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lock Port after Failed Logins</td>
<td>Specify the number of failed login attempts allowed before the system locks the account. If set to Off, the system will not lock the user account due to failed login attempts. This selection controls local and web interface login attempts. For example, if you select 3 here, a user who fails to log in properly twice on the web interface and twice on the local interface is locked out on the fourth attempt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Failed Login Window in Hours</td>
<td>Specify the amount of time that the account remains locked due to failed login attempts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Port Lock Duration in Minutes</td>
<td>Specify the amount of time that the port remains locked due to failed login attempts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Peer Certificate Chain Depth</td>
<td>Specify how many links a certificate chain can have. The term peer certificate refers to any certificate sent by the far-end host to the HDX system when a network connection is being established between the two systems.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verify Certificates for all Web Access</td>
<td>Specify whether the endpoint requires certificate validation to access the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable NIDS</td>
<td>Enable Network Intrusion Detection messages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIPS 140 Mode</td>
<td>Support FIPS 140.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable Security Classification</td>
<td>Helps RealPresence Group system call participants remain conscious of the security classification when in a BroadWorks managed call.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable SCEP</td>
<td>Enable support for Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>For the endpoint systems being provisioned...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCEP URL</td>
<td>Refer to the <em>Polycom RealPresence Group Series Administrator Guide</em> for information on these provisioning properties.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Challenge Password</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto Renewal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Threshold Days</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Threshold Percentage</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enroll Retry Interval</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renewal Attempts</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA Profile</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Common Name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organization Unit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organization</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>City Or Locality</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>State Or Province</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCEP Email</td>
<td>Select one of the followings from the drop-down list:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>User Email</strong>: The email address of the endpoint's provisioned sign-in account used as the SCEP email.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>None</strong>: RealPresence Resource Manager doesn't set the user email as the SCEP email. You can configure this setting on the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Whitelist**

| Enable Whitelist of IPs | When a white list is enabled, enables access to an endpoint's web interface only by those systems with an IP address that matches a pattern using regular expression notation. |
**Field** | **For the endpoint systems being provisioned...**
---|---
Enter all IPs allowed to Connect via the web | Specify (by IP addresses using regular expression notation) which systems can access an endpoint's web interface. Addresses are matched by pattern, which means that you could allow IP address that you did not mean to allow. For example, if you entered an IP address of 15.1.2.111, all of the following results would match:
- 15.1.2.111
- 15.182.1.11
- 15.1.252.111

If you want to allow a range of IP addresses, use the * wildcard instead. For example, enter 10.11.*.* to allow all IP addresses that begin with 10.11.

**General Settings**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Heartbeat Posting Interval (minutes)</td>
<td>Specify the frequency at which the endpoint systems poll the RealPresence Resource Manager system for a heartbeat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In Call Stats Posting Interval (minutes)</td>
<td>Specify the frequency at which the endpoint systems poll the RealPresence Resource Manager system for in call statistics.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Calendaring Settings**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Automatically Discover Exchange Server</td>
<td>Specify that the RealPresence Resource Manager system should discover the Microsoft Exchange server for the site by searching DNS records. If you have configured a Calendar Connector, you should use the Specify Exchange Server field instead.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specify Exchange Server</td>
<td>Specify that the RealPresence Resource Manager system should use the Microsoft Exchange server specified in the Exchange Server Address field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exchange Server Address</td>
<td>Specify the IP address or FQDN of the Microsoft Exchange server for the site. If you have configured a Calendar Connector, put the RealPresence Resource Manager system FQDN in this field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Enterprise Directory Settings**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Group Display Name</td>
<td>Specify whether the RealPresence Resource Manager system should identify groups by their common name (cn) or their DisplayName. These names are extracted from the Active Directory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Display Name</td>
<td>Specify whether the RealPresence Resource Manager system should identify users by their common name (cn) or their DisplayName. These names are extracted from the Active Directory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterprise Directory Admin Group</td>
<td>Specify the Active Directory group whose members should have access to the Admin settings on the HDX system. This name must exactly match the name in the Active Directory server for authentication to succeed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>For the endpoint systems being provisioned...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterprise Directory User Group</td>
<td>Specify the Active Directory group whose members should have access to the User settings on the HDX system. This name must exactly match the name in the Active Directory server for authentication to succeed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Use Default Authentication Server | This check box is only available if you have marked the Enterprise Directory Admin Group or the Enterprise Directory User Group.  
When checked, endpoints will use the RealPresence Resource Manager system's IP address as the IP for the authentication server.  
If you have marked the Enterprise Directory Admin Group or the Enterprise Directory User Group and leave this check box unchecked, you must indicate an authentication server for provisioned endpoints. |
| Authentication Server        | This check box is only available if you have marked the Enterprise Directory Admin Group or the Enterprise Directory User Group.  
If you have marked the Enterprise Directory Admin Group or the Enterprise Directory User Group and have NOT marked the Use Default Authentication Server check box, you must indicate an authentication server for provisioned endpoints. |

**Directory Settings**

| Provision directory service for hardware endpoints | Specifies that directory services will be enabled for all endpoints, including hardware endpoints.  
If unchecked, directory services are only provisioned to software endpoints. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use Default Directory Server</td>
<td>Use the RealPresence Resource Manager system to provide the directory service.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Directory Server</td>
<td>When the Use Default Directory Server radio button is unchecked, you can use the Directory Server field enter the IP address of the directory server you wish to use.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verify Certificate</td>
<td>Enable this option when the endpoint system’s certificate should be verified by the certificate authority.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Presence Settings**

| Use Default Presence Server                       | Use the RealPresence Resource Manager system to provide the presence service. |
| Presence Server                                  | When the Use Default Presence Server button is unchecked, you can use the Presence Server field enter the IP address of the presence server you wish to use.                                           |
| Verify Certificate                                | Enable this option when the endpoint system’s certificate should be verified by the certificate authority.                                                                                                                                  |

**SNMP Settings**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>For the endpoint systems being provisioned...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enable SNMP Access</td>
<td>Specify whether to allow remote access to the system by SNMP. The endpoint will restart if the remote access settings are changed. This setting does not deactivate the associated port, only the application.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SNMP Version1</td>
<td>Select to enable SNMP Version1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SNMP Version2C</td>
<td>Select to enable SNMP Version2C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SNMP Version3</td>
<td>Select to enable SNMP Version3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transport Protocol</td>
<td>Select TCP or UDP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Listening Port</td>
<td>The default port is 161.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Read-only community</td>
<td>For SNMPv2c, specifies the context for the information, which is the SNMP group to which the devices and management stations running SNMP belong. The RealPresence RealPresence Resource Manager system has only one valid context—by default, public—which is identified by this Community name. The RealPresence RealPresence Resource Manager system will not respond to requests</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact Name</td>
<td>Specifies the name of the person responsible for remote management of this system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Location Name</td>
<td>Specifies the location of the system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Name</td>
<td>Specifies the SNMPv3 User Security Model (USM) account name that will be used for SNMPv3 message transactions. The maximum length is 64 characters</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Auth Algorithm      | Specifies the type of SNMPv3 authentication algorithm used:  
  • SHA  
  • MD5 |
| Auth Password       | Specifies the SNMPv3 authentication password. The maximum length is 48 characters |
| Privacy Algorithm   | Specifies the type of SNMPv3 cryptography privacy algorithm used:  
  • CFB-AES128  
  • CBC-DES |
<p>| Privacy Password    | Specifies the SNMPv3 privacy (encryption) password. The maximum length is 48 characters. |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>For the endpoint systems being provisioned...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Notification Receiver 1</td>
<td>Enter the following information:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Server Address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SNMP Version</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Listening Port</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Trap/Inform</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notification Receiver 2</td>
<td>Enter the following information:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Server Address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SNMP Version</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Listening Port</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Trap/Inform</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notification Receiver 3</td>
<td>Enter the following information:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Server Address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SNMP Version</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Listening Port</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Trap/Inform</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Content Settings (for Polycom Pano System)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enable Pairing PIN</td>
<td>Select this check box to enable paring PIN for content sharing using the Polycom Pano system. It is selected by default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable Polycom Cloud Service</td>
<td>Enable this option to allow the Polycom Pano system to be provisioned by the Polycom Cloud Service. It is not selected by default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable Software Updates by Polycom Cloud Service</td>
<td>This option is available only after you select the Enable Polycom Cloud Service check box. Enable this option to allow the Polycom Pano system software updates to be managed by the Polycom Cloud Service.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow Content to be Saved from Primary Network</td>
<td>Allows meeting participants to save content snapshots using the Pano App.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Related Links**

[Create a New Provisioning Profile](#) on page 310
Admin Config Provisioning Profiles

Admin Config provisioning profiles enable you to create provisioning profiles that include maximum and preferred call speeds for H.323 settings, calendaring settings, and Microsoft Lync settings.

You can use Admin Config provisioning profiles to provision the following Polycom endpoints:

- Polycom VVX systems deployed in dynamic management mode
- Polycom HDX systems deployed in dynamic management mode
- Polycom RealPresence Group Series endpoints (required)
- Polycom RealPresence Immersive Studio systems (required)
- Polycom CMA Desktop clients
- RealPresence Mobile clients
- RealPresence Desktop clients

If an Admin Config provisioning profile provisions a setting that the endpoint is not capable of fulfilling, the endpoint will ignore those settings.

The name of the Default Provisioning Profile is stored in the system database and is not localized into other languages. You cannot change the name.

**Note:** Polycom CMA Desktop provisioning occurs on a session by session basis.

Settings for Admin Config Provisioning Profiles

The following table shows the fields you can configure when adding a new Admin Config provisioning profile to the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

See the endpoint system documentation for additional implementation details about these fields.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>For the endpoint systems being provisioned...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>General Info</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Specify a unique name for the profile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provisioning Profile Type</td>
<td>Choose the profile type from the drop-down list.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Field

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>For the endpoint systems being provisioned...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Selectable Provisioning for Group Series</td>
<td>When you mark this check box, you can manually select which settings within the provisioning profile are sent to a RealPresence Group system. Only the selected settings will be provisioned to RealPresence Group systems. Within the provisioning profile, only the settings that you select are set to the RealPresence Group system. For example, if a provisioning setting is blank but still checked, the blank value is still be provisioned to the system. By default, all settings are checked. If you don't want to provision the setting to the RealPresence Group system, you must uncheck the individual settings.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** If the RealPresence Resource Manager system doesn’t provision the H.323 or SIP settings of RealPresence Group Series, the system doesn’t monitor the H.323 or SIP dialing strings. Directory search of the dialing strings is not supported.

### System Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enable Language Settings</td>
<td>Specifies the language for the video endpoint system's user interface. Possible values include: Arabic, Simplified Chinese, Traditional Chinese, English_US, English_UK, French, German, Hungarian, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Norwegian, Polish, Portuguese, Russian, and Spanish. If you clear this check box, the language settings can be manually configured on the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow Access to User Setup</td>
<td>Specifies whether the User Settings screen is accessible to users via the System screen. Select this option to allow endpoint system users to change limited environmental settings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow Directory Changes</td>
<td>Specifies whether endpoint system users can save changes they make to the directory on contacts/favorites list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto-answer Point to Point Calls</td>
<td>Specifies whether endpoint answers point to point calls automatically.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto-answer Multipoint calls</td>
<td>Specifies whether endpoint answers multipoint calls automatically.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Call Detail Report</td>
<td>Specifies whether to collect call data for the Call Detail Report and Recent Calls list. When selected, information about calls can be viewed through the endpoint system's web interface and downloaded as a .csv file. <strong>Note:</strong> If this setting is disabled, applications will not be able to retrieve Call Detail Report (CDR) records.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Time in Call (minutes)</td>
<td>Specifies the maximum number of minutes allowed for a call. Enter 0 to remove any limit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>For the endpoint systems being provisioned...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Recent Calls</strong></td>
<td>Specifies whether to display the <strong>Recent Calls</strong> button on the home screen. The <strong>Recent Calls</strong> screen lists the site number or name, the date and time, and whether the call was incoming or outgoing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note:</strong></td>
<td>If the <strong>Call Detail Report</strong> option is not selected, the <strong>Recent Calls</strong> option is not available.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Screen Saver Wait Time</strong></td>
<td>Specifies how long the system remains awake during periods of inactivity. The default is 3 minutes. If the system requires users to log in, the screen saver timeout also logs out the current user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Setting this option to <strong>Off</strong> prevents the system from going to sleep. To prevent image burn-in, specify 15 minutes or less.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Directory Search Mode</strong></td>
<td>Specifies how endpoint directory searches are initiated by the endpoint user. Possible values are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Auto—The search is executed after the user stops entering characters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Manual—The search is executed only when the user explicitly clicks the <strong>Search</strong> button.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Maximum Number of Active Web Sessions</strong></td>
<td>Specifies the number of active web sessions that are allowed. The default is <strong>25</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Secondary Network</strong></td>
<td><em>(Pano Only)</em> Choose a secondary network for guests to access Pano devices.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Allow Web Access on Secondary Network</strong></td>
<td><em>(Pano Only)</em> Allow administrators to access the Pano system web interface over the secondary network.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Home Screen Settings</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Display H.323 Extension</strong></td>
<td>Lets users placing a gateway call enter the H.323 extension separately from the gateway ID.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If you do not select this setting, endpoint system users make gateway calls by entering the call information in this format:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>gateway ID + ## + extension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Enable Availability Control</strong></td>
<td>When enabled, lets users set their availability in the endpoint system's local user interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Address Bar (Left Element)</strong></td>
<td>Allows you to select which element you want displayed on the left side of the address bar on the local interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Address Bar (Right Element)</strong></td>
<td>Allows you to select which element you want displayed on the right side of the address bar on the local interface.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Call Settings**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>For the endpoint systems being provisioned...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Speed for Receiving Calls (kbps)</td>
<td>Restricts the bandwidth used when receiving calls. If the far site attempts to call the endpoint system at a higher speed than selected here, the call is re-negotiated at the speed specified in this field. The default is 384 kbps.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preferred Speed for Placing Calls (kbps)</td>
<td>Determines the speeds that will be used for calls from this endpoint system when: • The Call Quality selection is either unavailable or set to Auto on the Place a Call screen • The call is placed from the directory If the far-site endpoint system does not support the selected speed, the endpoint system automatically negotiates a lower speed. The default is 384 kbps.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preferred Dialing Method</td>
<td>Specifies the preferred method for dialing various call types. • If set to Auto (default), calls use the configured dialing order. • If set to Manual, the endpoint systems will prompt the user to select the call type from a list when placing a call.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable Automatic Call Escalation</td>
<td>Enable or disable the automatic call escalation feature.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conference Factory ID</td>
<td>The conference factory ID created for the SIP conference factories in the RealPresence DMA System.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Audio Settings**

| Mute Auto Answer Calls                  | Specifies whether or not to automatically mute incoming calls. The default setting is to not automatically mute incoming calls.                          |

**CMA Desktop Settings**

| Allow IM/Chat                            | When enabled, specifies that the Polycom CMA Desktop client can initiate instant messaging. This is enabled by default.                                    |

**Software Endpoint Settings**

<p>| Enable IM/Chat                           | For RealPresence Desktop clients, this option must be provisioned to support both presence and chat functions. For CMA Desktop, this option must be provisioned to support chat functions. |
| Enable Screen Saver When in Call         | Specifies whether or not to enable screen saver during a call.                                                                                                                                    |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>For the endpoint systems being provisioned...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Auto Accept Invitation</td>
<td>Enables the client to auto-accept chat invitations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Applicable to RealPresence Desktop clients only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow IM Storage</td>
<td>Enables the client to store chat history on its local drive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Applicable to RealPresence Desktop clients only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note:</strong></td>
<td>If you disable this option after enabling it, all chat history is cleared for the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow Content Sharing</td>
<td>Enables the content sharing on the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Applicable to RealPresence Desktop clients only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provision QoS Control Enforcement</td>
<td>Enables the provisioning server QoS control.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Applicable to RealPresence Desktop clients only.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Provision Check that the CMA Desktop is the default program for: | • Opening Call To links  
  • Opening H323 links  
  • Opening SIP links  
  Selecting this setting provisions the CMA Desktop to be the default program for opening the above links. |
| Provision Enable Sending 720p (HD) Video | Select this check box to enable sending HD video.                                                                                                                                     |
|                                         | This is enabled by default.                                                                                                                                                             |
| Allow 720p frame rates up to:           | Enabled when Provision Enable Sending 720p (HD) people video is also selected.                                                                                                         |
|                                         | You can choose 15 Frames per second or 30 Frames per second.                                                                                                                          |
| **Calendaring Settings**                |                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Enable Calendaring                      | When enabled, this provisions the Microsoft Exchange server and calendaring settings for the endpoint system.                                                                       |
| Alert Tone                              | When enabled, specifies that an endpoint system provisioned for Polycom Conferencing for Outlook will play a sound along with the meeting reminder. In this case, the endpoint will only play a sound when the system is not in a call. |
| Display Private Meeting                 | When enabled, specifies that an endpoint system provisioned for Polycom Conferencing for Outlook will display details about meetings marked private.                                          |
| Meeting Reminder Time                   | Specifies the number of minutes before the meeting an endpoint system provisioned for Polycom Conferencing for Outlook will display a reminder.                                             |
| Check for New Messages Interval         | Specifies the interval to check calender invitation messages.                                                                                                                        |
### Field

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>For the endpoint systems being provisioned...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use Endpoint Provisioning Credentials</td>
<td>If checked, the endpoint provisioning credentials will be used to connect the calender server. If canceled, you need to go to the endpoint UI to specify the credential used to connect the calendar server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Microsoft Lync Settings</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group Name</td>
<td>Specifies the group name for which the endpoint system should be provisioned.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>VVX/CX Settings</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration Server URL</td>
<td>Specifies the IP address for the system that will provide provisioning service. All addresses can be followed by an optional directory and optional filename.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Logging Server URL</td>
<td>Specifies the directory to use for log files, if required. A URL can also be specified. This field is blank by default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration Data</td>
<td>Enter XML data for a custom configuration. Enables the RealPresence Resource Manager system administrator's to provision settings that the RealPresence Resource Manager system does not normally provide.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Related Links**  
[Create a New Provisioning Profile](#) on page 310
Creating Dynamic Provisioning Rules

Topics:

• Prioritizing Provisioning Rules
• Using Rule Conditions
• Working with Provisioning Rules
• Stop Dynamic Management of an Endpoint

You apply dynamic provisioning profiles by using provisioning rules.

A provisioning rule consists of one or more conditions that must be met before the dynamic provisioning profile can be applied. You can create multiple rules and associate a profile with more than one rule at a time.

For example, you can use provisioning rules to provision different endpoints within the same site with different network settings.

If a dynamically managed endpoint does not meet any conditions of any rule, it is provisioned with the default profiles.

Prioritizing Provisioning Rules

After you have added more than one provisioning rule, you can change the priority of the list of provisioning rules you created.

When you add rules, they are automatically prioritized according to the order in which they were added to the system.

Rules with a higher priority will be applied first. The Rule Priority determines the order that the rules get applied.

Consider the following example:

Create two rules, one for the Support user group and one for the Toronto user group. Jason Smith is part of the Support group and also part of the Toronto group.

• The Support Rule is assigned an Admin Config provisioning profile named Low-Bandwidth, which enables a maximum speed for receiving calls of 128kbps. The Support Rule is assigned a priority of 1.
• The Toronto Rule is assigned an Admin Config provisioning profile called High-Bandwidth, which enables a maximum speed for receiving calls of 1920kbps. The Toronto Rule is assigned a priority of 2.

In this example, Jason's endpoint is provisioned with the Low-Bandwidth provisioning profile, because it has the higher priority.

When you add provisioning rules, you may want to assign provisioning rules with more robust privileges a higher priority than those providing fewer privileges.
Using Rule Conditions

A provisioning rule is comprised of one or more conditions that you define.

You are allowed to add multiple conditions of multiple condition types to a single rule.

For example, you can create a rule that applies a provisioning profile according to the user group (condition) and device type (condition).

Rule conditions can be complex and include OR or AND relationships, as well as NOT relationship.

If a dynamically managed endpoint does not meet any conditions of any rule, it is provisioned with the default profiles.

For example, you can create a rule that applies a network provisioning profile for all device types within a site except for VVX endpoints.

Provisioning rules support the following condition types:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition Type</th>
<th>Attributes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Site</td>
<td>The site name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Group</td>
<td>The name of a user group.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>User</th>
<th>You can choose from one of the following user attributes when defining a user condition for a rule:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Department</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• User ID</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Device</th>
<th>You can choose from the following attributes when defining a device condition for a rule:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Device Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Serial Number</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Condition Operators

When you build conditions you can use three operators: CONTAINS, IN, and =.

The IN operator allows you to add multiple values to the same condition. For example, if you want to create a provisioning rule that applies to both RealPresence Desktop devices and RealPresence Mobile devices, you should use the IN operator and add both devices to the condition.

The IN operator is equivalent to OR but the IN performance is much better than the OR when building the rule. It is highly recommended to use IN if you want to use >= 5 ORs to connect conditions.

The = operator allows you to add only one value to the condition.

The CONTAINS operator is available for user group rules.
Working with Provisioning Rules

When you create a provisioning rule, you can associate multiple profile types with the same provisioning rule.

For example, when you provision a RealPresence Access Director for your environment, it is typical to associate a Network provisioning profile, an Admin Config provisioning profile, and a RealPresence Access Director server provisioning profile with the same rule.

If a dynamically managed endpoint does not meet any conditions of any rule, it is provisioned with the default profiles.

Add a Provisioning Rule

When you add a new provisioning rule or change its priority, the RealPresence Resource Manager system immediately rolls it out.

Only users with the administrator role can add provisioning rules.

If it rolls it out first thing in the morning, people who need to attend a “start the day” conference will have to first wait for their endpoint to be provisioned. Polycom recommends implementing profiles in the middle of a work day and then let the provisioning occur at the designated polling interval.

Note: Add new provisioning rules in the middle of the work day, not first thing in the morning.

When you add a provisioning rule, use the Add New Rule dialog box to complete the following steps:

Procedure

1. Create provisioning rule.
2. Add a condition.
3. Associate provisioning profiles with a provisioning rule.

The following steps incorporate an example of creating a rule that applies provisioning profile to all devices of a certain type within a specific site. You can create rules of varying complexity or simplicity.

Create Provisioning Rule

Each provisioning rule you create must have a unique name as well as a description.

Procedure

2. Click Add +.
   The Add New Rule dialog box displays.
3. In the General Info area, enter a name for the new rule.
   In this example, we are creating a rule for all HDX systems in the Austin, TX, area.
4. Activate or deactivate the rule.
   By default, a rule is marked as active when you create it. Active rules are automatically sent the next time a dynamically managed device polls the RealPresence Resource Manager system for provisioning updates.
   If you do not want the rule to be active, uncheck the Active check box.

Add a Condition
You can add a condition to a provisioning rule when you first create it or you can add a new condition or change a condition of an inactive rule.

Procedure
1. In the Add New Rule dialog box, click Add on the top.
   The Add New Condition dialog box displays.
2. Use the Add New Condition dialog to create the conditions that you need.
   a. Select a condition.
      In this example, we are creating a condition for the Austin site, so we chose Site in the Type drop down list, and selected the Austin site for the Value.
   b. Click OK to save the condition.
      This example defines a condition for the rule to include all HDX systems.
   c. To add another condition, first select the condition you just created and then click Add .
      To add a new condition to a rule, you must select a condition in the list from which to build on.
When creating conditions, you can use the following condition operators: `contains`, `in`, or `=`. The `contains` operator is only applicable to group condition type.

After you create the Site condition, click `Add` to add more conditions to your rule.

d. Select a value from the `Relation` column.

You can relate multiple conditions with an `And` statement or an `Or` statement.

In our example, we want this rule to apply to both the site and the device type, so we chose `And`.

This screenshot shows a Device condition type that defines a condition that includes all HDX device types.

e. Click `OK` to save the condition.

f. To view all conditions in your rule, expand the folder.

In our example, we expanded the `And` folder to view each condition. Notice that the condition is also displayed in the field below the condition table.

The next step in the `Add New Rule` dialog is to associate provisioning profiles with the rule. Do not close the `Add New Rule` dialog box.

**Associate Provisioning Profiles with a Provisioning Rule**

After you have created your condition(s), you need to select which provisioning profiles to associate with this rule.

You must have already created the provisioning profiles you need.

A provisioning rule must have at least one profile associated with the rule.

**Procedure**

1. Click the `Endpoint Provisioning Profile` page in the `Add New Rule` dialog box.

   You can associate one or more profile to the rule. For example, one Network Provisioning Profile, one Admin Config Profile, and one Server Provisioning profile.

2. Select the `Available Profiles` you want to associate with the rule you created and click the down arrow to move them to the `Selected Profiles` section.

   In this example, you can select the HDX system profile, which is an `Admin Config` provisioning profile.

3. You have now finished creating a provisioning rule.

   Click `OK` to save the rule.

   These steps used an example rule that applied the associated profile to all HDX systems within a example Austin site.
Related Links
Using Dynamic Provisioning Profiles on page 309

View Details of a Provisioning Rule
You can view the details of a provisioning rule.
Use this option when you want to view the provisioning rule without editing it.

Procedure
2. Optionally, click Filter to filter the rules that display.
   - Choose from the following filters: Rule Name, Status, and Condition (Device Type, Site, User Group).
3. In the Provisioning Rules page, select the rule you want to view.
4. Click View Details.
5. Click OK.

Edit the Priority of a Provisioning Rule
By default, provisioning rules are assigned a priority level according to order in which they are added to the system.
You can change the priority of a provisioning rule.
Provisioning rules with higher priority get applied first.

Procedure
2. Optionally, click Filter to filter the rules that display.
   - Choose from the following filters: Rule Name, Status, and Condition (Device Type, Site, User Group).
3. In the Provisioning Rules page, select the rule of which you want to change the priority.
4. Click Edit Priority from the More drop-down list.
   - The Edit Priority dialog appears.
5. Enter a new priority number in the Rule Priority field.
6. Click OK.
   - The system changes the priority of the selected provisioning rule.

Copy a Provisioning Rule
You can copy a provisioning rule when you want to re-use most of its conditions in a new rule or just change the name of an existing rule.

Procedure
2. Optionally, click Filter to filter the rules that display.
   - Choose from the following filters: Rule Name, Status, and Condition (Device Type, Site, User Group).
3. In the Provisioning Rules page, select the rule you want to copy and click Copy.

4. In the Copy Rule dialog box, enter a name for the new rule and click Save.
   The provisioning rule appears last in the Provisioning Rules list.

5. As needed, edit the rule.

Deactivate a Provisioning Rule

You can deactivate a provisioning rule if you want to stop using it as a provisioning rule or edit it.

Deactivated provisioning rules are not used.

You must activate a provisioning rule for it to be used.

Procedure


2. Optionally, click Filter to filter the rules that display.
   Choose from the following filters: Rule Name, Status, and Condition (Device Type, Site, User Group).

3. In the Provisioning Rule page, select the rule and select More > Deactivate.

4. Click Yes to confirm the deactivation.

Edit a Provisioning Rule

When you choose to edit a provisioning rule, it automatically becomes deactivated.

If you want to view the details of a provisioning rule without de-activating it, use the View Details option.

If you choose not to save your changes, the rule will not be deactivated.

Procedure


2. Optionally, click Filter to filter the rules that display.
   Choose from the following filters: Rule Name, Status, and Condition (Device Type, Site, User Group).

3. Select the rule and click Edit.
   You are prompted to deactivate the rule.

4. Click OK to confirm the deactivation.

5. In the Edit Rule dialog box, make your changes.

6. Click OK.
   The provisioning rule is updated.

Delete a Provisioning Rule

You cannot delete an active provisioning rule.

You must first deactivate it before you can delete it.

Procedure


2. Optionally, click Filter to filter the rules that display.
Choose from the following filters: **Rule Name**, **Status**, and Condition (**Device Type**, **Site**, **User Group**).

3. Select the rule and click **Delete**.
4. Click **Yes** to confirm the deletion.
   The rule is deleted from the system.

**Stop Dynamic Management of an Endpoint**

If you want to stop dynamically managing an endpoint, you must first disable the provisioning service settings on the endpoint.

To stop dynamic management for a Polycom HDX system, see the Polycom HDX documentation.

**Procedure**

1. From the endpoint's web interface, navigate to the Provisioning Service settings and cancel the **Enable Provisioning** check box.
2. From the RealPresence Resource Manager system, navigate to **Endpoint > Monitor View**, highlight the endpoint and click **Delete**.
Using Bundled Provisioning Profiles

Topics:

• How Bundled Provisioning Works
• Download a Bundled Provisioning Profile
• View the List of Bundled Provisioning Profiles
• Edit a Bundled Provisioning Profile
• Delete a Bundled Provisioning Profile
• Re-associate Devices with a Different Profile
• Settings included in a Bundled Provisioning Profile for an HDX
• Settings included in a Bundled Provisioning Profile for a RealPresence Group System and RealPresence Immersive Studio System

The Polycom RealPresence Resource Manager system supports Bundled Provisioning Profiles for dynamically managed Polycom RealPresence Group Series systems, Polycom RealPresence Immersive Studio systems, RealPresence Centro, and Polycom HDX (v3.0.3 and higher) systems. With Bundled Provisioning Profiles, a RealPresence Resource Manager user with the administrator role can download a bundled provisioning profile from any already configured endpoint that is dynamically managed by the RealPresence Resource Manager.

You can then indicate which supported dynamically managed endpoint of the same model and software version will receive the bundled provisioning profile when it next polls the RealPresence Resource Manager system for new provisioning information.

Note: Bundled provisioning profiles are one of three types of provisioning profiles that you can use when dynamically managing an endpoint.

Bundled provisioning profiles provides businesses with an efficient and effective way to provision RealPresence Group Series, RealPresence Immersive Studio systems, and Polycom HDX systems consistently across each model. Endpoint users with administrative rights can still change the settings on an HDX system after the bundled provisioning profile is applied. However, if another profile is sent by the RealPresence Resource Manager system, it will overwrite the user's changes.

How Bundled Provisioning Works

In dynamic management mode, when a Polycom endpoint starts up and at designated intervals thereafter, it automatically polls for new provisioning information from the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

If a bundled provisioning profile exists on the RealPresence Resource Manager system that has been associated with the endpoint, the bundled profile is sent over a secure HTTPS connection.

In this release, the RealPresence Group Series, RealPresence Immersive Studio systems, and HDX system (v3.0.3 and higher) parameters that may be included in a bundled provisioned profile are limited to the following types:
- Camera configuration settings
- Monitor configuration settings
- Microphone configuration settings
- Security settings (such as password length)
- Home screen settings

**Considerations for Bundled Provisioning Profiles**

Consider the following items when using bundled provisioning profiles.

- You can store a maximum of 1000 bundled provisioning profiles on your RealPresence Resource Manager system.
- You cannot update software with a bundled profile.
- The software version of the endpoint must match the software version of the endpoint from which the bundled provisioning profile was made. A bundled profile is only compatible with endpoints of the same software version. If the endpoint's software version is updated, you must create a new bundled profile.
- When using bundled provisioning profiles to provision HDX systems, you can use them with v3.0.3 or higher. Previous versions do not support bundled provisioning profiles.
- Security and home screen settings are not included in bundled profiles for RealPresence Group Series.
- You must have the Administrator role to create bundled provisioning profiles. Users with the Device Administrator role can apply and re-assign bundled provisioning profiles.
- Be sure to give each provisioning profile a unique name.

**Download a Bundled Provisioning Profile**

You can download a bundled provisioning profile from any RealPresence Group Series, RealPresence Immersive Studio system, or HDX system that is registered with the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

After you download a provisioning profile for a specific endpoint, all dynamically-managed HDX endpoints that you associate with this profile will receive the provisioning profile when the HDX system next polls the RealPresence Resource Manager system for new provisioning information.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Endpoint > Dynamic Management > Bundled Provisioning Profiles**.
2. Click **Download**.
   - The **Download Bundled Provisioning Profile From an Endpoint** dialog lists all of the HDX systems and Group Series registered with the system, up to 500 endpoints.
3. As needed, click **Filter** to customize the endpoint list.
4. Select the endpoint that is configured the way you want for the bundled provisioning profile.
5. Complete the **Bundled Provisioning Profile Name** and **Description** fields.
6. Click **Download**.
   - The system confirms that the profile downloaded successfully.
7. Click **OK**.
View the List of Bundled Provisioning Profiles

Use the Bundled Provisioning View to see the list of bundled provisioning profiles available to dynamically managed RealPresence Group Series, RealPresence Immersive Studio systems and HDX systems.

Procedure

1. Go to Endpoint > Dynamic Management > Bundled Provisioning Profiles.

   By default the Bundled Provisioning Profile View displays the list of bundled provisioning profiles available for use by dynamically managed HDX systems and RealPresence Group Series.

2. As needed, click Filter to customize the endpoint list.

   The filter provides the following options:

   - **Profile Name**  Filters by the name of the bundled provisioning profile.
   - **Model**  Filters by the endpoint model.
   - **Software Version**  Filters by the software version of the endpoint.
   - **Creation Date**  Filters by the date the bundled provisioning profile was downloaded and created on the system.
   - **Description**  Filters by the description of the bundled provisioning profile.

   The profile list in the Bundled Provisioning Profile View has the following information.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Profile Name</td>
<td>The name assigned to the bundled provisioning profile when it was downloaded and created on the system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Model</td>
<td>The exact model of endpoint to which the bundled provisioning profile applies as defined when it was downloaded and created on the system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Software Version</td>
<td>Displays the software version of the endpoint from which the bundled provisioning profile was downloaded.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creation Date</td>
<td>The date the bundled provisioning profile was downloaded and created on the system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>The description assigned to the bundled provisioning profile when it was downloaded and created on the system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device Count</td>
<td>The number of devices that are associated with the bundled provisioning profile.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Edit a Bundled Provisioning Profile

Users with the administrator role are allowed to edit bundled provisioning profiles.

When you edit a bundled provisioning profile you can rename the profile or change which devices are associated with the profile.

Procedure

1. Go to Endpoint > Dynamic Management > Bundled Provisioning Profiles.
2. As needed, click Filter to customize the list of profiles.
3. Select the profile that you want to edit.
4. Click Edit to view the Edit Bundled Provisioning Profile dialog box.
5. Use the Edit Bundled Provisioning Profile dialog to edit the profile and click OK.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>General Settings</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Enter a name for the profile.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Enter a description for the profile.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Associate Devices</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Filter</td>
<td>This list of available devices automatically lists all dynamically-managed devices of the same model and software version used for the bundled profile. The Filter enables you to filter the list of available devices. Available filters include: Name: Type the first few letters of the system name and press Enter. IP Address: Type the first numbers of the IP address of the device(s) and press Enter. Site: Type the first letters of the site name of which whose devices you want to view and press Enter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Available Devices</td>
<td>Lists the available devices to associate with this profile. Only devices that are dynamically managed appear in the list. Use the arrows to move a device or devices to the Selected Devices list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selected Devices</td>
<td>Lists the devices that have been selected to receive this profile. Use the arrows to move a device or devices back to the Available Devices list.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Delete a Bundled Provisioning Profile**

When you no longer need a bundled provisioning profile, you can delete it.

**Procedure**

1. Go to Endpoint > Dynamic Management > Bundled Provisioning Profiles.
2. As needed, click Filter to customize the list of bundled provisioning profiles.
3. Select the profile you want to delete.
4. Click Delete.
5. Click Yes to confirm the deletion.

The system confirms that the profile was deleted.
Re-associate Devices with a Different Profile

Users with the administrator role can re-associate devices with a different bundled provisioning profile or no bundled profile.

For example, you could use this feature if you previously associated all RealPresence Group 300 systems with a specific profile, but then downloaded an updated bundled provisioning profile that you would like to use instead.

Procedure

1. Go to Endpoint > Dynamic Management > Bundled Provisioning Profiles.
2. Select the profile from which you want to remove the associated devices.
3. Click More > Re-associate Devices to view the Move Associated Devices dialog.
4. Choose a profile (or None) from the list to move the associated devices.
5. Click OK.

Settings included in a Bundled Provisioning Profile for an HDX

The following tables lists the settings contained in a bundled provisioning profile for an HDX system.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Home Screen Settings</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Name (Display)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local Date and Time (Display)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System (Display)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Availability Control (Display)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My SIP (Display)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My IP (Display)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My ISDN (Display)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My Extension (Display)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Home Button (1-6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speed Dial (all)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Place a call</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last Number Displayed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Call Quality</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Password Settings</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Minimum Length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Admin Room</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Require Lower Case</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Require Upper Case</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Require Numbers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Require Special Characters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reject Previous Passwords</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Minimum Password Age in Days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Maximum Password Age in Days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Password Expiration Warning in Days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Minimum Changed Characters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Maximum Consecutive Repeated Characters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Can contain ID or its Reverse Form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Admin Remote</td>
<td>Minimum Length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Require Lower Case</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Require Upper Case</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Require Numbers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Require Special Characters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reject Previous Passwords</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Minimum Password Age in Days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Maximum Password Age in Days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Password Expiration Warning in Days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Minimum Changed Characters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Maximum Consecutive Repeated Characters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Can contain ID or its Reverse Form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Minimum Length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Require Lower Case</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Require Upper Case</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Require Numbers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Require Special Characters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reject Previous Passwords</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Minimum Password Age in Days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Maximum Password Age in Days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Password Expiration Warning in Days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Minimum Changed Characters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Maximum Consecutive Repeated Characters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Can contain ID or its Reverse Form</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Minimum Length</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Require Lower Case</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Require Upper Case</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Require Numbers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Require Special Characters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reject Previous Passwords</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Minimum Password Age in Days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Maximum Password Age in Days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Password Expiration Warning in Days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Minimum Changed Characters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Maximum Consecutive Repeated Characters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Can contain ID or its Reverse Form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Minimum Length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Require Numbers: User Room</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**LDAP Settings**

- **Enable LDAP Global Directory**: Specify whether to allow endpoint systems to connect to the Polycom RealPresence Resource Manager system LDAP directory, which includes both local and enterprise users and groups.
  
  If this check box is unchecked then the provisioned endpoint will not search the Polycom RealPresence Resource Manager system LDAP directory. The endpoint system will display groups and users local to endpoint.

- **LDAP Default Group**: Specify a default contact group for the endpoints systems. Set to **All** or to a specific local or enterprise group.

**Account Management**

- **Lock Account After Failed Logins: Admin**
- **Account Lock Duration in Minutes: Admin**
- **Lock Account After Failed Logins: User**
- **Account Lock Duration in Minutes: User**

**Log Management**

- **Percent Filled Threshold**
- **Log File Name**
- **Folder Name**
- **Transfer Frequency**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Monitors</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Monitor 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Monitor 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Monitor 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Monitor 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>People Video Adjustment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Content Video Adjustment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<p>| Dual Monitor Emulation   |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Display Icons in a Call</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screen Saver Wait Time</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PIP Timer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Multipoint Setup

- Auto Answer Multipoint Video
- Multipoint Mode

### Cameras

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Camera</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Aspect Ratio</th>
<th>Video Quality (Motion/Sharpness setting)</th>
<th>Source (People/Content setting)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Camera 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camera 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camera 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camera 4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camera 5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Far Control of Near Camera

- Backlight Compensation
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary Camera</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camera Pan Direction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quality Preference</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic People/Content</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bandwidth</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power Frequency</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SIP Settings</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable SIP</td>
<td>Specify whether to enable SIP calls.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proxy Server</td>
<td>Specify the DNS name or IP address of the SIP Proxy Server. If you leave this field blank, no proxy server is used. By default, the SIP signaling is sent to port 5060 on the proxy server. To specify a different port, add it to the address as shown here: 10.11.12.13:5070</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transport Protocol</td>
<td>Indicates the protocol the endpoint system uses for SIP signaling. The SIP network infrastructure determines which protocol is required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <strong>Auto</strong> enables an automatic negotiation of protocols in the following order: TLS, TCP, UDP. This is the recommended setting for most environments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <strong>TLS</strong> provides secure communication of the SIP signaling. TLS is available only when the system is registered with a SIP server that supports TLS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <strong>TCP</strong> provides reliable transport via TCP for SIP signaling.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <strong>UDP</strong> provides best-effort transport via UDP for SIP signaling.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Time in Call (minutes)</td>
<td>Enter the maximum number of minutes allowed for calls on the endpoint systems. When this time has expired, endpoint system users see a message asking them if they want to hang up or stay in the call. If they do not answer within one minute, the call automatically disconnects. If they choose to stay in the call at this time, they will not be prompted again. Set this value to 0 to remove any limit.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Using Bundled Provisioning Profiles**

Polycom, Inc.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Recent Calls                  | Specify whether to display the Recent Calls button on the endpoint system’s home screen. The Recent Calls page lists the site number or name, the date and time, and whether the call was incoming or outgoing.  
**Note:**  
If the Call Detail Report option is not selected, the Recent Calls option is not available. |
| Screen Saver Wait Time        | Specify how long the endpoint systems should remain awake during periods of inactivity. The default is 3 minutes. Setting this option to Off prevents the system from going to sleep. |
| Address Displayed in Global Directory | Specify whether to display the endpoint systems' public or private address in the Global Address Book. |
| Send Content When PC Connects |                                                                                                                                               |
| Camera Icon Category          |                                                                                                                                               |
| **People On Content**         |                                                                                                                                               |
|                               | Foreground Source                                                                                                                                 |
|                               | Background Source                                                                                                                                 |
| **Audio Settings**            |                                                                                                                                               |
| Sound Effects Volume          | Sound Effects Volume                                                                                                                                 |
|                               | Incoming Video Call Tone                                                                                                                                 |
|                               | User Alert Tone                                                                                                                                 |
|                               | Mute Auto Answer Calls                                                                                                                                 |
|                               | Enable Live Music Mode                                                                                                                                 |
|                               | Mute Auto Answer Calls                                                                                                                                 |
|                               | Enable Live Music Mode                                                                                                                                 |
|                               | Enable Keyboard Noise Reduction                                                                                                                                 |
|                               | Enable Polycom Microphones                                                                                                                                 |
|                               | Enable Hawkeye Microphones                                                                                                                                 |
| **Audio Input**               |                                                                                                                                               |
### Field

- Content Input Level
- Line Input Level
- Line Input Type (Line, Mic)
- Line Input Canceler Enable
- Enable Phantom Power (for Mic Input mode)

### Audio Output

- Line Output Mode
- Line Output Level
- VCR/DVD Output Level
- VCR/DVD Output On
- Master Audio Volume
- Bass
- Treble

### Stereo Settings

- Enable Polycom StereoSurround
- Stereo Auto Rotation (per Mic)
- Mic Mode (Left, Left+Right, Right)

### Settings included in a Bundled Provisioning Profile for a RealPresence Group System and RealPresence Immersive Studio System

The following tables lists the settings contained in a bundled provisioning profile for a RealPresence Group system as well as RealPresence Immersive Studio systems.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Monitors</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monitor 1</td>
<td>Enable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Video Format</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Resolution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Monitor 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Video Format</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Resolution</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Monitors**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Monitor</th>
<th>Enable</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monitor 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitor 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Sleep**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sleep</th>
<th>Display</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Time before system goes to sleep</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Video Inputs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>General Camera Settings</th>
<th>Allow other participants in a call to control your camera</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Power Frequency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Make this camera your main camera</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input1: Main</th>
<th>Model</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Display As</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Input Format</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Optimized for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>White Balance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Brightness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Color Saturation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Input2: Main</td>
<td>Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Display As</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Input Format</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Optimized for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Backlight compensation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>White Balance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Brightness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Color Saturation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Audio Settings</td>
<td>Polycom Stereo Sound</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sound Effects volume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ringtone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>User Alert Tones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mute Auto Answer Calls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enable Music Mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enable Keyboard Noise Reduction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enable Polycom Microphones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio Input</td>
<td>Use 3.5 mm Input for Microphone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>HDMI Input (left/right)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3.5 mm (left/right)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio Output</td>
<td>Line Output Mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Levels</td>
<td>Master Audio Volume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Treble</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security &gt; Local Accounts</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Account Lockout</td>
<td>• Lock User Account After Failed Logins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Login Credentials</td>
<td>• Admin Room Password</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• User Remote Access Password</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Require User Login for System Access</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>All password requirements for the following passwords:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password Requirements</td>
<td>• Admin Room</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• User Room</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Meeting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Remote Access</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**General Setting > Pairing > Polycom Touch Control**

| Enable Polycom Touch Control |
Using Access Control Lists

Topics:
- Understanding Access Control Lists
- Using Access Control Lists in a Multi-Tenancy Environment
- Add a New Access Control List
- Edit an Access Control List
- Delete an Access Control List

The Polycom RealPresence® Resource Manager system enables you to create Access Control Lists for dynamically managed endpoints.

Understanding Access Control Lists

An access control list is a whitelist of users/groups whose endpoint(s) of a particular type are allowed to authenticate with the RealPresence Resource Manager system for provisioning and video network services.

Access Control Lists can be used only with endpoints that are dynamically managed.

This is particularly useful when controlling Polycom's soft endpoints such as RealPresence Desktop and RealPresence Mobile which use provisioning credentials to authenticate with your video network.

You can use Access Control Lists to control access to the RealPresence Resource Manager system for the following endpoint types:
- Polycom HDX systems
- Polycom RealPresence Group Series
- Polycom RealPresence Immersive Studio systems
- Polycom CMA Desktop
- RealPresence Desktop
- RealPresence Mobile (multiple device models)
- Polycom VVX systems
- Polycom CX
- RealPresence Debut
- RealPresence Centro

Planning Implementation of Access Control Lists

Once you create an Access Control List for an endpoint type, all users of that endpoint type must be included on an Access Control List in order to access the RealPresence Resource Manager system for provisioning and authentication.

In other words, if you create an Access Control List for an endpoint type and associate it with a user group, only those members of that user group can access the RealPresence Resource Manager system for provisioning and authentication.
If you do not create Access Control List for an endpoint type, then all users with that endpoint type are allowed to access the RealPresence Resource Manager for provisioning and authentication.

For example, if you create an Access Control List that includes RealPresence Mobile systems, all users of RealPresence Mobile endpoints must now be included on that Access Control List in order for their endpoints to be provisioned and authenticate with your video network.

However, if you have not created an Access Control List for HDX systems, all users with HDX systems managed by the RealPresence Resource Manager system can have their endpoints be dynamically managed.

Plan Implementation of Access Control List

It's important to plan your implementation of Access Control Lists.

Use the following steps:

Procedure
1. Determine an endpoint type of which you want to limit RealPresence Resource Manager system access.
2. Determine which user groups you want to include in the Access Control List.

Using Access Control Lists in a Multi-Tenancy Environment

You can associate an Access Control List with a specific area.

If you associate the Access Control List with a user group that is not in the same area as the assigned area of the Access Control List, you will be prompted to allow the RealPresence Resource Manager system to change the area of the group to match the area of the list.

If you re-assign an Access Control List to a different area, you are prompted to allow the RealPresence Resource Manager system to change the area of the group(s) to match the area of the list.

User groups associated with an Access Area List must reside in the same area as the list.

Add a New Access Control List

You can create an Access Control List that includes all endpoints of a particular device type(s) within a user group.

Users with the administrator, device administrator or area administrator role can create Access Control Lists.

For example, you can create an Access Control List that enables all RealPresence Mobile users that belong to a particular group to access the RealPresence Resource Manager for provisioning.

Procedure
1. Go to Endpoint > Dynamic Management > Access Control Lists.
   The Access Control Lists page appears.
2. Click Add.
3. In the Add Access Control List dialog box, complete the following fields in the General Info tab.

Polycom, Inc.
4. Click **Associate Endpoint Types**.

5. In the **Associated Endpoint Types** section, select and move the desired **Available Endpoint Types** endpoint types(s) to **Selected Endpoint Types** list.

6. When you include a RealPresence Mobile endpoint, you need to also choose the endpoint model to include in the Access Control List.

   In the **Select the RealPresence Mobile device model** section, select and move the desired endpoint models to the **Selected Endpoint Model** list.

   All endpoint models are included by default.

7. Click **Associated User Groups**.

8. Use the **Search Group** field to find the group(s) you want to associate with this Access Control List.

9. In the **Search Results** section, select and move the desired group(s) to **Selected Groups** list.

10. Click **OK**.

### Edit an Access Control List

You can edit an Access Control List at any time.

Users with the administrator, device administrator or area administrator role can create Access Control Lists.

You can add or delete IP addresses or the groups associated with the list. When you alter an access control list, the changes take place immediately.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Endpoint > Dynamic Management > Access Control Lists**.
   
   The **Access Control Lists** page appears.

2. Select an access control list.

3. Click **Edit**.

4. Modify any of the fields and click **OK**.

   **Note:** If you change the area of the access control list, you are asked to confirm that all groups associated with the list will also be changed to the new area.

### Access Control List Fields

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Access Control List Name</td>
<td>Enter a unique name for the Access Control List.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Enter a description for the Access Control List.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Field Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assign Area</td>
<td>If areas are enabled, and you have permission to manage more than one area, use the <strong>Assign Area</strong> drop-down list to assign the Access Control List to an area. The drop-down list does not appear if areas are not enabled or the user does not have permission to assign an area.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Delete an Access Control List**

You can delete an access control list.

Users with the administrator, device administrator or area administrator role can create Access Control Lists.

Deleting an access control list may deny user groups associated with the list access to RealPresence Resource Manager conferencing services. Remember to reassign any user groups to a new access control list if you need them to continue to be able to authenticate.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Endpoint > Dynamic Management > Access Control Lists**.
   - The **Access Control Lists** page appears.
2. Select an access control list.
3. Click **Delete**.
4. Click **OK** to confirm the deletion.
Scheduling Endpoint Software Updates

Topics:
- Software Update Considerations for Multi-Tenancy
- Creating Scheduled Software Updates for Endpoints
- Using Scheduled Software Updates

The Polycom RealPresence Resource Manager system's software update feature, which requires a software update profile for the endpoint type and model, allows an administrator to upgrade the software on one or more endpoints with a standard software package. This eliminates the need to upgrade each endpoint individually.

The RealPresence Resource Manager system supports two exclusive software update processes: dynamic and scheduled. Dynamic and scheduled software update are exclusive endpoint management scenarios. Endpoints enabled for dynamic software update should not be scheduled for software updates through the system.

Note: Polycom recommends that all endpoints in a region (that is, a gatekeeper zone) be managed by a single management system.

Software Update Considerations for Multi-Tenancy

Within a multi-tenancy environment, area administrators are not allowed to create software updates or set up maintenance windows for dynamic software updates.

However, they are allowed to schedule software updates that have already been uploaded by a user with the Administrator role.

Software update images are also not area-aware, which means that users with area administrator roles see all software updates on the system, not just those for their area. As a best practice, the system administrator should either name the software update appropriately or add information to the description field of the update so that area administrators know which updates to use for their area.

Creating Scheduled Software Updates for Endpoints

To implement scheduled software updates, you must first create respective software updates for your endpoints.

Only users with the Administrator role can create software updates.

List the Serial Numbers for the Endpoints to be Updated

You need to create a text file that contain the list of endpoints to be updated.

Only users with the Administrator role can create software updates.

Procedure
1. Go to **Endpoint > Scheduled Management > Upload Software Updates**.

2. Select the endpoint type for which to get serial numbers.
   - If getting serial numbers for a scheduled update, select the appropriate **Endpoint Type** and **Endpoint Model** combination for the endpoint to update. You can select more than one Endpoint.
   - If getting serial numbers for a dynamic software update, click the appropriate tab for the endpoint.

3. Click **Get Serial Numbers** from the **More** menu.
   The **Endpoint Serial Number List** appears listing the endpoints of the selected type and model that are eligible for software updates.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The name assigned to the endpoint system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP Address</td>
<td>The IP address assigned to the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Version</td>
<td>The current software version installed on the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site</td>
<td>The site to which the endpoint belongs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When areas are enabled on your system, this field shows a value of <strong>Restricted</strong> if you do not have permission to manage the area to which the site is assigned.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Area</td>
<td>(Available only when Areas are enabled.) The area with which the endpoint is associated. Users can only view area information for the areas to which they belong or have been assigned to manage.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. As needed, use the **Filter** to customize the endpoint list.

5. Select the specific endpoints to be updated.

6. Click **Get Serial Numbers** from the **More** menu.
   The serial number(s) appear in the text box on the page.

7. Create a `.txt` file containing the serial number(s).
   a. Copy and paste the serial numbers from the endpoint serial number list to a `.txt` file that you can submit to the **Polycom Product Activation** site.
      Put one serial number per line as shown in the following example.

      ```
      82071007E1DACD
      82070407E010CD
      820418048078B2
      82040903E00FB0
      ```

   b. Save the `.txt` file.

   c. Return to the endpoint serial number list and click **Close**.
      The **Software Updates** list reappears.

8. Repeat from **step 2** to **step 7** for the each endpoint or set of endpoints to be updated.
You may include all of the serial numbers for all of the different endpoint types in the same .txt file.

9. Click Close.

The Software Updates list reappears.

**Download the Required Software Package**

You need to download the required software packages to update the software.

**Procedure**

1. On your local system, create a directory to which to save the software package (if one does not already exist).
2. For Polycom endpoints:
   b. In the Downloads section, select the Product and Category for the required software package.
   c. Select the software package and save it to the directory created in step 1.
   d. Repeat steps a through c for each endpoint type to be updated.

   Note that the software package may contain the software for different models of the same endpoint type.
3. For third-party endpoints, follow the company's recommended procedure for downloading a software package.

   Save it to the directory created in step 1.

**Requesting Update Activation Keys**

Requesting update activation keys.

**Upload the Software Update for Scheduled Software Updates**

Polycom recommends you to do software updates using the split packages available on Polycom's support website to reduce system resource consuming.

Only users with the Administrator role can create software updates.

**Procedure**

1. Go to Endpoints > Scheduled Management > Upload Software Updates.
2. Select an endpoint type to update.
3. Click Add.
4. In the Upload Software Update dialog, verify the endpoint type and model.
5. If an activation key code is required to activate the software update, click Update Requires Key and in the Software Update Key File field browse to the .txt key file (received in Requesting Update Activation).

**Note:** The key is generated from the endpoint serial number and version number, and Polycom sends it as a text (.txt) file to the customer when new software is available. Customers can review their key history at http://support.polycom.com.
6. In the **Software Update File** field, browse to the software update file you downloaded.
7. Enter a meaningful description that will help other users to understand the purpose of the software update.
8. Click **OK**.
   
   A software update profile for the endpoint type and model type is created.

### Using Scheduled Software Updates

The scheduled software update feature is enabled at the RealPresence Resource Manager system. An administrator with **System Setup** permissions can schedule software updates for one endpoint or a group of endpoints to occur immediately or for a date and time in the future.

Some notes about scheduled software updates:

- Until the RealPresence Resource Manager system successfully updates an endpoint scheduled for updating, the update remains in the **Pending** or **In Progress** state and the RealPresence Resource Manager system attempts to update the endpoint until it succeeds or until the update is canceled.
- If an endpoint scheduled for update is **In a Call**, the RealPresence Resource Manager system waits until the call ends before updating the endpoint. The system checks the endpoint at 15 minute intervals.
- If an endpoint scheduled for update is **Offline**, the RealPresence Resource Manager system attempts to connect to the endpoint every hour until the endpoint is **Online**.
- A software update may reboot the endpoint.

### Supported Endpoints for Scheduled Software Updates

Scheduled software updates are available for these endpoint types.

- HDX Series—when operating in scheduled management mode (not using a provisioning server)
- LifeSize
- Cisco T150
- Cisco C-Series
- Cisco SX-Series
- Cisco EX-Series
- Cisco MX-Series
- Cisco MXP series

### Schedule the Software Update for Endpoints

Only users with the administrator role can schedule software updates. Users with the area administrator role cannot schedule software updates.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Endpoint > Scheduled Management > Schedule Software Updates**.
2. As needed, click **Filter** to filter the endpoint list.
3. Select the endpoints of interest and click **Software Update** from the **More** menu.
4. In the **Schedule Software Update** dialog, specify when the update should occur.
a. In the Schedule field, select Now or Later.
b. If you select Later, enter a Date and Time for the update.
c. Select either Use Server Date/Time or Use Endpoint Date/Time as these may differ.

5. Select from these options.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fields</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remove address book entries</td>
<td>Select this check box to have all local address book entries removed after</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the update.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remove system files</td>
<td>Select this check box to have all endpoint settings removed after the update.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You must then reconfigure the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow endpoint to be a DHCP</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>server</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Caution: You may apply a single software update request to multiple endpoint models. If the request includes one or more scheduling options that are not valid for a selected endpoint model, the system applies only the options that are valid.

6. Click Schedule.

For each endpoint selected, the status changes to Pending and the date and time for the software update appears in the Scheduled column.

Scheduled Software Update View

Use Scheduled Software Update, available from the Endpoint menu, to:
- View the list of endpoints that are eligible for a scheduled software update
- Schedule one or more endpoints for a software update
- Cancel a scheduled software update.

Endpoint List in the Scheduled Software Update View

By default the Endpoint list in Scheduled Software Update displays all endpoints eligible for scheduled software update.

The Endpoint list in Scheduled Software Update has the following information.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Filter</td>
<td>Filter choices for this view include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Endpoint Type</strong>—Filters the list by endpoint type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Endpoint Name</strong>—Searches the list by the endpoint's system name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>IP Address</strong>—Searches the list by endpoint's IP address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>ISDN Video Number</strong>—Searches the list by endpoint's ISDN video number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Alias</strong>—Searches the list by endpoint's alias.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Site</strong>—Searches the list by site location.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Area</strong>—Filters the endpoint list by area. This filter is only available when areas are enabled and when the user manages more than one area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Status</td>
<td>The status of the endpoint's last scheduled software update. Possible values include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Success</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Failed</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Clear</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The system name of the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Model</td>
<td>The type of endpoint. Scheduled software update is only available for these endpoint types:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• HDX Series—when operating in scheduled management mode (not using a provisioning server)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• QDX Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• LifeSize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco T150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco C-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco SX-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco EX-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco MX-Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco MXP series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP Address</td>
<td>The IP address assigned to the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current Version</td>
<td>The version of software installed during the last successful software update procedure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scheduled</td>
<td>When the endpoint is scheduled for software update, this field shows the date and time for the scheduled software update process.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
 Scheduled Software Update Actions

Besides providing access to the endpoint views, you can perform the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Use this action to...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Software Update</td>
<td>Schedule software update for the selected endpoints.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cancel Update</td>
<td>Cancel a scheduled or in progress software update operation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clear Status</td>
<td>Change the status column for an endpoint to the <strong>Clear</strong> state.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

 View Scheduled Software Update Information

You can view software update information for endpoints that are scheduled eligible for scheduled software updates.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Endpoint > Scheduled Management > Schedule Software Update**.
2. As needed, click **Filter** to filter the endpoint list.
   - Filter choices include **Endpoint Type**, **Endpoint Name**, **IP Address**, **ISDN Video Number**, **Dial String**, and **Site**.
3. Select the endpoint of interest.
4. Click **View Details** to open the **Endpoint Summary** pane, expand the **Software Update Details** tab.

 View List of Software Update Packages

You can view a list of endpoints eligible for software updates.

**Procedure**

» Go to **Endpoint > Scheduled Management > Upload Software Updates**.

The **Upload Software Updates** page appears listing all of the endpoint types and models for which the RealPresence Resource Manager system can perform a scheduled software update. It includes this information. If a software update package has been uploaded to the system, the **Description** and **Uploaded** fields are populated for the endpoint.

 Cancel Software Updates

You can cancel scheduled software updates for an endpoint.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Endpoint > Scheduled Management > Schedule Software Updates**.
2. As needed, click **Filter** to customize the endpoint list.
3. Select the endpoint or endpoints of interest and click **Cancel Update** from the **More** menu.
   - A confirmation dialog appears. The dialog may indicate that one or more of the selected endpoints had a software update in progress.
4. Click **OK** to cancel in progress and future software updates for the selected endpoints and clear their status.

You can cancel software update operations that are in progress, but you may wish to check the endpoint afterward to verify it was left in a operational state.
Dynamic Provisioning of Endpoints for SIP Server Integration

Topics:

- **SIP Server Authentication Requirements**
- **Provisioning Endpoints with SIP Server Settings**
- **Using Machine Accounts**

The RealPresence Resource Manager system enables you to dynamically provision some Polycom endpoints with the SIP server integration information with the SIP credentials and SIP settings the endpoints need.

SIP settings can only be provisioned when you use dynamic management. You can provision SIP by using both a Network provisioning profile and an Admin Config provisioning profile. You cannot use scheduled or bundled provisioning to provision SIP settings.

You can configure the RealPresence Resource Manager system to dynamically provision SIP settings for the following SIP servers:

- Standard (a SIP server that meets SIP standards)
- Microsoft Skype For Business
- BroadSoft BroadWorks
- Polycom RealPresence DMA system
- Siemens OpenScape
- Avaya Aura Session Manager
- Cisco Unified Communications Manager

You need to consider the following items when using SIP provisioning:

- SIP settings are configured using network provisioning profiles.
- If the SIP server uses a different authentication directory than your RealPresence Resource Manager system and requires unique authentication for each endpoint, you need to ensure that users have existing SIP URIs before provisioning SIP settings.
- Provisioning Microsoft SIP.

**SIP Server Authentication Requirements**

You must understand your SIP server's authentication requirements when you provision SIP settings for endpoints managed by the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

SIP server authentication requirements differ according to your environment.

- If your SIP server does not require credentials, you do not need to indicate any credentials to use when provisioning.
- If your SIP server requires a common username and password for all endpoints registering to the SIP server, you need to explicitly provision that username and password to applicable endpoints.
• If your SIP server uses the same authentication database (i.e., Microsoft Active Directory) as the RealPresence Resource Manager system, you need to use the RealPresence Resource Manager system provisioning credentials.

• If your SIP server does NOT use the same authentication database as the RealPresence Resource Manager system and requires unique usernames and passwords for each endpoint, ensure that each user has an existing SIP URI before you can use Network provisioning profiles to provision SIP settings.

Provisioning Endpoints with SIP Server Settings

The RealPresence Resource Manager system supports integration with various SIP servers by provisioning endpoints with the SIP settings they need.

After you provision endpoints with SIP settings, all endpoints receive directory information from one of those servers. You no longer use the enterprise directory or other directory functions in the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

The RealPresence Resource Manager system supports SIP to establish conference connections. If you want to use SIP, you must enable it and configure SIP settings. You must also ensure that users have SIP URIs.

Create Authentication Information for SIP Endpoints

To have the RealPresence Resource Manager system dynamically provision a Polycom endpoint for SIP integration, the endpoint must use the same credentials (username and password) to access both the SIP server and the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

Only then can the RealPresence Resource Manager system provision SIP settings.

If the SIP server uses a third-party database for authentication that the RealPresence Resource Manager system is not aware of, you need to import both the user information and SIP URI information from the SIP server.

Procedure

1. Create a RealPresence Resource Manager system local user account for the endpoint that matches the username and password.
2. Import SIP URI data for those users.

Import SIP URI Data

After you enable and configure SIP, you must import your endpoint SIP URI information from your SIP server.

The SIP URI is used as the endpoint's address.

Note: If you are using Microsoft as your SIP server, you do not need to import SIP URI data. The RealPresence Resource Manager system can retrieve the SIP URI from the enterprise directory.

Procedure

1. Create a CSV file in the format described here.
The import requires a CSV file in the following format:

```
domain,username,deviceType,SIPURI,devicename
```

where:

- **domain** — Specifies the domain the user uses to log in to the RealPresence Resource Manager system.
- **username** — Specifies the RealPresence Resource Manager system user name.
- **deviceType** — Specifies the device type (valid values are HDX, VVX, CMADesktop, RPMobile, RPDesktop, GroupSeries or All_Types).
- **SIP URI** — Specifies the SIP URI for this user. For example, this import reserves the SIP URI `johndoe@example.com` for all device types for the John Doe user:
  
  `local,johndoe,All_Types,johndoe@example.com`

2. From the RealPresence Resource Manager system, go to **User > Users**.
   b. Navigate to the CSV file, select it, and click Open.

### Editing SIP URI Data

Whenever you add new users or rooms or need to change a SIP URI, you must provide SIP URI data.

For the methods available for editing the SIP URI:

You can edit SIP URI data in either of the following ways:

- Upload a CSV file that has changes or new data. Data in the CSV file is added to any existing data.
- Edit individual users or rooms. For each RealPresence Resource Manager system user or room, you can add or edit the SIP URI in the **Dial String Reservations** section of the **Edit User** or **Edit Room** dialog.

### Provision SIP Settings for SIP Server Integration

SIP settings are dynamically provisioned with a network provisioning profile.

This procedure describes how to change existing network provisioning settings so that they provision integration with a SIP server.

Be sure to enable SIP and configure the servers, protocol, and credentials needed for your SIP server.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Endpoint > Dynamic Management > Provisioning Profiles**.
2. Select the **Network Provisioning Profile** you want to edit and click `/`.  
3. In the **Edit Profile** dialog, click **SIP Settings** and select these options.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fields</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enable SIP</td>
<td>Specify whether to enable SIP calls.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatically Discover SIP Servers</td>
<td>The RealPresence Resource Manager system will issue a DNS query to locate the SIP server and provision that information to endpoints.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fields</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proxy Server</td>
<td>Specify the IP address or DNS name of the SIP proxy server for the network.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backup Proxy Server</td>
<td>Specify the IP address or DNS name of a backup proxy server for the network.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Registrar Server</td>
<td>Specify the IP address or DNS name of the SIP registrar server for the network.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- In an Microsoft Office Communications Server 2007 or Microsoft Skype For Business Server 2010 environment, specify the IP address or DNS name of the Office Communications Server or Skype For Business Server server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- If registering a remote HDX system with an Office Communications Server Edge Server or Skype For Business Server Edge Server, use the fully qualified domain name of the access edge server role.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backup Registrar Server</td>
<td>Specify the IP address or DNS name of a backup SIP registrar server for the network.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transport Protocol</td>
<td>Indicates the protocol the system uses for SIP signaling. The SIP network infrastructure determines which protocol is required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Auto enables an automatic negotiation of protocols in the following order: TLS, TCP, UDP. This is the recommended setting for most environments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- TCP provides reliable transport via TCP for SIP signaling.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- UDP provides best-effort transport via UDP for SIP signaling.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- TLS provides secure communication of the SIP signaling. TLS is available only when the system is registered with a SIP server that supports TLS. When you choose this setting, the system ignores TCP/UDP port 5060.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Server Type</td>
<td>Specify the SIP server type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Standard:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Polycom:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Avaya:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- BroadSoft:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Cisco:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Microsoft: If you are integrating with a Microsoft Server, you must also provision a group for the endpoint, see Provision Group for Microsoft Skype For Business or Microsoft Office Communications Server Integration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When selecting a Microsoft Server, RealPresence Resource Manager assumes that the endpoints use the directory and XMPP service from Microsoft. RealPresence Resource Manager doesn’t provision the directory and XMPP related settings to the endpoints.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Siemens:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verify Certificate</td>
<td>Enable this option when the endpoint system's certificate should be verified by the certificate authority.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fields</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use Endpoint Provisioning</td>
<td>Enable this option when the endpoint system should use the credentials the user entered at the endpoint to use for authenticate when registering with a SIP registrar server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Common SIP User Name</td>
<td>Specify the name to use for authentication when registering with a SIP registrar server, for example, <a href="mailto:msmith@company.com">msmith@company.com</a>. If the SIP proxy requires authentication, this field and the password cannot be blank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use Enterprise URI</td>
<td>Enable this option with the endpoint should use the SIP URI of the enterprise user (domain user).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Common SIP Password</td>
<td>Specify the password that authenticates the system to the registrar server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Click OK.
5. You need to ensure that you have created a provisioning rule that applies this network provisioning profile to the intended site and endpoints.

**Provision Group for Microsoft Skype For Business or Microsoft Office Communications Server Integration**

You must set up the Microsoft Skype For Business or Office Communications Server group that needs to be provisioned to endpoints in each Admin Config provisioning profile.

This controls the directory that endpoints can see.

**Note:** You cannot provision integration with a Microsoft Skype For Business or Office Communications Server via scheduled provisioning. If the endpoint being provisioned is not capable of integration with a Microsoft Skype For Business or Office Communications Server, the endpoint will ignore this setting. The group setting here applies to both Microsoft Skype For Business and Office Communication Server.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Endpoint > Dynamic Management > Provisioning Profiles**.
2. Select an **Admin Config** profile of interest and click **Edit**.
3. Click **Microsoft Skype For Business Settings** and enter a **Group Name**. The Group Name is the group set in the Microsoft Skype For Business Server or Office Communication Server.
4. Click **OK**.

**Microsoft Directory Considerations**

When Polycom endpoints are registered with a Microsoft Skype For Business Server or Office Communications Sever, the SIP server replaces the RealPresence Resource Manager system as the presence and directory service provider.

However, the system continues to act as manager for these endpoint systems.

If you want your directories to include endpoints such as CMA Desktop that are not registered to the Microsoft SIP server, you need to select Standard as your SIP server when provisioning settings.
You still need to use the RealPresence Resource Manager system provisioning credentials when provisioning the SIP settings to the endpoint.

### Using Machine Accounts

For dynamically managed endpoints associated with a room, a user assigned the Administrator role must associate each room in the RealPresence Resource Manager system with a machine account.

In addition, dynamically managed HDX systems and RealPresence Group Series require machine accounts.

The machine account enables the endpoint to connect and authenticate with the RealPresence Resource Manager system for directory and dynamic management purposes without using the endpoint user’s account. You should use a unique machine account for each room or endpoint you need to provision.

You can set up the room and machine account the following ways:

- You can set up a machine account and create a new room at the same time, then edit the room to complete the room information.
- You can create a new room, then create the machine account and associate the machine account with the existing room.
- If your system is integrated with Active Directory and you want to associate a machine account with an Active Directory account, you must first create that account in Active Directory.

### Add a Machine Account

When you add a machine account, you must associate it with a user or a room.

You can choose to use an existing user or room or create one when you add the machine account.

Once you have created this machine account on the RealPresence Resource Manager system, provide this information to the appropriate endpoint administrator. They should enter this User ID and Password as the User Name and Password on the Provisioning Service page.

Note that the machine account password expires after one year. After the expiration, the endpoint login will fail. After three failed login attempts, the system locks the machine account. You can reset the password and unlock the machine account by editing it and assigning a new password.

#### Procedure

2. Click Add .
3. In the Add Machine Account dialog, complete the fields.
4. Click OK.

#### Related Links

- [Machine Account Fields](#)

### Edit a Machine Account

You can edit a machine account.

Once you have created this machine account on the RealPresence Resource Manager system, provide this information to the appropriate endpoint administrator. They should enter this User ID and Password as the User Name and Password on the Provisioning Service page.
Note that the machine account password expires after one year. After the expiration, the endpoint login will fail. After three failed login attempts, the system locks the machine account. You can reset the password and unlock the machine account by editing it and assigning a new password.

**Procedure**

2. Select a machine account and click Edit.
3. In the Edit Machine Account dialog, edit the fields as needed.
4. Click OK.

**Machine Account Fields**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enable Machine Account</td>
<td>Select or clear this option to enable and disable (respectively) the machine account you create for the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unlock Machine Account</td>
<td>Select this option to unlock machine accounts that become locked when they exceed the Failed login threshold. This will only happen when the password expires.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User ID</td>
<td>Enter a unique name for the machine account.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>As a best practice, name the machine account in a way that associates it with the corresponding device. For example, if your company names endpoint systems for the system user or room (for example, bsmith_HDX or Evergreen_Room), then give the machine account an associated User ID (bsmith_HDX_machine or evergreen_room_machine).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password/Confirm Password</td>
<td>Enter a password for the machine account user ID. This password must meet the Local Password Requirements. This password doesn’t expire.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Enter a meaningful description for the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Associate with an existing user or room</td>
<td>Select this option to associate the endpoint system with a specific user or room. This may be a local or enterprise user or room.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Associate with a new room (created automatically)</td>
<td>Select this option to associate the endpoint system with a system-generated room. The name of the new room is the same as the machine account User Name and can be edited when you edit the room. This option can only create a local room account. If you want to associate a machine account with an Active Directory account, you must first add the account through Active Directory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assign Area</td>
<td>When areas are enabled, you can assign the newly-created room to an area. Only users who manage more than one area can assign areas.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Related Links**

[Add a Machine Account](#) on page 374
Using Zero-Touch Provisioning

Topics:

- Configure your DHCP Server
- Configure Zero Touch Provisioning Settings
- Manually Associate an Endpoint with a Room or User

After configuring Zero-Touch provisioning from the RealPresence Resource Manager system, an endpoint can be provisioned automatically.

Because dynamic provisioning rules are used to apply provisioning profiles, you must ensure that endpoints are associated with room or user accounts before provisioning can take place. You can do this automatically by configuring your settings or by manually associating an endpoint with a room or user account.

Only RealPresence Debut support Zero-Touch provisioning. The RealPresence Debut can connect to the network via DHCP and if it can find the RealPresence Resource Manager system, it will dynamically be provisioned according to any dynamic provisioning rules and profiles you have created.

Related Links
Configure Endpoints to use a Provisioning Service on page 288

Configure your DHCP Server

Configure your DHCP server to be aware of the RealPresence Resource Manager system's IP address, if you wish it to resolve queries for the RealPresence Resource Manager by the RealPresence Resource Manager's host name or IP address.

You can use the default available option of “066 Boot Server Host Name” or add a custom option.

If you choose to use a custom option, you need to update the provisioning page of the RealPresence Debut system. See the RealPresence Debut System Administrator's Guide for more information.

Procedure

1. Login to the DHCP server and navigate to the Server Options page.
2. Find the default Available Option 066 Boot Server Host Name and add the string value of the RealPresence Resource Manager system's IP address. The default format is https://<user>:<password>@ip_address.

Configure Zero Touch Provisioning Settings

In order to be provisioned by zero-touch provisioning, an endpoint must be associated with a room or user account.

You can configure your system to automatically create this account when the endpoint auto-discovers the RealPresence Resource Manager system via DNS.
The automatic association you configure cannot create accounts in an enterprise directory. If you want to associate provisioned endpoints with enterprise room or user accounts, you need to make the association manually.

**Procedure**
1. Go to **Endpoints > Dynamic Management > Zero Touch Provisioning Bindings**.
2. Click **Zero Touch Provisioning Settings**.
3. In the Settings dialog, mark the **autoGenerate** check box.
4. In the **Default Language** drop-down list, select a language to use.
5. Click **OK**.

**Manually Associate an Endpoint with a Room or User**

To take advantage of zero touch provisioning, you must ensure that each endpoint is associated with a room or user account.

You can also manually associate the endpoint with an existing account if you did not configure your system to automatically create this account when the endpoint auto-discovers the RealPresence Resource Manager system via DHCP.

Alternatively, you can set up the RealPresence Resource Manager system to automatically add a room account (and the associated machine account) when an endpoint discovers the RealPresence Resource Manager system via DHCP.

**Procedure**
1. Go to **Endpoints > Dynamic Management > Zero Touch Provisioning Bindings**.
2. Click **Add**.
3. Enter the serial number of the RealPresence Debut system you want to provision.
4. Select a room or user to associate with the endpoint.
   a. Click **Select**.
   b. Click **Filter**.
   c. In the **Search Users and Rooms** field, enter the name of the user of interest.
      Searches for a user are case-insensitive, prefix searches of the Username, First Name, and Last Name fields. You must be logged into the system as an enterprise user in order to search for enterprise users.
   d. Select the user to associated and click **OK**.
5. In the **Add** dialog, click **OK**.
6. If there is not a machine account already associated with the user you selected, you are prompted to create one.

**Enable Calendaring Service**

In order for the RealPresence Debut to use the calendaring feature, it must use an Active Directory credentials to communicate with the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

After the initial zero-touch provisioning, you must log in to the RealPresence Debut system's administrator interface to change the account used for provisioning to an Active Directory account.

See the RealPresence Debut System Administrator Guide for more details.
Dynamically Managing a RealPresence Access Director System

Topics:

- [Creating a Site for the RealPresence Access Director System](#)
- [Create a RealPresence Access Director Server Provisioning Profile](#)
- [Creating a Network Provisioning Profile for Endpoints](#)
- [Creating a Provisioning Rule and Associate it with All Related Profiles](#)
- [Available Settings for RealPresence Access Director Server Provisioning Profile](#)

The RealPresence Resource Manager system enables you to dynamically manage a RealPresence Access Director system.

You can use a RealPresence Access Director server provisioning profile to dynamically manage the RealPresence Access Director system and configure it with the right network information to allow for firewall traversal in your video infrastructure environment.

Creating a Site for the RealPresence Access Director System

You should create a site that includes the subnet on which the RealPresence Access Director resides. You'll need to add the RealPresence Access Director system's internal IP to the subnet of the site.

**Note:** You cannot use the same site for more than one RealPresence Access Director system. You must create a unique site for each RealPresence Access Director system that you use.

Create a RealPresence Access Director Server Provisioning Profile

You can dynamically provision a RealPresence Access Director system with the RealPresence Access Director server provisioning profile.

A RealPresence Access Director server provisioning profile includes all applicable settings for a RealPresence Access Director system.

The RealPresence Access Director system should be configured with the IP addresses of the Polycom RealPresence DMA system as the gatekeeper and the SIP server within your environment.

With RealPresence Access Director server provisioning profiles, you can ensure that an RealPresence Access Director system has the optimal and correct firewall traversal settings to support endpoints that will depend on it for firewall traversal.
As soon as an RealPresence Access Director system is configured to use the RealPresence Resource Manager for its provisioning server, it starts polling for provisioning profile updates. To ensure out-of-box usability, the RealPresence RealPresence Resource Manager system comes with a default RealPresence Access Director Server provisioning profile.

The default RealPresence Access Director server provisioning profile cannot be associated with any provisioning rules. You must add a new RealPresence Access Director server provisioning profile in order to customize the settings of your RealPresence Access Director system.

Procedure

1. Go to Endpoint > Dynamic Management > RPAD Server Provisioning Profiles.
2. Click Add +.
3. In the General Info section of the Add New Profile section,
   - Enter a name for the new RealPresence Access Director server provisioning profile.
   - Select Server Provisioning Profile from the drop-down list.
4. As needed, edit the server provisioning details and click Apply.
5. Click OK.

Related Links
Available Settings for RealPresence Access Director Server Provisioning Profile on page 380

Creating a Network Provisioning Profile for Endpoints

You need to create a network provisioning profile to apply to all dynamically managed endpoints within the same site as a RealPresence Access Director system.

These endpoints need to be provisioned to use the RealPresence Access Director system external IP address for all of their network settings.

Ensure that all network settings (gatekeeper, presence server, SIP server, and directory) are set to the external IP address of the RealPresence Access Director system.

For example, instead of the IP address of the RealPresence DMA system's gatekeeper, provision endpoints to use the external IP address of the RealPresence Access Director system as the gatekeeper IP.

Creating an Admin Config Provisioning Profile

If you want to provision the endpoints that use the RealPresence Access Director system with specific admin configuration settings, you can create an Admin Config profile to use.

Creating a Provisioning Rule and Associate it with All Related Profiles

You need to create a provisioning rule that includes a condition that defines the rule to be applied to the site that includes the RealPresence Access Director system.

For example, (Site.Site = RealPresence Access Director Site)

At a minimum, the provisioning rule must contain this site condition.
Associate both the **RealPresence Access Director Server Provisioning** profile and the **Network Provisioning** profile (for endpoints) with the rule. You can also include an **Admin Config** profile if needed. This ensures that all endpoints within the subnet of the site created for the RealPresence Access Director are provisioned with the correct settings. It also provisions the RealPresence Access Director system.

**Creating a User Account for the RealPresence Access Director System**

You need to create a user account for RealPresence Access Director system in order to authenticate with the RealPresence Resource Manager system’s provisioning service.

Use this account to register the RealPresence Access Director system with the RealPresence Resource Manager system's provisioning service.

See the *Polycom RealPresence Access Director System Administrator's Guide* for more information about provisioning the RealPresence Access Director system.

**Available Settings for RealPresence Access Director Server Provisioning Profile**

This table lists the RealPresence Access Director settings that can be provisioned.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>RPAD Settings</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time Server</td>
<td>Specify whether to connect to a time server for automatic system time settings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Currently, the RealPresence Access Director system can be provisioned only with a Manual setting. If you use the Auto setting, the RealPresence Access Director system will behave as if the Time Server is set to Off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Select Manual to require that the RealPresence Access Director system synchronize with an external time server that may not be identified by a network domain controller. In this case, you must also enter the IP address of the time server in the Time Server Address field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If Time Server is set to Off, or if the Time Server is set to Manual but the endpoint system cannot connect to the time server, the date and time must be manually reset at the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary Time Server Address</td>
<td>Specify the address of the primary time server when Time Server is set to Manual.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary Time Server Address</td>
<td>Specify the address of the secondary time server when Time Server is set to Manual.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provisioning Polling Interval</td>
<td>Specify the frequency at which the RealPresence Access Director system polls the RealPresence Resource Manager system for new provisioning information. By default, this interval is 60 minutes. For performance reasons, the minimum positive value for this interval is 5 minutes. There is no maximum value enforced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heartbeat Posting Interval</td>
<td>Specify the frequency at which the RealPresence Access Director system poll the RealPresence Resource Manager system for a heartbeat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Server Status Posting Interval</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>RPAD Settings 2</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable IP H.323</td>
<td>Configure the system to enable or disable H.323 signal forwarding.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gatekeeper IP Address</td>
<td>When <strong>Use Gatekeeper</strong> is set to <strong>Specify</strong>, enter the gatekeeper IP address in this field. The IP address of the internal gatekeeper that the system forwards to when endpoints behind the system send gatekeeper registration or H.323 call requests.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable SIP</td>
<td>Specify whether to enable SIP calls and enable the provisioning of SIP settings. Configures the system to enable or disable SIP signal forwarding.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proxy Server</td>
<td>Specify the IP address or DNS name of the internal SIP proxy server that the system forwards to when endpoints behind the system send SIP call requests. Enter the RealPresence DMA signaling IP address in this field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Registrar Server</td>
<td>Specify the IP address or DNS name of the internal SIP registrar server that the system forwards to when endpoints behind the system send SIP registration requests. Enter the RealPresence DMA signaling IP address in this field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use Default Directory Server</td>
<td>Not provisionable in RealPresence Resource Manager system v8.2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Directory Server</td>
<td>Not provisionable in RealPresence Resource Manager system v8.2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presence Server</td>
<td>Not provisionable in RealPresence Resource Manager system v8.2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verify Certificate</td>
<td>Enable this option when the RealPresence Access Director system's certificate should be verified by the certificate authority.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Related Links**

- [Create a RealPresence Access Director Server Provisioning Profile](#) on page 378
RealPresence Video App SDK Monitoring and License Control

The RealPresence Resource Manager system can manage RealPresence Video App SDK endpoint licenses and monitor the online/offline and SIP status. You can customize your endpoint using the RealPresence Video App SDK.

To use the RealPresence Video App SDK, you must buy licenses. The RealPresence Video App SDK endpoint has its own license, and it doesn’t consume video or audio licenses. You can also view and reclaim the RealPresence Video App SDK license.

Related Links
- View Current Licensing on page 74
- Reclaim Software Client Licenses on page 75
Part VIII

UC Endpoint Management

Topics:

• Provisioning Polycom UC Endpoints
• Managing UC Endpoints

You can use the RealPresence Resource Manager system as a central provisioning server for supported UC endpoints.
Provisioning Polycom UC Endpoints

Topics:

- Task Overview of Setting Up UC Endpoint Provisioning
- Defining UC Endpoint Naming Schema
- Working with UC Configuration Profiles
- Setting Up UC Endpoint Software Updates
- UC Configuration Profile Deployment
- Configure UC Endpoints for Provisioning
- Provisioning, Monitoring, and Upgrading Polycom G7500 Systems

You can use the RealPresence Resource Manager system to provision supported Polycom UC endpoints including phones and other UC endpoints such as Polycom Studio.

You use UC provisioning profiles to apply a single set of parameters and settings to UC endpoints within your deployment. You can apply provisioning profiles based on conditions you set by group or by individual phones. Using UC provisioning profiles can reduce the time it takes to deploy new UC endpoints and configuration changes to existing UC endpoints.

You can also automatically send software updates based on conditions you set.

When you provision a UC endpoint, the endpoint polls the RealPresence Resource Manager system for configuration profile settings and software updates at intervals that you define. You can update configuration settings based on conditions you define. Provisioning communications take place via HTTP or HTTPS.

Note: Polycom recommends you to use the HTTPS protocol, especially when managing over 400 UC endpoints to enhance the performance.

Task Overview of Setting Up UC Endpoint Provisioning

Setting up endpoint provisioning is a multistep process that includes the following tasks.

Procedure

1. Create endpoint groups.
   See Working with Endpoint Groups.
2. Optional: (For Polycom Studio Only) Define the endpoint naming schema.
   See Defining UC Endpoint Naming Schema on page 385
3. Create custom configuration profiles.
   See Working with UC Configuration Profiles.
4. Set up software updates.
   See Setting Up UC Endpoint Software Updates.
5. Define configuration profile deployment rules.
   See UC Configuration Profile Deployment.
6. Configure endpoints for provisioning.
   See Configure UC Endpoints for Provisioning.
7. Optional: Add endpoints to the RealPresence Resource Manager system.
   See Adding Endpoints on page 215.

Defining UC Endpoint Naming Schema

You (with the administrator role) can define endpoint naming schema used for Polycom UC endpoints with owners.

After you define your naming schema, the RealPresence Resource Manager system generates names for the provisioned endpoints with owners according to the naming schema that you define. If an endpoint doesn't have owners, the system also generates a name for this endpoint. The name format is `endpoint_type_serial_number`

You can also set the E.164 alias and SIP URIs auto-generating rules and apply the rules to G7500 via configuration profiles. You can't apply these rules to Polycom Studio.

---

**Note:** This feature doesn't apply to phones.

**Related Links**

[Define an Endpoint Naming Scheme and H.323 Alias](#) on page 247

---

Working with UC Configuration Profiles

When you manage UC endpoints, you can configure them by using configuration profiles.

As soon as a UC endpoint is configured to use the RealPresence Resource Manager system for its provisioning server, it starts polling for configuration profile updates. The default polling interval is 3:00 am to 5:00 am every day.

---

**Note:** After the RealPresence Resource Manager provisions a phone, the phone's REST API is enabled and its administrator password changes to "789 ". You can use the [AdminPassword-Change-Template](#) configuration profile to create and define a custom device admin password. You cannot define "456 " as a device password.

To ensure out-of-box usability, the Real Presence Resource Manager system comes with many read-only Polycom standard (pre-defined) configuration profiles. These profiles provide Polycom's recommended configuration for the associated feature that they enable. You can directly assign these profiles devices and use them as necessary. Polycom may remove or update Polycom Standard profiles as the configuration recommendation to customers change, or as features are no longer applicable.

See the [Polycom UC Software Administration Guide](#) for complete documentation on the features of your Polycom phones.
Note: Polycom CX5100 does not support sync messages from the RealPresence Resource Manager system. For example, after making changes to a configuration profile applied to CX5100 endpoints, and click **Save and Apply** to apply the changes immediately, CX5100 cannot respond and reboot to accept the changes. The changes take effect at the next polling interval. You also can manually reboot CX5100 to apply the changes.

Related Links

*Add a UC Endpoint Manually* on page 404

Create a UC Configuration Profile

You can create new profiles to customize the settings of UC endpoints you provision.

You can either create a new one or copy a predefined profile and make necessary changes.

Users with the Provision Profiles permission can edit profiles.

Procedure

1. Go to **Endpoint > UC Management > Configuration Profiles**.
2. Click **Add**.
3. In the **General Information** tab of the **Add New Configuration Profile** dialog, enter a name and description for the new provisioning profile.
   - File name cannot contain / \ : * ? " < > |.
4. Click the **Configuration Attributes** tab.
5. (Optional) In the **Software** section, select the endpoint type and a software image.
   - The selected version is used to update the endpoints under certain condition. See Set a Software Update Policy for details.
   - When a software image is selected, the system will use the attributes defined in its XSD file instead of the default XSD file.
6. Add endpoint's provisioning attribute in one of the following ways.
   - **Standard Fields** Enter text (two or more characters) to search attributes in a XSD file.
     - If you selected a software image with XSD file in the previous step, the system will search attributes in the XSD file packed in the software image.
     - If you have uploaded a customized XSD file from the **Endpoint > UC Management > UC Management Settings** page. The system will search attributes in the uploaded XSD file.
     - The system also comes a default XSD file that contains phone configuration elements that you can use. By default, the system searches attributes in the default XSD file.
   - **Custom Fields**
     - You can enter an attribute that is not included in the XSD file and click **Apply** to add this attribute.
     - XSD validation will not apply to the customized attributes.
   - **Import from File**
     - Browse to select a CFG or XML file containing the attributes. The file can contain customized attributes that are not included in the specified XSD file.
   - **Paste Configuration XML**
Paste a piece of XML containing the attributes and click Apply. You can paste customized attributes that are not included in the specified XSD file.

7. Click Save to save the changes.

**Edit a UC Configuration Profile**

You can only edit user defined configuration profiles that you created.

**Procedure**

1. Go to Endpoint > UC Management > Configuration Profiles.
2. Use one of the following ways to open the Edit Configuration Profile dialog.
   - Select a user defined profile and click Edit.
   - Click a user defined profile hyper link. All editable customized profiles are shown as hyper links in blue.
3. As needed, edit the provisioning details.
4. Do one of the following for configuration profiles in use:
   - Click Save and Apply to apply the updates to the associated on-line endpoints now. This operation may reboot the endpoints. If the associated endpoints are off-line, the endpoints will receive the changes when the endpoints connect to the RealPresence Resource Manager system. If the profile has not been applied to any phones before, Save and Apply will not be displayed.
   - Click Save to wait for the updates taking effect automatically at the next polling interval. If this profile has not been applied to any endpoints before, click Save to save the changes. For associated endpoints behind firewall, you can only click Save to wait for the updates taking effect automatically at the next polling interval.

**Copy a UC Configuration Profile**

You can copy a Polycom standard profile or an user defined profile and create your own profiles based on cloned profiles.

**Procedure**

1. Go to Endpoint > UC Management > Configuration Profiles.
2. Select a profile and click Copy.
3. In the Copy Configuration Profile dialog, enter a name and description for the new provisioning profile.
4. Edit the attribute as needed.
5. Click Save.

**Customize the Configuration Profile List**

You can customize your configuration profile list by using filter.

**Procedure**

1. Go to Endpoint > UC Management > Configuration Profiles.
2. Click Filter to filter configuration profile list by specific conditions.
3. Press Enter to do the search.
4. Click Reset to clean all the conditions before another search.
5. Enter a key word in the **Search** field beside **Filter** to search the key word among the filter results.
6. Sort the profile list by clicking arrow beside the headings of each column.
   Special characters such as # and @ cannot be used to sort.

**View CSV Imported Configuration Profiles**

CSV-imported profiles are not displayed by default.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Endpoint > UC Management > Configuration Profiles**.
2. Click [1).
3. Select **User Imported** as **Profile Type**.

**View a Configuration Profile Detail**

You can view the details for both Polycom standard and user defined profiles.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Endpoint > UC Management > Configuration Profiles**.
2. Select a profile and click **View Details**.

The detail information displays on the right.

**Delete a UC Configuration Profile**

You can only delete user defined configuration profiles that you created.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Endpoint > UC Management > Provisioning Profiles**.
2. Select an user defined profile and click **Delete**.
3. Do one of the following to confirm the deletion:
   - Click **Delete and Apply** to delete the profile and remove its endpoints’ association right now. This operation may reboot the endpoints. If the associated endpoints are offline, the profile association will be removed when the endpoints connect to the RealPresence Resource Manager system. If the profile has not been applied to any endpoints before, **Delete and Apply** is not displayed.
   - Click **Delete** to remove the endpoints’ profile association. The deletion will apply to the related endpoints automatically at the next polling interval.
4. If this profile has not been applied to any endpoints before, click **Delete** to delete the profile.
   For associated endpoints behind firewall, you can only click **Delete** to wait for removing the endpoints profile association automatically at the next polling interval.

**Export Configuration Profiles**

This operation export one user defined profile or all user defined profiles to a ZIP file.
You cannot export Polycom standard and CSV imported profiles.

**Procedure**
1. Go to Endpoint > UC Management > Configuration Profiles.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Select a user defined profile and click Export, to export this profile.
   - Click More > Export User Defined Profile to export all user defined profiles.

Register Phones to a SIP Server

After registering to a SIP call server, you can make calls using the phones.

Procedure
1. Go to Endpoint > UC Management > Configuration Profiles.
2. Create a profile containing the call server fields.
   For example, create a profile named SIP_server containing the following fields:

   ```
   voIpProt.server.1.address="server_IPaddress"
   voIpProt.server.1.port="Port"
   voIpProt.server.1.transport="TCPpreferred"
   ```
3. Go to Endpoint > UC Management > Profiles Deployment.
4. Apply the profile to certain phones based on conditions.

Monitor Phones Behind Firewall

The RealPresence Resource Manager system comes with a pre-defined configuration profile, NotificationServerURL-External.

This profile contains the parameters that you need to specify to monitor the SIP register status and call status of phones behind firewall. You can view the status from the Endpoint > Monitor View page.

Procedure
1. Go to Endpoint > UC Management > Configuration Profiles.
2. Click Filter and select Profile Name.
3. Type NotificationServerURL-External and press enter.
5. Click Copy.
6. In the Configuration Attributes tab, replace ProxyServerAddress with your proxy server address in the following parameters.
   For example, the RealPresence Access Director address.
   - apps.statePolling.URL="https://ProxyServerAddress/PlcmRmWeb/device/PhoneStatus"
   - apps.telNotification.URL="https://ProxyServerAddress/PlcmRmWeb/device/PhoneStatus"
7. Click Save.
8. Go to Endpoint > UC Management > Profiles Deployment.
9. Apply this profile to the phones behind firewall per the conditions.
Working with Resource Files
Resource files can be any type of file used for configuring UC endpoints. For example, you can upload image files and configure the system to use the files as endpoint icons in your configuration profile.

Upload Resource File
Uploading resource files under 50 MB is recommended.

Procedure
1. Go to Endpoint > UC Management > Resource Files.
2. Click Add to open the Upload Resource Files dialog.
3. Browse to the file to be uploaded.
4. Enter a description.
5. Click OK to upload the file.

Download Resource File
You can download the resource files and check the content.

Procedure
1. Go to Endpoint > UC Management > Resource Files.
2. Select a resource file to download.
   You can download a single file each time.
3. Click Download to download the selected file.

Delete Resource Files
You can delete one or more resource files.

Procedure
1. Go to Endpoint > UC Management > Resource Files.
2. Select a resource file or click Switch Selection Types to select multiple resource files.
3. Click Delete.
4. Click OK to confirm the deletion.

Refresh Resource Files
Refresh the Resource Files page to see the resource files changes made by other users.

Procedure
1. Go to Endpoint > UC Management > Resource Files.
2. Click Refresh.

Filter the Resource File List
You can customize your resource file list by using filter.

Procedure
1. Go to Endpoint > UC Management > Resource Files.
2. Click Filter to filter resource files by File Name or Uploaded By condition.
3. Press Enter to do the search.
4. Click Reset to clean all the conditions before another search.
5. Enter a key word in the Search field beside Filter to search the key word among the filter results.

Uploading the Phone Files

RealPresence Resource Manager supports uploading global 000000000000-* file for all provisioned phones and uploading files for specific phones.

- When you upload a global 000000000000-* file as a resource file, for example, 000000000000-directory.xml, or 000000000000-license.cfg file, this file will be applied to all the phones that are provisioned by the RealPresence Resource Manager system. Phones will get the 000000000000-* file after connecting to the system.
- You can also select a specific phone and upload files for this phone.

After a phone connects to RealPresence Resource Manager, it first get the files uploaded for it. If there is no specific file for this phone, then the phone gets the global 000000000000-* file for its use.

Upload the Phone File

When uploading phone files, you must upload the files to the correct directory, based on the purpose of the files.

The system supports CFG, XML, CSV, PEM, CRT, and CER file types and the following directories:

- MISC FILES
- CONTACTS DIRECTORY
- OVERRIDES DIRECTORY
- LICENSE DIRECTORY
- USER PROFILES DIRECTORY
- CERTIFICATE DIRECTORY
- FLK DIRECTORY

See the Polycom UC Software Administrator Guide for details on the directories.

Procedure

1. Go to Endpoint > Monitor View.
2. Select a phone.
3. Click MORE > Upload Phone File.
4. Select a file directory.
5. Browse and select a supported file.
6. Click OK.
7. After you upload the files, click View Details to display the phone’s detail information.

The Others section contains these files.
Setting Up UC Endpoint Software Updates

You can update the software on your provisioned endpoints automatically with the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

Upload the Software Update for UC Endpoint Software Updates

Polycom recommends you to do software updates using the split packages available on Polycom’s support website to reduce system resource consuming.

Note: When a large number of endpoints applies for updates at the same time, the updates may not be completed at one time.

Procedure

1. Go to Endpoint > UC Management > Upload Software Updates.
2. Select the endpoint type from the Endpoint Type drop down list.
   - Polycom Phone: select Polycom Phone when uploading a phone upgrading package.
   - G Series: select G Series when uploading a G7500 upgrading package.
   - Polycom Studio: select Polycom Studio when uploading a Polycom Studio upgrading package.
   - EagleEye Cube: select EagleEye Cube when uploading an EagleEye Cube upgrading package.
3. Click Add to open the Upload Software Update dialog.
4. In the Software Update File section, do one of the following:
   - Click Choose File to browse to the software update file you downloaded.
   - (Only for Polycom Phone) Select the Polycom Hosted Server radio button and select a phone type that you want to update. The system will search the available software images on the specified Polycom server. All the available phone images will show in the Software Available drop-down list. Select a version that you want to upgrade to.

Note: Web proxy server is not supported for connecting Polycom Hosted Server. You need to configure the access from the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

5. Enter a meaningful description that will help other users to understand the purpose of the software update.
6. In the Attach to Configuration Profile section, select one of the following options:
   - Do not attach to a configuration profile: do not associate this software update with any configuration profile.
   - Create a new configuration profile base on software version: create a new configuration profile and associate this software update with the profile.
   - Attach to existing configuration profile: select an existing profile from the drop-down list and associate the software update with the profile. After the software update is associated with a profile, you can open the new or existing profile from the Endpoint > UC Management > Configuration Profiles page, the software update is selected in the Software field for this profile.
7. Click OK to upload the software image. 
   You will see the uploading progress in the File Upload dialog.

Customize Software Updates List
You can search software updates by using a key word.

Procedure
1. Go to Endpoint > UC Management > Upload Software Updates.
2. Enter a key word in the Search field to search by File Name, Description, and Uploaded By.

Enable System Alerts for New Software Updates on Polycom Hosted Server
After enabling the system alerts, when new phone software updates are available on the Polycom Hosted Server, the RealPresence Resource Manager system will detect the updates and raise alerts for the changes.

Note: Web proxy server is not supported for connecting Polycom Hosted Server. You need to configure the access from the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

Procedure
1. Go to the Endpoint > UC Management > Upload Software Updates page.
2. Click MORE > Enable System Alerts for Endpoint Software Updates.
3. Check the Enable system alerts for updates on the Polycom Hosted Server for the following endpoints: check box.
4. Select the endpoint types that you want to watch.
5. Click OK.

Set a Software Update Policy
After uploading software updates, you can create or use existing configuration profiles for the endpoint updates, set update versions in the configuration profiles, and apply the profiles to different endpoints under certain conditions.

Note: For CX5X00 updates, the update interval( device.local.updateinterval ) must be longer than 604800 seconds, otherwise the update time ( device.local.updateTime ) will not take effect. See the UCS phone documentation for details on parameter settings.

Procedure
1. Go to Endpoint > UC Management > Configuration Profile.
2. Select a specific profile that you want to use to do endpoint updates.
3. In Configuration Attributes, select a software type and a software version to use.
4. Go to Endpoint > UC Management > Profile Deployment.
5. Deploy this the configuration profile to a condition that you want.
6. Do one of the following:
   • Click Save and Apply to upgrade the associated on-line endpoints now.
• Click **Save** to save the changes. The next time the phones under this condition poll the RealPresence Resource Manager system, the endpoints will detect the new software version, so the endpoints will automatically download and install the identified software update package. Use this method to force users to use a specific software version.

### View Endpoint Version Information

After the endpoint upgrades successfully, you can view the version information.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Endpoint > Monitor View**.
2. Select the endpoint and click **View Details**.
3. View the **Device Summary** section.

### UC Configuration Profile Deployment

You (*Endpoint Admin* role) can use the predefined conditions to deploy the configuration profiles for provisioning endpoints.

The following list is ordered by priority of the conditions from the lowest to the highest.

For example, you have a `call.autoAnswer.SIP` parameter enabled in configuration profile A and disabled in configuration profile B. Profile A applies to specific **Sites**. Profile B applies to **Global**. The `call.autoAnswer.SIP` parameter is also enabled for all **Global** phones since **Sites** has higher priority.

- **Global**: All endpoints are part of **Global** regardless of model, site or endpoint group. Configuration profiles association in this container apply to all endpoints.
- **User Groups**: Configuration profiles association in this container apply to the endpoints belong to the users in this user group.
- **Users/Rooms**: Configuration profiles association in this container apply to the endpoints belong to a user or room.
- **Endpoint Groups**: Configuration profiles association in this container apply to the endpoints belonging to this **Endpoint Group**.
- **Endpoint Models**: Configuration profiles association in this container apply to the endpoints in a specific endpoint model. For example, apply a customized configuration profile to all Polycom VVX 500 phones.
- **Sites**: Configuration profiles association in this container apply to the endpoints in a specific site. Geographical locations is the typical use case for site.
- **Endpoints**: Configuration profiles association in this container apply to the endpoints that you specified. For example, you know specific phones need a specific configuration or call server. You can select these phones to receive the required configuration profiles.

### Add User Groups, Users, or Rooms

You must add existing user groups, users, and rooms before you can associate configuration profiles with the user groups or users.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Endpoint > UC Management > Profiles Deployment**.
2. Click **User Groups** or **Users/Rooms**.
3. Click Add.
4. Select an existing user group, user, or room.
5. Click OK.

After adding the user groups, users, or rooms, the added user groups, users, or rooms display under the User Groups or Users/Rooms tab. You can associate configuration profiles with the user groups, users, or rooms.

Edit the Configuration Profile Association of a User Group, User, or Room

After you add existing user groups, users, and rooms, you can only edit the user group’s, user’s, or room’s configuration profile association.

Procedure
1. Go to Endpoint > UC Management > Profiles Deployment.
2. Click the User Groups or Users/Rooms tab.
3. Select a user group, user, or room that you want to edit.
4. Click Edit.
5. Click the Configuration Profile Association tab.
6. Select the profiles that you want to add from the Configuration Profile Association drop down list.
7. Click Add to association the profile with the user group, user, or room.
8. Delete unnecessary profiles if needed.
9. Click OK.

Associate Configuration Profiles with Predefined Conditions

You can associate one or more configuration profiles with a predefined condition.

Procedure
1. Go to Endpoint > UC Management > Profiles Deployment.
2. Associate configuration profiles with one of the following predefined conditions:
   - Global: Click Edit to open the Edit Configuration Profile Association for Global dialog.
   - User Groups/Users/Rooms: Select a group or user, click Edit, and click the Configuration Profile Association tab.
   - Endpoint Groups/Endpoints: Select a group or endpoint, click Edit, and click the Configuration Profile Association tab.
   - Endpoint Models/Sites: Select an endpoint model or site and click Edit. You can search the endpoint model or site by entering a key word in the Search field to search by its name.
3. Select a configuration profile from the Configuration Profile Association dropdown list.
4. Click Apply.
5. Repeat step 3 and step 4 to add more configuration profiles.
6. Adjust the priority of the configuration profiles by clicking the Arrow buttons to move the configuration profile up and down or to top or to bottom.
7. Do one of the following:
• Click **Save and Apply** to apply the updates to the associated online phones now. This operation may reboot the phones. If the phones are offline, the phones receive the changes when the phones connect to the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

• Click **Save** to wait for the updates to take effect automatically at the next polling interval. For associated phones behind a firewall, you can only click **Save** to wait for updates taking effect automatically at the next polling interval.

### Set Priority for User Groups

You can set priority for the configuration profiles associated with each user group.

For each endpoint owned by a user in a user group, if the user group has higher priority, the configuration profile associated with this user group has higher priority. When a user belongs to different user groups, you can set the priority for each user group that the user belongs to. The configuration profiles, which are associated with the user group with the highest priority, take effect to the endpoints owned by the user.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Endpoint > UC Management > Profiles Deployment**.
2. Click **User Groups**.
3. Click **More > Set Priority**.
4. Select an existing user group or user.
5. Click the **Up**, **Down**, **Top**, and **Bottom** navigation buttons to change the priorities.
6. Click **Save**.

### Configure UC Endpoints for Provisioning

To use the RealPresence Resource Manager system as UC endpoints’ provisioning service, you usually need to configure some settings via the endpoint’s web interface.

When selecting HTTPS for phones, make sure you have configured one of the following options:

- Install a public certificate on the RealPresence Resource Manager system for HTTPS to work without loading the private CA.
- Disable the **Common Name Validation** on the phone as the self-signed certificate is trusted by the phones.

**Procedure**

1. (Phone Only) Do one of the following:
   - Select **HTTP** or **HTTPS** as the transport protocol for phones using the Intranet.
   - Select **HTTPS** as the transport protocol for phones behind a firewall.
2. Specify the RealPresence Resource Manager system address in the following formats:
   - **Phone**: `RPRM_Address/phoneservice/configfiles`
   - **UC Endpoint including phone**: `RPRM_Address/ucservice`

   For example, your RealPresence Resource Manager system address is 172.21.125.243. Use `172.21.125.243/ucservice` as the server address for the Polycom Studio USB video bar.
3. Specify the provisioning account and password configured on the **Endpoint > UC Management > UC Management Setting** page.
Note: You must configure RealPresence Trio Visual+ differently from other phones. See the Polycom RealPresence Trio User Guide for more information.

Note: You must configure Polycom EagleEye Cube USB Camera and Polycom Studio via for Provisioning via Polycom companion. This includes the configuration of the RealPresence Resource Manager server address and the provisioning account.

Provisioning, Monitoring, and Upgrading Polycom G7500 Systems

RealPresence Resource Manager provisions, monitors, and upgrades Polycom G7500 systems as part of UC management.

Like other UC endpoints, you can manage G7500 systems using the following options:

- Import G7500 systems via a CSV file. The serial number is the unique identifier for G7500 systems.
- Edit, delete, view, and search for G7500 systems from the Endpoint > Monitor page.
- Upgrade G7500 systems from the Endpoint > UC Management page.

Polycom IP table or ceiling microphones and Polycom microphone IP adapters are the peripheral devices for G7500 systems. RealPresence Resource Manager doesn’t monitor peripheral devices for G7500 systems, but you can manage these peripheral devices using the following options:

- Associate configuration profiles with the peripheral devices when editing G7500 systems.
- Provision and upgrade G7500 peripheral devices in module rooms from the Endpoint > UC Management page.
- G7500 systems provide a unified image including the upgrade package for its peripheral devices. When upgrading the G7500 system’s peripheral devices, you must upload the whole G7500 upgrade image.

Note the following when you provision and monitor G7500 systems:

- G7500 systems are added to the RealPresence Resource Manager system automatically. You can’t manually add G7500 systems by clicking the Add button on the Endpoint > Monitor View page.
- You can set E.164 alias and SIP URI auto-generating rules and apply the rules to G7500 systems via configuration profiles. You can also define the system naming schemes for G7500 systems.
- Polycom recommends that you to use the room ID (with a machine account) as the provisioning account for G7500 systems to avoid authorization failure due to enterprise directory user password expiration.
- When you edit a RealPresence DMA-synced G7500 system, such as associating configuration profiles or updating any editable information, RealPresence Resource Manager updates the G7500 system mode from Synced RealPresence DMA Endpoint to Manually Added UC Devices.
  
  If the G7500 system synced from RealPresence DMA first and then it sent a provisioning request to RealPresence Resource Manager, RealPresence Resource Manager updates the G7500 system mode to Auto-Added UC Device.
- RealPresence Resource Manager can only monitor the online and offline status for provisioned G7500 systems.
  
  For RealPresence DMA-synced G7500 systems, RealPresence Resource Manager can also monitor the H.323 registration status.
You can reserve the H.323 or SIP dial string for G7500 systems when you edit a user on the User > Users page. H.323 or SIP dial strings set in a configuration profile can overwrite the user reserved strings.

RealPresence Resource Manager only supports online, offline, and RealPresence DMA-synced G7500 system registration status alerts. RealPresence Resource Manager doesn't support CDR for G7500 systems.

LDAP and GAB services support G7500 system records.

You can schedule G7500 systems into a direct conference, RealPresence DMA-pool conference, or a point-to-point conference in the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

You can open the G7500 system web interface from the RealPresence Resource Manager system. RealPresence Resource Manager doesn’t support other endpoint control functions such as reboot and REST API control functions.

Related Links
Automatically Added UC Endpoints on page 403
Managing Endpoint Naming Schemes on page 243

Related Links
Bulk Edit Endpoints on page 408
Schedule a Conference on page 164
Add a Local Room on page 455
Manage an Endpoint on page 220

Associate a Configuration Profile with a Secondary Device
You can associate a configuration profile with a secondary device when editing G7500.

Procedure
1. Go to Endpoint > Monitor View.
2. Select the G7500 that you want to update.
3. Select the Configuration Profile Association for Secondary Device tab.
4. Click Add and Edit to open the Add and Edit Configuration Profile Association for Secondary Device dialog.
5. Select the secondary device type.
6. Select the configuration profile that you want to associate and click Add.
7. Click Delete to remove configuration profile association.
8. Click OK.

Update Secondary Device Configuration Profile Association
You can edit the configuration profile association with a secondary device when editing G7500.

Procedure
1. Go to Endpoint > Monitor View.
2. Select the G7500 that you want to update.
3. Select the Configuration Profile Association for Secondary Device tab.
4. Click Add and Edit to open the Add and Edit Configuration Profile Association for Secondary Device dialog.
5. Select the secondary device type.
6. Select new configuration profile that you want to associate and click Add.
7. Select existing configuration profile and click **Delete** to remove configuration profile association.
8. Select existing configuration profile and click **✓ ▼ ▲ ↑** to set its priority.
9. Click **OK**.

**View Configuration Profile Associated with a Secondary Device**

You can view the configuration profiles associated with a secondary device for a G7500 system when viewing the details of the endpoint.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Endpoint > Monitor View**.
2. Select the G7500 that you want to update.
3. Click **View Details**.
4. View the associated configuration profiles from the **Configuration Profiles Association for Secondary Device** panel.
Managing UC Endpoints

Topics:

- Managing UC Endpoints
- Adding UC Endpoints to RealPresence Resource Manager
- Managing RealPresence Group Series Via Polycom Trio
- Working with CUCM
- Configure UC Management Settings
- Control Phones via REST API
- Reboot Phones

You can monitor and manage your endpoints directly in the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

RealPresence Resource Manager supports standard SIP servers and the following Polycom UC endpoints:

**Note:** Polycom CX5100 does not support sync messages from the RealPresence Resource Manager system. For example, after making changes to a configuration profile applied to CX5100 endpoints, and click **Save and Apply** to apply the changes immediately, CX5100 cannot respond and reboot to accept the changes. The changes take effect at the next polling interval. You also can manually reboot CX5100 to apply the changes.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>UC Endpoint Type</th>
<th>UC Endpoint Model</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VVX</td>
<td>VVX 101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VVX 150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VVX 201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VVX 250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VVX 300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VVX 301</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VVX 310</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VVX 311</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VVX 350</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VVX 400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VVX 401</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VVX 410</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VVX 411</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VVX 450</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VVX 500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VVX 501</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VVX 600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VVX 601</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VVX 1500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SoundStation</td>
<td>SoundStation IP 5000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SoundStation IP 6000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SoundStation IP 7000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SoundStation Duo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SoundPoint</td>
<td>SoundPoint IP 321</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SoundPoint IP 331</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SoundPoint IP 335</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SoundPoint IP 450</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SoundPoint IP 550</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SoundPoint IP 560</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SoundPoint IP 650</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SoundPoint IP 670</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SoundStructure VoIP Interface</td>
<td>SoundStructure VoIP Interface</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Managing UC Endpoints

You can manage and monitor the provisioned UC endpoints from the **Endpoint > Monitor View** page.

From this page, you can:

- View UC endpoint information
- View UC endpoint detail information
- Add UC endpoints
- Edit a UC endpoint
- Upload UC Configuration Files
- Delete a UC endpoint
- Reboot UC endpoints
- Go to a UC endpoint’s Web GUI
- Set the Active Directory password

#### Related Links

- [Adding UC Endpoints to RealPresence Resource Manager](#) on page 403
- [Automatically Added UC Endpoints](#) on page 403
- [Editing Automatically Added UC Endpoints](#) on page 404
- [Importing UC Endpoints Using CSV Files](#) on page 405
- [Examples](#) on page 406
- [Auto Generated Configuration Profile](#) on page 407
- [Monitoring UC Endpoint Status](#) on page 409
- [Endpoint Information](#) on page 204
- [Endpoint Details](#) on page 207

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>UC Endpoint Type</th>
<th>UC Endpoint Model</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Polycom Trio</td>
<td>Polycom Trio 8500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Polycom Trio 8800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Polycom Trio Visual+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polycom RealPresence Group Series</td>
<td>(Hardware version 20 and later)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RealPresence Group 310</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RealPresence Group 500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CX</td>
<td>CX5100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CXPhone5500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polycom Studio</td>
<td>Polycom Studio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G Series</td>
<td>G7500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EagleEye Cube</td>
<td>EagleEye Cube</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Related Links
Add a UC Endpoint Manually on page 404
Create a CSV File Containing Required UC Endpoint Information on page 405
View Auto Generated Configuration Profile on page 407
Import the CSV File and View the Import Details on page 408
Bulk Edit Endpoints on page 408
Edit a UC Endpoint on page 409
Change Endpoint Group Association on page 410
Change UC Configuration Profile Association of on page 410
Delete a UC Endpoint on page 411
Set Active Directory Password on page 411
Reboot Phones on page 422
View the Endpoint List on page 203
View Endpoint Details on page 206
Manage an Endpoint on page 220

Adding UC Endpoints to RealPresence Resource Manager

You can add devices to the Polycom Device Management Service by one of the following options:

- Adding UC endpoints automatically
- Adding UC endpoints manually
- Adding UC endpoints by importing a CSV file
- Adding phones by syncing with a CUCM server

Related Links
Managing UC Endpoints on page 402

Automatically Added UC Endpoints

UC endpoints connected via Intranet can be added to the RealPresence Resource Manager system automatically via the HTTP/HTTPS protocol.

UC endpoints behind a firewall, Polycom recommends you to use HTTPS to connect to a RealPresence Resource Manager system.

When a UC endpoint is online and connects to the RealPresence Resource Manager system, the UC endpoint is provisioned by the system.

You can find automatically added UC endpoints by viewing the mode Auto-Added UC Device information on the Endpoint > Monitor View page.

**Note:** When a phone is automatically added to the RealPresence Resource Manager system and then the same phone (with the same MAC address) is synced from CUCM, the phone becomes a synced CUCM phone. If this phone is removed from CUCM, it is also removed from the RealPresence Resource Manager system.
Editing Automatically Added UC Endpoints

After an endpoint is discovered and added to the RealPresence Resource Manager system, a user with the device administrator role can edit its settings.

After manually editing an auto-added endpoint, the mode of this phone becomes **Manually Added UC Device**.

You also can export all the auto-added UC endpoint to a CSV file, edit phones information in a batch, and then import the CSV into the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

### Related Links
- Managing UC Endpoints on page 402
- Bulk Edit Endpoints on page 408
- Edit a UC Endpoint on page 409

Add a UC Endpoint Manually

You can add UC endpoints one by one on the **Endpoint > Monitor View** page.

### Procedure

1. Go to **Endpoint > Monitor View** and click **Add**.
2. In the **Add New Endpoint** dialog, select UC endpoint type that you want to add in the **Endpoint Type** drop-down list.
3. Specify the MAC address or serial number and the system name of the UC endpoint.
4. (Phone Only) In the **Line Address** tab, click **Add** to add line information by specifying **SIP URI**, **Display Name**, **Digest Account**, and **Digest Password** if needed in the **Lines Information** dialog.
5. Optional: On the **Endpoint Group Association** tab, select the endpoint group to associate with and click **Add**.
   - Click the arrow icon to adjust the priority of endpoint groups. The arrow icons appear when the cursor stays on an endpoint group.
6. Optional: On the **Configuration Profile Association** tab, select the configuration profile to associate with and click **Add**.
   - Click the arrow icon to adjust the priority of configuration profiles. The configuration profiles set on device level always has higher priority.
7. Click **OK**.

### Related Links
- Working with Endpoint Groups on page 229
- Working with UC Configuration Profiles on page 385
- Managing UC Endpoints on page 402
Importing UC Endpoints Using CSV Files

You can import UC endpoints in bulk into your RealPresence Resource Manager system via CSV files.

Related Links
Managing UC Endpoints on page 402

Create a CSV File Containing Required UC Endpoint Information

You must create a CSV (comma separated values) file that contains the information that you need to provision UC endpoints.

You can create this file with any plain text editor or use Microsoft Excel. Do not use Microsoft Excel to edit CSV files on a double-byte operating system.

**Note:** When you initially import phones using a CSV file, the phones display as Polycom Phones regardless of the type. Once the phones make their first connection to RealPresence Resource Manager, the phone type updates to the correct phone type and model.

The CSV file must contain a user-defined header to specify the format of the UC endpoint attributes you want to include. Commas (,) are field separators, which you can't embed in a field. Limit the number of UC endpoint records to less than 10,000 in the CSV file to ensure successful import.

Example header format (case and sequence insensitive):

```
mac_address, serial_number, endpoint_type, endpoint_name, owner_id, endpoint_group, reg.1.address, reg.1.displayname, reg.1.auth.userId, reg.1.auth.password, [any attribute name]
```

**Header Attributes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Header</th>
<th>Attributes and Usage Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mac_address</td>
<td>• For phones, <code>mac_address</code> is mandatory and <code>endpoint_type</code> is optional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>serial_number</td>
<td>• For UC endpoints other than phones such as Polycom Studio, the <code>serial_number</code> and <code>endpoint_type</code> fields are mandatory. The <code>mac_address</code> field can be an optional field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>endpoint_type</td>
<td>• Do not change the attribute names since they are reserved for the RealPresence Resource Manager.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>endpoint_name</td>
<td>• The <code>owner_id</code> (local or enterprise user) format is domain/userid or any owner display name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>owner_id</td>
<td>• Use a pipe (&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>endpoint_group</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Header</td>
<td>Attributes and Usage Notes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reg. [1-5].address</td>
<td>• (Phone Only) Line information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reg. [1-5].displayname</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reg. [1-5].auth.userId</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reg. [1-5].auth.password</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Other user defined attributes

• Refer to the UCS phone attribute names to define phone attributes.
• A profile (MAC_Address_csv_profile or serial_number_csv_profile) is automatically generated for each UC endpoint that has user-defined values.
• The profile is associated with the UC endpoint.
• Attributes with empty values are ignored in the profile.

Related Links
Managing UC Endpoints on page 402

Examples

Use the following format to add a phone with two line addresses:

mac_address, endpoint_name, owner_id, endpoint_group, reg.

1.address, reg.1.displayname, reg.1.auth.userId, reg.1.auth.password, reg.2.address, reg.2.displayname, reg.2.auth.userId, reg.2.auth.password, 0004F23EA4E1, SoundPoint-EA4E1, ASIAPAC/Jsmith, EP Group 1|EP Group 2, 1000, Jon Smith, 1000, 1000, 1001, Jon Smith1, 1001, 1001

Use the following format to add a phone with a line address:

mac_address, reg.1.address
0004F24FD08E, 1001
Use the following format to add a phone without a line index but an attribute setting in profile:

```plaintext
mac_address, device.hostname
0004F23EA4E1, SoundPointA4E1
0004F24FD08E, SoundPointD08E
```

Use the following format to add a UC endpoint, such as Polycom Studio:

```plaintext
mac_address, serial_number, endpoint_type, endpoint_name, owner_id, endpoint_group
00E0DB4C20CC, 8218404c20ccf9, Polycom Studio, Jsmith_Studio, ASIAPAC/Jsmith, EP Group 1|EP Group 2
```

**Related Links**

[Managing UC Endpoints](#) on page 402

**Auto Generated Configuration Profile**

If you define a header containing user defined UC endpoint attributes and give values for the attributes within a CSV file, the system will automatically create a configuration file for the UC endpoint containing those attributes for your convenience.

- The profile name is `MACaddress` or `serial_number` _csv_profile_.

- The profile is associated with the UC endpoint and has the highest priority by default.
- The profile cannot be associated with other conditions such as Global, User Groups, Users, Endpoint Groups, Site, or Endpoint Models.
- The profile type is CSV Imported.
- You can remove this profile from the system. The UC endpoint association will also be removed.

**Related Links**

[Managing UC Endpoints](#) on page 402

**View Auto Generated Configuration Profile**

The profile type is CSV Imported.

You can filter CSV imported profiles by profile type.

**Procedure**

1. Go to Endpoint > UC Management > Configuration Profiles.
2. Click Filter.
3. Select User Imported as Profile Type.

**Related Links**

[Managing UC Endpoints](#) on page 402
Import the CSV File and View the Import Details

You must have either the administrator or area administrator role to import UC endpoints.

Procedure

1. Go to Endpoint > Monitor View.
2. Select More > Import/Export UC Managed Endpoints.
3. Click the Choose File button on the Import Endpoints tab.
4. Browse to the CSV file and select this file.
5. Check the Update the Existing Endpoint Records check box to update the existing phone in the system.
   Choose one the options:
   - Overwrite Existing Attributes
   - Merge and update. Keep all the endpoint attributes and update the duplicated attributes.
6. Click the Import button.
   A Task Progress dialog will show the file uploading and importing progress.
7. View the import details on the Import Endpoints Result dialog.
8. Download the import log by clicking the Download Import Log button if needed.
9. Click Close to dismiss the Import Endpoints Result dialog.

Related Links
Managing UC Endpoints on page 402

Bulk Edit Endpoints

You can bulk edit endpoint's configuration s by exporting the endpoint's data including the updated attributes in the auto-generated profiles (if any) as a matrix to a CSV file.

Then you can re-import the CSV file to update endpoints' data.

The MAC Address or serial number is the unique identifier of an endpoint. A changed MAC Address or serial number is treated as a new endpoint instead of the updating of the old one.

If an endpoint's line information is not provisioned by the RealPresence Resource Manager system, the line information will not be exported to the CSV file.

Procedure

1. Go to Endpoint > Monitor View.
2. Select More > Import/Export UC Managed Endpoints.
3. Click the Export & Download button on the Export Endpoints tab.
   The CSV file is downloaded.
4. Open the CSV file and edit the endpoints' information if needed.
   For automatically added endpoints, after the line information is changed, the endpoints become manually added endpoints. The mode changes from Auto-added UC Device to Manually Added UC Device.
   Do not change the line information for CUCM synced phones. This information will be not persist and be overwritten by the Cisco Unified Communication Manager at the next sync interval.

Related Links
Editing Automatically Added UC Endpoints on page 404
Edit a UC Endpoint

You can edit manually added, automatically added, or imported endpoints.

Polycom does not recommend that you change the line information of CUCM synced phones from the RealPresence Resource Manager system since the changes will be overwritten at the next CUCM sync interval.

Procedure

1. Go to Endpoint > Monitor View.
2. Click Filter , select Mode, and select one of the following modes to filter endpoints that you want to edit:
   - Auto-Added UC Device
   - Manually Added UC Device
3. Select a endpoint and click Edit .
4. Edit the endpoint information as needed.
5. (Phone Only) Edit the line information as needed.
   All the line information is listed in the Line Address tab.
   
   Provisioning Line indicates how this line is created. If the line is created from phones, Provisioning Line is False. If the line is created by RealPresence Resource Manager admin, Provisioning Line is True.
   
   If you change the line information of an auto-added phone, the Provisioning Line value will change from False to True.
6. Do one of the following:
   - Click Save and Apply to apply the changes including the line information and configuration profiles changes to the online endpoint now. This operation may reboot the endpoint. This operation only applies this time changes to the endpoints. It does not apply previous changes to the endpoints. If the endpoint is offline or the endpoint is behind firewall, Apply is not displayed.
   - Click Save to wait for the updates to take effect at the next polling interval.

Related Links

Editing Automatically Added UC Endpoints on page 404
Managing UC Endpoints on page 402

Monitoring UC Endpoint Status

The RealPresence Resource Manager system can monitor UC endpoint status using heartbeat messages.

- For internal phones, which the RealPresence Resource Manager system can connect to, the system sends API calls to phones as heartbeat messages to check if phones are online or offline. The interval is a random time between 5 to 10 minutes if there is no message from phones during the last intervals.
- For external phones, which the RealPresence Resource Manager system can’t connect to via API calls, the offline detecting window is based on the configured provisioning polling interval plus 5
minutes. For example, if the polling interval is one hour, the RealPresence Resource Manager system treats phones as offline if there is no message from phones in the past 65 minutes.

- For UC endpoints other than phones, the endpoint sends heartbeat messages to RealPresence Resource Manager every 10 minutes by default. You can change the heartbeat interval via configuration profile.

Related Links
Managing UC Endpoints on page 402

Change Endpoint Group Association

You can associate an endpoint with an endpoint group, delete its association with an endpoint group, or prioritize multiple associated endpoint groups.

Procedure
1. Go to Endpoint > Monitor View.
2. Click the endpoint name that you want to edit from the Endpoint Name column.
3. In the Edit Endpoint dialog box, click the Endpoint Group Association tab.
   - To associate the endpoint to an endpoint group, select the name of the endpoint group from the drop-down list and click Add.
   - To delete the association, click Delete at the right end of each line of the endpoint group list.
   - To prioritize an association, click the Arrow buttons to deprioritize or prioritize it, or give it the lowest or highest priority.
4. Click Save and Apply or Save.

Related Links
Managing UC Endpoints on page 402

Change UC Configuration Profile Association of

You can associate an endpoint with a UC configuration profile, delete its association with a configuration profile, or prioritize multiple associated configuration profiles.

Procedure
1. Go to Endpoint > Monitor View.
2. Click the endpoint's name that you want to edit from the Endpoint Name column.
3. In the Edit Endpoint dialog box, click the Configuration Profile Association tab.
   - To associate the endpoint to a configuration profile, select the profile's name from the drop-down list and click Save and Apply.
   - To delete the association, click Delete at the right end of each line of the configuration profiles list.
   - To prioritize an association, click the Arrow buttons to deprioritize or prioritize it, or give it the lowest or highest priority.
4. Do one of the following:
• Click **Save and Apply** to apply the configuration profiles changes to the online endpoint now. This operation may reboot the endpoint. This operation only applies this time changes to the endpoints. It does not apply previous changes to the endpoints. If the endpoint is offline or the endpoint is behind firewall, **Save and Apply** is not displayed.

• Click **Save** to wait for the updates to take effect at the next polling interval.

**Related Links**

[Managing UC Endpoints](#) on page 402

---

**Delete a UC Endpoint**

You can only delete manually added or imported endpoints.

Phones synced from the Cisco Unified Communications Manager system cannot be deleted manually. In order to delete phones synced from Cisco Unified Communications Manager, you must unassociate the phone from that system.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Endpoint > Monitor View**.
2. Select a manually added endpoint.
3. Click **Delete**.
4. Click **Delete** to confirm the deletion.

**Related Links**

[Managing UC Endpoints](#) on page 402

---

**Set Active Directory Password**

You can set an Active Directory password to the phones that are provisioned by the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

You can only set an Active Directory password for Polycom phones that support REST API, such as RealPresence Trio and Polycom VVX phones.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Endpoint > Monitor View**.
2. Click **Switch Selection Types** to select one or more phones to set an unified Active Directory password.
3. Click **More > Change Phone Active Directory Password**.
4. Enter a new password.
5. Click **OK**.

After the operation is completed, click the **Download Detailed Report** button to view the detailed logs.

**Related Links**

[Managing UC Endpoints](#) on page 402
Managing RealPresence Group Series Via Polycom Trio

You can manage and update a RealPresence Group Series system via a Polycom Trio system when they pair.

The RealPresence Resource Manager system can provision the specific RealPresence Group Series parameters that Polycom Trio supports. You also can update a paired RealPresence Group Series system by creating a configuration profile to set the download URL and upload its software update file.

If your RealPresence Group Series solutions were under dynamic management and now are paired with Polycom Trio, you must do the following before provisioning paired RealPresence Group Series:

- Remove the provisioning server address from RealPresence Group Series.
- Remove the RealPresence Group Series solutions from the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

If you want to upgrade both RealPresence Group Series and Polycom Trio when they pair, both systems require a configuration profile. Therefore, you need one configuration profile that specifies Group Series as the endpoint type, and another one that specifies an endpoint type as Polycom Phone.

Note: When you upgrade RealPresence Group Series solutions behind a firewall register to RealPresence Resource Manager via DMA Edge, you must include the following attribute in the configuration profile applied to the paired Polycom Trio system:

```
mr.deviceMgmt.vc2.param.softwareUpdateProxyServer = DMA-Edge IP address or domain
```

Upload the Software Update for RealPresence Group Series Endpoints

You can update the RealPresence Group Series software.

Polycom recommends you to do software updates using the split packages available on Polycom Support to reduce consuming system resources.

Note: The RealPresence Resource Manager system doesn't generate a configuration profile automatically after you upload a RealPresence Group Series image.

Procedure

1. Go to Endpoint > UC Management > Upload Software Updates.
2. Select Group Series from the Endpoint Type drop down list.
3. Click Add.
4. If an activation key code is required to activate the software update:
   a. Select the Update Requires Key check box.
   b. In the Software Update Key File field, browse to the .txt key file you received in Request Upgrade Activation Keys.
5. In the **Software Update File** field, browse to the software update file you downloaded.

6. Enter a meaningful description that helps other users to understand the purpose of the software update.

7. In the **Attach to Configuration Profile** section, select one of the following options:
   - **Do not attach to a configuration profile**: do not associate this software update with any configuration profile.
   - **Create a new configuration profile base on software version**: create a new configuration profile and associate this software update with the profile.
   - **Attach to existing configuration profile**: select an existing profile from the drop-down list and associate the software update with the profile. After the software update is associated with a profile, you can open the new or existing profile from the **Endpoint > UC Management > Configuration Profiles** page, the software update is selected in the **Software** field for this profile.

8. Click **OK**.

   A software image for RealPresence Group Series endpoints is created. You can view the software image at **Endpoint > Dynamic Management > Upload Software Updates** and at **Endpoint > Phone Management > Upload Software Updates** when you choose **Group Series** as the endpoint type.

---

**Working with CUCM**

When you integrate a Cisco Unified Communications Manager system with your RealPresence Resource Manager system, the RealPresence Resource Manager system becomes aware of all of the supported Polycom phones registered to the Cisco Unified Communications Manager.

Supported phones are displayed in the **Endpoint > Monitor View** page, and the RealPresence Resource Manager system can use information about these phones to deliver provisioning information.

---

**Note:**

- Polycom highly recommends you to re-integrate CUCM after upgrading to 10.X.
- After upgrading to 10.X, you must manually update the phones' provisioning protocol to HTTP or HTTPS and specify the RealPresence Resource Manager system IP address.

---

Setting up a CUCM server to work with the RealPresence Resource Manager system includes the following tasks:

- Configuring Cisco Unified Communications Manager.
- Enabling auto discovery of RealPresence Resource Manager through DHCP
- Creating phone configuration profiles.
- Customizing digest user password.
- Integrating with a Cisco Unified Communications Manager.
Configuring Cisco Unified Communications Manager

The RealPresence Resource Manager system uses Cisco AXL SOAP API to enable integration with the Cisco Unified Communications Manager.

This web service is disabled by default. You'll need to enable it, and create a user with the appropriate privileges to use with the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

Start the Cisco AXL Web Service

In your Cisco Unified Communications Manager system, you’ll need to activate the Cisco AXL Web Service before you create a new user.

Procedure
1. From the Unified CM Administration window, go to Navigation > Unified CM Serviceability.
2. Choose Tools > Service Activation.
3. From the Server box, choose the server and click Go.
4. From the Database and Admin Services section, select Cisco AXL Web Service and save the changes.

Creating a User for the RealPresence Resource Manager Integration

In your Cisco Unified Communications Manager, you need to create an Access Control Group with the correct role and then add your newly-created user to that group.

Note: By default, the administrator has the correct privileges for integration. Although not recommended, you can use this user for an initial test or quick set up.

Create the Access Control Group

In the Cisco Unified Communications Manager system, Access Control Groups are used to organize users and their roles.

Procedure
1. In the Cisco Unified Communications Manager system, ensure that the Standard AXL API Access role exists.
   Choose User Management > User Settings > Role.
3. Click Add New.
4. In the Access Control Group Information dialog box, name your access control group.
   For example, Polycom RPRM Integration.
5. Click Save to save the name.

Assign AXL role to the Group

In the Cisco Unified Communications Manager system, you'll need to assign the Standard AXL API Access role to the new group.

Procedure
2. Click Find to list all the groups.
3. Select the group you created and click Assign Role to Group, and select Standard AXL API Access to assign it to the new group.

4. Click Save.

Create the User

In the Cisco Unified Communications Manager, you should create a new user to use for integration with the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

Procedure

2. In the Add New User dialog, enter a name for your new user.
   For example, rprmint.
3. Click Add to Access Control Group to add the access control group you created.
4. Click Save to save the user information.

After completing each of these sections, your Cisco Unified Communications Manager is ready to be integrated with the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

Enabling Auto Discovery of RealPresence Resource Manager through DHCP

The phones will use the DHCP option 66 to discover the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

See Polycom UC Software Administrators' Guide for detailed information.

Creating Phone Configuration Profiles

You should create your phone provisioning profiles before integrating your system with a Cisco Unified Communications Manager.

Phones registered with the Cisco Unified Communications Manager begin polling for provisioning updates via HTTP or HTTPS after you integrate your Cisco Unified Communications Manager with your RealPresence Resource Manager system. After initial provisioning, provisioning updates are sent according to the provisioning poll you configure.

Configuring the CUCM as a SIP server

If you want to use the CUCM server, you need to configure the SIP registration server to the CUCM in a profile.

Customizing Digest User Password

Optionally, you can customize the digest user password for the phones you provision.

When you integrate with a Cisco Unified Communications Manager system, each phone's password is reset to the factory default. By default, a system-generated password is used. You can change this password at any time.

Configure Your UC Management Settings
Integrating with a Cisco Unified Communications Manager

You can integrate only one CUCM server with the RealPresence Resource Manager system to synchronize the phones from the CUCM server.

Add a Cisco Unified Communications Manager

You can add a Cisco Unified Communications Manager system to your RealPresence Resource Manager system.

The RealPresence Resource Manager begins provisioning phones as soon as you add the Cisco Communications Manager system to your RealPresence Resource Manager system.

Procedure

1. Go to Network Device > Instances.
2. Click Add .
3. In the Add Instance dialog box, select Cisco Unified Communications Manager from the Device Type drop-down list.
   Complete settings.
4. Click OK.
   The system integrates with the Cisco Unified Communications Manager and begins provisioning phones.

Adding Cisco Unified Communications Manager Settings

The table explains the settings for CUCM.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device Type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add By</td>
<td>You can only add a Cisco Unified Communications Manager system by IP or FQDN address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device Name</td>
<td>The name of the Cisco Unified Communications Manager system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Management Address</td>
<td>The IP address of the Cisco Unified Communications Manager.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Admin User</td>
<td>Enter the user name used to connect with the Cisco Unified Communications Manager. This user must have the AXL API Access Role.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Admin Password</td>
<td>Enter the user name password.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service Integration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CUCM is Integrated with same AD as Resource Manager</td>
<td>Select the check box if the Cisco Unified Communications Manager is integrated with the same Active Directory as the RealPresence Resource Manager system.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
** LDAP Attribute for CUCM User ID **

If you marked the **CUCM is Integrated with the same AD as Resource Manager** check box, please enter the user ID that the Cisco Unified Communications Manager system used to integrate with the Active Directory.

** Synchronized Time with CUCM (in days) **

Configure how often you want the RealPresence Resource Manager to synchronize with the Cisco Unified Communications Manager to retrieve the list of registered Polycom phones.

If you are using Cisco Unified Communications Manager v10 or higher, Polycom recommends synchronizing every five to seven days.

---

** Synchronize with the Cisco Unified Communication Manager **

When you synchronize your system with the Cisco Unified Communications Manager, the RealPresence Resource Manager system retrieves information about any added phones since the last time you synchronized.

Synchronization happens automatically when you first integrate with a Cisco Unified Communications Manager.

If you are using Cisco Unified Communications Manager 10 or higher, all added Polycom phones are automatically synchronized to the RealPresence Resource Manager every 10 minutes.

You can choose to synchronize with the Cisco Unified Communications Manager at any time.

** Procedure **

1. Go to **Network Device > Instances**.
2. Select the Cisco Unified Communications Manager you want to synchronize.
3. Click **More > Sync Data**.
   - A progress dialog displays.
4. Click **Close** after the synchronization is done.

---

** Configure UC Management Settings **

You can configure the following UC management settings from the **Endpoint > UC Management > UC Management Settings** page:

- **Digest Password for CUCM Synced Phones**: After you integrate with a Cisco Unified Communications Manager, the digest password for the phones is reset to the factory default unless you change this password. You can also customize the digest user passwords for the phones.

- **Provisioning Account Configuration**: The HTTP or HTTPS service is used for the provisioning connection between the RealPresence Resource Manager system and the endpoints. By default, a system-generated user name and password are used by the endpoints during the process to get provisioning profiles and software updates from the RealPresence Resource Manager. Each endpoint uses the same HTTP or HTTPS service password. The default user name and password are both **PlcmSpIp**.

  You can change this password at any time. After you change the password, you need to configure the endpoints to use the same HTTP or HTTPS password. Otherwise, the endpoints will not be able to connect.
to connect to the RealPresence Resource Manager system to receive provisioning profiles and software updates.

Note: (Phone Only) If phone communicates with RealPresence Resource Manager via HTTPS, you should ensure that the phone(s) can validate the RealPresence Resource Manager system's security certificate. For more information about certificates RealPresence Resource Manager system certificates, see Security Certificates. For information about certificates for Polycom phones, see UC Software Administrator Guide.

Note: The provisioning account doesn’t apply to Polycom G7500.

- **Phone Files Rotation Settings**: You can control the disk space that the uploaded configuration and log files occupy in the RealPresence Resource Manager system. The default values rotate the log files every 1024 KB and keep up to five files for 15 days.

  The logs are saved in the `/var` disk. When the `/var` disk 90% occupied, the system will clean the logs automatically. For example, if the **Days to Retain Phone Files** value is 15 days, when the `/var` disk 90% occupied, the system will clean the logs saved on the first day. If the `/var` disk still 80% occupied, the system will keep cleaning the logs saved on the second day.

- **Maximum Disk Space for Resource Files**: You can set a upper limit to the size of the uploaded resource files. When the size of the uploaded resource files reaches the specified size, you will not able to upload more files. You need to remove some unused resource files first.

- **Upload Default UC Configuration Schema (XSD) File**: The RealPresence Resource Manager system comes with a default XSD file that contains Polycom RealPresence Trio 5.7.2, Polycom Studio 1.0, and Polycom G7500 configuration elements that you can use. You also can make your own XSD file to include more customized endpoint settings and upload the XSD file to the system to overwrite the default file.

### Procedure

1. Go to **Endpoint > UC Management > UC Management Settings**.
2. To change the digest password for phones synced from Cisco Unified Communications Manager:
   a. In the **Digest Password for CUCM Synced Phones** section, clear the **Use System Auto Generated Password** check box.
   b. Complete **Password** and **Confirm Password** fields.
3. In the **Maximum Disk Space for Resource Files** section, enter a maximum size and click **Update**.

   The supported range of the maximum size is: 50MB - 250MB
4. In the **Phone Files Rotation Settings** section, change the settings as needed and click **Update**.

   The range of the settings is:
   - **Log File Rotation Size**: 512KB - 10240KB
   - **Number of Retaining Files (per name)**: 1 - 10
   - **Days to Retain Phone Files**: 0 - 30
5. To configure the provisioning account, in the **Provisioning Account Configuration** section, edit the **User Name** or the **Password**.
6. Click **Update**.
7. To upload a XSD file, in the **Default UC Configuration Schema (XSD) File** section, browse to the XSD file and click the **Upload** button.

**Related Links**
- [Security Certificates](#) on page 474

### Reset to the System Default XSD File

You can reset to the system default XSD file if you don’t want to use customized XSD file anymore.

**Procedure**
- 1. Go to **Endpoint > UC Management > UC Management Settings**.
- 2. In the **Default UC Configuration Schema (XSD) File** section, click the **Reset** button.

### Control Phones via REST API

You can control phones to do certain tasks on the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

To support device control, the device must be inside the firewalls of your network and support REST API.

When you start an action, RealPresence Resource Manager sends the corresponding command to devices via REST API.

**Procedure**
- Send REST API commands to the phone to perform the following actions:
  - Place a call remotely from a provisioned device
  - Reset phones
  - Get or set a phone’s parameters

**Related Links**
- [Resetting Phones](#) on page 420
- [Getting or Setting Phone’s Parameters](#) on page 421

### Place a Call Remotely from a Provisioned Device

You can remotely control a provisioned phone to place a call using RealPresence Resource Manager.

**Procedure**
- 1. Go to **Endpoint > Monitor View**.
- 2. Select a supported phone.
- 3. Click **More > Remote Call Control**.
- 4. Enter the destination SIP URI or phone number in the **Phone Number or SIP URI** field.
- 5. Select the URI type from the **Dial Type** drop down list.
- 6. Enter a line number that you want to use to make the call.
- 7. Click **OK**.

**Related Links**
- [Resetting Phones](#) on page 420
- [Getting or Setting Phone’s Parameters](#) on page 421
Resetting Phones
You can reset specific phones or reset the phones belonging to a endpoint group from RealPresence Resource Manager.

RealPresence Resource Manager supports the following reset options:

- **Web Configuration**: RealPresence Resource Manager removes web files and resets the phone web configuration.
- **Local Configuration**: RealPresence Resource Manager removes phone files and resets the phone local configuration.
- **Device Settings**: RealPresence Resource Manager resets the phone device settings.
- **Web, Local, and Device Settings**: RealPresence Resource Manager removes web and phone files and resets web, local, and device settings.
- **Reset to Factory Settings**: RealPresence Resource Manager removes all the phone-related files and resets the phone to factory settings.

**Note:** After reset, the phone may lose connection with RealPresence Resource Manager. If this happens, you must specify the provisioning server from the phone.

Related Links
- Control Phones via REST API on page 419
- Place a Call Remotely from a Provisioned Device on page 419

Reset Phones
You can select a phone or multiple phones to reset.

**Procedure**
1. Go to Endpoint > Monitor View.
2. Select phones that you want to reset.
3. Select More > Reset Endpoint.
4. Select a reset option.
5. Click OK.
6. (Optional) Download and view the report by clicking the Download Detailed Report button.
7. Click Close to go back to the Monitor View page.

Reset Phones in an Endpoint Group
You can reset phones belonging to an endpoint group.

**Procedure**
1. Go to Endpoint > Endpoint Groups.
2. Select an endpoint group.
3. Select More > Reset Phones.
4. Select a reset option.
5. (Optional) Download and view the report by clicking the Download Detailed Report button.
6. Click Close to go back to the Endpoint Groups page.
Getting or Setting Phone's Parameters

You can select a specific phone to get specific parameters, and RealPresence Resource Manager gets phone parameters by sending corresponding REST API commands to the selected phone.

After viewing the parameters you selected, you can set new values to the parameters from RealPresence Resource Manager. You also can set parameters to the same values for multiple phones or phones belonging to an endpoint group.

The phones save all updates that you set to phones as the phone local configuration.

Related Links
Control Phones via REST API on page 419
Place a Call Remotely from a Provisioned Device on page 419

Get and Set a Phone's Parameters

You can select a phone, view specific parameters, and then change the parameters values.

After you select a parameter, RealPresence Resource Manager sends a REST API command and gets the parameter value and type.

Procedure
1. Go to Endpoint > Monitor View.
2. Select a phone.
3. Select More > Get/Set Phone Parameters.
4. In the Get Parameters tab, search for the parameters you want to update.
   • In the Standard Fields tab, search for the parameter in the XSD file and click it.
   • In the Custom Fields tab, enter a parameter name and click Add. RealPresence Resource Manager gets the selected parameters from the phone. You can get up to 20 parameters at one time
5. If necessary, click Refresh to get all the parameters again to check the current values.
6. Click the Set Parameters tab.
7. Remove the parameters that you don’t want to update.
8. Enter the new values for the parameters that you want to update.
9. Click OK.
10. (Optional) Download and view the report by clicking the Download Detailed Report button.
11. Click Close to go back to the Monitor View page.

Set Parameters for Multiple Phones

You can update specific parameters to the same values for multiple phones.

Procedure
1. Go to Endpoint > Monitor View.
2. Click Switch selection types.
3. Select More > Get/Set Phone Parameters.
4. In the Set Parameters tab, select the parameters of interest.
   • In the Standard Fields tab, search for the parameter in the XSD file and click it.
   • In the Custom Fields tab, enter a parameter name and click Add.
5. Enter the new values for the parameters that you want to update.
6. Click OK.
7. (Optional) Download and view the report by clicking the Download Detailed Report button.
8. Click Close to go back to the Monitor View page.

**Set Parameters for Phones in an Endpoint Group**

You can update specific parameters to the same values for phones belonging to a same endpoint group.

**Procedure**

1. Go to Endpoint > Endpoint Groups.
2. Select an endpoint group.
3. Select More > Set Phone Parameters.
4. Select the parameters of interest.
   - In the Standard Fields tab, search for the parameter in the XSD file and click it.
   - In the Custom Fields tab, enter a parameter name and click Add.
5. Enter the new values for the parameters that you want to update.
6. Click OK.
7. (Optional) Download and view the report by clicking the Download Detailed Report button.
8. Click Close to go back to the Endpoint Groups page.

**Reboot Phones**

You can reboot phones for each predefined condition.

**Procedure**

1. Go to Endpoint > Phone Management > Profiles Deployment.
2. Reboot phones using one of the following conditions:
   - **Global**: Select More > Reboot All Phones.
   - **Endpoint Groups/Endpoint Models/Sites**: Select a group, device model, or site, select More > Reboot Phones. You also can go to the Endpoint Groups or Monitor View page to do the reboot.
3. Click OK to confirm the reboot.

**Related Links**

[Managing UC Endpoints](#) on page 402
User Management

Topics:

- Working with Users
- Working with Management Roles and Permissions
- Working with Groups
- Managing Meeting Rooms

The RealPresence Resource Manager system uses roles to define permissions. Users can be assigned management roles, associated with endpoints, and organized in groups. You can assign roles and provisioning profiles to sets of users by using groups. By default all users can be scheduled into conferences, and call into conferences. However, the system cannot call out to them until they are associated with endpoints.
Working with Users

Topics:

• Local Users
• Enterprise Users
• Managing Local Users
• Import Local Users
• Delete a Local User
• Managing Users
• Managing Dial String Reservations for Users

Use the following guidelines when assigning user roles and types.

The RealPresence Resource Manager system uses roles to define permissions:

• Users can be assigned management roles, associated with endpoints, and organized in groups.
• You can assign roles and provisioning profiles to sets of users by using groups.
• By default all users can be scheduled into conferences, and call into conferences. However, the system cannot call out to them until they are associated with endpoints.

The RealPresence Resource Manager system supports two types of users:

• Users that are local to the management system. These users are added manually to the system or imported from a file.
• Enterprise users that come directly from the enterprise directory.

If your company has implemented multi-tenancy, you can also assign local users or enterprise users to an area or areas that you manage.

Local Users

After you manually add local users (or import them), the RealPresence Resource Manager system manages all user information and associations.

At a minimum, when you manually add users, you must enter a user’s First Name or Last Name, User ID, Email Address, and Password. When you enter the minimum information, the RealPresence Resource Manager system automatically assigns local users the basic Scheduler role or Area Scheduler role (when areas are enabled), unless you remove that assignment. You can unassign that role if the user does not need any management permissions.

By default all users can be scheduled into conferences, and can dial into conferences. However, the system cannot dial out to them until they are associated with endpoints.

You can associate local users with one or more roles as well as one or more endpoints. Alternatively, you can associate local users with local groups and then assign roles to an entire group.
Enterprise Users

When the RealPresence Resource Manager system is integrated with an enterprise directory, the system manages only the following pieces of an enterprise users' information:

- Endpoints associated with the user
- Roles assigned to the user
- Area to which the user belongs
- Alert profiles for the user

The remaining information is pulled from the enterprise directory, including email address, system password, and so on.

**Note:** The RealPresence Resource Manager system supports only Microsoft Active Directory integration. Other LDAP systems are not supported. The RealPresence Resource Manager system displays a user's City, Title, and Department to help distinguish between users with the same name.

Users imported into the system through the enterprise directory are added to the system without a role. This default setup enables users to log into the RealPresence Resource Manager system with their enterprise user IDs and passwords. They can then be scheduled into conferences and call into conferences. However, the system cannot call out to them until they are associated with endpoints.

**Note:** Provisioning for hardware endpoint associated with a username that includes a special character will not work. As a best practice, do not use special characters in usernames.

Managing Local Users

Users assigned the Administrator role can add, import, update, or delete local users.

Add a Local User

You can add local users.

You need to have the administrator role to add a local user.

**Procedure**

1. Go to User > Users and click Add .
   - The Add New User dialog appears. The User Enabled option is selected by default.
2. Enter the user information.
3. If needed, click the Create Password button to generate a random password by the system.
4. Click Save.
5. In the Associated Endpoints section, select and move the required endpoints(s) to Selected Endpoints list.
   - Move the unwanted endpoints(s) to the Available Endpoints list. Press Shift-click or Ctrl-click to select multiple items in the list.
If the user has multiple endpoints, list the endpoints in order of priority, with the primary endpoint first.

When scheduling a user in a conference, the RealPresence Resource Manager system will, by default, schedule the user's primary endpoint. The scheduler can choose to change the request to schedule one of the user's other endpoints.

6. In the **Associated Roles** section, select and move the required role(s) to **Selected Roles** list.
   Move the unwanted role(s) to the **Available Roles** list. Press Shift-click or Ctrl-click to select multiple items in the list.

7. If Areas are enabled, click the **Managed Areas** section.
   You must have either the administrator role or have the area administrator role and be allowed to manage more than one area in order to perform this action.
   - If the user has not been assigned a role, select the **None** radio button and continue to the **Associated Alert Profile** section.
   - If the user has been assigned an role, select the **Specific Areas** radio button.

8. In the **Available Areas** section, select and move the required area(s) to **Selected Areas** list.
   Move the unwanted role(s) to the **Available Areas** list. Press Shift-click or Ctrl-click to select multiple items in the list.
   The user will be assigned to manage the areas in the **Selected Areas** section.

9. In the **Associated Alert Profile** section, select a **Remote Alert Notification Profile** as appropriate.

10. In the **SIP Dial String Reservations** section, select the user's **Endpoint Type** and enter the appropriate dial string for **SIP URI**, then click **Apply**.
    The dial strings appear in the list below.
    By default, the same SIP URI is used for all endpoints that belong to the same user. If the user has multiple endpoints and you want a different SIP URI for each endpoint type, enter the dial strings for one endpoint type at a time and click **Apply** each time.

11. In the **H323 Dial String Reservations** section, select the user's **Endpoint Type** and enter the appropriate dial string for **E164** and **H323 ID**, then click **Apply**.
    The dial strings appear in the list below.
    If the user has multiple endpoints, enter the dial strings for one endpoint type at a time and click **Apply** each time.

12. Click **Update**.
    If the **Phone Number** you entered is exactly the same as an existing user or endpoint, the **Phone Number Conflict** dialog appears and lists the names of the other users or endpoints with the same number.
    - To keep the duplicate number, click **Continue**.
    - To change the phone number, click **Cancel**.

### User Information
Enter the user information.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First Name</td>
<td>The user's first name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Column</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last Name</td>
<td>The user's last name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User ID</td>
<td>The user's unique login name. This user ID must be unique across all rooms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>and users and across all domains.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>For Multi-Tenancy:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Create user names using the email address format. This will ensure that all</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>user names are unique. Otherwise two people named Bob Smith belonging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>to different tenants may end up with the same user name. By following an</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>email address format, Bob Smith in TenantA could have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><a href="mailto:bsmith@tenantA.com">bsmith@tenantA.com</a> as a user name and Bob Smith</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>in TenantB could have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><a href="mailto:bsmith@tenantB.com">bsmith@tenantB.com</a>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>The user's assigned password:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• A minimum of 15 characters in length.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Minimum of 2 lowercase letters, 2 uppercase letters, 2 numbers, and 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>special characters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The values of the <strong>User ID</strong>, <strong>First Name</strong>, <strong>Last Name</strong>, **Contact</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Number**, <strong>Email Address</strong>, <strong>City</strong>, and <strong>Department</strong> are forbidden.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Email Address</td>
<td>The user's Email address. (The <strong>Email</strong> address is an ASCII-only field.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>The user's professional title.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Department</td>
<td>The user's department within the enterprise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>City</td>
<td>The city in which the user's office is located.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phone Number</td>
<td>The contact phone number for the user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assign Area</td>
<td>If your RealPresence Resource Manager system has areas enabled, you can</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>choose to assign this user to an area that you manage.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Import Local Users**

You can import local users into your RealPresence Resource Manager system.

You need to have either the administrator or area administrator role to import users.

You may choose to do this if your RealPresence Resource Manager deployment does not include an integration with an LDAP server and you need the convenience of importing users in bulk instead of creating them one at a time.

**Note:** You can only import users to one area at a time and must have either the administrator role or area administrator role in order to import users.

**Procedure**
1. Create a CSV file that contains the user information.
2. Choose User > Users and click Import Local Users from the More drop-down list.
3. In the File Location (CSV) field, browse to the location of the CSV file you created.
4. If areas are enabled and you manage more than one area, select an area from the Assign Area drop-down list.
   - If Areas are not enabled on your RealPresence Resource Manager system or you only manage one area, the Areas drop-down is not available.
   - If Areas are enabled and the you manage more than one area, you must select an area to which all the users will be added. You can also select None to add the users to no area.
5. Click Import.
   - A status window appears. Click OK when it is complete.
   - The results of the import are summarized on the Import Summary screen.
6. If a default password is shown in the summary, write the password down and inform those users of the password.
7. Click Download Import Details to view the import details file.
   - Save it as a text file for your records.
9. Review the import details file that you downloaded.

Sample CSV file of User Information
You must create a CSV (comma separated values) file that contains the users you need.
You can create this file with any plain text editor or use Microsoft Excel.

Note: Only UTF-8 encoding is supported in the CSV file.

The format should be the following:

Username, First Name, Last Name, Email, Title, Dept, City, Phone Number, Role(s), Password

Use the following guidelines:

- Use a file with a *.csv extension.
- All fields for a single user must be on a single line and end with a new line or end of file character. The line after a new line is assumed to be for another user.
- Commas (,) are used as field separators and cannot be embedded in a field. All commas must be included, even before fields that are optional. Each field’s leading and trailing white space (blanks and tabs) is ignored (does not become part of the field value).
- Unicode characters are allowed in the file as long as they are valid for the field type.
- Blank lines are allowed and are ignored.
- A header line is not allowed in the CSV file. All lines must either represent a user or be blank.
- The following fields are required: Username, First Name or Last Name, and Email.
- Other fields can be left blank, but not skipped.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Usage Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Username</td>
<td>The username must be unique across the entire RealPresence Resource Manager system. (The recommended naming convention to ensure uniqueness is specified in section 2.2.3.) If a specified username already exists in the selected area (or in the system, if Areas is disabled), then the system assumes you wish to update the existing user's information. If a specified username already exists in a different area, then the user is neither added nor updated and an error is issued.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Role(s)</td>
<td>Role names are case sensitive. To specify multiple roles for a user, separate the roles with a pipe (‘</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>If any of the users have no password specified, then a single default password is generated and assigned to all those without a password specified. The administrator will be shown what password was assigned to all and is responsible for writing it down and communicating it to all the users. For users assigned default passwords, the first time they log in, they will be required to change their password.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Email</td>
<td>Be sure to include a valid email address.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This first example shows all fields specified:

```
js@co.com, John, Smith, js@co.com, Tech I, IT, Boulder, 303-333-4444, Role 1|Role 2, JSpw
```

This example shows only the required fields specified. In this case, the user will be given a blank first name, title, department, city and phone number, no role and a generated password.

```
j doe, Doe, doe@co.com, , , ,scheduler, 
```

**Troubleshooting the Import Details File**

You should review the Import Details file for any information about errors that may need to be corrected. If there are errors, you can either:

- Create another CSV file with the users that need to be corrected and import only those users.
- Edit the same CSV file to correct the users with errors and import the file again. Users that were previously added successfully will be updated. Specifically, existing user updates will fail if a password is specified, so either remove those user's passwords or ignore password errors that are issued for those users who were previously added.

In either case, realize that a different default password will be assigned in subsequent imports than was assigned to users in a previous import.
Handle the User Accounts with Password Lost

If you fail to record or remember the password shown on the Import Summary screen, there will be no other way to determine the password and the users will be unable to login.

If this happens, you can either:

• Edit each affected user one-by-one via the RealPresence Resource Manager system's User Edit screen and manually change the password field or have system generate a password.

Delete all affected users one-by-one via the RealPresence Resource Manager user interface and re-import them.

Updating Local Users by Import

You can also use the Import Local Users action to update existing users.

The CSV format for updating an existing user is the same as that used for adding a user except that the password field must be blank. For each existing username whose attributes are to be updated, the CSV format is:

```
Username, First Name, Last Name, Email, Title, Dept, City, Phone Number, Role(s),
```

Note that the comma after the Role(s) field is still required.

**Note:** Importing a CSV file that has existing usernames will overwrite existing data. Make sure the CSV data is at least as current as what is in RealPresence Resource Manager system. Determining existing user data can be done one-by-one and manually via the RealPresence Resource Manager system user interface (currently there is no way to export local user data in bulk).

A single CSV file may contain both users to be added and users to be updated. The system will automatically determine whether you are intending to add or update a user by whether the username already exists in the system or not:

The following fields cannot be changed using the Import Local Users action.

• An existing user's username
• An existing user's password
• Any of the attributes not specified in the Import CSV format

The following rules apply when updating existing users.

• The Username must already exist in the selected area.
  You can only change an existing user's username by using the RealPresence Resource Manager system user interface.
• The Password must be blank. If a password is specified, the update for that user will fail such that none of the fields will be updated.
  You cannot change a user's password with an import. You must use the system's web interface.
• Fields that are left blank will replace any existing data that the RealPresence Resource Manager system has for that user with a blank.
• There is no way to indicate that any of the user's data should be left as is.
• All other user attributes not included in the CSV format, such as which areas a user manages, will not be modified by an Import.

Delete a Local User
You can only delete local users from the RealPresence Resource Manager system.
You need the Administrator role to delete users.
You cannot delete users added through integration with an enterprise directory.

Procedure
1. Go to User > Users.
2. Search the user you want to delete.
3. Select the user and click Delete.
   To delete multiple users, hold the Shift key down while you make your selections.
4. Click OK to confirm the deletion.
   The user is deleted from the system.

Managing Users
Users assigned the Administrator role can manage both local users and enterprise users.

Search for a User
You can search for a user.

Searches for a user are case-insensitive, prefix searches of the User ID, First Name, and Last Name fields.
You must log in as an enterprise user to search for enterprise users.

Procedure
1. Go to User > Users.
2. In the Search Users field, enter the following keywords to search the users of interest.
   • First Name The first name of the user of interest.
   • Last Name The last name of the user of interest.
   • User ID The user ID of the user of interest.
   • Domain Enter Local to search for local users. Enter a domain name to search for enterprise users.
3. Press Enter.
   The first 500 users in the database that match your search criteria are displayed in the Users list.
   If the list is too large to scan, further refine your search string.

View User Information
You can view information about a user, local or enterprise.
Procedure

1. Go to User > Users.
2. Select the user you want.
3. Click Edit to view the user information.

User Information Details

The table lists the user information details.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>General Info</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First Name</td>
<td>The user’s first name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last Name</td>
<td>The user’s last name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User ID</td>
<td>The user’s unique login name. This user ID must be unique across all rooms and users and across all domains.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Email Address</td>
<td>The user’s email address. (The Email address is an ASCII-only field.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>The user’s professional title.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Department</td>
<td>The user’s department within the enterprise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>City</td>
<td>The city in which the user’s office is located.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact Number</td>
<td>The contact phone number for the user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assign Area</td>
<td>If your RealPresence Resource Manager system has areas enabled, you can choose to assign this user to an area that you manage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Belongs to Area</td>
<td>This field is only available if Areas have been enabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manages Area</td>
<td>This field is only available if Areas have been enabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create Password</td>
<td>Click the Create Password button to generate a password by the system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Associated Roles</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assigned Roles</td>
<td>The roles assigned to the user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Groups</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>The type of group to which the user belongs. Possible values are local and enterprise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The name of the group to which the user belongs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Inherited Group Info</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Column</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Address Book</td>
<td>The Address Book(s) the user sees based upon the groups to which the user is assigned.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Edit a User**

For local users added manually to the RealPresence Resource Manager system, you can edit all user information.

You need the **Administrator** role to edit users.

If you change the user ID, the user must log into the associated endpoints with the new ID.

For users added through the enterprise directory, you can edit their roles (unless the role is inherited from a group) and associate them to endpoints, but you cannot change user names, user IDs, or passwords.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **User > Users**.
2. Search for the user you want to edit.
3. Select the user you want to edit and click **Edit**.
4. As required, edit the **General Info**, **Associated Endpoints**, **Associated Roles**, **Managed Areas**, **Associated Alert Profile**, and **Dial String Reservations** sections of the **Edit User** dialog.
   - If the user has multiple associated endpoints, list the endpoints in order of priority, with the primary endpoint first.
   - When scheduling a user in a conference, the RealPresence Resource Manager system will, by default, schedule the user's primary endpoint. The scheduler can choose to change the request to schedule one of the user's other endpoints.
5. Click **Update**.

**Related Links**

- [Supported Endpoints and Peripherals](#) on page 237
- [Working with Endpoint Groups](#) on page 229
- [Adding Endpoint Parameters](#) on page 217

**Assign Users to Manage an Area(s)**

In order to perform RealPresence Resource Manager system tasks within an area, the user must be allowed to manage that area.

You need the **Administrator** role to enable areas (multi-tenancy) and assign users to manage an area.

Allowing a user to manage an area means allowing them to perform the duties associated with their role in the areas that they are allowed to manage.

A user can be allowed to manage:

- **Zero areas**. This means that user cannot perform any tasks in any area.
- **One Area**. This means that the user can perform role-based tasks for the area he manages. You must indicate which area you want the user to manage.
- **Multiple areas**. This means the user can perform role-based tasks in each area that he manages. You must indicate which areas you want the user to manage.
• **All areas.** A user can manage all areas if he is assigned a system role or if his role includes the View and/or Modify All areas permission. If the user has this role, you do not need to explicitly allow him to manage an area or areas.

For example, a user with the area scheduler role can belong to the yellow area and allowed to schedule conferences in both the yellow and blue areas if he has permission to manage the blue area as well as the yellow area.

In order to enable a user to manage an area, you must have the administrator role or the area administrator role and manage the area to which you want to allow a user to manage. In short, you need to have permission to manage the area to which you want to allow a user to manage.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **User > Users**.
2. Search for the user you want to assign to an area.
3. Select the user and click **Edit**.
4. In the **Edit User** dialog, click **Managed Areas**.
   - You must have either the administrator role or have the area administrator role and be allowed to manage more than one area in order to perform this action.
5. In the **Available Areas** section, select the area(s) you want the user to manage and click the arrow icon to move the list to the **Selected Areas** section.
   - Conversely, you can select area(s) in the **Selected Areas** section and click the corresponding arrow to move the selected area(s) to the **Available Areas** section.
   - The user will be assigned to manage the areas in the **Selected Areas** section.
6. Click **Update**.

**Enable/Disable Users**

By default, a user is enabled to use the system when you create the user.

You need the **Administrator** role to enable or disable users.

However, after some period of inactivity users may become disabled.

You can enable or disable multiple users at once.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **User > Users**
2. Select the user you want to enable or disable and click **Edit**.
3. Check or clear **User Enabled**.
   - The users are enabled or disabled.

**Unlock a User Account**

When a local user reaches the **Failed login threshold**, the system will not allow the user to log in until an administrator unlocks the user’s account.

You need the **Administrator** role to enable or disable users.

When a user’s account is locked, the system will display an error message.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **User > Users** and search for the user you want to unlock.
2. Select the user whose account you want to unlock and click **Edit**.
3. Clear the **User Locked** check box.
4. Click **Update**.
5. The system should allow the user to log in.

**Clear Orphan Active Directory Users/Rooms**

When a user or room is deleted from your Active Directory system, it is not automatically deleted from your RealPresence Resource Manager system.

You need the **Administrator** role to clear the orphan Active Directory users or rooms.

You may want to periodically update your user list when you are integrated with an Active Directory system.

Use the Clear Orphan Active Directory Users/Rooms option to delete enterprise users that are listed in your system, but no longer exist in Active Directory.

**Note:** Be sure your Active Directory Connection is Available. If you perform an orphan clean up when your system is not connected to Active Directory, you will delete ALL users in the system.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **User > Users**.
2. Select **Clear Orphan AD User/Rooms** from the **More** drop-down list.
3. Click **OK**.

   All enterprise users that no longer exist in your enterprise directory are deleted from your RealPresence Resource Manager system.

**Managing Dial String Reservations for Users**

If you need to make multiple dial string reservations for multiple users, you can use the **Import User Alias** function.

If you need to make a report of which dial strings (H.323 or SIP URIs) have been reserved for each user, you can use the **Export User Alias** function.

Both the **Import User Alias** and **Export User Alias** features allow you to manage the dial string reservations for all users at once. If you need to only add or modify a dial string for a single user, it is more efficient to edit that user's dial strings directly.

Dial string reservations take first priority when they are associated with a user and will overwrite any provisioned H.323 alias or SIP URI for that user.

Specifically, SIP URI dial string reservations are assigned in the following three ways, listed by priority:

1. Dial string reservation associated with user record.
2. Domain user or third-party server (for example, Microsoft Lync).
3. Auto-generated SIP URI through the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

**Related Links**

- [Auto-Generate SIP URIs for Dynamically Managed Endpoints](#) on page 250
- [Define an E.164 Address Scheme](#) on page 246
Export User Aliases

You can export a report of users with reserved SIP URI aliases, either SIP or H.323.

Keep in mind that this CSV file will contain displays reserved aliases and dynamically provisioned aliases if the provisioning information has already been sent.

---

**Note:** Users with the area administrator role can only export aliases from one area at a time or from only the areas they manage. Users with the administrator role can export alias information from all areas.

---

**Procedure**

1. Navigate to **User > Users**.
2. Click **Export User Aliases** from the **More** drop-down list.
3. In the **Export User Aliases** dialog, select the **SIP** radio button and click **Export**.
   - You cannot export both H.323 and SIP aliases in the same report. You must export them separately.
4. Save the report.

**Related Links**

- **Required Unique H.323 Aliases for Endpoints** on page 101

Importing User Aliases

You can import a list of user aliases that will add to or overwrite any existing reserved dial string aliases that have been associated with users.

You will need to create a CSV (comma separated values) file that lists the user information and user alias reservations you wish to add or update. You may use any text editor or Microsoft Excel to create the CSV file.

Use the following guidelines:

- Use a file with a *.csv extension.
- All fields for a single user must be on a single line and end with a new line or end of file character. The line after a new line is assumed to be for another user.
- Commas (',') are used as field separators and cannot be embedded in a field. All commas must be included, even before fields that are optional. Each field's leading and trailing white space (blanks and tabs) is ignored (does not become part of the field value).
- Unicode characters are allowed in the file as long as they are valid for the field type.
- Blank lines are allowed and are ignored.
- A header line is not allowed in the CSV file. All lines must either represent a user or be blank.

**SIP Format:**
Domain, username, endpoint type, SIP URI, Endpoint Name

**Where:**

Commas (',') are used as field separators and cannot be embedded in a field. The endpoint name should be used if you need to differentiate between two endpoint names (HDX1 and HDX1) of the same endpoint type for the same user. The endpoint name is required in order to associate the SIP URI with a device. You do not need to include a SIP URI for all users in the file, but at least one user must have a value for the SIP URI field.

The following fields are required: **Domain, Username, Endpoint Type, and SIP URI.** Other fields can be left blank, but not skipped.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Usage Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Domain</strong></td>
<td>Specifies the domain of the user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Username</strong></td>
<td>The username must already exist in the RealPresence Resource Manager system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This can be the user ID of a user or a machine account, or the name of a room.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Endpoint Type</strong></td>
<td>The following are valid endpoint types:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>HDX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VVX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CMADesktop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RPMobile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GroupSeries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RPDesktop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ITP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RPDebut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RPCentro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>All_Types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>URI</strong></td>
<td>The SIP URI for this user. The SIP URI supports alphanumeric characters and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the following special characters: ':' ';', '@', ',', ':'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Endpoint Name</strong></td>
<td>The endpoint name should be included if you need to differentiate between</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>two endpoint names (jsmithHDX1 and jsmithHDX2) for the same endpoint type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>for the same user.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Examples

- This first example reserves the SIP URI to all endpoint types for this user:
  
  local,johndoe,All_Types,johndoe@example.com

- This example reserves the SIP URI to the HDX for this user:
  
  local,johndoe,HDX,johndoeHDX@example.com

- This example reserves the SIP URI to the HDX that is named johndoeHDX2.
  
  local,johndoe,HDX,johndoeHDX2@example.com,johndoeHDX2

H.323 Format

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Domain, Username, Endpoint Type, H.323 ID, E.164 Number, Endpoint Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Where:

Commas (',') are used as field separators and cannot be embedded in a field. The endpoint name should be used if you need to differentiate between two endpoint types (HDX1 and HDX1) of the same type for the same user. You can supply an H.323 ID, an E.164 number or both. You do not need to enter a dial string for each user in the file.

The following fields are required: **Domain, Username, Endpoint Type, H.323 ID and E.164**. Other fields can be left blank, but not skipped.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Usage Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Domain</td>
<td>Specifies the domain of the user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Username</td>
<td>The username must already exist in the RealPresence Resource Manager system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This can be the user ID of a user or a machine account, or the name of a room.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Field

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Usage Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Endpoint Type</td>
<td>The following are valid endpoint types: HDX, VVX, CMADesktop, RPMobile, GroupSeries, RPDesktop, ITP, RPDebut, RPCentro, CX, All_Types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H.323 ID</td>
<td>The H.323 ID for this user. The H.323 ID supports alphanumeric characters and the following special characters: '.', '-', '_', '@', ':'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E.164 Number</td>
<td>The E.164 number for this user. The E.164 number must consist of only numeric characters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endpoint Name</td>
<td>The endpoint name should be included if you need to differentiate between two endpoint names (jsmithHDX1 and jsmithHDX2) for the same endpoint type for the same user. The endpoint name is required if you want to associate the SIP URI with a particular endpoint name that has been assigned to a user.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Examples

- This first example reserves the H.323 ID and E.164 number for this user's HDX system.

  ```
  local,johndoe,HDX,johndoeHDX,771000
  ```

- This example updates the H.323 ID and E.164 number for this user's "johndoeHDX2".

  ```
  local,johndoe,HDX,johndoeHDX2,771001
  ```

### Importing User Aliases

You can import user aliases.

**Procedure**

1. Create a valid CSV file to use.

   It may be helpful to use an exported User Alias CSV file on which to base your changes.

2. Navigate to User > Users.
3. Select **Import User Aliases** from the **More** drop-down list.

4. In the **Import User Aliases** dialog, select **SIP** aliases or **H323** aliases radio button and click **Export**.

   You cannot import both H.323 and SIP aliases in the same report. You must export them separately.

5. Click **Update**.

   An error message will display if your CSV file contained any mistakes. If you get an error message, you will need to correct the rows that were not loaded and import them again.
Working with Management Roles and Permissions

Topics:

- Understanding User Roles
- Managing User Roles

You must decide which users will have management roles.

Users with management roles can perform tasks on the RealPresence Resource Manager system, such as device management or conference scheduling. Management roles can be system-wide or area-restricted. A user must be assigned a management role in order to access the management system interface.

Conference participant users who can be scheduled into conferences do not need to be assigned a management role, unless that particular user also needs to perform system management tasks.

Related Links
Log In to the System on page 29
Set Local Account Lockout and Timeout on page 468

Understanding User Roles

The RealPresence Resource Manager system is a role and permissions based system.

- Users can be assigned one or more user roles either directly or through their group associations.
- User roles are assigned a set of permissions. The system comes with default roles for both system-wide and area management tasks.
- Users see only the pages and functions available to their roles and associated permissions. Permissions are cumulative, so users see all of the pages and functions assigned to all of their roles and associated permissions.

Note: Users inherit roles from their parent groups—local or enterprise. They cannot inherit roles from groups more distantly related—for example, from their grandparent groups. The default role names are stored in the system database and are not localized into other languages. If you wish to localized their names into your language, edit the roles and enter new names for them.

- If you have implemented the Areas feature, users are restricted to the manage resources in the areas they are assigned to manage, according to the role they are given.

An administrator has several options when implementing user roles.

1. Implement only the default user roles and keep the standard permissions assigned to these roles.
2. Implement only the default user roles but change the permissions assigned to these roles.

Note: To ensure system access and stability, the default administrator role cannot be deleted or edited.
3. Implement either option 1 or 2, but also create additional unique, workflow-driven user roles and determine which permissions to assign to those user roles.

Some important notes about user roles and permissions:

- Users (local and enterprise) may be assigned multiple roles. In this case, the permissions associated with those roles are cumulative; a user has all of the permissions assigned to all of his roles.
- Users (local and enterprise) may be assigned roles as an individual and as part of a group. Again, the permissions associated with those roles are cumulative; a user has all of the permissions assigned to all roles no matter how that role is assigned.
- Users assigned a role with any one of the Administrator Permissions are generally referred to as administrators. Users assigned a role with any one of the Operator Permissions and none of the Administrator Permissions are referred to as operators. Users assigned a user role with Scheduler Permissions and none of the Administrator or Operator Permissions are referred to as schedulers.

Managing User Roles

You can assign roles to both local and enterprise users.

Only users assigned the Administrator role can manage user roles.

View the List of User Roles

You can view a list of the user roles for your system.

Procedure

» Go to User > User Roles.

The User Roles list appears. It can be filtered by Name and Description. The Name is the unique name of the user role.

Add a User Role

When you add a user role, you also specify permissions for the role.

You need the Administrator role to add a user role.

Procedure

1. Go to User > User Roles.
2. On the User Roles page, click Add.
3. Complete the Name and Description fields of the Add Role dialog and assign permissions to the new role.
4. Click Update.

The new user role appears in the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

Related Links

Adding Role Settings on page 443
Adding Role Settings

The following table describes the fields of the Add Role dialog.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The unique name (ASCII only) of the user role</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>(Optional) A useful description (ASCII only) of the user role</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Administrator</td>
<td>Identifies which RealPresence Resource Manager system administrator pages and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Permissions</td>
<td>functions are available to the user role</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operator Permissions</td>
<td>Identifies which RealPresence Resource Manager system operator pages and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>functions are available to the user role</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scheduler Permissions</td>
<td>Identifies which RealPresence Resource Manager system scheduling pages and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>functions are available to the user role</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Scheduling Level.</strong> This setting determines the level of scheduling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>available through this role. Possible values are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Basic.</strong> Users can schedule conferences using the conference templates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>defined for them. They cannot access or edit the advanced Conference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Settings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Advanced.</strong> Users can schedule conferences using the conference templates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>defined for them. They can also access and edit the advanced Conference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Settings.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Related Links

Add a User Role on page 442

Edit Permissions for a User Role

You can change permissions for the default roles, as well as for other user roles that were created manually.

You need the Administrator role to add a user role.

You cannot change permissions for the default Administrator role.

**Note:** Do not edit pre-defined roles for system that needs high security.

Procedure

1. Go to User > User Roles.
2. As needed, click Filter to customize the User Roles list.
3. In the User Roles list, select the role you want to edit and click Edit.
4. Edit the Description field of the Edit Role dialog and edit permissions for the role.
5. Click Update.
Delete a User Role

You can delete a user role from the RealPresence Resource Manager system, provided no users are currently assigned to it.

You need the **Administrator** role to add a user role.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **User > User Roles**.
2. As needed, use **Filter** to customize the **User Roles** list.
3. In the **User Roles** list, select the role you want to delete and click **Delete**.
4. Click **Yes** to confirm the deletion.

The user role is deleted from the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

View the Groups and Users Associated with a User Role

You can view the users and groups that have been associated with a role.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **User > User Roles**.
2. As needed, use **Filter** to customize the **User Roles** list.
3. In the **User Roles** list, select the role you want to view and click **View Associated Groups and Users** from the **More** drop-down list.
4. Click **Yes** to confirm the deletion.

The **View Associated Groups and Users** dialog appears.

Assigning Roles to Enterprise Users

If you want the RealPresence Resource Manager system to, by default, automatically assign enterprise users the basic **Scheduler** role, you must change the appropriate system **Security Settings**.

You must have the **Administrator** role to add a user role.

Default System Roles and Permissions

The RealPresence Resource Manager system includes a default set of management roles.

Roles are associated with a set of permissions that allow the user to perform certain management tasks. Users see only the menus, pages, and functions associated with their roles.

While the RealPresence Resource Manager system provides administrators almost unlimited flexibility in defining roles, for simplicity and clarity, Polycom recommends keeping the default roles with their default permissions and responsibilities. Because users can be assigned multiple roles, and permissions are cumulative, you can combine roles as needed to reflect the workload your people undertake to manage and use the system.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role</th>
<th>Permissions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Scheduler</td>
<td>Schedule Conferences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Scheduling Level = Basic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>When areas are enabled:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>View and/or modify all areas.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Can perform role tasks in all areas.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced Scheduler</td>
<td>Schedule Conferences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Scheduling Level = Advanced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>When areas are enabled:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>View and/or modify all areas.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Can perform role tasks in all areas.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View-Only Scheduler</td>
<td>Schedule Conferences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Scheduling Level = View-Only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>When areas are enabled:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>View and/or modify all areas.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Can perform role tasks in all areas.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operator</td>
<td>Schedulable Resource Monitor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Conference Operator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Report Operator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MCU/EP Monitor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Schedule Conferences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Scheduling Level = Advanced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>When areas are enabled:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>View and/or modify all areas.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Can perform role tasks in all areas.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device Administrator</td>
<td>Endpoint Admin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Network Device Admin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>When areas are enabled:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>View and/or modify all areas.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Place devices and endpoints in Areas</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Role Permissions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role</th>
<th>Permissions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Administrator</td>
<td>Directory Setup, Site Topology Setup, Conferencing Setup, System Setup, Network Device Monitor, System Maintenance/Troubleshooting and Trace troubleshooting, Provisioning Profiles, Network Device Monitor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Auditor               | Endpoint Usage Report, Network Usage Report, Alert Level Settings, System Log Files, Audio Log Files, Log Settings |

### Scheduler Roles, Responsibilities, and Menus

The RealPresence Resource Manager system offers three different default **Scheduler** roles.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role</th>
<th>Responsibilities</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Scheduler</td>
<td>For the areas to which they belong (areas are optional), users assigned the <strong>Scheduler</strong> (sometimes called basic scheduler) role can schedule conferences. They do so using the conference templates defined for them. Basic schedulers cannot change any of the conference settings defined in the templates they choose when scheduling their conferences.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced Scheduler</td>
<td>Same with the basic schedulers except that advanced schedulers can change selected conference settings defined in the template they use when scheduling their conferences.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View-Only Scheduler</td>
<td>For the areas to which they belong (areas are optional), users assigned the <strong>View-only Scheduler</strong> role cannot schedule conferences; they can only see conferences that have been scheduled.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
When basic or advanced schedulers log into the RealPresence Resource Manager system, the system displays the conference page and they have access to the Guest Book.

When view-only schedulers log into the RealPresence Resource Manager system, the system displays the conference page and it is the only menu item to which they have access.

**Operator Role, Responsibilities, and Menus**

The Operator role enables businesses to offer high-touch customer service for video conferencing.

User assigned the Operator role can:

- Schedule conferences.
- Monitor and manage ongoing conferences.
- Monitor endpoints.
- Monitor network devices such as MCUs.
- Add, edit, and delete entries in the system Guest Book.
- Create favorites.
- View some system reports.

**Device Administrator Role, Responsibilities, and Menus**

The Device Administrator role is for those users who administrate endpoints, bridges, and other network devices.

For the areas to which they belong, users assigned the Device Administrator role can:

- Monitor endpoints, peripherals, and network devices.
- Add, edit, and delete endpoints and network devices.
- Provision endpoints using scheduled management.
- Update endpoints using scheduled management.

When device administrators log into the RealPresence Resource Manager system, the system displays the system Dashboard.

**Auditor Role, Responsibilities, and Menus**

The Auditor role enables security-conscious companies to separate system administration functions from system auditing functions.

It provides an extra level of system checks and balances. This role must be explicitly assigned by an administrator.

For the areas to which they belong, users assigned the Auditor role can:

- View audit logs.
- Backup and delete audit logs.
- Change the audit log file alert level.
- View and download system log files.
- Respond to audit log alerts.
Administrator Role, Responsibilities, and Menus

The Administrator role is for those users who administrate the RealPresence Resource Manager system itself.

Users assigned the Administrator role can generally do almost all system functions, however they cannot schedule conferences, monitor conferences, or manage endpoints or other network devices.

When administrators log into the RealPresence Resource Manager system, the system displays the system Dashboard.

Customized Roles and Responsibilities

The RealPresence Resource Manager system provides you almost unlimited flexibility in defining and redefining roles, but for simplicity and clarity, Polycom recommends keeping the default roles with their default permissions and responsibilities.

Users can be assigned multiple roles and permissions are cumulative, so your business can combine roles as needed to reflect the workload your people undertake to manage and use the system.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Permission Set</th>
<th>Permitted Tasks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Administrators Permissions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Directory Setup</td>
<td>Create users</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Create user groups</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Create a guest book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Create a room</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Create a machine account</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Create address books</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site Topology Setup</td>
<td>Site Topology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sites</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Site-Links</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Network Clouds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Territories</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reports &gt; Site Statistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reports &gt; Site-Link Statistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conferencing Setup</td>
<td>Direct Conference Templates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Conference Settings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Favorites</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Setup</td>
<td>System configuration under Admin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Endpoint Monitor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Endpoint Image Management</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Permission Set</td>
<td>Permitted Tasks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Maintenance/</td>
<td>Dashboard and troubleshooting utilities -- without wireshark trace.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Troubleshooting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Maintenance</td>
<td>Dashboard and troubleshooting utilities -- with wireshark trace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Troubleshooting - Trace</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assign User to managed Area</td>
<td>Edit user or user group for assigned area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Place entities in Areas</td>
<td>Edit MCU for assigned area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provision Profiles</td>
<td>Endpoint provisioning profile management and ACL control.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Network Device Monitor</td>
<td>Network device monitor function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Operator Permissions</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endpoint Admin</td>
<td>Endpoint management</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Control provisioning and software update for scheduled Endpoints.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Network Device Admin</td>
<td>Network Device management.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schedulable resource monitor</td>
<td>Monitor MCU and RealPresence DMA pool status.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conference operator</td>
<td>View, manage, and control all conferences in system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Have no permission for scheduling conferences.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Report Operator</td>
<td>Manage the reports in system (view and export reports).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View and edit all areas</td>
<td>View and edit the areas.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Scheduler Permissions</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schedule conferences (view-only)</td>
<td>View all scheduled conference in system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Have no permission for scheduling conferences.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schedule conferences (basic)</td>
<td>View and schedule new conference of the user account, but can't select bridge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>or change the conference settings in the template.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schedule conferences (advanced)</td>
<td>View and schedule new conference of the user account and change conference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>settings for scheduled conferences.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Auditor Permissions</strong></td>
<td>Getting system logs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Working with Groups

Topics:

• Local Groups
• Enterprise Groups
• Managing Groups

Groups provide a more efficient and consistent use of the RealPresence Resource Manager system. You can use groups to assign roles and provisioning profiles to sets of users rather than to individual users.

Local Groups

The RealPresence Resource Manager system enables you to add local groups (that is, groups added manually to the system) and associate them with provisioning profiles, roles, and address books.

For local groups, the RealPresence Resource Manager system manages all group information and associations.

Enterprise Groups

When the RealPresence Resource Manager system is integrated with an enterprise directory, groups defined to the enterprise directory are not automatically added to the RealPresence Resource Manager system, but you can import them into the system.

When the RealPresence Resource Manager system is integrated with an enterprise directory, the system manages only three pieces of group information: the provisioning profile assigned to the group, the roles assigned to the group, and whether or not the group is Directory Viewable (that is, displayed in endpoint directories) or included in an address book. The remaining group information is pulled from the enterprise directory.

Managing Groups

In the RealPresence Resource Manager system, only users assigned the Administrator role can manage groups.

Add a Local Group

You can create local groups.

You must have the Administrator role to manage groups.

Procedure

1. Go to User > User Groups.
2. In the User Groups page, click Add +.
3. Complete the **General Info** section of the **Add Group** dialog.

4. Click **Filter** to search for the users and groups to add to this local group.

5. In the **Search Results** section, select and move the users and groups of interest to the **Group Members** list.

   To select all users and groups listed, click the check box in the column header.

6. Click **Update**. The group appears in the **User Groups** list. It is identified as a **LOCAL** group.

**Related Links**

- [User Group Settings](#) on page 451
- [Creating a Local Trial Group](#) on page 302

**User Group Settings**

Configure the settings for user groups.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>General Info</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Group Name</td>
<td>A meaningful and unique group name assigned when creating the group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>A more complete description of the group's purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterprise Directory Viewable</td>
<td>Indicates if the group is displayed in the endpoint directory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Do not mark</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assigned Area</td>
<td>If your RealPresence Resource Manager system has areas enabled, you can</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>choose to assign this user to an area that you manage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Associated Roles</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Available Roles</td>
<td>The list of roles defined to the RealPresence Resource Manager system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selected Roles</td>
<td>The list of roles that you assign users when adding them to the system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Users have all of the permissions associated with all of the roles assigned to them (that is, permissions are cumulative).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Address Book</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Address Book</td>
<td>See Assign Address Books to User Groups.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Group Members (Local Users Only)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Filter</td>
<td>Search for finding users</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Search Results</td>
<td>The users and groups identified to the system that you can add to the local group. This list can include both local and enterprise users and groups.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group Members</td>
<td>The users and groups selected as part of the group</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Import Enterprise Groups

When you import an enterprise group, you can edit the group, user roles, and specify whether or not the group directory is viewable.

You must have the Administrator role to manage groups.

You can also search for enterprise users.

**Note:**
- Do not import more than 500 enterprise groups into a RealPresence Resource Manager system.
- Do not mark more than 200 enterprise groups as **Directory Viewable**.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **User > User Groups**.
2. Go to **More > Import Enterprise Group**.
3. Click **Filter** and type all or part of the group name (with wildcards) in the **Search Available Groups** field, and press **Search**.
   - Searches for a group are case-insensitive, exact-match searches of the **Group Name** field. Use wildcard characters to perform substring searches.
4. In the **Search Results** list, select the enterprise groups to add.
   - To select all enterprise groups, click the check box in the column header.
5. Click the right arrow to add the enterprise groups to the **Groups to Import** list.
6. Click **OK**.
   - The enterprise group appears in the **Groups** list.

Edit a Group

You can edit both local or enterprise groups.

You must have the Administrator role to manage groups.

If you remove a user from a group or a role from a group, the user no longer has the roles associated with the group.

The **Group Members** section is only available for Local groups.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **User > User Groups**.
2. In the **User Groups** page, select the group you want to edit and click **Edit**.
3. As required, edit the **General Info, Associated Roles, and Group Members** sections of the **Edit Local Groups** dialog.
4. Click **Update**.

Delete a Group

You can delete a local or enterprise group.

You must have the Administrator role to manage groups.
Deleting an enterprise group only deletes it from the system, not the enterprise directory. You can re-import an enterprise group if necessary.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **User > User Groups**.
2. In the **User Groups** page, select the group you want to delete and click **Delete**.
3. Click **OK** to confirm the deletion.
   
   The group is deleted from the system.
Managing Meeting Rooms

Topics:

- View the Rooms List
- Search for a Room
- Add a Local Room
- Add an Enterprise Room
- Edit a Room
- Delete a Room

The RealPresence Resource Manager system enables a user assigned the default Administrator role or the Area Administrator role to manage local and enterprise meeting rooms and the endpoints associated with those meeting rooms.

Usually, you integrate a system with an enterprise directory to which rooms have been added. However, the system also enables you to add local rooms (rooms you add manually to the system) and associate them with endpoints. To dynamically manage the endpoint associated with a local room, associate each room in the system with a machine account.

Related Links
Set Up Directory Services on page 64

View the Rooms List

You can view a list of rooms.

To edit or view additional details about a room, you can select it and choose an action.

Procedure

» Go to User > Rooms.

The Rooms list appears. It can be filtered by Site.

Search for a Room

You can search the list of rooms.

When searching for a room that is in the enterprise directory, you must use the search field with which the room was created. For example, if the enterprise directory room was created using the Last Name field in the enterprise directory, you must use that field within the RealPresence Resource Manager system. In such an example, if you use the First Name field, the search will not return the correct result.

Procedure

1. Go to User > Rooms.
2. On the Rooms list, click Add .

The Add New Room dialog box appears.
3. Click the **Find Room in Enterprise Directory** button.

4. In the **Room Name** field, type in the first few characters of the room name.
   The system does a prefix search of the appropriate fields.

5. Click **Search**.
   A list of the enterprise users and rooms that meet the search criteria appears. If the search found more than 500 matching entries, only the first 500 are displayed.

---

**Add a Local Room**

When you add a local room to your system, you specify room settings and associate one or more endpoints with the room.

If you want to dynamically manage the endpoint associated with a room, you must also associate the room with a machine account. The machine account enables the room's endpoint to connect and authenticate with the system for directory and dynamic management purposes without using the endpoint user's account.

After you add a room, you can create the machine account and associate the room with the machine account.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **User > Rooms**.
2. On the **Rooms** page, click **Add**.
   The **Add New Room** dialog box appears.
3. Complete the **General Info** and **Associated Endpoints** sections of the **Add New Room** dialog box.
4. In the **SIP Dial String Reservations** section, click **Add** to add SIP dial string reservations.
5. On the **SIP Dial String Reservations** dialog, select the user's **Endpoint Type** and enter the appropriate dial string for **SIP URI**, then click **OK**.
   The dial strings appear in the list below.
   By default, the same SIP URI is used for all endpoints that belong to the same user. If the user has multiple endpoints and you want a different SIP URI for each device type, enter the dial strings for one endpoint type at a time and click **OK** each time on the **SIP Dial String Reservations** dialog.
6. In the **H323 Dial String Reservations** section, click **Add** to add H323 dial string reservations.
7. On the **H323 Dial String Reservations** dialog, select the user's **Endpoint Type** and enter the appropriate dial string for **E164** and **H323 ID**, then click **OK**.
   The dial strings appear in the list below.
   If the user has multiple endpoints, enter the dial strings for one endpoint type at a time and click **OK** each time on the **H323 Dial String Reservations** dialog.
8. Click **Update**.
   The room is added to the system. Note that the system does not distinguish between enterprise rooms and local rooms once they've been added to the system.

**Related Links**

*Provisioning, Monitoring, and Upgrading Polycom G7500 Systems* on page 397
Room Information
The table shows the room information in the RealPresence Resource Manager system records.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>General Info</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Room Name</td>
<td>The name of the room, which appears in the address book for associated endpoints.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>(Optional) A useful description (ASCII only) of the room.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site</td>
<td>The site in which the room is located.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Rooms and the endpoint associated with them must be assigned to the same site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• When areas are enabled on your system, this field shows a value of <strong>Restricted</strong> if you do not have permission to manage the area to which the site is assigned.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Email</td>
<td>(Optional) The email address of the room administrator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assign Area</td>
<td>Select an area to which to assign this room.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This field is visible only when Areas are enabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A user can view area-specific information only for an area that he has permission to manage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Associated Endpoints</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Available Endpoints</td>
<td>The list of unassigned endpoints that are managed by the RealPresence Resource Manager system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selected Endpoints</td>
<td>The list of endpoints assigned to the room. The endpoint at the top of the list is the primary endpoint.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Add an Enterprise Room
If your system is integrated with an enterprise directory, you can add a room from the enterprise directory to the system.

If you want to dynamically manage the endpoint associated with a room, you must also associate the room with a machine account. The machine account enables the room's endpoint to connect and authenticate with the system for directory and dynamic management purposes without using the endpoint user's account.

After you add a room, you can create the machine account and associate the room with the machine account.
Note: After you import the enterprise names to the system, the system does not distinguish between enterprise rooms and local rooms. In the RealPresence Resource Manager system, which name (first name/last name) is used as enterprise room name, this depends on your settings on the Active Directory server.

**Procedure**

1. Go to User > Rooms.
2. On the Rooms list, click Add .
   The Add New Room dialog box appears.
3. To find a room in the enterprise directory:
   a. Click the Find Room in Enterprise Directory button.
   b. Click click Filter .
   c. In the Room Name field, type in the first few characters of the room name.
      The system does a prefix search of the appropriate fields.
   d. Click Search.
      A list of the enterprise users and rooms that meet the search criteria appears. If the search found more than 500 matching entries, only the first 500 are displayed.
   e. Select the room of interest and click Define Details.
5. Click Update.

**Edit a Room**

You can edit a room, including its name, dial string reservations, and so on.

**Procedure**

1. Go to User > Rooms.
2. In the Rooms list, select the room you want to edit and click Edit .
4. Click Update.

**Delete a Room**

You can delete a room.

When you delete a room, you are also asked if you want to delete the dial strings (aliases) associated with the room.

**Procedure**

1. Go to User > Rooms.
2. In the Rooms list, select the room you want to delete and click Delete .
3. In the **Delete Room** dialog, click **OK**.

The room is deleted from the RealPresence Resource Manager system.
Part X

System Configuration

Topics:

•  Securing the System
•  Security Certificates
•  Configuring Multitenancy
•  Managing Areas
•  System Redundancy
•  Configuring Local System Redundancy
•  Geographic System Redundancy

System configuration contains the RealPresence Resource Manager server settings, system security, certificates, enterprise directory integration, multi-tenancy, area, and system redundancy management.
Securing the System

Topics:

- Managing Security Baselines
- Configure Secure Communication
- Configure TLS Settings
- Configure System Hardening
- Session Security and User Access
- Encryption
- Authorize Users with JSON Web Token

You can configure various security features of your system.

You can determine how you want to work with security certificates, make the system's operating system more secure, as well as configure session management and password settings.

Security settings work in tandem with the security certificates you have installed. For example, if you enable strict TLS settings, you will need to add the required certificates to your system and systems that need to communicate with the RealPresence Resource Manager system, such as endpoints the system manages or network devices.

Managing Security Baselines

Security baselines are snapshots of the system's security settings that you can save in order to apply or audit at a later time.

The system comes with two baselines ready for use:

- **Standard Security Baseline Settings**
  - The Standard Security Baseline is applied by default. You can customize any security settings after **Standard Security Baseline** is applied

- **High Security Baseline Settings**
  - You should use the high security baseline settings only when you require maximum levels of security. When you select the high security baseline, the **SSH Access** is set to **Disabled Permanently**. This setting becomes read-only and you cannot change it back.

Unless you require a maximum level of security, you should use the Standard Security Baseline Settings.

You can audit your security settings against a saved baseline to easily view any security settings you have changed since that baseline was created.

You can also apply an existing baseline to your RealPresence Manager system. However, if you try to apply a security baseline that will disallow a configured function, the application will fail to update security settings that are in conflict with configured system functions.

How you use security settings is dependent on how you have configured certificates for your system.
Create a Security Baseline
When you add a security baseline, you save a list of the currently configured system security settings for the system.

Creating a security baseline allows you to easily audit your system against the baseline to see what changes were made since the baseline was created.

Procedure
2. Click Add.
3. In the Add Baseline dialog, enter a Name and Description for your baseline.
4. Click OK.

View a Security Baseline
You can view the configuration of an existing security baseline.

Procedure
2. Select a baseline.
3. Click View Details.
   - The configuration information will appear on the right.
4. Expand each item to view the settings.

Edit a Security Baseline
You can edit the security baselines that you created.


Procedure
2. Select a baseline.
3. Click Edit.
4. Modify the Name and Description if needed.
5. Click OK to save the changes.

Delete a Security Baseline
You can delete the security baselines that you created.


Procedure
2. Select a baseline.
3. Click Delete.
4. Click OK to confirm the deletion.
Apply Security Baseline
After you apply an existing security baseline to your system, the security options of the existing baseline will take effect.

You do not need to configure the settings one by one. After applying an existing security baseline, you can customize security options; for example, TLS and system hardening.

When you apply a security baseline, the system will reboot.

Procedure
2. Select an existing baseline.
3. Select More > Apply Baseline.
   The system will reboot.

Audit Your System Against a Security Baseline
You can audit your security settings at any time.

Auditing your system against a saved security baseline allows you to easily see how your settings differ from the settings within that security baseline.

Procedure
2. Select a security baseline from the list.
3. Click More > Audit Baseline to view the Audit Baseline Results.
4. Click Close.

Audit Baseline Results
The Audit Baseline Results dialog lists the security settings that differ from the selected Security Baseline and includes the following information.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Option</td>
<td>Lists the current security setting that differs from the selected security baseline.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baseline Value</td>
<td>Lists the value of the security setting that is stored in the selected security baseline.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current Setting Value</td>
<td>Lists the current value of the listed security setting.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configure Secure Communication
You can configure secured communications for the following protocols: HTTP, LDAP, FTP, SMTP, SNMP, Global Directory Services (GDS), and Outbound Telnet.

Procedure
1. Go to Admin > Management And Security > Secure Communication.
2. Enable secured communication settings for the protocols.

Related Links
Secure Communication Protocols on page 463

Secure Communication Protocols
Enable the secured communication protocols.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HTTP: Enforce Secured http</td>
<td>Enabling this option may impact services using HTTP, such as scheduled endpoint management, remote endpoint reboot, and MCU management using HTTP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDAP: Enforce Secured LDAP</td>
<td>After enabling secured LDAP, you must select either LDAPS or StratTLS as Security Level when configuring Enterprise Directory integration. See Enable Integration with the Enterprise Directory Server on how to configure Security Level.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FTP: Enforce Secured FTP</td>
<td>Enabling this option may impact services using FTP, such as backing up the system using FTP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMTP: Enforce Secured SMTP</td>
<td>Enabling this option may impact services using SMTP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SNMP: Enforce Secured SNMP v3</td>
<td>Enabling this option may impact services using SNMP v3. SNMP v2 will be disabled if you enable this option.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disable GDS (Global Directory Service)</td>
<td>After GDS is disabled, Polycom Global Address Book cannot be used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disable Outbound Telnet</td>
<td>After outbound telnet is disabled, the server controlled endpoint dialing out and hanging up functions will be impacted.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Related Links
Configure Secure Communication on page 462
Enable Integration with the Enterprise Directory Server on page 56

Configure TLS Settings
You can configure how the RealPresence Resource Manager deals with security certificates. How you set up your TLS settings determines the level of security you have for your system.
If you choose to use the High Security Baseline Settings, most of these settings cannot be changed. For example, you can require all clients attempting to access the system to present a certificate.
Note: After you install a full PKI chain, you should delete the self-signed certificates of any system on which the self-signed certificate has been replaced with a CA signed certificate. Self-signed certificates are not allowed when the system is in maximum security mode.

Procedure
2. Configure the TLS Settings.
3. Click Update.

Related Links
How Certificates Work on page 474
TLS Settings on page 464
Supported Ciphers on page 548
Security Certificates on page 474

TLS Settings
The following table explains the TLS settings.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cipher Mode</td>
<td>You can choose from the following cipher modes:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Standard Ciphers</strong> – When you choose <strong>Standard Ciphers</strong>, all the supported Ciphers can be used. See for all the supported Ciphers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Weak Ciphers</strong> – The supported Ciphers with key size less than 128 bits.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Strong Ciphers</strong> – The supported Ciphers with key size equal to or more than 128 bits.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When you use the <strong>High Security Baseline Settings</strong>, Cipher mode is set to Strong Ciphers and cannot be changed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Validate Certificates for Connections from Clients</td>
<td>This setting requires all clients (endpoints, peripherals, and users accessing the RealPresence Resource Manager system web interface over an encrypted protocol such as SSL or TLS) to send identity certificates in order to access the system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You must have at least one CA certificate installed if you want to validate external certificates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If you are using the UC-APL security settings, this setting is enabled by default, but can be configured. During First Time Setup you should uncheck this setting; it will be checked later after completing First Time Setup (this can help avoid connection problems from occurring during initial configuration).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Validate Certificates for Connections to Servers</td>
<td>This setting requires all servers (other Polycom systems such as the RealPresence DMA system or the RealPresence Collaboration server as well as third-party integrations), accessing the RealPresence Resource Manager system web interface over an encrypted protocol such as SSL or TLS) to send identity certificates in order to access the system. You must have at least one CA certificate installed if you want to validate external certificates. Mark the Verify Hostname setting if you want to verify the host name (IP address) of the server. With Verify Hostname enabled, IP address will be used to validate the CA certificate of RealPresence Resource Manager. Therefore the SAN must contain the IP address of the server (RealPresence Resource Manager), otherwise, verifying host name will fail.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable FIPS -140</td>
<td>When you enable FIPS-140, <strong>Strong Ciphers</strong> and <strong>Validate Certificates for Connections to Servers</strong> are automatically checked and cannot be disabled. You cannot use TLSv1.2 for Microsoft Active Directory connections if you enable FIPS-140.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check Revocation Status</td>
<td>This option is available only when you check the <strong>Validate Certificates for Connections from Clients</strong> or <strong>Validate Certificates for Connections to Servers</strong> check boxes. When enabled, RealPresence Resource Manager will check if the CA is revoked or not.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable CBC Ciphers</td>
<td>Enable CBC ciphers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable Static Ciphers</td>
<td>Enable static ciphers.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Related Links**

Configure TLS Settings on page 463

---

## Configure System Hardening

Operating system hardening is the process of securely configuring the system against the unauthorized access, intruders, hackers, and other security vulnerabilities.

System hardening makes the computer system more reliable, secure, efficient, and gives the optimized performance.

System hardening may also disable features that you want to use. Select these options carefully.

**Procedure**

1. Go to Admin > Management and Security > System Hardening.
2. Configure the settings for System Hardening.
System Hardening

The table explains the settings for system hardening.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enable NIDS</td>
<td>Allows the Network Instruction Detector System to run.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ignore Redirect Flag</td>
<td>Redirect flags will be ignored.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow ICMP (ping) responses</td>
<td>You can choose to disallow the RealPresence Resource Manager to respond to ping messages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Respond to ICMP (ping) requests with Destination Unreachable message</td>
<td>If you choose to allow the server to respond to ping requests, you can configure a Destination Unreachable message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow traces for troubleshooting</td>
<td>Troubleshooting traces are not encrypted, you can disable these.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow Linux console access</td>
<td>You can disable Linux console access to the RealPresence Resource Managerserver. This setting disables console access for all users.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disable Root User Login</td>
<td>Root user login is disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSH Access</td>
<td>Allow users to use SSH to access RealPresence Resource Manager system. Note: The Disable Permanently option is irrevocable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lock Bios</td>
<td>(Appliance Only) Bios access is protected by complicated password after enable Lock Bios.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Session Security and User Access

You can control various aspects of user sessions with the RealPresence Resource Manager system's web interface.

Change the System User Interface Timeout and Number of Sessions

You can modify the length of the user interface time out as well as set up parameters for how many active sessions are allowed.

Procedure

1. Go to Admin > Management and Security > Session Management.
2. Configure the settings on the Session Management page.
3. Click Update.
**Session Management Settings**

Configure the settings on the Session Management page.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RealPresence Resource Manager user interface timeout (minutes)</td>
<td>By default, the RealPresence Resource Manager system user interface times out after 10 minutes of inactivity. Use this procedure to change the timeout value for the user interface inactivity timer. Possible value is 5 to 60 minutes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum number of sessions</td>
<td>The number of simultaneous login sessions by all users. By default, the maximum number of sessions by all users is 50. Possible value is 2 to 50 sessions. This setting is available only when RealPresence Resource Manager is in maximum security mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note: If this limit is reached, but none of the logged-in users is an Administrator, the first Administrator user to arrive is granted access, and the system terminates the non-Administrator session that's been idle the longest.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum number of sessions per user</td>
<td>The number of simultaneous login sessions per user ID. By default, the maximum number of sessions per user ID is 5. Possible value is 1 to 10 sessions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Disable Linux Console Access**

By default, users can access the RealPresence Resource Manager system through the Linux console. You can disable this ability.

**Procedure**

1. Go to Admin > Management and Security > System Hardening.
2. Clear the Allow Linux console access option.
3. Click Update.

**Enabling and Editing Log in Banners**

The log in banner is the message that appears when users attempt to access the system. Users must acknowledge the message before they can log in. By default, the long banner field on the Banner Configuration page displays the required Standard Mandatory Notice and Consent Provision for systems operating in a maximum security environment. The short banner field displays a shortened version of this same notice.

The long banner is used for the RealPresence Resource Manager system log in banner.
The RealPresence Resource Manager system provides several sample long banners. You can use these banners as is or edit them to create a custom long banner. The RealPresence Resource Manager system provides a single short banner, which you can also customize. If you customize the banners, remember that the long banner message may contain up to 5000 characters. The short banner message may contain up to 1315 characters.

**Enable Banner**

You must enable banner to show the message when you log into the system.

**Procedure**

1. Go to Admin > Management and Security > Session Management.
2. Check the Enable Banner check box.
3. Click Update.

**Edit Banner**

The Banner Configuration page allows users assigned the Administrator role to customize the long and short login banners.

**Procedure**

1. Go to Admin > Management and Security > Banner Configuration.
2. From the Message drop-down menu, select the sample banner that most suits your needs.
3. Edit the banner as needed.
   - If you edit one of the existing banners, the Message menu selection changes to Custom.
4. Click Update.

**Set Local Account Lockout and Timeout**

You can configure failed login thresholds as well as how long a local user account can be locked out after a failed login.

**Procedure**

2. Configure the settings on the User Account Configuration page.
3. Click Update.

**Related Links**

[Working with Management Roles and Permissions](#) on page 441

**User Account Configuration Settings**

Configure the settings on the User Account Configuration page.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Account Lockout</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Failed login threshold</td>
<td>Specify how many consecutive login failures cause the system to lock an account. Possible value is 2 to 10.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Failed login window (hours)</td>
<td>Specify the time span within which the consecutive failures must occur in order to lock the account. Possible value is 1 to 24.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customized user account lockout duration (minutes)</td>
<td>Specify how long the user's account remains locked. Possible value is 1 to 480.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Account Inactivity**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Customize account inactivity threshold (days)</td>
<td>Specify the inactivity threshold that triggers disabling of inactive accounts. Possible value is 30 to 180.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Using Whitelist for IP Access

You can configure a whitelist of IP addresses that will be allowed to access the RealPresence Resource Manager system's web interface or SNMP information.

Once you enable the list, only IP addresses on the list will be allowed to access the web interface or SNMP information.

### Create a Whitelist to Manage Access

Add a whitelist to allow only specified IP addresses to access the RealPresence Resource Manager system's web interface or SNMP information.

**Procedure**

2. In the Whitelist screen, select the Enable Management Access Settings check box.
3. Click Add +.
4. In the Add Whitelist dialog, specify the IP address(s) to be included.
   - You can specify IP addresses individually or as a range. If IPv6 is enabled, you can enter either an IPv4 address or range or an IPv6 address or range.
5. Click Update to save the IP address to the whitelist.
6. Repeat these steps to continue adding IP addresses or ranges of IP addresses until finished.
7. Click Update on the main page to save your whitelist.

**Related Links**

- [Configuring Alert Settings](#) on page 568

### Disable Management Access Settings

After you disable Management Access, all IP addresses will be allowed to access the RealPresence Resource Manager system's web interface or SNMP information.

**Procedure**

2. In the Whitelist screen, cancel the Management Access Settings check box.
3. Click Update to save your changes.
Set Sensitive Information Disclosure

You can choose not to display some detailed error messages and build number by configuring Information Disclosure.

Procedure
2. Check Generalize Error Message to hide detailed error information or uncheck Build Number Display to hide build numbers on the GUI.

Set Password Requirements

If you have been assigned the Administrator role, you can configure password requirements for local users.

You can change, but not disable password, security requirements by specifying password age, length, and complexity.

Procedure
1. Go to Admin > Management and Security > Password Requirements.
2. Configure the settings on the Password Requirements page.

Password Requirement Settings

Configure the settings on the Password Requirements page.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Password Management</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum length (characters)</td>
<td>Specify the number of characters a password must contain. Possible value is 8 to 15.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum changed characters</td>
<td>Specify the number of characters that must be different from the previous password. Possible value is 1 to 4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum password age (days)</td>
<td>Specify how frequently a password can be changed. Possible value is 1 to 30.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum password age (days)</td>
<td>Specify at what age a password expires. Possible value is 30 to 180.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password warning interval (days)</td>
<td>Specify when users start to see a warning about their password expiration. Possible value is 1 to 7.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reject previous passwords</td>
<td>Specify how many of the user’s previous passwords the system remembers and won’t permit to be reused. Possible value is 8 to 16.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Password Complexity**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lowercase letters</td>
<td>Specify the number of lowercase letters (a-z) that a password must contain. Possible value is 1 or 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uppercase letters</td>
<td>Specify the number of uppercase letters (A-Z) that a password must contain. Possible value is 1 or 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numbers</td>
<td>Specify the number of digit characters (0-9) that a password must contain. Possible value is 1 or 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Special characters</td>
<td>Specify the number of non-alphanumeric keyboard characters that a password must contain. Possible value is 1 or 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum consecutive repeated characters</td>
<td>Specify how many sequential characters may be the same. Possible value is 1 to 4.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**OS Account Password Policy**

- **Apply the above rules to the OS account**
  - When enabled, all the password rule configuration is applied to OS password.

**Conference PIN Code**

- **Minimum length**
  - Specify the number of characters a PIN code must contain. Possible value is 4 to 9
- **Maximum length**
  - Specify the maximum number of a PIN code. Possible value is 9 to 16.
- **Maximum consecutive repeated characters**
  - Specify how many sequential characters may be the same. Possible value is 1 to 2.

**Reset System Passwords**

You can configure random passwords for the RealPresence Resource Manager internal system processes (including database and other internal 3rd party software services, excluding OS accounts and RealPresence Resource Manager application users).

Use these options only when you require the maximum security.

After resetting passwords, you need to re-integrate RealPresence Resource Manager and the RealPresence DMA systems for network topology synchronization. You may need to re-setup Polycom RealAccess data collection features.

**Procedure**

2. Click the Reset System Passwords button.
3. Click OK.

**Encryption**

The following table lists the product capabilities that are supported but not necessarily required.

Requirements vary based on the customer environment.
## Product Capabilities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Application</th>
<th>Encryption Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Protocol Used</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HTTP</td>
<td>Confidentiality</td>
<td>Management API: Server provides a local management interface over encrypted HTTP (used for Web GUI, Rest API and Provisioning)</td>
<td>SSL 3.0, TLS 1.0, TLS 1.1, TLS 1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Integrity</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDAP</td>
<td>Confidentiality</td>
<td>AD integration: Allows product to retrieve enterprise directory entries from a Microsoft active directory-compatible server over an encrypted LDAPs channel; Directory service: provides AD-compatible directory service for devices.</td>
<td>SSL 3.0, TLS 1.0, TLS 1.1, TLS 1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Integrity</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XMPP</td>
<td>Confidentiality</td>
<td>Presence service: Allows product to post its current presence state to a configured XMPP server and obtain presence information for other users/devices from XMPP server, using an encrypted TLS channel; Note: This product also supports the XMPP Chat service.</td>
<td>SSL 3.0, TLS 1.0, TLS 1.1, TLS 1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Integrity</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>File Stored Data</td>
<td>Confidentiality</td>
<td>System Backup/Restore encryption</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Upgrade file encryption</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote Password</td>
<td>Confidentiality</td>
<td>It is used to store the password of the account for login remote entity.</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SNMP Agent</td>
<td>Confidentiality</td>
<td>SNMP Agent: Allows SNMP console applications to connect to the product over an encrypted SNMPv3 channel.</td>
<td>SNMPv3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Authorize Users with JSON Web Token

The RealPresence Resource Manager system supports receiving a JSON Web Token (JWT) to authorize users who log in to Polycom® RealPresence® Mobile software.

You must have a remote key for the JWT authorization.

Note: This feature is only for specific companies.

Procedure

2. Enter your remote key.
3. Click Update.
Security Certificates

Topics:

- How Certificates Work
- Accepted Certificates
- Certificate Signing Requests
- Installing Certificates
- Removing Certificates
- OCSP Settings

User certificates between systems within your video conferencing environment (such as servers and endpoints) to build a trust/authentication and to support encryption.

Certificates confirm that the servers within your infrastructure can communicate and have the option to encrypt the data. Each digital certificate is identified by its public key. The collection of all public keys used in an enterprise to determine trust is known as a Public Key Infrastructure (PKI).

The CA, or certificate authority, is a single, centralized authority such as an enterprise's IT department or a commercial certificate authority that each computer on the network is configured to trust. Each server on the network has a public certificate that identifies it. When a client connects to a server, the server shows its signed public certificate to the client. The certificate authority signs the public certificates of those servers that clients should trust. Trust is established because the certificate has been signed by the certificate authority (CA), and the client has been configured to trust the CA.

Related Links
Configure TLS Settings on page 463
Configure UC Management Settings on page 417

How Certificates Work

Before installing any certificates or configuring Online Certificate Status Protocol (OCSP) responder settings, you must configure how the RealPresence Resource Manager system will use certificates.

This is done by configuring your TLS settings.

TLS settings also specify if client systems (endpoints and systems who access the RealPresence Resource Manager system user interface) are required to present certificates for authentication. Determine the degree in which you want to use certificates within your deployment and configure the settings appropriately.

Related Links
Configure TLS Settings on page 463
Accepted Certificates

To support encrypted communications and establish a minimum level of trust, the RealPresence Resource Manager system presents a self-signed digital certificate to its clients.

Typically, this default certificate is not trusted by clients. Web browsers that connect to the RealPresence Resource Manager system user interface will display a warning regarding the certificate.

Participation in a Public Key Infrastructure requires a RealPresence Resource Manager system to be configured with at least one root CA certificate, and a digital certificate signed by the CA that identifies the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

However, you will often need additional CA certificates to allow the system to properly validate a received certificate. Work with your network administrator to gather all required certificates needed in the environment. Here is a simple checklist:

• RealPresence Resource Manager Identify Certificate - created by the system via the Certificate Signing Request (CSR) (see Certificate Signing Requests) and signed by a CA within your network infrastructure.
• CA certificate for the CA that signs the RealPresence Resource Manager Identity Certificate
• A root CA certificate - this is the certificate for the root of the CA hierarchy.
• The CA certificates for all intermediate CAs between the root CA and the CA that signs the RealPresence Resource Manager identity certificate.
• The certificate used to validate responses from the OCSP responder.

Certificates come in several forms (encoding and protocol). The following table shows the forms that can be installed in the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Encoding</th>
<th>Standard/ FileType</th>
<th>Description and Installation Method</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| PEM (Base64-encoded ASCII text) | PKCS #7 standard P7B file | Certificate chain containing:
  • A signed certificate for the system.
  • The CA's public certificate.
  • Sometimes intermediate CA certificates. Upload file or paste into text box. |
| CER (single certificate)  | PEM (Base64-encoded ASCII text) | Upload file or paste into text box. |
| Certificate text (can be PKCS#7( P7B) or a single certificate) | Encoded certificate text copied from CA's email or secure web page. Paste into text box. |
### Certificate Signing Requests

The initial RealPresence Resource Manager system configuration permits the default, self-signed certificate.

Normal operation in a secure mode requires that you install a digital certificate signed by a trusted certificate authority that uniquely identifies the RealPresence Resource Manager system within your public key infrastructure. You need to create a certificate signing request for the RealPresence Resource Manager system and submit it to a certificate authority to be signed.

**Note:** Although it is common for a system to be identified by any number of digital certificates, each signed by a different CA, the RealPresence Resource Manager system currently only supports a single identity certificate.
Requirements for Certificate Signing Request

When you choose to use security certificates with your video infrastructure environment, you need to generate a CSR (Certificate Signing Request) for the Certificate Authority (CA) you are using.

Since the RealPresence Resource Manager system uses this single certificate for both TLS client and TLS server connections, it is important that the certificate template used on the CA enable both "clientAuth" and "serverAuth" use in the "Extended Key Usage" (EKU) field of the certificate. Related bits in the "Key Usage" extension should be set accordingly per RFC 5280 guidance. Work with the administrator of the CA to assure this.

When you create a certificate signing request (CSR) from RealPresence Resource Manager system, the system not only populates the CSR with the data that you enter in the Certificate Information dialog, but it also populates some of the CSR's subject alternative name (SAN) fields. This information is not visible in the Certificate Information dialog.

The RealPresence Resource Manager system generates a CSR containing all of the information in the following table for your configuration. You cannot edit or remove any of the fields, including those listed in the Optional Fields column. If your CA cannot accept a CSR that includes all of this information, you must generate the CSR and certificate manually using at least the data in the Required Fields column for your configuration. If you include the fields listed in the Optional Fields column, users can access the system using an abbreviated name without authentication errors.

The RealPresence Resource Manager system only uses the DNS format for SAN values, even though some values are IP addresses.

Required and Optional CSR SAN Fields

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Configuration</th>
<th>Required Fields</th>
<th>Optional Fields</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Single-server System</td>
<td>• SAN-DNS - Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN)</td>
<td>• SAN-DNS - Host short name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• SAN-DNS - System IP address (Ipv4)</td>
<td>• SAN-DNS - Ipv6 address, if used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Country Name (two-letter code)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• State or Province Name (full name)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Organizational Name(s) (one per line)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Email address</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Key Size</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local Redundant System</td>
<td>• Common Name - Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) of Virtual IP Address</td>
<td>SAN-DNS - Virtual host short name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• SAN-DNS - FQDN of Virtual IP address</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Country Name (two-letter code)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• State or Province Name (full name)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Organizational Name(s) (one per line)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Email address</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Key Size</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configurations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Configuration</th>
<th>Required Fields</th>
<th>Optional Fields</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Geo-Redundant System</td>
<td>• Common Name - Fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the virtual host name</td>
<td>SAN-DNS - Server 1 short name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• SAN-DNS - FQDN of the virtual host name</td>
<td>SAN-DNS - Server 2 short name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• SAN-DNS - First NIC IP address of server 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• SAN-DNS - First NIC IP address of server 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Country Name (two-letter code)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• State or Province Name (full name)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Organizational Name(s) (one per line)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Email address</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Key Size</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Create a Certificate Signing Request

You should create a certificate signing request after you have completed the network configuration of your system.

**Procedure**

   - The Certificate Management page displays the list of currently available certificates. By default, the system will have one server certificate identified as the Resource Manager self-signed certificate and one or more root certificates or certificate chains.
2. Click Create Certificate Signing Request.
   - If you see the warning “This action will overwrite any previously generated or uploaded private key. Do you want to continue?,” do one of the following:
     - If you are waiting for a previous request to be signed, click No. Because the RealPresence Resource Manager system currently supports only one identity certificate, only the most recent private key is retained. The digital certificate from the most recent CSR is the only certificate that will match the retained private key and is therefore the only identity certificate that can be installed.
     - If this is a new certificate signing request, click Yes to continue.
3. In the Certificate Request Data dialog, enter the identifying information for your RealPresence Resource Manager system and click OK.
   - A File Download dialog appears.
4. In the File Download dialog, click Save.
5. In the Save As dialog, enter a unique name for the file, browse to the location to which to save the file, and click Save.
6. Submit the file (or text within the file) as required by your certificate authority.

When your certificate authority has processed your request, it sends you a signed digital certificate for your RealPresence Resource Manager system. Some certificate authorities send only the signed digital certificate while others send all of the certificates that form the chain of trust (including intermediate and/or root CA certificates). These certificates may arrive as email text, email attachments, or be available on a secure web page.
Certificate Request Data

Enter the identifying information for your RealPresence Resource Manager system in the Certificate Request Data dialog.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Signature Algorithm</td>
<td>You can select either SHA256 or SHA1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country Name</td>
<td>Two-letter (ASCII only) ISO 3166 country code in which the server is located.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>State and Province Name</td>
<td>Full state or province name (ASCII only) in which the server is located.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Locality Name</td>
<td>City name (ASCII only) in which the server is located.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organization Name</td>
<td>Enterprise name (ASCII only) at which the server is located.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organizational Unit Name</td>
<td>Optional: Subdivision (ASCII only) of the enterprise at which the server is located. Multiple values are permitted, one per line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Common Name</td>
<td>The FQDN (fully-qualified domain name) of the system (read-only), as defined in the network settings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E-mail Address</td>
<td>Email address (ASCII only) for a contact at the enterprise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subject Alternative Name</td>
<td>Your CA must support at least six SAN fields.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Installing Certificates

You must configure your network settings before you install certificates.

If you update your network settings (for example, if you change FQDN or change the network protocol IPv4 to IPv6), you must reconfigure certificates for your system.

**Note:** Before changing server certificate, ensure that FIPS mode is disabled. You may lose the RealPresence Resource Manager GUI access after changing server certificate with FIPS enabled.

Install a Certificate

Before installing a certificate or certificate chain provided by the certificate authority, be sure that you received the certificate or certificate chain in one of the following forms:

- A PFX, P7B, or single certificate file that you've saved on your computer.
- PEM-format encoded text that you received in an e-mail or on a secure web page.

Installing or removing certificates requires a system restart. When you install a certificate, the change is made to the certificate store immediately, but the system will not recognize or use the new certificate until it restarts and reads the changed certificate store.
Procedure

2. Click Install Certificates.
   A warning appears stating that changes made to the certificates will require a system restart to take effect.
3. In the Install Certificates dialog, do one of the following:
   • If you have a PKCS#12, PFX, P7B, or single certificate file, click Upload Certificate, enter the password (if any) for the file, and browse to the file or enter the path and file name. PKCS #12 is not supported when the RealPresence Resource Manager system is in maximum security mode or when Strong Ciphers (FIPS) mode is being used.
   • If you have PEM-format text, copy the certificate text, click Paste Certificate, and paste it into the text box at the bottom of the dialog. You can paste multiple PEM certificates one after the other.
4. Click OK.
   If you are uploading a signed identity certificate for the first time, it will replace the RealPresence Resource Manager system self-signed certificate.
5. Verify that the new signed certificate has replaced the default self-signed certificate:
   a. In the list of certificates, select the RealPresence Resource Manager certificate and click View Certificate Details.
   b. In the Certificate Details dialog, verify that the information in the Issued To sections matches the FQDN of the RealPresence Resource Manager and the certificate from the certificate authority and that the information in the Issued By section matches the expected name of the certificate authority.
   c. Click Close to close the dialog.

Use the same procedure to install other certificates as needed (intermediate CA certificates, root CA certificates, certificate used to validate OCSP responses). You need to install all CA certificates that are part of the chain of trust for any client or server identity certificate that the system may be presented and be required to validate on any of its external connections. Work with your network administrator to determine this list.

View Certificates and Certificate Details

You can view currently installed certificates and certificate details, including expiration dates.

Procedure

2. The Certificate Management page displays the list of currently installed certificates.
   By default, the system will display only one certificate. It will be identified as the RealPresence Resource Manager self-signed certificate. When other certificates are installed, they will display along with the server identity certificate.
3. To view more information about a certificate, select the certificate and click View Certificate Details from the More drop-down list.
   The Certificate Details dialog appears.
4. Use the arrows to reveal or hide information.
   Click Close when you are done.
The Certificate Management page has the following information.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Status</td>
<td>The status of the certificate. Possible values include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Certificate is valid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Certificate is invalid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alias</td>
<td>The certificate name as assigned by the CA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Common Name</td>
<td>This is most often the fully qualified domain name of the server to which the certificate has been issued. If the certificate identifies a client (trusted peer) it might contain the name of a user or the name of an endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purpose</td>
<td>The type of certificate. Possible values are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• RealPresence Resource Manager self-signed—the system identity certificate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Trusted root certificate—the root certificate for a CA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Intermediate certificate—certificate from an intermediate CA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Trusted peer—certificate from any server or computer that is not a CA but whose identity is trusted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expiration</td>
<td>The expiration date of the certificate.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Certificate Details dialog displays the following information.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Certificate Info</td>
<td>Purpose and alias of the certificate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Issued To</td>
<td>Information about the entity to which the certificate was issued and the certificate serial number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Issued By</td>
<td>Information about the issuer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Validity</td>
<td>Issue and expiration dates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fingerprints</td>
<td>SHA1 and MD5 fingerprints (checksums) for confirming certificate.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Removing Certificates

You can delete certificates from the system, but the RealPresence Resource Manager system prevents you from deleting any certificate that breaks the identity certificate's chain of trust.

To delete these certificates, you must first install new CA certificates and the identity certificate must be replaced.

There are two kinds of certificate removal:

- Removing the certificate of a Trusted Root CA so that the system no longer trusts certificates signed by that certificate authority.
- Removing the signed certificate currently in use so that the system reverts to using the default self-signed certificate.

Removing a signed certificate also removes the certificate of the Trusted Root CA that signed it, along with any intermediate certificates provided by that certificate authority.

Installing or removing certificates requires a system restart and terminates all active conferences. When you install or remove a certificate, the change is made to the certificate store immediately, but the system can't implement the change until it restarts and reads the changed certificate store.

For your convenience, you're not required to restart and apply a change immediately. This permits you to perform multiple installs or removals before restarting and applying the changes. But when you're finished making changes, you must select Restart to Apply Saved Changes to restart the system and finish your update. Before you begin, make sure there are no active conferences and you're prepared to restart the system when you're finished.

Remove a Trusted Root CA's Certificate

You can remove a trusted root CA certificate so that the system no longer trusts certificates signed by that certificate authority.

Procedure

2. In the certificates list, select the certificate you want to delete.
3. Click Delete Certificate.
4. When asked to confirm, click OK.
   A dialog informs you that the certificate has been deleted.
5. Click Restart to Apply Saved Changes, and when asked to confirm that you want to restart the system so that certificate changes can take effect, click OK.
Regenerate a Default Self-Signed Certificate

You need to update your certificate(s) whenever you make network configuration changes such as changing the host name or IP of your RealPresence Resource Manager system.

After you generate a default certificate, you will need to restart your system.

**Procedure**

2. Click Regenerate Resource Manager Certificate from the More drop-down list.
3. Click Restart to Apply Saved Changes, and when asked to confirm that you want to restart the system so that certificate changes can take effect, click OK.
4. After the system restarts, log back in, return to Management and Security > Certificates Management, and verify that the system has reverted to the default self-signed certificate by confirming the information under Issued To and Issued By that the default self-signed certificate has replaced the CA-signed certificate.

**OCSP Settings**

The RealPresence Resource Manager system supports using OCSP (Online Certificate Status Protocol) to verify the status of a certificate.

This is an alternative to manually uploading CRLs (Certificate Revocation Lists). If your network does not include an OCSP responder, the RealPresence Resource Manager system parses individual certificates for a CRL Distribution Point URL. There is no need to upload a CRL to complete your certificate validation.

When configuring the RealPresence Resource Manager system to use an OCSP responder, you can either use the default OCSP information that is included in the certificates you receive or explicitly define the OCSP responder location. You should only define an explicit OCSP responder location if your deployment relies on a global OCSP responder.

After you configure OSCP settings, you will need to restart your system.

**Procedure**

2. Select the Enable Online Certificate Status Protocol (OCSP) check box if your organization's PKI includes OCSP responders for revocation checking.
   This check box is automatically enabled when your system is in maximum security mode.
3. Use the OCSP Certificate drop-down list to select one of the installed certificates to use to verify OCSP responses.
   Which certificate to use depends on your OSCP server configuration. Consult with your security administrator.
4. Depending on your security configuration, you can enter the URL of an OCSP Responder location to use.
   During first-time setup, it is recommended that you leave this field blank. This can ensure that you don't have connection problems during initial configuration.
   a. If OCSP is enabled and no responder URL has been specified:
      • If the certificate contains an OCSP URL it will be used to check revocation. The OCSP URL is found in the certificate's AIA field.
• If the certificate doesn’t contain the OCSP URL then if the certificate contains a CDP it will be used to check revocation.
• If the certificate doesn’t contain a CDP revocation check fails and certificate isn’t trusted.

b. If OCSP is enabled and a global responder URL has been specified the global responder is used to check revocation.
  • If the global responder cannot be contacted and the certificate contains a CDP it will be used to check revocation.
  • If the certificate doesn’t contain a CDP revocation check fails and the certificate isn’t trusted.

5. Click Verify OCSP Configuration.
   The system verifies that the OCSP configuration is correct. If the OCSP URL as well as the OCSP certificate, the configuration will also be verified as correct.

6. Click Save OCSP Configuration.
   The system saves this configuration.

7. After making any changes, you must reboot the system.

Note: When you enable OCSP and install a CA certificate whose Authority Information Access (AIA) or CRL Distribution Points (CDP) pointing to a URL outside the corporate network, the RealPresence Resource Manager system accesses the URL to validate the certificate. If there’s no network, a warning message prompts saying that “The certificate revocation status is undetermined”, but you can continue without validating the certificate.
Configuring Multitenancy

Topics:

- Planning For Multi-Tenancy
- Working within a Multi-Tenancy Environment
- Configure Areas

The RealPresence Resource Manager system supports multitenancy with its areas feature.

Multitenancy enables you to use the system to service multiple internal or external customers. Each area serves a system tenant by partitioning off a collection of resources including users, associated endpoints, and network devices.

You can delegate administration and conferencing duties for areas to users within that area or by a set of superusers who can view and manage all areas. You can set up flexible scenarios by having an area scheduler or area operator for each respective tenant or area. Otherwise, you can limit area administration tasks to users specifically allowed to manage that area.

For example, in an enterprise deployment, the RealPresence Resource Manager system administrator can divide up users and resources according to department and then delegate video conferencing duties to users within that area. This enables the system administration duties to remain with a specialized video IT department, while you delegate video conference scheduling to users within specific areas. Areas also enable the administrator to run area-specific reports on how specific departments within the enterprise use video conferencing.

Note: The Areas feature of the RealPresence Resource Manager system is a licensed feature. Contact your sales representative for more details.

Planning For Multi-Tenancy

You should plan your multi-tenancy environment to ensure scalability and efficient use of resources.

Setting up the RealPresence Resource Manager system for multi-tenancy should use the following best practices:

- RealPresence Resource Manager system does not support integration with more than one Active Directory or multi-forest Active Directory integrations. If you need to support users that reside in different Active Directories or different Active Directory forests, you cannot use the Resource Manager system's integration with Active Directory feature. You will need to use only local RealPresence Resource Manager system users. To save time, you can import users into your RealPresence Resource Manager system.
- Software updates cannot be assigned to an area.
- You must use dynamic provisioning when areas are enabled. Other methods of endpoint provisioning are not supported. See Admin Config Provisioning Profiles.
- RealPresence DMA systems, Polycom VBP systems, RealPresence Access Director systems, and SBCs (Acme Packet Net-Net Enterprise Session Director) are not area-aware, which means they cannot be assigned to an area.
Resources can belong to only one area, with the exception of RealPresence DMA Pool Orders. If you want to share network devices between areas, you can leave them in no area.

You can assign an area user an area role according to the tasks the user needs to perform in the RealPresence Resource Manager system. Area roles restrict user tasks to the area or areas in which they are allowed to manage.

Some system-wide administration tasks cannot be delegated to users with only area-specific roles. These include site topology and conference templates. System maintenance and set up must also be done by a user with a system role.

Working within a Multi-Tenancy Environment

When using the RealPresence Resource Manager system’s area feature, most aspects of the system become “area-aware” which means that management of the system and conferencing tasks may become different according to the role of the user.

User Roles within a Multi-Tenancy Environment

When you enable areas for your RealPresence Resource Manager system, you have access to additional user roles to help you delegate responsibilities to users within specific areas.

System Roles

System roles are used for users who are required to perform RealPresence Resource Manager tasks for all areas.

RealPresence Resource Manager users that have a system role will be able to view and modify resources from all areas because their role includes the View and/or Modify All Areas permission.

System roles include: Administrator, Advanced Scheduler, Auditor, Device Administrator, Operator, Scheduler, and View-Only Scheduler.

Area Roles

An area role delegates RealPresence Resource Manager responsibilities to a user that needs to manage the resources in one or more areas, but not all areas.

A user must be assigned a RealPresence Resource Manager area role in order to perform his role-related tasks. In addition to being assigned a role, you must enable that user to manage the area(s) in which he needs to perform his responsibilities.

You can also allow a user to manage areas to which he does not belong. For example, you can allow an area scheduler to schedule users from two areas into conferences. For this, you would need to configure this user to manage both areas.

Area roles include: area administrator, area operator, and area scheduler.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role</th>
<th>Permissions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Area Scheduler</td>
<td>Schedule Conferences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Scheduling Level = Basic</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Role Permissions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role</th>
<th>Permissions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Area Operator         | Conference operator  
|                       | Reports  
|                       | Troubleshooting  
|                       | Schedule conferences, both basic and advanced.  
|                       | Schedule-able resource monitor. The area operator can monitor MCUs and RealPresence DMA Pool orders that are in the areas he manages or in the common pool (no area). |
| Area Administrator    | Add endpoints  
|                       | Manage users and groups  
|                       | Monitor conferences  
|                       | Monitor network devices  
|                       | View-only scheduler  
|                       | Directory setup  
|                       | Provision devices using existing profiles (cannot create provisioning profiles)  
|                       | Update software on devices using existing software updates (cannot create software updates)  
|                       | Add and edit users, groups, rooms, and other resources  
|                       | View Reports for the area(s) they manage. No system-wide reports will be available.  
|                       | Monitor the system via the Admin Dashboard. System-wide pods will not be available. Each sub-pod will have its source information filtered by area. |

## Area Conference Participants

Although conferences are area-specific, an area scheduler can add users from any area that he manages.

For example, if an area scheduler for the blue area was also granted permission to manage the yellow area, he can add conference participants from both the blue and yellow areas.

A system scheduler is able to schedule conferences in all areas and invite users from all areas.

Note that if a conference has participants, rooms, and/or guests from multiple areas, then RealPresence Resource Manager users will be able to see the area names of only the areas that they belong to or can manage. Participants, rooms and guests that belong to other areas are presented as a “Guest of” the conference’s area.
Area Address Books

An address book must belong to only one area or to no area, but can contain users, endpoints, rooms, and guests from multiple areas.

An address book is accessible to only users who are also assigned to the area that the address book belongs to. A user with a system role sees all address books, but a user with only an area role sees only address books that belong to the areas that the user belongs to or to areas in which the user manages.

A user that views the contents of an address book that has members from multiple areas can view only those members that belong to areas the user has access to. A user with a non-area-specific role can see address book members from all areas, but a user with only area-specific roles can see only members that belong to the areas the user manages.

From an endpoint, an address book is accessible only if the logged-in user and address book belong to the same area or if the logged-in user manages the area the address book belongs to. When an endpoint user views the contents of a cross-area address book, the available address book members include:
  • Members that belong to the same area as the user who is logged in to the endpoint
  • Members that belong to other areas that the logged in user manages

Also note that changing the area that an address book is assigned to does not affect the areas of its members.

Area User Groups

User groups can be assigned to one area or no area.

Although it can contain users from multiple areas. Users with the system role of administrator or the role of area administrator are allowed to create and edit user groups. If the area administrator manages more than one areas, he can add users from any area that he manages to the user group. Remember that system administrators automatically have permission to view/manage all areas, and can therefore add any user to a user group.

However, even if a group has users from multiple areas, area administrators can only view users within the group that belong to the areas they manage.

Changing the area of the group does not affect the area of the users in the group.

Area Users, Rooms, and Associated Endpoints

Endpoints and rooms follow strict rules of staying in the same area of the user they are associated with.

The RealPresence Resource Manager system ensures that a user and the associated endpoint(s) belong to the same area. If one moves to another area or no area, the others move with it. The same is true for rooms and their associated endpoints. More specifically:
  • If a user or room is put into an area or moved to a different area, all of their associated endpoints will be automatically updated to the same new area.
  • If one of the associated endpoints of a user or room is moved to a different area, the change will propagate to the associated user or room and any other endpoints owned by the user or room.

A warning message notifies the logged-in user about the change and provides opportunity to cancel the operation. The only way to move an endpoint without also moving the owner and the owner's other endpoints is to disassociate the endpoint from the user or room before changing the area of the endpoint.
Area Conference Guests

When a new guest is added to a conference and saved to the guest book, the guest is configured to belong to the area that the conference belongs to.

This area information of the guest is persisted in the guest book. If the conference's area changes after this point, the guest's area will not change. Users who can manage more than one area can change the guest's area by using the editing the guest book entry.

Using the Common Pool in a Multi-Tenancy Environment

If a network device or RealPresence DMA pool order does not belong to an area, it is said to be in the “common pool” and therefore is available for the system to use for any area.

Any user who manages an area and has permission to perform tasks within that area can view resources that are in the common pool.

For example, an area operator can schedule a conference on an RealPresence Collaboration Server (RMX) system that is explicitly assigned to the area to which the operator belongs or the scheduler can use a RealPresence Collaboration Server (RMX) system that belongs to the common pool.

Area Conference Templates

A user must have a system administrator role in order to create new conference templates.

As a best practice, the same user responsible for system set up should be responsible for creating conference templates.

Conference templates can be assigned to an specific area and also associated with users with a specific role.

As a best practice, when you create a conference template, give it an area-specific name. This is especially helpful if you allow an area scheduler to scheduler conferences for more than one area.

When a scheduler (area or system) schedules a conference, he is required to use a conference template from the same area as the conference area or a template that is assigned to no area (common pool).

Configure Areas

You must configure your system for areas.

Most of the configuration tasks can be completed by a user with the administrator role or area administrator role. However, network devices must be added by a user with the device administrator role.

You need to enable your system for areas and then add an area for each tenant that will use your system.

Procedure

1. Enable the areas feature.
2. Add the areas that you want to use.
3. Customize the logos for each area, if desired.
4. Add network devices to areas.
   - This task must be done by a user who has the device administrator role.
5. Import users into each area.
This step is necessary if you need to support users who do not reside in your single LDAP directory. RealPresence Resource Manager system does not support integration with multiple LDAP directories.

6. Assign roles to area users.
   By default, area users all have the area scheduler role. You need to determine which, if any, of the area users will be given the area administrator or area operator roles.

7. Designate which users will manage each area.
   Users must be allowed to manage an area in order to perform the tasks associated with their area role. You can allow users to manage one area, no area, multiple areas (including areas to which they do not belong).

8. Add resources to areas.
   This task can be done by the RealPresence Resource Manager system administrator, or a user with the area administrator who is also allowed to manage the area to which he is adding endpoints/rooms.

9. Add conference templates to areas.
   This task needs to be done by a user with the administrator role.

10. Configure site topology.
11. Add billing codes, if preferred.

Create Areas for Tenants
You can create a new area for each new tenant.

Procedure
1. Create a new area for the new tenant.
2. Give the area a name that appropriately identifies the tenant.
3. Create a user that will manage this area.
   You can do either of the following (or both).
     • Add at least one user to the tenant area who has the Area Administrator role and is set up to manage the area. That person can then manage their area themselves, including adding other users to manage the area and its resources.
     • You can also allow a user that belongs to no area or another area to manage the area and perform tasks, Assign Users to Manage an Area(s).

Setting up Area Management
The RealPresence Resource Manager provides you flexibility when setting up how to manage an area.

Managing the Area with System Roles
You can either have a set of users with system roles who manage the administrative and conference scheduling tasks for an area or you can set up area users with these roles and responsibilities.

In order for a user to perform tasks within ALL areas, a user must be given a system role that includes the View and/or Modify all Areas permission. All system roles have this permission by default.

Managing the Area with Area Roles
In order for a user to perform tasks within a single area, a user must be given the following:
• An area role
• Be configured to manage the area to which they need to perform their tasks.

When associating a user with an area role, you must also explicitly configure that user to manage the area. If the user is not allowed to manage the area, he cannot perform the tasks associated with his role. Area users can be configured to manage more than one area, see Assign Users to Manage an Area(s).

Assigning Resources to an Area
You need to assign resources to an area.

Resources that belong exclusively to an area must be assigned to the area. Most resources can be created and assigned to an area by an Administrator or an Area Administrator.

Network devices must be assigned to an area by someone with the Device Administrator role.

---

**Note:** The Administrator role is the only pre-defined role that can add or edit conference templates.

---

Resources Belong to One or No Area
The following resources need to be assigned to one area or no area.

• Users
• Rooms
• Guests
• Groups
• Address Books
• Endpoints
• Network Devices
• Conferences
• Conference Templates
• Machine Accounts
• Peripherals

Resources Belong to One or More Areas (or no Area)
Resources that can be associated with one or more areas or no areas are:

• RealPresence DMA Pool Orders

Adding Users to An Area
When you add users, create user names using the email address format.

This will ensure that all user names are unique. Otherwise two people named Bob Smith belonging to different tenants may end up with the same user name. By following an email address format, Bob Smith in TenantA could have bsmith@tenantA.com as a user name and Bob Smith in TenantB could have bsmith@tenantB.com.
Configuring Site Topology

You can use site topology to limit the bandwidth used by each tenant.

This can be accomplished with a combination of a carefully organized site topology and the Site Statistics tool.

You can assign a site to a particular area. A site cannot be shared between areas.

Use the following guidelines:

• As a best practice, use a naming convention that identifies the area in the site name. For example, all sites in the blue area should be named blue_<sitename>.

• Site names should be unique across the system. That is, two areas should not use the same site name.

• At a minimum, each site in a blue area should have a site link to the service provider or the internet cloud. It is best practice that the purpose of each link be obvious from the site link name. Any site link being used to measure bandwidth for a specific tenant should be named in such a way as to make this purpose clear.

Endpoints and devices should be associated with the same area to which their site belongs or they may not be visible to area constrained users when searching by site.

Figure 1: Site Topology for Multiple Tenants

Associating Billing Codes with Conferences

The RealPresence Resource Manager system supports associating a billing code with a conference. This feature is only available when areas are enabled.

You can define billing codes within an area that can then be assigned to conferences. When an area scheduler creates a conference within an area that includes billing codes, the scheduler can associate a billing code with that conference.
Billing codes are included in CDRs. This enables you to track how much each department (billing code) within an area is using video resources. Service providers can use this information to create billing breakdowns for their tenants.

Users with the Administrator role can create new billing codes for an area. Users with the area scheduler or area operator role are allowed to associate a billing code with a conference when they schedule the conference.

Add a New Billing Code
Billing codes are supported when areas are enabled.
You can add a billing code(s) to an area when you create an area or when you edit an existing area.

Procedure
1. Navigate to Admin > Areas.
2. Click Add to add a new area or select an area in the list and click Edit.
3. In the Edit an Area dialog, click Billing Code.
4. On the Billing Code page, do the following:
   a. In the Billing Code field, enter the billing code you want to use.
   b. Enter a description for the billing code.
   c. Click Apply.
5. Click OK.

Delete a Billing Code
Users with the administrator role can delete billing codes.

Procedure
1. Navigate to Admin > Areas.
2. Select an area in the list and click Edit.
3. In the Edit an Area dialog, click Billing Code.
4. On the Billing Code page, do the following:
   a. Select a billing code.
   b. Click Delete.
5. Click OK.

Note: To clear the billing code fields after an existing billing code in the list has been selected, click Apply.

Associating a Billing Code with a Conference
When creating a new conference, you can select a billing code after you select conference participants.

Viewing Billing Code Information
The Conference Usage Report now includes billing code information for each conference.
Billing code information is also included in conference information sent to the Polycom RealPresence DMA system and the Polycom RealPresence Collaboration Server (RMX) systems.
When monitoring conferences, you can also filter conferences by billing code.
Managing Areas

Topics:

- Enable Areas
- Add an Area
- Edit an Area
- Viewing All Areas
- View Information for a Specific Area
- Remove an Area
- Customizing the Area Logos (system and CMA Desktop) for the Area

You can manage areas on the RealPresence Resource Manager GUI.

Enable Areas

Before you can manage area and use area related features, you need to first enable areas.

Procedure

1. Go to Admin > Areas.
2. Select More > Configure Areas.
3. In the Configure Areas dialog, mark the Enable Areas Functions in Resource Manager check box.
4. Click OK and log in again.

Add an Area

You can add an area.

Before adding an area, review the Create Areas for Tenants topic.

Procedure

1. Go to Admin > Areas > Areas.
2. Click Add + to add a new area.
3. Click Set Resource Manager System Logo.
4. In the Set Resource Manager System Logo dialog box, browse to a file to upload and click Upload.
5. When the upload is complete, click OK.
6. Click Set CMA Desktop Logo.
7. In the Set CMA Desktop Logo dialog box, browse to a file to upload and click Upload.
8. When the upload is complete, click OK.
10. On the **Billing Code** page, do the following:
   a. Click **Add** to add a new billing code.
   b. In the **Billing Code** field, enter the billing code you want to use.
   c. Enter a description for the billing code.
   d. Click **OK**.
11. Click **OK**.

**Edit an Area**

You can edit an area.

**Procedure**

1. Navigate to **Admin > Areas**.
2. Select an area to edit and click **Edit**.
3. Click **Set Resource Manager System Logo**.
4. In the **Set Resource Manager System Logo** dialog box, browse to a file to upload and click **Upload**.
5. When the upload is complete, click **OK**.
6. Click **Set CMA Desktop Logo**.
7. In the **Set CMA Desktop Logo** dialog box, browse to a file to upload and click **Upload**.
8. When the upload is complete, click **OK**.
9. Click **Billing Code and** do the following:
   a. In the **Billing Code** field, enter the billing code you want to use.
   b. Enter a description for the billing code.
   c. Click **Apply**.
10. Click **OK**.

**Viewing All Areas**

You can view the list of existing areas from **Admin > Areas** if you have the Administrator role.

The following information is available.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Area Name</td>
<td>Name for the area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Description of the area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Area Resource Manager Users</td>
<td>Number of users that can manage the selected area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endpoints</td>
<td>Number of endpoints that belong to the selected area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rooms</td>
<td>Number of rooms that belong to the selected area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Members</td>
<td>Number of users that belong to the selected area.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**View Information for a Specific Area**

You can view all information for a specific area including resources and users.

You must be assigned the Administrator role to do this task.

**Procedure**

1. Go to Admin > Areas.
2. Click an area in the list.
3. Select the area information from the More drop-down list.
4. The following View actions are available.
   - The details you can view from each action is dependent on the type of resource it is.

**Remove an Area**

When you no longer need an area, you can either move the area's contents to another area or delete the area and all its contents.

A user must have the Administrator role in order to move or delete an area.

Consider which of these approaches is right for the area:

**Procedure**

1. Backup your data.
2. Click **Delete** to delete the area and its resources.

If you wish to keep some of the area's resources, but delete the rest, then:

**Procedure**

1. Edit the resources you would like to keep and reassign them to other areas or to no area.
2. Backup your data.
3. Click Delete to delete the area and its remaining resources.

**Move the Contents of an Area**

If you wish to delete the area, but keep all of its resources in the RealPresence Resource Manager system, then you can move the contents of the area.

When you move the contents of an area:

- All resources will now belong to the specified destination (an area or no area).
- The area and any custom logos are deleted.
- Any users who managed the moved area will not be automatically allowed to manage the new area. If you want the moved users to manage the destination area, you will need to explicitly edit the user to do so.

**Procedure**

1. Go to Admin > Areas.
2. Select the area.
3. Click More > Move Contents.
4. Select the available area from the Move the objects associated with the area being deleted to area drop down list.
5. Click OK.

**Deleting an Area and its Resources**

If you no long need an area and its resources, you can delete them from the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

Before deleting an area, you must manually un-assign any network devices and sites from the area. You should also verify that there are no ongoing conferences or area users involved in a conference belonging to another area.

When you delete an area, the following actions take place:

- All future conferences are canceled.
- All past conferences are associated with no area (None).
- All pool orders are disassociated from the area.

Users, rooms and endpoints from this area that have been participants, or are invited to be participants, in other areas' past or future conferences are disassociated from those conferences, such that:

- RealPresence Resource Manager system conference reports for other areas will no longer include this area's participants.
- Future conferences for other areas will no longer include any participant from this deleted area. If a future conference is left with only one participant as a result, the conference will be canceled and the remaining participant will be notified.

If the previous action leaves any future conference in another area with only one participant, then the conference will be cancelled and the remaining participant will be notified by email.

If a conference template belonging to this area is referenced by a conference in another area, the template will be moved to no area. Otherwise the template is deleted.

All other resources in this area are deleted.

CDR data is not deleted or modified.
Note: If an area is still in use when you try to delete it (a conference being scheduled, a resource being added), the area may not be completely deleted. If you receive an **Unable to Delete Area** message, it will detail resources that still need to be deleted. You will need to manually delete or re-assign these resources and then rerun the Delete Area action. Before deleting an area, you must manually un-assign any network devices and sites from the area. You should also verify that there are no ongoing conferences or area users involved in a conference belonging to another area.

---

**Customizing the Area Logos (system and CMA Desktop) for the Area**

You can customize the logos that a RealPresence Resource Manager system’s area user sees when they log in to the RealPresence Resource Manager system or to their CMA Desktop client.

You must have the administrator role in order to customize logos. You can only customize logos for areas that you are allowed to manage.

**Customize the System Log for an Area**

You can customize the system log for an area.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Admin > Area > Area Logos**.
2. Select an area of interest and click **More > Set Resource Manager System Logo**.
3. In the **Resource Manager System Logo** dialog box, browse to a file to upload and click **Upload**.
4. When the upload is complete, click **OK**.

**Customize the CMA Desktop Logo**

You can customize the CMA Desktop logo for CMA Desktop users within the area.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Admin > Area > Area Logos**.
2. Select an area of interest and click **More > Set CMA Desktop Logo**.
3. In the **Resource Manager System Logo** dialog box, browse to a file to upload and click **Upload**.
4. When the upload is complete, click **OK**.
System Redundancy

Topics:

- How Redundancy Works
- Configuration Considerations for Redundancy
- Interoperability Considerations for Redundancy
- Local versus Geographic Redundancy
- Managing a Redundant System

A redundant RealPresence Resource Manager system configuration offers high availability with higher reliability and greater call success by ensuring that your system is always available.

The redundancy configuration requires two RealPresence Resource Manager system servers. The two servers are running as active or standby modes. For both servers in redundancy, system services are provided via the first NIC and the redundancy connection must go through the second NIC. The service interface of RealPresence Resource Manager is directed through the first NIC and the redundant interface is the second NIC.

Related Links
Request a Software License File on page 73

How Redundancy Works

A redundant configuration (high availability) includes two servers: a primary server and a redundant server.

The primary server is actively involved in managing endpoints and monitoring conferences. It actively responds to network traffic routed to it. In a normal operational state, the primary server is the active server. In a failover state, the redundant server is the active server.

The active or inactive server communicates every 1000 milliseconds using a private IP address and port 5405. If the inactive server does not receive 4 consecutive heartbeats (i.e., four seconds) from the active server, it will promote itself to being the active server.

The most common reasons for system failovers are power failures and network disconnections. Failures in services running on the primary server also initiate a failover.

If both the primary and redundant servers start simultaneously (for example if both are in the same location and recover from a power failure at the same time), both servers will initially attempt to become the active server. Whichever server starts first becomes the active server.

An administrator can force a failover via the Switch Server Role function in the RealPresence Resource Manager system user interface.

Also, the failover to the redundant server occurs seamlessly because the endpoints are registered with either an FQDN or a virtual IP address, which remains constant. However, endpoints that are dynamically managed will lose the connection as the provisioning service will stop for approximately eight minutes.

During a failover:
• Users logged into the RealPresence Resource Manager system user interface are disconnected and returned to the main RealPresence Resource Manager system web page. Users can log back in once the failover is completed.

• Users in the middle of an operation may get an error message, because the system is not available to respond to a request.

• The redundant server becomes the active server. Its services start in an order designed to prevent the new active server from being flooded with requests from endpoints during startup. The order is:
  ◦ Database Service
  ◦ Apache Service
  ◦ Jserver
  ◦ Device Manager
  ◦ Site Topology Service
  ◦ Dial Rules Service
  ◦ Global Address Book Service
  ◦ Polycom Cascade Service
  ◦ Polycom Scheduler Service
  ◦ GateKeeper Service
  ◦ Openfire Service

A system failover usually takes approximately 8 minutes for all provisioning services to continue.

Once a failover to a redundant server occurs, the redundant server manages all system operations until another failover occurs or if the administrator switches back to the original primary server via the Switch Server Roles function in the RealPresence Resource Manager system user interface.

Note: The RealPresence Resource Manager system does not automatically switch to the primary server when the primary server becomes available. An administrator may Switch Server Roles if needed.

Configuration Considerations for Redundancy

Consider the following:

• During first-time set up for each server, use the same NTP server for both servers. You cannot modify the NTP server settings after setting up redundancy.

• Ensure each system uses the same RealPresence Resource Manager software version.

• (Appliance) Ensure each system uses the same server type for R620, R630, and R640. For example, use two Polycom Rack Server 620 servers. R230 and R220 can be each other's redundant server.

• You can use as much HDD space as exists on the smallest system.

• Ensure both systems are up and running before you configure redundancy.

• After you install a certificate on your primary server, the secondary server will be synchronized to use the same certificate.

• If configuring redundancy on an existing system, Polycom recommends making a system backup before configuring redundancy.
• When adding redundancy to an existing system, be sure to set up redundancy on the existing server first. If you set up redundancy in the wrong order, data will be lost.
• You cannot change the system name or domain name after configuring redundancy.

Interoperability Considerations for Redundancy

Please consider the following interoperability issues when using a redundant configuration:

• After a system failover, RealPresence Mobile and RealPresence Desktop users must re-login before they can search their directories.
• You cannot dynamically provision a RealPresence Access Director system using a virtual FQDN. If you are using a geographic redundant configuration, you need to manually add and manage your RealPresence Access Director system.
• You cannot dynamically manage Polycom VVX 1500 systems using a virtual FQDN.
  ◦ For software updates, you need to manually update Polycom VVX endpoints.
  ◦ For provisioning, create a specific network profile for Polycom VVX systems. Do not use the Default Directory Server or Default Presence Server. Instead leave those check boxes unmarked, and specify the primary IP address.

Local versus Geographic Redundancy

Depending on your network requirements, you can use either local redundancy or geographic redundancy.

The license requirements are the same for both configurations.

• You can use local redundancy when both servers are in the same geographic location and accessible to each other via VLAN or crossover cable/
• You can use geographic redundancy when your servers are in two geographically distant sites.

Managing a Redundant System

After you have configured your system for redundancy, you can track system failovers and manually initiate a system failover.

Manually Failover to a Redundant Server

In a redundant configuration, you can manually initiate a failover or let the system automatically fail over from the primary server to the redundant server when necessary.

Note: The Switch Server Role option is not available if the inactive server is not available.

Procedure

1. Log into the system using the virtual IP address for local redundancy or using the virtual FQDN for geographic redundancy.
2. Go to Admin > Server Settings > Redundant Configuration.
3. On the **Redundant Configuration** page, click **Switch Server Role**.
The system initiates a failover to the other server.

**Track System Failovers**

You can monitor how and when the system has failed over.

The RealPresence Resource Manager system provides detailed messages about the time and reason for a system failover.

You can also view system failover information in the **System Alerts** pane and on the System Dashboard (Redundancy pane).

**Procedure**

1. Log into the RealPresence Resource Manager system using the virtual IP address for local redundancy or using the virtual FQDN for geographic redundancy.
2. Go to **Admin > Server Settings > Redundancy Configuration**.
3. View the read-only information for the time and reason of the failover.

**Failover Information**
The table describes the failover reasons.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Failover Reason</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Public NIC is down.</td>
<td>The network interface card went down on the active server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gateway is unreachable.</td>
<td>The active system could not reach the network gateway either because the network cable is unplugged or for network issues external to the system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Web application is down.</td>
<td>The application service on the active server stopped and the web interface cannot be reached.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Database is down.</td>
<td>The system database went down on the active server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site topology database is down.</td>
<td>The site topology database went down on the active server (Opends database).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual failover.</td>
<td>The failover was manually initiated by the administrator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active server not responding.</td>
<td>The active server could not be reached.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Discontinue Redundancy**

In some circumstances, you may need to discontinue redundancy.

You can discontinue redundancy whether or not both servers are accessible. However, the steps for each circumstance are different.

If only one server can be accessed, discontinue redundancy on that server first. Discontinue redundancy on the other server after it can be accessed.

**Procedure**
1. Log into the system using the virtual IP address for local redundancy or using the virtual FQDN for geographic redundancy.

2. Go to Admin > Server Settings > Redundant Configuration.

3. On the Redundant Configuration page, click Reset Redundant Configuration.
   
   If both servers are accessible, the two servers restart as single servers and you can skip the rests steps.
   
   If only one server is accessible, the primary system restarts as a single server.

4. When the redundancy server can be accessed (Now it promotes to active server), log into the system using the virtual IP address for local redundancy or using the virtual FQDN for geographic redundancy.

5. Go to Admin > Server Settings > Redundant Configuration.

6. On the Redundant Configuration page, click Reset Redundant Configuration.
   
   The system restarts as single server.

**Restore Redundancy**

In some circumstances, you may need to restore redundancy from a backup archive.

**Procedure**

1. Discontinue the redundancy.
2. Restore the system on the primary server from a backup archive.
3. Re-set up the redundancy.

**Related Links**

[System Backup and Recovery](#) on page 539
A local redundant system configuration (high availability) requires the installation of two RealPresence Resource Manager system servers on the same network.

During First Time Setup, you are instructed to assign these two servers physical IP addresses for both the service interface and redundant interface. If you do not configure an IP address for the redundant interface, the redundant interface IP will be automatically generated as 169.254.*.*

A locally redundant RealPresence Resource Manager system configuration requires two RealPresence Resource Manager system servers and three IP addresses in the same subnet on the same network—one physical IP address for each of the servers and one virtual IP address dedicated to external access and endpoint registration.

See for details on how to perform fail-overs and for more information on how redundant systems work.

Optional: Perform a System Backup

If you are setting up redundancy for an existing RealPresence Resource Manager system that has already been active, you should first backup your existing system.

See for details.

Ensuring the Servers Can Communicate

You need to be sure that your two servers can communicate over the local network.

- The active/inactive servers communicate over a dedicated private network using a crossover LAN cable physically connected from the two servers via the Redundant NIC of each server, or over a VLAN connection using the IP address of the Redundant NIC on each server.
- The IP addresses for the redundant interfaces of the respective servers MUST be on the same subnet.
Network Configuration Requirements on Both Servers

Basic settings for the two servers must match.

- Be sure they are both configured to the same NTP server.
- Ensure both servers are configured with a Redundant Interface that defines an IP address for the redundant NIC of each server. The default IP addresses can be used. The IP addresses for the redundant interfaces of the respective servers MUST be on the same subnet.

**Note:** Make note of the IP addresses used for the redundant interfaces. You'll need to enter them when you configure your system for redundancy.

Enable the Root User Login and SSH Access

The RealPresence Resource Manager system requires SSH Access and the root user login to configure redundancy.

These settings are disabled by default. You need to change them before configuring redundancy.

**Procedure**

1. Go to Admin > Management and Security > System Hardening.
2. Cancel the Disable Root User Login check box.
3. Select Enable in the SSH Access drop-down list.
4. Click Update.

Optional: Change the Redundant Interface IP Address

You can change the default IP address and subnet mask used for the redundant interface (the 2nd NIC of the server).

You will need to restart your system after you changing the default IP address and subnet mask for the redundant interface.

**Procedure**

1. Go to Admin > Server Settings > Network.
2. Configure these settings on the Redundant Interface tab of the Network page, as necessary.
3. Update the IP address for the network interface used for redundancy if needed.
4. Click Save Settings.
5. Restart the server.
Network Interface IP Address

The table explains the IP addresses for the network interface used for redundancy.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IPv4 Address</td>
<td>The static IPv4 address for the second NIC of this server that will be used for redundant configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPv4 Default Gateway</td>
<td>The static IP address of the RealPresence Resource Manager system gateway.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPv4 Subnet Mask</td>
<td>The network subnet mask for the IP address for the second NIC of this server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configure the System for Redundancy

Configure both systems for redundancy via the primary server.

Both servers are configured for redundancy after you have configured the primary system redundancy.

The system will reboot automatically after you configure redundancy.

**Note:** The RealPresence Resource Manager system requires SSH Access and the root user login to configure redundancy. These settings are disabled by default. You need to change them before configuring redundancy.

**Procedure**

1. Log into the primary server *using the physical IP address.*
2. Go to *Admin > Server Settings > Redundant Configuration.*
3. Enter the *IP Settings* for the redundant configuration.
4. Click *Submit.*
   - If you have changed the root password, (with the help of Polycom Global Services), you'll be prompted to enter the root password.
   - Both systems reboot.
5. Verify that you can access your system(s) using the virtual IP address.

IP Settings for Local Redundant Configuration

The table explains the IP settings for the redundant configuration.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IP Setting</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Virtual IP</td>
<td>Enter the Virtual IP that will be used to access the system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Virtual Host Name</td>
<td>Enter the value of the FQDN for the virtual IP</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
IP Setting | Definition
---|---
Local Server Redundant IP Address | This is the IP address of the redundant interface of the local server. It is read automatically and is readonly. This IP address should point to the second NIC on your primary server.
Peer Server Redundant IP Address | The IP address of the redundant interface of the peer server in your configuration. This IP address should point to the second NIC on your redundant server.

License a Local Redundant System

To license a redundant system for an Appliance Edition, you need to have a license for both servers within your configuration.

However, both licenses need to be installed by accessing your configured system using the virtual IP address.

If you use Virtual Edition servers to set up redundant system, you only need one license for the primary server. The secondary server doesn't need license.

When your servers work in offline mode, you must upload the same license file to the primary and secondary servers.

Procedure

1. Request both a license for the primary server and a license for the secondary server as described in Request a Software License File.
2. Use your browser to navigate to the virtual IP address of the RealPresence Resource Manager system and log in.
4. Click Update License.
5. Follow the instructions on the Update License dialog and be sure you have a backup copy of your initial license file.
6. Click Choose File and navigate to the primary license file you requested.
7. Click Preview and then click Apply.
8. Click Update License again.
9. Follow the instructions on the Update License dialog.
10. Click Choose File and navigate to the secondary license file you requested.
11. Click Preview to verify that the license is correct.
12. Click Apply.

Provisioning Considerations

When you provision endpoints to use the RealPresence Resource Manager system for directory services and presence, you need to use the virtual IP address.

If you do not use the virtual IP address, endpoints will not have the correct information for directory and presence services if a fail over occurs.
Geographic System Redundancy

Topics:

- Network Requirements for a Geographic Redundant System
- Optional: Perform a System Backup
- Perform Network Configuration on Both Servers
- Enable the Root User Login
- Configure DNS for the Redundant Servers
- Configure the System for Redundancy
- License a Geographic Redundant System
- Provisioning Considerations

A geographic redundant RealPresence Resource Manager system configuration offers higher reliability and greater call success by ensuring that your system is always available.

A geographic redundant RealPresence Resource Manager system configuration requires two RealPresence Resource Manager system servers and four physical IP addresses as well as a DNS-defined FQDN address dedicated to external access and endpoint registration.

Network Requirements for a Geographic Redundant System

Geographic redundancy allows you to use two RealPresence Resource Manager systems in disparate network locations to support redundancy.

Geographic redundancy requires the following:

- Set up a common FQDN for services.
- A dedicated Data Center link with the following requirements for the heartbeat network connection:
  - TCP/UDP ports must not be changed by NAT or other network devices between the two servers.
  - Network Latency < 200ms
  - Network Bandwidth > 100Mbit/s
  - Network Packet Loss = 0 percent

Note: Redundancy services may not work if the above requirements for the network connection are not met.
Optional: Perform a System Backup

If you are setting up redundancy for an existing RealPresence RealPresence Resource Manager that has already been active, you should first backup your existing system.

See for details.

Related Links
Create a System Backup Manually on page 541

Perform Network Configuration on Both Servers

Install both of your RealPresence Resource Manager systems as described in the Polycom RealPresence Resource Manager Getting Started Guide.

Basic settings for the two servers must match.

- Be sure they are both configured to the same NTP server.
- Ensure both servers are configured with a Service Interface that defines an IP address for the first NIC of each server.
- Ensure both servers are configured with a Redundant Interface that defines an IP address for the second NIC of each server.
- Make note of the IP addresses used for the redundant interface. You'll need to enter them when you configure your system for redundancy.

Enable the Root User Login

The RealPresence Resource Manager system requires the root user login to be enabled in order to configure redundancy.

This setting is disabled by default. You need to change it before configuring redundancy.

Procedure

1. Go to Admin > Management and Security > System Hardening.
2. Ensure the Disable Root User Login check box is unmarked.
3. Click Update.

Configure DNS for the Redundant Servers

In addition to the required DNS steps for non-redundant configurations, you need to create a zone delegation for the servers within your geographically redundant system.

You need to set up a common Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) for the redundant servers, using the service interface IP addresses for each server (first NIC).

You'll use the FQDN you create to connect to the RealPresence Resource Manager system once you have configured it for redundancy.

Procedure

1. Add an NS records for each of the redundant servers, using the service interface IP (first NIC).
2. Configure DNS zone delegation for your redundant services.
3. Make note of the FQDN that you create.
   That FQDN is used to access your system.

Configure the System for Redundancy

You configure both systems for redundancy via the primary server.

The both servers are configured for redundancy after you have configured the primary system redundancy.

**Note:** The RealPresence Resource Manager system requires SSH Access and the root user login to configure redundancy. These settings are disabled by default. You need to change them before configuring redundancy.

**Procedure**

1. Log into the primary server using the physical IP address.
2. Go to Admin > Server Settings > Redundant Configuration.
3. Enter the IP Settings for the redundant configuration.
4. Click Submit.
   - If you have changed the root password (with the help of Polycom Global Services), you'll be prompted to enter the root password.
   - Both systems reboot.
5. Verify that you can access your system(s) using the common FQDN address.

IP Settings for Geo-redundant Configurations

The table explains the IP Settings for the geo-redundant configurations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IP Setting</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Virtual IP</td>
<td>For geo-redundancy configurations, you can leave this field blank. You must use an FQDN to access a geographically redundant configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Virtual Host Name</td>
<td>The hostname that corresponds to the virtual IP address. Enter the FQDN you created here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local Server Redundant IP Address</td>
<td>This is the IP address of the redundant interface of the local server. It is read automatically and is readonly. This IP address should point to the second NIC on your primary server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peer Server Redundant IP Address</td>
<td>The IP address of the redundant interface IP of the peer server in your configuration. This IP address should point to the second NIC on your redundant server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
License a Geographic Redundant System

To license a geographic redundant system, you must have a license for both servers within your configuration.

However, you must install both licenses by accessing your configured system using the common FQDN.

When your servers work in offline mode, you must upload the same license file to the primary and secondary servers.

Note: When you add devices to the RealPresence Resource Manager system to license them, you need to use the common FQDN. If you don't use the common FQDN, the devices may not have the correct information for license services.

Procedure

1. Request a both a license for the primary server and a license for the secondary server.
2. Use your browser to navigate to the common FQDN of the RealPresence Resource Manager system and log in.
4. Click Update License.
5. Follow the instructions on the Update License dialog and be sure you have a backup copy of your initial license file.
6. Click Choose File and navigate to the primary license file you requested.
7. Click Preview and then click Apply.
8. Click Update License again.
9. Follow the instructions on the Update License dialog.
10. Click Choose File and navigate to the secondary license file you requested.
11. Click Preview to verify that the license is correct.
12. Click Apply.

Provisioning Considerations

When you provision endpoints to use the RealPresence Resource Manager system for directory services and presence, use the common FQDN.

If you don’t use the common FQDN, endpoints don’t have the correct information for directory and presence services if a failover occurs.
Part XI

System Maintenance

Topics:

- System Management and Maintenance
- System Reports
- RealPresence Resource Manager System SNMP
- System Backup and Recovery
- System Security and Port Usage
- Supported Ciphers

This section provides an introduction to the Polycom RealPresence Resource Manager system maintenance.
System Management and Maintenance

Topics:

• Administrator Responsibilities
• Auditor Responsibilities
• Recommended Regular Maintenance

The RealPresence Resource Manager system requires relatively little ongoing maintenance beyond monitoring the status of the system and downloading backups you want to archive.

All system management and maintenance tasks can be performed in the management interface.

Administrator Responsibilities

As a RealPresence Resource Manager system administrator, you're responsible for the installation, configuration, and ongoing maintenance of the system.

You should be familiar with the following tasks and operations:

• Installing licenses when the system is first installed and when additional endpoints are added.
• Monitoring system health and performing the recommended regular maintenance.
• Using the system tools provided to aid with system and network diagnostics, monitoring, and troubleshooting. Should the need arise, Polycom Global Services personnel may ask you to use these tools.
• Upgrading the system when upgrades/patches are made available.

Related Links
Change the System User Interface Timeout and Number of Sessions on page 466

Administrative Best Practices

Read Polycom recommendations for administrative best practices.

• Perform the recommended regular maintenance.
• Except in emergencies or when instructed to by Polycom Global Services personnel, don't reconfigure, install an upgrade, or restore a backup when there are active conferences on the system.
• Before you reconfigure, install an upgrade, or restore a backup, manually create a new backup of the system settings. You can then restore this backup in the event that something unforeseen occurs and it becomes necessary to restore the system to a known good state.
• For proper name resolution and smooth network operations, configure at least one DNS server in your network configuration, and preferably two or more. This enables the RealPresence Resource Manager system to function properly in the event of a single external DNS failure.
• Configure at least one NTP server in your time configuration and preferably two or more. Proper time management helps ensure that your system operates efficiently and diagnose any issues that may arise in the future. Proper system time is also essential for accurate audit and CDR data, as well as system redundancy.
Auditor Responsibilities

As a RealPresence Resource Manager system auditor, you're responsible for managing the system's logging and history retention.

You should be familiar with the following configurations and operations:

- Configuring logging for the system. These settings affect the number and the contents of the log archives available for download from the system. Polycom Global Services personnel may ask you to adjust the logging configuration and/or download and send them logs.
- Configuring history retention levels for the system. These settings affect how much system activity history is retained on the system and available for download as CDRs.

Auditor Best Practices

Read Polycom recommendations for auditing best practices.

- Unless otherwise instructed by Polycom Global Services, configure system logging at the production level with a rolling frequency of every day and a retention period of 60 days. If hard drive space becomes an issue, decrease the retention period incrementally until the disk space issue is resolved.
- Download system log archives regularly and back them up securely (preferably offsite as well as onsite).
- Export CDRs regularly and back them up securely (preferably offsite as well as onsite).

Recommended Regular Maintenance

Perform the following tasks to keep your RealPresence Resource Manager system operating trouble-free and at peak efficiency.

These tasks can be done quickly and should be run at least weekly.

Related Links
Change the System User Interface Timeout and Number of Sessions on page 466

Tracking System Alerts

You can track system alerts via email to remotely monitor the RealPresence Resource Manager system performance.

Creating Backup Archives

Polycom recommends that you regularly create backups of your RealPresence Resource Manager system.

See for details.

Related Links
Create a System Backup Manually on page 541
General System Health and Capacity Checks

On the Dashboard, you can see various information about the system.

Exporting CDR

If you want to preserve detailed call and conference history data in spreadsheet form off the RealPresence Resource Manager system, periodically download the system's CDR (call detail record) data to your PC.
System Reports

Topics:

- View Site Statistics Report
- View Site Link Statistics Report
- Call Detail Record Report Administration
- View Endpoint Usage Report
- Generate Network Device Usage Report
- Create Conference Usage Report
- Create Conference Type Report

The RealPresence Resource Manager system provides various reports that you can view and export. Use these reports to identify return on investment, troubleshoot problems, provide information about network traffic, and ensure accurate billing for Polycom video calls.

View Site Statistics Report

Use the Site Statistics report to check call rate and call quality statistics for the sites.

You can view the data in a grid or graphically.

Procedure

1. Go to Reports > Site Statistics.
   The Site Statistics appear with the statistics displayed in a grid. The grid shows a snapshot of the current statistics. The data is updated automatically every 15 seconds.
2. Click View Chart.
3. In the Site Name list, select the site(s) to chart.
4. In the Y-Axis list, select the statistic(s) to chart.
5. In the Data Limit field, enter the time frame in minutes for which to chart the data.
   The default is 60 minutes.
   The charts are dynamically updated for your selections.

Site Statistics

The table explains the Site Statistics report.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Site Name</td>
<td>Specifies the site to which the statistics apply.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Num of Calls</td>
<td>Specifies the number of currently active calls for the site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>% Bandwidth Used</td>
<td>Specifies the cumulative bandwidth used by the currently active calls.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## View Site Link Statistics Report

Use the **Site Link Statistics** report to check call rate and call quality statistics for all site links.

You can view the data in a grid or graphically.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Reports > Site Link Statistics**.
   
   The **Site Link Statistics** appear with the statistics displayed in a grid. The grid shows a snapshot of the current statistics. The data is updated automatically every 15 seconds.

2. Click **View Chart**.

3. In the **Site Name** list, select the site(s) to chart.

4. In the **Y-Axis** list, select the statistic(s) to chart.

5. In the **Data Limit** field, enter the time frame in minutes for which to chart the data.
   
   The default is 60 minutes.

6. The charts are dynamically updated for your selections.
   
   The site-links are displayed in the same order as the site-link grid.

## Site Link Statistics

The table explains the Site Link Statistics.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Site-Link Name</td>
<td>Specifies the two linked sites for which the statistics apply.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Num of Calls</td>
<td>Specifies the number of currently active calls for the site link.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Column Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>% Bandwidth Used</td>
<td>Specifies the percentage of bandwidth used by the currently active calls, that is, the bandwidth used by the currently active calls divided by the total available bandwidth for the link expressed as a percentage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bandwidth</td>
<td>Specifies the total bandwidth of the link.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Avg Bit Rate</td>
<td>Specifies the average bit rate for the currently active calls, that is, the total bit rate for all currently active calls divided by the number of active calls.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>% Packet Loss</td>
<td>Specifies the average percentage of packet loss for the currently active calls that is, the total percentage of packet loss for all currently active calls divided by the number of active calls.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Avg Jitter</td>
<td>Specifies the average jitter for the currently active calls that is, the total jitter for all currently active calls divided by the number of active calls.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Avg Delay</td>
<td>Specifies the average delay for the currently active calls that is, the total delay for all currently active calls divided by the number of active calls.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Call Detail Record Report Administration

By default, the RealPresence Resource Manager system stores the conference and endpoint call detail records (CDRs) for 30 days.

You can modify the CDR retention period and you can schedule a weekly archive of the CDRs. These procedures are described in the following topics.

**Modify the CDR Retention Period**

By default, the conference and endpoint CDRs are purged after 30 days.

**Procedure**

1. Go to Reports > Report Administration.
2. In the Report Administration page, enter the number of days for the Retention Period for Conference and Endpoint CDRs.
3. Click Save Settings.

**Schedule Archives of the CDR Report**

You can schedule archives of CRD reports to be sent to an external server for storage.

**Procedure**

1. Go to Reports > Report Administration.
2. In the Report Administration page, select Enable FTP of CDRs (CSV Format) and configure the settings.
3. To verify that the FTP settings are functional, click Test Archive Settings.
4. When the settings are correct, click Save Settings.
Report Administration Settings
The table explains the Report Administration Settings.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Next Transfer Date</td>
<td>Set the date for the next CDR transfer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transfer Start Time (Server Time in 24h Format)</td>
<td>Set the start time of the next transfer and all subsequent transfers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDR Transmission Frequency (In Days)</td>
<td>Set the number of days between each transfer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Host Name or IP Address of FTP Server</td>
<td>Specifies the server to which the archives will be transferred. By default, the system transfers the archives to a location on its local server. You can change this to an external server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FTP Port</td>
<td>Specifies the port through which the archives will be transferred. By default, the FTP port is 0. 0 stands for auto-detecting well-known FTP port 21 and 990.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FTP User Name/FTP Password/Confirm FTP Password</td>
<td>Specifies a user name and password combination for accessing the FTP server. This must be a valid user account on the FTP server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FTP Directory</td>
<td>Specifies the directory on the server to which the archives will be transferred.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

View Endpoint Usage Report
The **Endpoint Usage Report** is based on the CDRs extracted from selected endpoints and includes entries for ISDN and IP calls.

Calls from WebRTC participants are not recorded in CDRs.

Use data from the **Endpoint Usage Report** to troubleshoot problems, provide information about network traffic, and ensure accurate billing for Polycom video calls.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Reports > Endpoint Usage Report**.
   
   The **Endpoint Usage Report** page displays the information for the endpoints for which CDRs are available.
   
   The CDRs are displayed in alphabetical order for the default **Start Date** and **End Date**. By default, the CDRs for the last week are reported.

2. To restrict the report to a different time period, change the **Start Date** and **End Date**.
   
   The report is dynamically updated.

3. Click **Filter** to customize the report by endpoint **Type**, **Name**, **IP Address**, **ISDN Video Number**, **Dial String**, **Site**, or **VIP** status.
   
   You can also filter on **Area** when areas are enabled and you manage more than one area.
4. Select the number of reports to be displayed on the page from the Items per page drop-down list.

5. To generate the Endpoint Usage report, select one or more endpoints to include in the report and go to More > Generate Report.

   Use the CTRL key to select multiple endpoints.

6. To select a different group of endpoints, click Change Selected, select the endpoints, and go to More > Generate Report again.

7. Click Call Times to see a chart that identifies the number of calls versus the start time for the calls.

8. Click People Count to see a chart that identifies people count for conference usage.

9. Click Inbound to see a chart that identifies the endpoints from which the inbound calls to the selected endpoints originated.

10. Click Outbound to see a chart that identifies the endpoints to which the selected endpoints called.

11. Click Summary CDR Report to see a grid that displays information for each of the selected endpoints that participated in calls.

   If any of the selected endpoints did not participate in calls during the selected time period, it is not included in the Summary CDR Report.

12. To export the information in the Summary CDR Report, click Export as Excel File and either Open or Save the file as needed.

   Note that only the first 1000 lines of the report are exported to the Excel file.

13. Click Detail CDR Report to see information for each of the endpoints that participated in calls.

14. To export the information, click Download Report.

   • Click For endpoint_name ONLY (Excel File) to save the report Microsoft Excel format for the selected endpoint.

   • Click For All Selected Endpoints (CSV File) to save the CDR report in or in CSV format. Only the first 1000 lines of the report are exported to the Excel file.

15. Click Change Selected to return to the Endpoint Usage Report page to select a different endpoint.

Related Links
Available Endpoint Usage Report on page 520
Detail CDR Report on page 522
Generate Endpoint Usage Report Properties on page 521
Summary CDR Report on page 521

Available Endpoint Usage Report
The table explains the available endpoint information on the Endpoint Usage Report page.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Endpoint Name</td>
<td>The registered name of the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serial Number</td>
<td>The registered serial number of the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site</td>
<td>The location at which the endpoint resides.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When areas are enabled on your system, this field shows a value of Restricted if you do not have permission to manage the area to which the site is assigned.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Field Description

**Owner/Room**
The person or room to whom the endpoint is registered.

---

**Related Links**

- [View Endpoint Usage Report](#) on page 519

### Generate Endpoint Usage Report Properties

The table describes the available information when you generate the usage report for an endpoint.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number of calls</td>
<td>Specifies the number of calls the selected endpoints joined for the selected date range. Click <a href="#">Details</a> to get more information about these calls.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total call time</td>
<td>Specifies the total amount of time the selected endpoints spent in conference during the selected date range.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Average time per call</td>
<td>Specifies the average amount of time the selected endpoints spent in conference during the selected date range, that is, the total call time divided by the number of calls.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Average rate per call</td>
<td>Specifies the average bit rate for the selected calls.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Related Links**

- [View Endpoint Usage Report](#) on page 519

### Summary CDR Report

The table describes the Summary CDR Report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Endpoint Name</td>
<td>Identifies the endpoint by name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serial Number</td>
<td>The registered serial number of the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Time in Call</td>
<td>Specifies the total amount of time the endpoint spent in conference during the selected time period.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Average Time in Call</td>
<td>Specifies the average amount of time the endpoint spent per call during the selected time period, that is, the Total Time in Call divided by the Total Calls.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Average Speed All Calls</td>
<td>Specifies the average bit rate for all of the calls in which the endpoint participated during the selected time period, that is, total bit rate divided by the Total Calls.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calls Out</td>
<td>Specifies the number of calls in which the endpoint participated during the selected time period that originated from the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calls In</td>
<td>Specifies the number of calls in which the endpoint participated during the selected time period that did not originate from the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Calls</td>
<td>Specifies the total number of calls in which the endpoint participated for the selected time period.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Related Links**

[View Endpoint Usage Report](#) on page 519

**Detail CDR Report**

The table describes the Detail CDR Report.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Start Date Time</td>
<td>Specifies the start date and time for the conference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>End Date Time</td>
<td>Specifies the end date for the report. This also defaults to the current date.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Call Duration</td>
<td>Specifies how long the call lasted in hours, minutes, and seconds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Account Number</td>
<td>If Require Account Number to Dial is enabled on the system, the value entered by the user is displayed in this field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote System Name</td>
<td>Specifies the endpoint to which the endpoint was connected for the call.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Call Number 1</td>
<td>Specifies the IP or ISDN numbers for the endpoints to which the endpoint was connected for the call.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Call Number 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transport Type</td>
<td>The type of call — Either H.320 (ISDN), H.323 (IP), or SIP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Call Rate</td>
<td>The bandwidth negotiated with the far site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Manufacturer</td>
<td>The name of the system manufacturer, model, and software version, if they can be determined.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Call Direction</td>
<td>In — For calls received.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Out — For calls placed from the system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conference ID</td>
<td>A number given to each conference. A conference can include more than one far site, so there may be more than one row with the same conference ID.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Call ID</td>
<td>Identifies individual calls within the same conference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H.320 Channels</td>
<td>The total number of ISDN B channels used in the call. For example, a 384K call would use six B channels.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endpoint Alias</td>
<td>The alias of the far site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endpoint Additional Alias</td>
<td>An additional alias of the far site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endpoint Type</td>
<td>Terminal, gateway, or MCU.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endpoint Transport Address</td>
<td>The actual address of the far site (not necessarily the address dialed).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio Protocol Tx</td>
<td>The audio protocol transmitted to the far site, such as G.728 or G.722.1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio Protocol Rx</td>
<td>The audio protocol received from the far site, such as G.728 or G.722.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video Protocol Tx</td>
<td>The video protocol transmitted to the far site, such as H.263 or H.264.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video Protocol Rx</td>
<td>The video protocol received from the far site, such as H.261 or H.263.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video Format Tx</td>
<td>The video format transmitted to the far site, such as CIF or SIF.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video Format Rx</td>
<td>The video format received from the far site, such as CIF or SIF.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Precedence Level</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>People Mins</td>
<td>The total people count for each minute of the call. For example, if there are 10 people in the meeting and the meeting lasts for 10 minutes, the total People Mins will be 100 minutes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This information is only available for room systems equipped with a Polycom EagleEye Producer or EagleEye Director camera.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>People Count (call begin)</td>
<td>Number of people on the call during the first minute of the call, tracked with EagleEye Producer or EagleEye Director II.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This information is only available for room systems equipped with a Polycom EagleEye Producer or EagleEye Director II camera.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>People count (peak value)</td>
<td>Peak number of people participating on the call, tracked with the EagleEye Producer or EagleEye Director II camera.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This information is only available for room systems equipped with a Polycom EagleEye Producer or EagleEye Director II camera.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>People Count (call end)</td>
<td>Number of people participating on the call during the last minute of the call, tracked with the EagleEye Producer or EagleEye Director II camera.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disconnect Info</td>
<td>The description of the Q.850 (ISDN) cause code showing how the call ended.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q850 Cause Code</td>
<td>The Q.850 cause code showing how the call ended.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total H.320 Errors</td>
<td>The number of errors during an H.320 call.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Avg % Packet Loss Tx</td>
<td>The combined average of the percentage of both audio and video packets transmitted that were lost during the 5 seconds preceding the moment at which a sample was taken. This value does not report a cumulative average for the entire H.323 call. However, it does report an average of the sampled values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Avg % Packet Loss Rx</td>
<td>The combined average of the percentage of both audio and video packets received that were lost during the 5 seconds preceding the moment at which a sample was taken. This value does not report a cumulative average for the entire H.323 call. However, it does report an average of the sampled values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Avg Packet Loss Tx</td>
<td>The number of packets transmitted that were lost during an H.323 call.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Avg Packet Loss Rx</td>
<td>The number of packets from the far site that were lost during an H.323 call.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Avg Latency Tx</td>
<td>The average latency of packets transmitted during an H.323 call based on round-trip delay, calculated from sample tests done once per minute.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Avg Latency Rx</td>
<td>The average latency of packets received during an H.323 call based on round-trip delay, calculated from sample tests done once per minute.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max Latency Tx</td>
<td>The maximum latency for packets transmitted during an H.323 call based on round-trip delay, calculated from sample tests done once per minute.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max Latency Rx</td>
<td>The maximum latency for packets received during an H.323 call based on round-trip delay, calculated from sample tests done once per minute.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Avg Jitter Tx</td>
<td>The average jitter of packets transmitted during an H.323 call, calculated from sample tests done once per minute.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Avg Jitter Rx</td>
<td>The average jitter of packets received during an H.323 call, calculated from sample tests done once per minute.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max Jitter Tx</td>
<td>The maximum jitter of packets transmitted during an H.323 call, calculated from sample tests done once per minute.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max Jitter Rx</td>
<td>The maximum jitter of packets received during an H.323 call, calculated from sample tests done once per minute.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Related Links**

[View Endpoint Usage Report](#) on page 519
Generate Network Device Usage Report

You can view the operational status of system resources by instance with SNMP enabled. Monitored system resources include CPU, memory, storage, and network.

**Note:** Since RealPresence Web Suite Experience Portal does not support SNMP, system resource information is not available for it.

**Procedure**

2. Select a network instance that you want to review.
3. Click More > Generate Report.
4. Select the **24 Hours** or **1 Month** to show the data on the right below the chart.
5. Click **Download** to save this report as a CSV file.
   The downloaded file is saved in the browser default **Download** folder.
6. Click **Change Selected** to go back to the instance list.

Create Conference Usage Report

Use the Conference Usage Report option to review usage information about system conferences. Only reports for scheduled conference calls are created. Reports for ad hoc conference calls are not created.

**Procedure**

2. As needed, change the **Start Date** and **End Date** to select the date range for the report.
3. Select the number of reports to be displayed on the page from the **Conferences per page** drop-down list.
4. Select **Summary Report** or **Detail Report**.
5. Click **Export as CSV File**.
   The file is saved to the default Download folder of your browser.

### Conference Usage Report

The table describes the available items in summary or detail report of conference usage.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Conference Name</td>
<td>Name of the conference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conference Scheduler</td>
<td>Name of the user who scheduled the conference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conference Scheduler ID</td>
<td>ID of the user who scheduled the conference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conference Owner</td>
<td>Name of the conference owner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conference Owner ID</td>
<td>ID of the conference owner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conference Alias</td>
<td>Alias of the conference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conference Mode</td>
<td>Mode of the conference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date</td>
<td>Date of the conference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scheduled Start</td>
<td>Scheduled start time of the conference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scheduled Stop</td>
<td>Scheduled stop time of the conference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scheduled Duration</td>
<td>Scheduled duration of the conference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actual Start</td>
<td>The actual time the conference started.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actual Stop</td>
<td>The actual time the conference stopped.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actual Duration</td>
<td>The actual duration of the conference. If the duration of the conference is less than sixty seconds, the conference duration is displayed as zero.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Scheduled Participants</td>
<td>Total number of scheduled participants for the conference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Actual Participants</td>
<td>Total number of actual participants who attended the conference.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Create Conference Type Report

Use the **Conference Type Report** option to review monthly summary information about past RealPresence Resource Manager system conferences.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Reports > Conference Type Report**.
   
   An empty **Conference Type Report** grid appears.
2. If areas are enabled and you manage more than one area, you can use the **Belongs To Area** drop-down list to filter the conference types by area.
3. As needed, change the **From:** and **To:** dates to select the date range for the report, and click **View**.
   
   The **Conference Type Report** for the selected date range appears. It includes the following information.
4. To create one of the conference type report charts, click the appropriate chart name below the grid.

   Chart choices include:
   - Scheduled vs. Ad hoc: A chart that compares the number of scheduled conferences to the number of ad hoc conferences. Ad hoc conference information can only be viewed by users...
with the administrator role. Although users with area administrator roles who manage more than area can view this column, the value will always be zero because ad hoc conferences are not associated with areas. Ad hoc conferences that take place on MCUs that are managed by the Polycom DMA system cannot be monitored by the RealPresence Resource Manager system. Monitoring information will be incorrect and inconsistent.

- Scheduled: A chart that compares the number of point-to-point, multipoint, gateway, and embedded multipoint conferences.
- Scheduled vs. Executed Mins: A chart that compares the number of scheduled minutes to the number executed minutes.
- Avg Participants in Multipoint: A chart that displays the average number of participants in multipoint conferences.
- Two Person on MCUs: A chart that displays the number of point-to-point conferences hosted on an external MCU. The selected chart dynamically appears below the grid.

5. Click Export as CSV File.
   The file is saved to the default Download folder of your browser.

### Conference Type Report

The table describes the Conference Type Report.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Date</td>
<td>Information is displayed on a month-by-month basis and an average for the selected months.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scheduled</td>
<td>The number of conferences scheduled with the RealPresence Resource Manager system scheduling interface.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Ad hoc    | The number of conferences that used one or more endpoints that are registered to the RealPresence Resource Manager system, but that weren't scheduled via the RealPresence Resource Manager system scheduling interface.  
Ad hoc conference information can only be viewed by users with the administrator role. Although users with area administrator roles who manage more than area can view this column, the value will always be zero because ad hoc conferences are not associated with areas.  
Ad hoc conferences that take place on MCUs that are managed by the Polycom DMA system cannot be monitored by the RealPresence Resource Manager system. Monitoring information will be incorrect and inconsistent. |
<p>| Multipoint| The number of multipoint conferences scheduled using the RealPresence Resource Manager system scheduling interface. |
| Point-to-Point| The number of point-to-point conferences scheduled using one of the RealPresence Resource Manager system scheduling interfaces. |
| Gateway   | The number of scheduled conferences that used a gateway to reach one or more endpoints. |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Embedded Multipoint</td>
<td>The number of scheduled multipoint conferences that used the MCU embedded in a V-Series, VSX-Series, or Polycom HDX-Series endpoint rather than an external MCU such as a RealPresence Collaboration Server (RMX) MCU.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Two Person Conferences on MCU</td>
<td>The number of scheduled point-to-point conferences that used an external MCU such as a RealPresence Collaboration Server (RMX) MCU even through point-to-point conferences do not usually require MCU resources.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short</td>
<td>The number of scheduled conferences that were scheduled to last 30 minutes or more, but which actually lasted less than 30 minutes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scheduled Minutes</td>
<td>The sum of the scheduled minutes for all RealPresence Resource Manager system scheduled conferences.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Executed Minutes</td>
<td>The sum of the actual minutes for all RealPresence Resource Manager system scheduled conferences.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Participants</td>
<td>The sum of the participants that joined RealPresence Resource Manager system scheduled conferences.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Avg Participants in Multipoint</td>
<td>The average number of participants that joined scheduled RealPresence Resource Manager system multipoint conferences.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SNMP is an application-layer protocol that provides a message format for communication between SNMP managers and agents.

SNMP provides a standardized framework and a common language used for the monitoring and management of resources in a network.

**SNMP Framework**

The SNMP framework has three parts:

- **An SNMP manager**
  The SNMP manager is the system used to control and monitor the activities of network hosts using SNMP. A variety of network management applications are available for use with SNMP. It is important to note that you should understand how your SNMP management system is configured to properly configure your Polycom system SNMP transport protocol requirements, SNMP version requirements, SNMP authentication requirements, and SNMP privacy requirements. For information on using SNMP management systems, see the appropriate documentation for your application.

- **An SNMP agent**
  The SNMP agent is the software component within the Polycom system that maintains the data for the system and reports these data, as needed, to managing systems. The agent and MIB reside on the same system.

- **A MIB**
  The MIB (Management Information Base) is a virtual information storage area for network management information, which consists of collections of managed network objects. You can configure the SNMP agent for a particular system MIB. The agent gathers data from the MIB, the repository for information about system parameters and network data. Polycom systems include Polycom-specific MIBs with every system as well as third-party MIBs. Polycom MIBs are self-documenting, including information about the purpose of specific traps and inform notifications. Third-party MIBs accessible through the Polycom system may include both hardware and software system MIBs.
SNMP Notifications

A key feature of SNMP is the ability to generate notifications from an SNMP agent.

Notifications are called as such because they are sent, unsolicited and asynchronous to the SNMP manager from the Polycom system. Notifications can indicate improper user authentication, restarts, the closing of a connection, loss of connection to another system, or other significant events. They are generated as informs or trap requests.

Traps are messages alerting the SNMP manager to a system or network condition change. Inform requests (informs) are traps that include a request for a confirmation receipt from the SNMP manager. Traps are less reliable than informs because the SNMP manager does not send any acknowledgment when it receives a trap. However, informs consume more system and network resources. Traps are discarded as soon as they are sent. An inform request is held in memory until a response is received or the request times out. Traps are sent only once while informs may be retried several times. The retries increase traffic and contribute to a higher overhead on the network. Thus, traps and inform requests provide a trade-off between reliability and network resources.

SNMP Versions

Polycom supports two versions of SNMP:

- **SNMPv2c**—Polycom implements a sub-version of SNMPv2. SNMPv2c uses a community-based form of security. The community of SNMP managers able to access the agent MIB is defined by an IP-based Access Control List and password.

  One drawback of SNMPv2c is that it is subject to packet sniffing of the clear text community string from the network traffic, because it does not encrypt communications between the management system and SNMP agents.

- **SNMPv3**—Polycom implements the newest version of SNMP. Its primary feature is enhanced security. SNMPv3 provides secure access to systems with a combination of authenticating and encrypting packets over the network. The contextEngineID in SNMPv3 uniquely identifies each SNMP entity. The contextEngineID is used to generate the key for authenticated messages. Polycom implements SNMPv3 communication with authentication and privacy (the authPriv security level as defined in the USM MIB).

  - Authentication is used to ensure that traps are read by only the intended recipient. As messages are created, they are given a special key that is based on the contextEngineID of the entity. The key is shared with the intended recipient and used to receive the message.
  - Privacy encrypts the SNMP message to ensure that it cannot be read by unauthorized users.
  - Message integrity ensures that a packet has not been tampered with in transit.

Configuring SNMP

The RealPresence Resource Manager system uses SNMP to provide a standardized framework and a common language used monitoring and managing the system.

The RealPresence Resource Manager system incorporates the common Polycom management framework data model. This includes system-specific SNMP MIBs, support for receiving hardware traps from both servers in a redundant system, and an SNMP REST API.
Polycom provides several MIB files that contain specific to system operations as well as MIBs that track hardware operations. Hardware MIBs such as CPU temperature and so on are tracked using Dell-specific MIBs made available through the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

You can configure what version of SNMP to use as well as set up notification receivers to help you track RealPresence Resource Manager system activities.

**Note:** RealPresence Resource Manager does not support configuring a context name for SNMP.

### Enable the SNMP Agent

You can enable the system SNMP agent.

**Procedure**

1. Navigate to **Admin > Server Settings > SNMP Settings**.
2. Select the **Enable SNMP monitoring** check box.
3. Select the **Agent Settings** tab.
4. Configure the SNMP agent settings for the connection between the RealPresence RealPresence Resource Manager system and the SNMP agent.
5. Click **Update**.

### SNMP Agent Settings

The table explains the SNMP Agent Settings.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>SNMP Version</strong></td>
<td>Specifies the version of SNMP you want to use.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>v2c</strong>-Used for standard models. Uses community-based authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>v3</strong>-Used when you want a high security model. Requires a security user for notifications.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Transport</strong></td>
<td>Specifies the transport protocol for SNMP communications. SNMP can be implemented over two transport protocols:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>TCP</strong>-This protocol has error-recovery services, message delivery is assured, and messages are delivered in the order they were sent. Some SNMP managers only support SNMP over TCP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>UDP</strong>-This protocol does not provide error-recovery services, message delivery is not assured, and messages are not necessarily delivered in the order they were sent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Because UDP doesn't have error recovery services, it requires fewer network resources. It is well suited for repetitive, low-priority functions like alarm monitoring.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Port</strong></td>
<td>Specifies the port that the RealPresence RealPresence Resource Manager system uses for general SNMP messages. By default, the RealPresence RealPresence Resource Manager system uses port 161.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Community</td>
<td>For SNMPv2c, specifies the context for the information, which is the SNMP group to which the devices and management stations running SNMP belong. The RealPresence RealPresence Resource Manager system has only one valid context—by default, <code>public</code>—which is identified by this <code>Community</code> name. The RealPresence RealPresence Resource Manager system will not respond to requests from management systems that do not belong to its community.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supported MIB</td>
<td>You can select from a list of RealPresence Resource Manager-specific MIBs to maintain. The MIB you select determines the which TRAPs are sent to the TRAP receivers you set. GET operations are supported for both MIBs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• POLYCOM_RESOURCE_SCHEDULER_MANAGEMENT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• POLYCOM_CMA_MIB (legacy MIB)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V3 Local Engine Id</td>
<td>For SNMPv3 only. Displays the RealPresence RealPresence Resource Manager system <code>contextEngineID</code> for SNMPv3.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Add an SNMP Notification Agent**

You can configure the RealPresence Resource Manager system to send SNMP messages to different notification receivers (e.g., a network management system).

**Procedure**

1. Go to **Admin > Server Settings > SNMP Settings**.
2. Select the **Notifications Setting** tab.
3. Click **Add** to view the **Add Notification Agent** dialog box.
4. Configure the settings in the **Add Notification Agent** dialog box.
5. Click **OK**.

The agent appears in the **Notification Agents** list.

**Add Notification Agent Properties**

The table describes the properties available on the **Add Notification Agent** page.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enable agent</td>
<td>Select to enable the notification agent. Clear to stop using this agent without deleting it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transport</td>
<td>The transport protocol for SNMP communications to the host receiver (TCP or UDP).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Field Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Address</td>
<td>The IP address of the host receiver (the SNMP manager to which this agent sends notifications).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Port</td>
<td>The port that the RealPresence RealPresence Resource Manager system uses to send notifications. Default port-162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notification type</td>
<td>The type of notification that this agent sends to the notification receiver:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Inform-The agent sends an unsolicited message to a notification receiver and expects or requires the receiver to respond with a confirmation message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Trap-The agent sends an unsolicited message to a notification receiver and does not expect or require a confirmation message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SNMP version</td>
<td>The version of SNMP used for this agent (v2c or v3).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Add a Security User (SNMP v3 only)

When using SNMP v3, you must add security users to associate with notifications.

**Procedure**

1. Go to Admin > Server Settings > SNMP Settings.
2. Select the User Settings tab.
3. Click Add to view the Add Notification User dialog box.
4. Configure the settings in the Add Notification User dialog box.
5. Click OK.

   The user displays in the Notification Users list.

### Add Notification User Properties

The table describes the properties on the Add Notification User page.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Security user</td>
<td>The user name of the security user authorized to actively retrieve SNMP data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authentication type</td>
<td>The authentication protocol used to create unique fixed-sized message digests of a variable length message.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   The RealPresence RealPresence Resource Manager system implements communication with authentication and privacy (the authPriv security level, as defined in the USM MIB).

   Authentication type options:
   - MD5-Creates a digest of 128 bits (16 bytes)
   - SHA-Creates a digest of 160 bits (20 bytes)

   Both methods include the authentication key with the SNMPv3 packet and then generate a digest of the entire SNMPv3 packet.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Authentication password</td>
<td>The authentication password that's used, together with the local engine ID, to create the authentication key included in the MD5 or SHA message digest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Confirm password</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Encryption type | For SNMPv3 only.  
Specifies the privacy protocol for the connection between the RealPresence RealPresence Resource Manager system and the SNMP agent.  
The RealPresence RealPresence Resource Manager system implements communication with authentication and privacy (the *authPriv* security level as defined in the USM MIB).  
Possible values for privacy protocol are:  
• DES—Uses a 56 bit key with a 56 bit salt to encrypt the SNMPv3 packet.  
• AES—Uses a 128 bit key with a 128 bit salt to encrypt the SNMPv3 packet. |
| Encryption password | The password that's used, together with the local engine ID, to create the encryption key used by the privacy protocol.  |
| Confirm password |                                                                                                                                               |

**Enable SNMP for an Instance**

Enabling SNMP for an instance configures the RealPresence Resource Manager system to act as an SNMP manager for that instance, receiving communications from an SNMP agent on the instance.

You must enable SNMP on each RealPresence Platform component instance that you want to monitor. Then you can configure SNMP settings for the instance in the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

**Procedure**

2. Select a network instance you want to configure and click More > SNMP Settings.
3. Select the Details tab, and then click SNMP at the left of the screen.
4. Select the SNMP version.  
The configuration selections vary depending on which SNMP version you choose.
5. Depending on the SNMP version selected, complete the applicable fields of the instance monitoring configuration.
6. Click OK to save the new settings.
## Network Device SNMP Configuration

The table explains the fields in Network Device SNMP Configuration.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Value/Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Transport</strong></td>
<td>The transport protocol to be used. At this time, RealPresence Resource Manager supports only UDP (User Datagram Protocol), not TCP. UDP requires fewer network resources and is suited for repetitive, low-priority functions like alarm monitoring, although message delivery is not assured and does not always occur in the order in which messages are sent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Port</strong></td>
<td>The port on which the SNMP manager communicates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Community</strong></td>
<td>For SNMPv2c only. Functions as a global password for accessing SNMP information on the instance. The instance must be configured with the same community string in order for the SNMP manager to communicate with it. Per SNMP convention, the default community string is &quot;public&quot;, but this should be changed to make the SNMP information more secure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Security User</strong></td>
<td>For SNMPv3 only. Specifies the security name required to access a monitored MIB object.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Authentication Type** | Specifies the authentication protocol. These protocols are used to create unique fixed-sized message digests of a variable length message. Possible values for authentication protocol are:  
• MD5—Creates a digest of 128 bits (16 bytes).  
• SHA—Creates a digest of 160 bits (20 bytes). Both methods include the authentication key with the SNMPv3 packet and then generate a digest of the entire SNMPv3 packet. |
| **Authentication Password** | For SNMPv3 only. Specifies the authentication password that is appended to the authentication key before it is computed into the MD5 or SHA message digest. |
| **Encryption Type** | For SNMPv3 only. Specifies the privacy protocol for the connection between the RealPresence Resource Manager system and the SNMP agent. The RealPresence Access Director system implements communication with authentication and privacy (the authPriv security level as defined in the USM MIB). Possible values for privacy protocol are:  
• DES—Uses a 56-bit key with a 56-bit salt to encrypt the SNMPv3 packet.  
• AES—Uses a 128-bit key with a 128-bit salt to encrypt the SNMPv3 packet. |
### Download MIBs

The RealPresence Resource Manager system enterprise MIB relates information about the system.

The information is divided into these categories:

- **Configuration**—The static state of each component, for example component type, software version, current owner, values of all configured parameters.
- **Status**—The dynamic state of each component, for example the number of connections, number of conferences, number of ports (used and available), temperature, fan speed, CPU utilization, memory utilization, network link status, number of dropped packets, jitter measurements, number of successful calls, number of CPU resets.
- **Alerts**—To notify that an exception condition has occurred, for example a power supply failure, link/down up on a major interface, memory usage exceeding a predefined percentage, connections in an MCU exceeding a threshold, a logical fault or ungraceful transition.
- **Conformance**—The historical trend for selected groups of data, for example conference load over time for an MCU, bandwidth consumed over time for a network device.

#### Procedure

1. Go to **Admin > Server Settings > SNMP Settings**.
2. Click **Download MIBs**.
3. In the **MIBs** dialog, select the MIB of interest.
4. Click **Download MIB**.

Polycom recommends using a MIB browser to explore the RealPresence Resource Manager system MIB. The RealPresence Resource Manager system MIB is self-documenting including information about the purpose of specific traps and inform notifications.

### Polycom RealPresence Resource Manager MIBs

View the MIBs that the RealPresence Resource Manager system provides for user in monitoring the system.

#### Polycom RealPresence Resource Manager-specific MIBs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>POLYCOM_BASE-MIB</td>
<td>Includes initialization information for all RealPresence Resource Manager product-specific MIBs. You must load this MIB before POLYCOM-RESOURCE-SCHEDULER-MANAGEMENT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POLYCOM-RESOURCE-SCHEDULER-MANAGMENT</td>
<td>RealPresence Resource Manager-specific MIB definition.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POLYCOM-CMA-MIB</td>
<td>Contains Polycom CMA system legacy traps for backward compatibility. Some traps in this MIB are no longer supported. See the release notes for details on supported traps for this MIB.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Third-party MIBs adapted for Hardware Monitoring**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>adptInfo</td>
<td>The interface table (ifTable) shows addresses, physical addresses, names, descriptions etc. of the network interfaces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baspcfg</td>
<td>The interface table (ifTable) shows addresses, physical addresses, names, descriptions etc. of the network interfaces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baspStat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baspTrap</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DcAsfSrv</td>
<td>Trap definitions for the Polycom-branded Dell server. For more information, see the Dell SNMP documentation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dcs3fru</td>
<td>Contains all the field replaceable unit names, serial numbers, and revisions for the Polycom-branded Dell server. For more information, see the Dell SNMP documentation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DcAsfSrv</td>
<td>Trap definitions for the Polycom-branded Dell server. For more information, see the Dell SNMP documentation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dcs3rmt</td>
<td>Provides information about server administrator remote access.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dcstorag</td>
<td>Monitoring and information about the hard disks and RAID configuration on the server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dellcm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iDRAC-MIB</td>
<td>Information about iDrac, including data, alerts, and traps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INET-ADDRESS-MIB</td>
<td>A definition file for standard conventions included for reference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INTELLAN</td>
<td>Information about the Intel LAN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ITU-ALARM-TC-MIB</td>
<td>A definition file for standard conventions included for reference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10892</td>
<td>The primary MIB for the Polycom-branded Dell server. It provides 36 traps from the server motherboard, including system type, voltages, and temperature readings. For more information, see the Dell SNMP documentation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ITassist</td>
<td>IT assistant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dell-RAC-MIB</td>
<td>Information about the Dell Remote Access Controller.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RFC1213-MIB</td>
<td>RFC1213MIB definitions included for reference. The RealPresence Resource Manager system supports all but &quot;egp&quot;.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SNMPv2-CONF</td>
<td>A definition file for standard conventions included for reference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SNMPv2-SMI</td>
<td>A definition file for standard conventions included for reference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SNMPv2-TC</td>
<td>A definition file for standard conventions included for reference.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
System Backup and Recovery

Topics:

- Creating System Backups
- Restoring the System

The backup and recovery of a RealPresence Resource Manager system includes backup and recovery of the RealPresence Resource Manager system internal database and the backup of the RealPresence Resource Manager system configuration settings.

Related Links
Restore Redundancy on page 503

Creating System Backups

Polycom recommends configuring automatic system backups to be archived weekly.

This archive makes system restoration much simpler. You can configure automatic system backups in addition to being able to download a system backup at any time.

Users assigned the Administrator role can create backups of the existing system. System backups are created in a .zip format which includes both the database backup files and the system settings.

Create an Automatic System Backup

Polycom recommends scheduling regular system backups.

When you configure automatic system backups, the system backup zip file is automatically created and sent via FTP site to an external server. Be sure the external storage server has enough space to store regular backups. Verify the size of the backup file occasionally to ensure transfer success.

If you have enabled the RealPresence Resource Manager whitelist, you need to include the IP of the FTP site you use to store system backups in the whitelist.

Procedure

1. Go to Admin > Maintenance > Backup/Restore System Settings.
2. Configure the settings for FTP of Auto System Backup.
3. To verify that the FTP settings are functional, click Test Archive Settings.
   - If the RealPresence Resource Manager system cannot contact the FTP server, the system generates an alert.
4. When the settings are correct, click Save Settings.

Related Links
Configuring Alert Settings on page 568
FTP of Auto System Backup Settings on page 540
FTP of Auto System Backup Settings

Configure the settings for **FTP of Auto System Backup**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enable FTP of Auto System Backup</td>
<td>Select this check box to enable automatic system backups to be sent to an external server via FTP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last Successful Transfer Time</td>
<td>Displays the date and time of the last time a system backup was successfully created and transferred.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Next Transfer Date</td>
<td>Use the calendar to set up the next transfer date.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transfer Start Time</td>
<td>Set the start time of the next transfer and all subsequent transfers. Time format is in 24 hour format. For example, 22:00 is 11 p.m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Do not schedule system backups during peak server hours as it can affect system performance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto System Backup Transmission Frequency (In Days)</td>
<td>Set the number of days between each transfer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Host name or IP Address of FTP server</td>
<td>Specifies the server to which the system backup will be transferred. If you have enabled the RealPresence Resource Manager system's whitelist, be sure that the IP address of the FTP server is listed on the whitelist.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FTP Port</td>
<td>Specifies the port through which the system backup will be transferred. By default, the FTP port is 0. 0 stands for auto-detecting well-known FTP port 21 and 990.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FTP User NameFTP Password</td>
<td>Specifies a user name and password combination for accessing the FTP server. This must be a valid user account on the FTP server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FTP Directory</td>
<td>Specifies the directory on the server to which the system backup will be transferred. The default directory is the root folder of the FTP server. If you want to use a different directory, you need to create that directory on the FTP server first. For example, create an ./AutoBackup folder on the FTP server and then indicate that directory name as the FTP Directory in the RealPresence Resource Manager system.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Related Links

*Create an Automatic System Backup* on page 539
Create a System Backup Manually

You can manually create a backup archive of a RealPresence Resource Manager system including system configuration settings and database files at any time.

You can choose this option even if you have already configured automatic system backups.

When you choose this option, you must download the archive and save it to a location of your choice.

Once the backup archive is downloaded, it can be used to restore the system to its last archived configuration after a disastrous system failure.

System archives do not include system and audit logs. If you want to archive these logs, you must do so separately.

Procedure

1. From the RealPresence Resource Manager system web interface, go to Admin > Maintenance > Backup/Restore System Settings.
2. When the Backup/Restore System Settings page appears, click Create and Download a Backup Archive.
3. In the Select location for download dialog, enter a unique File name, browse to a location on your system and click Save.
   A File Download dialog displays the progress of the download operation.
4. When the operation is completed, click OK.
5. Browse to the location specified in step 3 and verify the file download.

Related Links

Optional: Perform a System Backup on page 509
Creating Backup Archives on page 514
Managing Audit Log Files on page 560

Restoring the System

A user assigned the Administrator role can restore a RealPresence Resource Manager system using a backup archive.

Note: For a-la-carte and Clariti, after restoring the system with a backup archive using off-line license, you must activate the license of the system again.

When you restore databases:

- Do not allow users to connect to the system during the restoration process.
- Restore all of the system databases at the same time.
- Restore all of the system databases from backups that were taken at the same time.
- Restart the system server when the restoration process is finished.

To restore a system from a backup archive:

1. Restore the system to its factory default image.
2. Perform first time setup. For more information about First Time Setup, see the Polycom RealPresence Resource Manager System Getting Started Guide for this release.
3. If using a certificate, re-install the certificate before restoring the backup archive.
If you had installed a certificate on your system, that certificate is not restored with the system archive. You will need to re-install the certificate on the system before restoring the backup archive.

4. Restore the system using the last archived configuration. The archived configuration will overwrite the configuration that resulted from First Time Setup. The only RealPresence Resource Manager system configuration settings not included in the archive and thus not overwritten are the network settings and the security certificates required for an operational system.

   In cases when the RealPresence Resource Manager system is functional, but the configuration or database is corrupted, the backup archive can also be used to return a RealPresence Resource Manager system back to its last known good archive. As long as the network settings and security certificates are operational, the last known good archive will return the RealPresence Resource Manager system to its former functional state.

5. Activate and configure license.
   • In off-line mode, license cannot be restored. After restoring the system using the back up file, you will see the License Setup page. You need to import your license file again to activate the license.
   • In on-line mode, if you modify the RealPresence Resource Manager IP address, after restoring the system with Restore Network Settings selected, all the allocated licenses are lost. You need to enable and configure the Polycom license server, and then re-locate the licenses.

6. Upload the endpoint update packages.

   If you have endpoint packages uploaded on the RealPresence Resource Manager system, you need to re-upload the packages for your endpoint updates.

Related Links
Restore from a Backup Archive on page 543
Restore to Factory Default Image on page 542

**Restore to Factory Default Image**

In a disaster recovery situation, your Polycom Global Services (PGS) support representative may be required to restore your RealPresence Resource Manager system to its factory default image.

To perform this disaster recovery procedure, you will need the Restore to Factory Default DVD. This DVD should have the base image of the RealPresence Resource Manager system server software.

**Note:**
- This is a last resort, so never do this without being instructed to do so by PGS support.
- This process will wipe out your system database and all other system data.
- The Restore to Factory Default DVD is specific to the RealPresence Resource Manager system server type and version.

Related Links
Restoring the System on page 541
Restore from a Backup Archive

A user with the Administrator role can restore the RealPresence Resource Manager system using a backup archive.

You can use the last archived configuration. The archived configuration will overwrite the configuration that resulted from First Time Setup. The only RealPresence Resource Manager system configuration settings not included in the archive and thus not overwritten are the network settings and the security certificates required for an operational system.

When you restore from a backup archive:

- Do not allow users to connect to the server during the restoration process.
- The system restarts when the restoration process is finished.

Procedure

1. Go to Admin > Maintenance > Backup/Restore System Settings.
2. In the Select Archive File section of the Backup/Restore System Settings page, click ...
3. Select the archive file to upload and click Open.
4. Click Restore from Backup Archive.
   - Two warnings appear about the backup process. The second warns that the process is irrevocable and may result in an usable system.
5. Click OK.
   - The system uses the archive file to restore the RealPresence Resource Manager system to the state of the backup files.

When the RealPresence Resource Manager system is functional, but the configuration or database is corrupted, you can also use these steps to return a RealPresence Resource Manager system to its last known good archive. As long as the network settings and security certificates are operational, the last known good archive will return the RealPresence Resource Manager system to its former functional state.

Related Links

Restoring the System on page 541
System Security and Port Usage

Topics:

- Open Inbound Ports on the RealPresence Resource Manager System
- Outbound Ports Used by the RealPresence Resource Manager System
- Internal Ports used by the System

This section provides an overview of the port usage and security required by the Polycom RealPresence® Resource Manager system and includes a comprehensive list of services and clients on the system that are required for normal operation.

Note: Without specific notification, the ports listed in this section are not configurable.

Open Inbound Ports on the RealPresence Resource Manager System

This table lists the open inbound ports on the RealPresence Resource Manager system and provides a description of their use.

Third-party port-scanning software may incorrectly identify the Polycom proprietary services as IANA-registered services, since identification is made by port number only and not by the actual protocol being transmitted.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Port</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TCP 22</td>
<td>SSH port for remote access.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCP/UDP 53</td>
<td>DNS port. Used to support Geographical redundancy. Blocked in single server deployment (no redundancy).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| TCP 80        | • HTTP web server, through which the web application displays and where Polycom endpoints post status messages.  
                 • HTTP web access for GUI.                                             |
| TCP/UDP 161 or TCP 8161 | SNMP listener  
                   You can configure to use 161 or 8161 from the GUI.                |
| TCP 389       | Directory services (LDAP)                                                    |
| TCP 443       | HTTPS (TLS) web server listener. Used to provide web access for endpoints. Used to provision endpoints and communicate with the Polycom RealPresence Collaboration Server (RMX) and the Polycom RealPresence DMA system. |
### Outbound Ports Used by the RealPresence Resource Manager System

The following table lists all outbound ports that the RealPresence Resource Manager system uses to communicate with other systems, including endpoints, bridges, database servers, and other network equipment.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Port</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TCP 20</td>
<td>Used to FTP data to endpoints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCP 21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCP/UDP 23</td>
<td>Used to access the telnet interfaces on endpoints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCP/UDP 24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCP/UDP 25</td>
<td>Used to send email messages to SMTP servers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Port</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCP/UDP 53</td>
<td>Used to access domain name servers (DNS)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UDP 67/UDP 68</td>
<td>Used to access DHCP server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCP 80</td>
<td>Used to access the web application on endpoints.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCP 8080</td>
<td>Used to access the web application on MCUs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UDP 123</td>
<td>Used to access NTP server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCP 161</td>
<td>SNMP query</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCP/UDP 162</td>
<td>Used to access SNMP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCP/UDP 389</td>
<td>Used to access directory (LDAP) services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCP 443</td>
<td>• Secure access to endpoint devices (SSL) including Polycom CMA Desktop.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Used as Polycom RealPresence Clariti license portal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>◦ Source port: 32768-61000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>◦ Destination IP/port (FQDN domain): polycom.flexnetoperations.com</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCP 445</td>
<td>Active Directory Single Sign-on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCP/UDP 636</td>
<td>Used to access LDAP over TLS/SSL (LDAPS)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCP/UDP 3268</td>
<td>Used to access the Microsoft Active Directory Global Catalog using StartTLS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCP/UDP 3269</td>
<td>Used to access the Microsoft Active Directory Global Catalog using LDAP-S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCP 443/8443</td>
<td>API communications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCP 5060</td>
<td>Used to send check sync messages to phones.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICMP Type: 8, Code: 0</td>
<td>Ping to detect status of network instances.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Internal Ports used by the System**

The following ports are used internally by the RealPresence Resource Manager system. They are not exposed (via firewall) and cannot be accessed by other servers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Port</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TCP 1161</td>
<td>SNMP service.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCP 1443</td>
<td>Dynamic provisioning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Port</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCP 2443</td>
<td>Downloading UC images.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCP 3443</td>
<td>UC endpoint monitor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCP 4443</td>
<td>UC endpoint file uploading and resource file downloading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCP 5445</td>
<td>UC endpoint provisioning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCP 5432</td>
<td>PostgreSQL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCP 6389</td>
<td>OpenDS port. Used for site topology management.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCP 8089</td>
<td>UC service internal call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCP 9443</td>
<td>Used to communicate via JServer and Netty.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Supported Ciphers

On the Admin > Management and Security > TLS Settings page, you can enable different ciphers suites and modes.

RealPresence Resource Manager supports the following cipher options:

- Cipher Modes:
  - Strong Ciphers
  - Standard Ciphers
  - Weak Ciphers
- Enable Fips-140
- Enable CBC Ciphers
- Enable Static Ciphers

You can enable or disable the CBC and static ciphers in any cipher mode. For example, if you select Strong Ciphers with CBC Ciphers and Static Ciphers enabled, all the CBC, static, DHE, and ECDHE ciphers are enabled.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cipher Mode</th>
<th>NSS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Strong Ciphers mode with CBC Ciphers and Static Ciphers enabled when RealPresence Resource Manager works as a server.</td>
<td>TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA, TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA, TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_128_GCM_SHA256, TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_256_GCM_SHA384, TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_GCM_SHA256, TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA256, TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA256, TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA384, TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA, TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA, TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_GCM_SHA256, TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_GCM_SHA384, TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA, TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA, TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA, TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA256, TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA256</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cipher Mode</td>
<td>NSS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Strong Ciphers</strong> mode with <strong>CBC Ciphers</strong> and <strong>Static Ciphers</strong> enabled when RealPresence Resource Manager works as a client.</td>
<td>TLS_DHE_DSS_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA256, TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA, TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA, TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA, TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA, TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_128_GCM_SHA256, TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_256_GCM_SHA384, TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_GCM_SHA256, TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_GCM_SHA256, TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_GCM_SHA384, TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA256, TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA384, TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA, TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA, TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA, TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA, TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA256, TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA256</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Cipher Mode

**Standard Ciphers** mode with **CBC Ciphers** and **Static Ciphers** enabled when RealPresence Resource Manager works as a server.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cipher Mode</th>
<th>NSS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SSL_RSA_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSL_DH_RSA_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA256,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA256,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA256,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA256,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA256,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA384,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA256,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA384,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_128_GCM_SHA256,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_256_GCM_SHA384,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_GCM_SHA256,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_GCM_SHA384,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_128_GCM_SHA256,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_256_GCM_SHA384,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA256,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA256,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA256,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Supported Ciphers
**Cipher Mode** | **NSS**
---|---
**Standard Ciphers** mode with **CBC Ciphers** and **Static Ciphers** enabled when RealPresence Resource Manager works as a client.

- TLS_DHE_DSS_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA256,
- TLS_ECDSA_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA,
- TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA,
- SSL_RSA_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA,
- TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA,
- TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA,
- SSL_DHE_DSS_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA,
- TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA,
- TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA,
- SSL_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA,
- TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA,
- TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA,
- TLS_DHE_DSS_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA,
- TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA,
- TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA,
### Cipher Mode

**Weak Ciphers** mode with **CBC Ciphers** and **Static Ciphers** enabled when RealPresence Resource Manager works as a server.

- SSL_RSA_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA
- TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA
- SSL_DHE_RSA_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA

**Weak Ciphers** mode with **CBC Ciphers** and **Static Ciphers** enabled when RealPresence Resource Manager works as a client.

- TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA
- SSL_RSA_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA
- TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA
- SSL_DHE_DSS_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA
- SSL_DHE_RSA_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA

**FIPS-140** mode when RealPresence Resource Manager works as a server.

- TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA
- TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA
- TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA

**FIPS-140** mode when RealPresence Resource Manager works as a client.

- SSL_RSA_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA
- TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA
- TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA
- SSL_DHE_RSA_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA
- TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA
- TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA

### Related Links

[Configure TLS Settings](#) on page 463
Part XII

Troubleshooting

Topics:

- System Maintenance and Troubleshooting
- Configuring Alert Settings

This section includes information related to troubleshooting issues with your RealPresence Resource Manager system. You can also find information on downloading and using logs.
System Maintenance and Troubleshooting

Topics:

- System Log Overview
- Managing Locally Stored System Logs
- Managing System Logs using a Syslog Server
- Managing Audit Log Files
- View RealPresence Resource Manager System Report
- Troubleshooting Utilities
- Working with UC Management Log
- Troubleshooting Specific Types of Issues
- Diagnostics for your Dell Server

You can troubleshoot problems with RealPresence Resource Manager system logs, Troubleshooting Utilities, and other functions.

Related Links
Change the System User Interface Timeout and Number of Sessions on page 466

System Log Overview

The detailed technical data in the system log files can help Polycom Global Services resolve problems and provide technical support for your system.

In such a situation, your support representative may ask you to download log archives and send them to Polycom Global Services. You may be asked to manually roll logs in order to begin gathering data anew. After a certain amount of the activity of interest, you may be asked to download the active logs and send them to Polycom Global Services.

You can choose to store system logs on your local server in addition to using an external syslog server, according to parameters you choose.

Available System Logs

The RealPresence Resource Manager system provides the following system logs:
RealPresence Resource Manager system application log. The log file that shows information related to the internal LDAP, SNMP, DM, XMPP, Site Topology and dynamically managed endpoint login and provisioning functionality.

**Note:** When you set the logging level to Debug for the Jserver log, you can also use the Activity Filter tab to specify individual IP addresses or users to emphasize in the Jserver log.

Log file for the device management process.

Conference scheduling log used by the conference scheduling process. This log contains debug information on how a conference is created.

Redundancy log that records redundancy status and activity such as corosync, pacemakers, dataeng, lrmd and so on.

Redundancy log that record related information once a failover has occurred.

Real-time phone management log that records file requests and responses to phones, notification events from phones at the debug level, and phone sync information between the RealPresence Resource Manager system and CUCM.

### Related Links
- [Customize Jserver Log to Target Specific Activity](#) on page 557

### Managing Locally Stored System Logs
When you choose to store system logs on the local RealPresence Resource Manager system, you can easily download them directly from the system, customize the logging settings, as well as determine how often the logs are restarted (rolled).

### View Locally Stored System Log Files
Many of the RealPresence Resource Manager system components can write a System Log File when they experience an error or issue.

Audio phone logs can only be viewed and downloaded from the Endpoint > Monitor View page.

**Procedure**
1. Go to Admin > Maintenance > System Log Files.
   
   The System Log Files list appears listing the logs for the given time period.
2. Select the log file you want to view and click Download.

### Change Logging Level for Locally Stored Logs
You can set the logging level for the system log file stored on the local server.

You can configure the local log level for the following system logs:

- Jserver
Note: If you set the Jserver log to debug level, the RealPresence Resource Manager system automatically rolls back the log level to info level after 7 days.

Procedure

1. Go to Admin > Maintenance > Log Settings. The System Log Files list displays.
2. Select log you want to change and click Edit.
3. In the Configuration dialog, click Local Settings.
4. Configure the settings for the specified file.
   - If you set the local level to None, the system doesn’t store a log file.
5. Click OK.

Local Settings of Log Files

The table describes the available settings of a log file.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Local Level</td>
<td>Sets the logging level for the system log file stored on the local server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Logging levels include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Emergency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Alert</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Critical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Warning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Notice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Debug</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note:</td>
<td>When you set the logging level to Debug for the JServer log, you can also use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the Activity Filter tab to specify individual IP addresses or users to emphasize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>in the JServer log.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rotation Size</td>
<td>Configures the maximum size the log file can reach before it is rolled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configured File Count</td>
<td>Configures the maximum number of this type of log file that can be stored on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the local server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Download Locally Stored Log Files

You can download a .gz file that includes the log files for the RealPresence Resource Manager system. The log files include the operating system level application, security, and system logs. These logs store events logged by the operating system.

**Procedure**

1. Go to Admin > Maintenance > System Log Files.
2. Click Download All.
3. To open the .gz file, in the File Download dialog, click Open with, and browse to the program you use to open.
4. To save the .gz file to your local computer, in the File Download dialog, click Save.

### Roll Locally Stored Log Files

You can use the Roll Log action to close and archive locally stored log files and start new log files.

Although you can configure an automatic window in which logs are rolled (restarted), you can also manually roll the logs whenever you need to troubleshoot a particular incident.

When you roll locally-stored logs, the following subset of locally-stored logs are archived and restarted.

- Jserver
- DeviceManager
- Conference
- Corosync
- Redundancy
- AudioPhone

**Procedure**

1. Go to Admin > Maintenance > System Log Files.
2. Click Roll Logs.
   - A message displays confirming the operation and detailing which logs were rolled.
3. Click Close to close the information dialog.

### Customize Jserver Log to Target Specific Activity

You can customize the JServer log to target specific IP or user activity.

This can help when troubleshooting issues that may be related to a certain system or user configuration. When you customize the JServer log, you set its logging level to debug and then add up to five Activity
Filters that will be displayed in the log. This is usually done in conjunction with rolling the log file to get more targeted results.

Procedure

1. Go to Admin > Maintenance > Log Settings. The System Log Files list appears.
2. Select the Jserver log.
3. Click Edit. 
4. In the Configuration dialog, click Local Settings.
5. In Local Settings section, select Debug from the Local Level drop-down field.
6. In the Configuration dialog, click Activity Filter Settings.
7. Configure up to five Activity Filters for the log.
   a. Select User or IP from the drop-down box.
   b. Enter the IP address or user you want to view in the log.
      For users, enter the domain and user name, such as local\admin.
      For IP addresses, enter a valid IP address, such as 10.34.12.10.
8. Click OK.

Related Links
Available System Logs on page 554

Managing System Logs using a Syslog Server

If your IT environment includes an external syslog server, you can choose to have system logs automatically sent to that server to be stored and managed externally from the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

Store System Logs on a Remote Syslog Server

You can select individual logs and choose to have them stored on a remote syslog server.

Logs can be stored both locally and on a syslog server at the same time. You can use both methods if you want to customize log settings.

**Note:** The corosync.log and redundancy.log include database information that cannot be completely stored on a remote syslog server. Please defer to locally stored files for complete information about redundancy issues. The OS-audit and OS-secure logs can only are sorted on a remote syslog server.

Procedure

1. Go to Admin > Maintenance > Log Settings.
2. The System Log Files list appears.
3. Select log you want to change.
4. Click Edit.
5. In the Configuration dialog, click Remote Settings.
6. Click Add to add a remote log.
7. Configure the following settings for the specified file.
   If you set the **Remote Level** to **None**, no log file will be stored.
8. Click **OK** to add the remote setting to the list.
9. Optionally, select the remote logs and click **More > Test Remote Connection** to verify that your remote syslog server setting was entered correctly.
10. Click **OK** to exit the dialog.

**Remote Settings of Log Files**
The table describes the available remote settings of a log file.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Level</td>
<td>Sets the logging level for the system log file stored on the local server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Logging levels include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Emergency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Alert</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Critical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Warning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Notice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Debug</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote Host</td>
<td>Indicates the IP address of the remote syslog server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote Port</td>
<td>Indicates the port used to access the remote syslog server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote Protocol</td>
<td>Indicates the transfer protocol to use. You can select TLS, TCP or UDP.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Delete a Log from Being Stored on a Remote Syslog Server**
When you delete the remote settings for a system log, it is no longer sent to the syslog server for storage.

**Procedure**
1. Go to **Admin > Maintenance > Log Settings**.
2. The **System Log Files** list appears.
3. Select log you want to modify.
4. Click **Edit**.
5. In the **Configuration** dialog, click **Remote Settings**.
6. Select the remote server settings that you want to delete and click **Delete**.
Managing Audit Log Files

Audit logs provide a way to monitor the system for security and system access activity.

The following table identifies the RealPresence Resource Manager system audit log files.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Log Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>localhost_access.log</td>
<td>Log file that shows every web request that was made from client systems. The system may have more than one such log.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ResourceManager_audit_jserver.log</td>
<td>Log file that captures security-related authentication issues.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kernel.log</td>
<td>Logs are useful not only for understanding the internal operation of a system but also the timing and relationships of activities within the system through the time-ordered messages within a time-stamped log.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hids.log</td>
<td>Log file that captures intrusion detection alerts.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Related Links

Create a System Backup Manually on page 541

View and Download Audit Logs

You can view and download audit log files.

Procedure

1. Go to Admin > Maintenance > Audit Log Files.
   The Audit Log Files page appears listing the logs being stored on the system.
2. Select the audit log you want to download and click Download.
3. In the File Download dialog, click Open to view the file or click Save to save the log file to your local system.

Change Audit Log Settings

Audit logs are automatically kept and stored until the maximum storage amount is of 2 GB is reached.

You can configure alerts to be sent when the audit logs reach a specified percentage of the maximum storage available.

Audit logs are automatically rolled, archived, and the oldest logs deleted when the 90 percent of the storage (1.8 GB) is used. An alert is sent to the alert email address you have configured.

To set an alert for audit log storage

Procedure

1. Navigate to Admin > Audit Log Files.
2. Click **Change Settings**.

3. In the **Audit Log File Setting** dialog, configure the percentage of file size usage you want to reach before being alerted.

   You can set a percentage between 40 and 80 percent of the maximum storage amount of 2 GB.

4. Click **OK**.

**Roll Audit Logs**

You can archive logs and restart them at any time.

This process is called rolling. When you roll audit logs, each existing log is zipped and stored as a .gz file that can be backed up and deleted from the system.

Audit logs are automatically rolled, archived, and the oldest logs deleted when the 90 percent of the storage (1.8 GB) is used. An alert is sent to the alert email address you have configured.

Current logs maintain an extension of .log while archived logs are stored as .gz files.

**Procedure**

1. Navigate to **Admin > Audit Logs**.
2. Click **Roll Logs**.
   
   A message dialog informs you that the audit log files were successfully rolled.
3. Click **Close** to close the information dialog.

**Backup and Delete Audit Files**

The RealPresence Resource Manager system enables you to store audit logs locally until the maximum file storage limit of 2 GB is met.

You should periodically roll the logs, and then backup the archived files and delete them from the local system.

You can create a backup of audit files and then delete the files from the server. After you create a backup (a zip file) you are prompted to verify that the files are authentically from the server from which they were downloaded and have not been modified since being downloaded. You need to verify the zip file with the Polycom Verification Utility which is provided.

You must have the auditor role in order to download and delete audit log files.

**Procedure**

1. Navigate to **Admin > Maintenance > Audit Log Files**.
2. Select the audit log file(s) that you want to backup and delete.
3. Click **Backup and Delete**.
4. The files will be saved in your browser's download folder.
5. In the **Backup and Delete** dialog, ensure that each audit log file that you want to backup is selected.
   
   All audit logs are selected by default, you can deselect the files that you do not want to include in the archive.
6. Click **Download Verification Utility** if you want to delete the backed-up logs.

   The Polycom File Verification Utility generates a checksum number that can be used as a verification code to ensure that the audit log files have not been modified after they were downloaded.
7. Execute the File Verification Utility and browse to the location of the audit file backup.
   After doing so, the File Verification Utility will output a value that can be copied to the clipboard.
8. Copy the Verification Value and enter it into the Verification Code section of the RealPresence Resource Manager system dialog.
9. Click Verify and Delete.
   The audit logs are deleted from the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

**View RealPresence Resource Manager System Report**

The RealPresence Resource Manager System Report can be a useful report.

It produces a SystemInfo.txt file that describes the system configuration.

**Procedure**

1. Go to Admin > Maintenance > Troubleshooting Utilities.
2. Click Resource Manager System Report to download the system report.
3. When the File Download dialog appears, either Open or Save the SystemInfo.txt file:

   The report includes this information.

```plaintext
RESOURCE MANAGER VERSION
   Software version : 8.1.0.0_12-135102
   Hardware version : UNKNOWN
   LDAP Integration : false
SECURITY SETTINGS
   System under Secure Mode: false
NETWORK CONFIGURATION
   System name           : XMA-114
   System DSCP tag       : 0
   System IPv4 Address   : 10.220.202.114
   System IPv6 Address   : N/A
   System IPv6 Link local: N/A
   System subnet mask    : 255.255.255.0
   System default gateway: 10.220.202.254
   System DNS domain     : pct-cmaqa.com
   System DNS server 1: 172.21.120.179
   System DNS server 2: N/A
LICENSE INFO
   Total number of licenses  : 100
   Number of licenses in used: 0
CONFERENCE SETTINGS
   Conference Time Warning                   : true
   Include Conference Owner in new Conference: false
   Allow Overbooking of dial-In participants : false
   Conference PIN Length                     : 6
SESSION MANAGEMENT SETTINGS
   Remote Access Connection is allowed     : true
   Resource Manager User Interface timeout (in sec): 0
   Max number of sessions per user         : 5
   Max number of sessions per user enabled : false
   Max number of sessions per system        : 50
LOCAL USER ACCOUNT CONFIGURATION
   Failed login threshold             : 3
   Failed login windows (hours)       : 1
```

Polycom, Inc.
Lockout duration (minutes) : Indefinite
Account Inactivity threshold (days): -1
LOCAL PASSWORD REQUIREMENTS
Maximum password age (days) : 180
Password warning interval (days): 7
Number of lowercase letters : 1
Number of uppercase letters : 1
Minimum length (characters) : 8
Minimum password age (days) : 1
Number of numbers : 1
Reject previous passwords : 8
Number of special characters : 1
Minimum number of changed characters : 1
Maximum consecutive repeated characters: 1
CERTIFICATE INFO
Certificate Settings : N/A
Cipher Suite : STANDARD_MODE
Allow Server Self Signed Cert : true
Require Clients Send Certificate : false
External Server Settings : N/A
Trust Server Self Signed Certificate : false
Validate Server's hostname : false
Validate Server's Date Range : false
Validate Server's Revocation : false
External Client Settings : N/A
Trust Client Self Signed Certificate : false
Validate Client's Date Range : false
Validate Client's Revocation : false
Certificate Common Name : Resource Manager Self-Signed
Certificate Alias : 1
Certificate Issuer : Resource Manager Self-Signed
Certificate Common Name : XMA-114.pct-cmaqa.com
Certificate Alias : default
Certificate Issuer : XMA-114.pct-cmaqa.com
REDUNDANCY INFORMATION
Server 1 IP address: N/A
Server 1 is Active: false
Server 1 is ON : false
Server 2 IP address: N/A
Server 2 is Backup: true
Server 2 is ON : false
Virtual IP address : N/A
DATABASE CONFIGURATION
Use external DB : false

Troubleshooting Utilities
The RealPresence Resource Manager system has a Troubleshooting Utilities panel that brings together on one page access to all of the information you might need to diagnose system issues.
It includes access to various diagnostic files. You also can restart and shutdown your system from here.
The diagnostic files include:
• **Restart/Shutdown**: Click the buttons to restart or shut down the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

• **Traces**: Use this option to generate and download a network sniffer trace that can help you examine the traffic to and from the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

• **Resource Manager System Logs**: Use this option to generate and download a `GetAllLogs.zip` file that includes all of the RealPresence Resource Manager system log files. For more information about these system logs,

• **Resource Manager System Report**: Use this option to generate and download a `SystemInfo.txt` file that describes the system configuration.

• **Test Network Connection**: Use this option to perform a **Traceroute** or **Ping** operation. **Traceroute** enables you to investigate the route path and transit times of packets as they travel across an IP network. **Ping** enables you to test the availability of a host on an IP network.

• **View UC Management Log**: Use this option to troubleshoot UC management issues by checking the UC management real-time log:
  - File requests and responses to UC endpoints: phone’s MAC address or other UC endpoint’s serial number, file name, success or fail response in info level.
  - Notification event from UC endpoints at debug level.
  - (CUCM-synced Phones) Phone sync information between the RealPresence Resource Manager system and CUCM, such as the MAC address read from CUCM API and the failure reason when phones fail to be added in info level.

**Capture a Trace Using Filters**
When capturing a trace, you can filter to make the capture more accurate.

You can use any filters that `tcpdump` command supports. For example, use the `tcp port 22` filter for catching SSH communication.

**Procedure**
1. Go to **Admin > Maintenance > Troubleshooting Utilities**.
2. Enter a filter.
3. Click **Start Capture**.
   
   You can view the trace file at **Admin > Maintenance > System Log Files**.

**Working with UC Management Log**
You can view, search text in, or download the real-time UC management log.

You can also pause or resume the logging process, clear the log window, or change the settings of the log.

**View UC Management Log**
You can troubleshoot UC management issues by viewing the real-time UC log.

**Procedure**
1. Go to **Admin > Maintenance > Troubleshooting Utilities**.
2. Click **View UC Management Log**.
3. Click **Pause** to pause or click **Resume** to resume the logging process.
Filter UC Management Log
You can locate specific errors or UC endpoints in the real-time UC management log by search.

Procedure
1. Go to Admin > Maintenance > Troubleshooting Utilities.
2. Click View UC Management Log.
3. In the View Real-time UC Management Log window, enter your keywords in the top right text box and press Enter.
4. To remove the filter or clear the search result, delete your keywords and press Enter.

Download UC Management Log
You can download the real-time UC management log to your local drive for reference.

Procedure
1. Go to Admin > Maintenance > Troubleshooting Utilities.
2. Click View UC Management Log.
3. In the View Real-time UC Management Log window, click Download to download the log.
   If you download after filtering the log, the downloaded log still contains the full log instead of the filtered contents.

Clear UC Management Window
You can clear the real-time UC management log window to get the log from the current point.

By default the window shows the latest 1000 lines in the log. If there's no updates in the log after you clear the window, the window still shows the previous contents.

Procedure
1. Go to Admin > Maintenance > Troubleshooting Utilities.
2. Click View UC Management Log.
3. In the View Real-time UC Management Log window, click Clear to clear the window.
   If you download the log after clearing the window, the downloaded log still contains the full log.
# Troubleshooting Specific Types of Issues

This section describes information on troubleshooting specific types of issues on the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

## Registration Problems and Solutions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Problem</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Solutions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unable to place calls to an MCU conference room from a registered Polycom HDX system</td>
<td>The dynamic management mode RealPresence Resource Manager system rejects the ARQ stating that the “endpoint is not registered” to the gatekeeper even though the system indicates it is registered.</td>
<td>• The MCU is not registered to the gatekeeper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Some endpoints are not assigned ISDN numbers.</td>
<td>• A registered H.323-only system was not assigned an ISDN number. The system could belong to a network that does not have ISDN number ranges assigned to it. • No ISDN numbers are available to assign.</td>
<td>• Verify that the endpoint belongs to the site that has assigned ISDN number ranges. To do so, go to Network Topology &gt; Sites and make sure the site has the correct ISDN range specified in the ISDN Number Assignment pane. • Verify that ISDN numbers are available to assign. • Verify that the RCF message “Can't find ISDN free pool” from the gatekeeper returns to the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endpoints that were previously registered and auto-assigned ISDN numbers are being rejected when attempting to register.</td>
<td>Inconsistent configuration in ISDN number assignment has occurred.</td>
<td>• Verify that the previous ISDN range was changed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When the RealPresence Resource Manager system is restarted, some registrants that were previously online are now offline.</td>
<td>• Some endpoints do not re-register when the RealPresence Resource Manager system goes down. • Some MCUs do not re-register automatically after two retries.</td>
<td>• Reboot the MCU.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Point-to-Point Calling Problems and Solutions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Problem</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Solutions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| A call with an alias as the dial string from a registered endpoint cannot be placed to another registered endpoint. The two endpoints are in different sites. | • The site link between the sites in which the endpoints reside is not correctly defined or is missing.  
• No bandwidth is available to the site link.  
• The calling bit rate is higher than the bit rate defined in the site link.  
• ISDN alternate routing is not available.  
• Dialing rules may not be enabled or may be set to block instead of route. | • Go to Network Topology > Site Links and make sure that a site link exists between the two networks.  
• Make sure that the IP addresses of both endpoints are included in their respective sites.  
• If site topology is defined for both endpoints, verify that there is enough bandwidth in the site links between the two sites.  
• Verify that the dialing bit rate is lower or equal to that of the maximum bit rate defined for the site links.  
• If the endpoint is ISDN capable, verify that the ISDN parameter is correct. |

## MCU and Gateway Dialing Problems and Solutions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Problem</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Solutions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Call fails when using an MCU service.  
Dialing an MCU service results in a network error. | The call using the MCU service is rejected because of one of the following:  
• The MCU is not registered.  
• The MCU is offline.  
• The MCU prefix is not registered as an E.164 alias.  
• The MCU resource issue was sent through resource allocation indication or resource allocation. | • Verify that the MCU is registered.  
• Verify that the MCU is online. If the device is offline, reboot it. |

# Diagnostics for your Dell Server

If your RealPresence Resource Manager system is shipped with a Dell D620 server, you need to have a USB keyboard and a monitor in order to run diagnostics.  

Perform these diagnostics only under the guidance of Polycom Global Services.
Configuring Alert Settings

Topics:

- Setting Up Remote Alerts
- Configuring Remote Alert Profiles
- Disable System Remote Alerts
- Viewing and Deleting Network Device Alerts
- View Endpoint Event Status

You can configure the RealPresence Resource Manager system to send alerts to users via e-mail for specific types of system and endpoint events.

Related Links
Create a Whitelist to Manage Access on page 469
Create an Automatic System Backup on page 539

Setting Up Remote Alerts

The RealPresence Resource Manager system remote alerts functionality is very flexible.

It enables you to:

- Assign different severity levels to different classifications of RealPresence Resource Manager system and Endpoint alerts.
- Create different alert profiles so that different types of alerts can be sent to different people. So if you have administrators who specialize by device type (for example bridges, endpoints, or servers), you can create profiles that notify each type of administrator of failures related to those specific types of devices.

Set Up System Generated E-mail Account

You can set up the e-mail account from which the RealPresence Resource Manager system will send conference notification e-mails and system alerts.

- Many e-mail servers will block or discard e-mails without a qualified From: address. To avoid this issue, make sure each person with Scheduler permissions has a valid e-mail address.
- Many e-mail servers will block or discard e-mails from untrusted domains, in which case you may need to change the default RealPresence Resource Manager system e-mail address to one in a trusted domain.
- The RealPresence Resource Manager system only sends e-mails for new alerts. The system does not send e-mails for alert updates.

Procedure

1. Go to Admin > Server Settings > E-mail.
2. (Optional) On the E-mail page, select the Allow confirmation e-mails for scheduled conferences check box to activate the e-mail function for conference.
   
   With this function enabled, you can enter the text for conference reminder E-mails.
3. In the From Address text box, enter the e-mail account (ASCII only) from which the RealPresence Resource Manager system will send conference notification e-mails and system alerts.

4. In the SMTP Server text box, specify the IP address of the SMTP server from which the RealPresence Resource Manager system will send conference notification e-mails.

5. Click Update.

Related Links
Configuring Remote Alert Profiles on page 571

Enable RealPresence Resource Manager System Remote Alerts
You can enable remote alerts to be sent.

Procedure
1. Go to Alert > Remote Alert Setup.
2. Select the check box of Allow remote alert e-mails.
3. Set the Remote Alert delay time after system startup, which is the amount of time (in minutes) that the system should wait after alerts have been detected but not cleared before starting the alert notification process, and if applicable, the remote alert notification process.
4. Click Update.

Set RealPresence Resource Manager System Remote Alert Level Settings
The RealPresence Resource Manager system monitors and reports events regarding its performance, connections, and services.

It divides alerts into four alert levels: Warning, Minor, Major, and Critical.

By default, most of the Alert Severity Levels are set to Warning for all of the Resource Manager Alert Types they report. You have these options:

- You can leave the Alert Severity Levels set to Warning and create a single remote alert profile that enables you to notify all users assigned that profile about system events of all types.
- You can change some of the Alert Severity Levels to Minor, Major, or Critical and create multiple remote alert profiles that notify different users of system events of different types and severity levels.

Procedure
1. Go to Alert > Alert Level Settings.
2. Click the RealPresence Resource Manager tab.
3. Change the alert severity level for the RealPresence Resource Manager alert type system events, as required.
4. Click Update.

Set RealPresence Resource Manager System Alert Threshold Settings
You can view the current default threshold values for RealPresence Resource Manager alarms for each product.

When a monitored metric exceeds a threshold, an alarm is raised.

Procedure
Set Endpoint Alert Level Settings

Monitored endpoints send events to the RealPresence Resource Manager system. The RealPresence Resource Manager system categorizes and reports endpoint alerts into four alert levels: Warning, Minor, Major, and Critical.

By default the Alert Severity Level is set to Warning for all of the Resource Manager Alert Types it reports. You have these options:

- Leave all of the Alert Severity Levels set to Warning and create a remote alert profile for each endpoint type being monitored that enables you to notify all users assigned that profile about all endpoint events applicable to that endpoint type.
- Change some of the Alert Severity Levels to Error and create multiple remote alert profiles that notify different users of endpoint events of different types and severity levels.

Procedure

1. Go to Alert > Alert Level Settings.
2. Click the Endpoints tab.
3. Change the levels for the different types of endpoint events as required.
4. Click Update.

Related Links

Video Endpoint and Phones License Control (Non - Polycom RealPresence Clariti) on page 72

Endpoint Alert Level

Set the levels for the endpoint alert levels.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alert Type</th>
<th>Alert indicates…</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Control Battery Low</td>
<td>The battery in the endpoint's remote needs to be replaced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credentials Required</td>
<td>The endpoint system requires that the user enter a valid username and password.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credentials Failed</td>
<td>An attempt to log into the endpoint system failed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HTTP Forbidden</td>
<td>The endpoint must be used in https: mode only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device Not Responding</td>
<td>The endpoint is not responding to the RealPresence Resource Manager system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heartbeat Timeout</td>
<td>The endpoint did not send a heartbeat to the RealPresence Resource Manager system within the required timeout period.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alert Type</td>
<td>Alert indicates...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gatekeeper Status Unknown</td>
<td>The system gatekeeper cannot determine the connection status of the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gatekeeper Rejected</td>
<td>The gatekeeper rejected the endpoint's attempt to register.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gatekeeper Unregistered</td>
<td>The dynamically managed endpoint is not registered to the gatekeeper. This alert</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cannot be used on non-dynamically managed endpoints.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Directory Status Unknown</td>
<td>The system gatekeeper cannot determine the directory status of the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Directory Not Registered</td>
<td>The endpoint is not registered to the directory service.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presence Status Unknown</td>
<td>The system gatekeeper cannot determine the presence status of the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presence Unregistered</td>
<td>The endpoint is not registered to the presence service.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Assistance Request</td>
<td>The endpoint user sent a request for help.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Management URL Not Set</td>
<td>The RealPresence Resource Manager system is not one of the management URLs set on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the endpoint, possibly because the management URL list is full.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note:</td>
<td>Because endpoint systems do not have an interface to manually delete management</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>URLs, if the management list is full you must disconnect the endpoint's network</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cable for two minutes. This should clear up all the mgmt server URLs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Touch ControlDisconnected</td>
<td>The Touch Control device that was connected to the listed HDX is no longer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>connected to the HDX.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Touch Control Software Incompatible with Endpoint</td>
<td>The software version of the Touch Control platform is not compatible with the Endpoint software version.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIP URI Not Provisioned</td>
<td>A dynamically managed endpoint at a site with SIP enabled does not have a SIP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dial string reservation. The endpoint is provisioned without SIP enabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIP Status Unknown</td>
<td>The SIP server cannot determine the status of the endpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIP Unregistered</td>
<td>The endpoint is not registered with the SIP server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Configuring Remote Alert Profiles

Remote alert profiles identify which device alerts are included in alert settings.

Note that using a combination of setting alerts by device types, network devices, phones, or endpoints, provides additional granularity in managing device alerts.
Add a Remote Alert Profile

You can add a remote alert profile to identify which device alerts from which devices should be included in alert information.

Procedure

1. Go to Alert > Remote Alert Profiles.
3. In the Add Remote Alert Profile dialog, enter Alert Profile Name and Description for the profile.
4. To activate the profile, select the Enabled check box.
5. Configure one of the following:
   - To have all RealPresence Resource Manager system alerts sent as part of this profile, select Warning, Minor, Major, and Critical.
   - To have a subset of RealPresence Resource Manager system alerts sent as part of this profile, select any combination of Warning, Minor, Major, or Critical. These selections work in conjunction with the RealPresence Resource Manager system alert level settings you chose previously.
   - To have no RealPresence Resource Manager system alerts sent as part of this profile, leave Warning, Minor, Major, and Critical cleared.
6. If you want to request notification trap of endpoints:
   a. Enable the SNMP agent and choose POLYCOM_RESOURCE_SCHEDULER_MANAGEMENT for the Supported MIB.
   b. Add an SNMP notification agent.
   c. Select the Send Endpoint Notification Trap check box on the General Info tab of the Add Remote Alert Profile dialog.
7. To use the device type to identify which category of devices and device alerts should be sent as part of this profile, click Alert by Device Type and configure one of the following.
   For endpoint systems, these selections work in conjunction with the endpoint alert level settings you choose previously.
   - To have all device alerts for all device types sent as part of this profile, in the Device Type Alert Level Mapping page, select Warning, Minor, Major, and Critical for all of the device types.
   - To have a subset of device alerts for all device types sent as part of this profile, in the Device Type Alert Level Mapping page, select any combination of Warning, Minor, Major, or Critical for each device type.
   - To have all device alerts for a subset of device types sent as part of this profile, in the Device Type Alert Level Mapping page, select Warning, Minor, Major, or Critical for each device type to be included in the profile. Alerts for those device types that do not have an alert level selected will not be included.
8. To use the device name or the endpoint name to identify which devices and device alerts should be sent as part of this profile, click Alert by Network Device or Alert by Endpoint.
   a. As needed, click Filter to customize the device or endpoint list.
b. In the **Available Devices** list, select the devices or endpoints to add to the profile.

c. Click the down arrow to add the devices to the **Monitored Devices** list and configure one of the following:

   • To have all device alerts for all selected devices sent as part of this profile, for the devices in the **Monitored Devices** list, select **Warning**, **Minor**, **Major**, and **Critical** for each device.

   • To have a subset of device alerts for all selected devices sent as part of this profile, for the devices in the **Monitored Devices** list, select any combination of **Warning**, **Minor**, **Major**, or **Critical** for each device.

   • To have all device alerts for a subset of device types sent as part of this profile, for the devices in the **Monitored Devices** list, select **Warning**, **Minor**, **Major**, or **Critical** for each device to be included in the profile. Alerts for those devices in the **Monitored Devices** list that do not have an alert level selected will not be included.

   The settings are cumulative. If you set device alerts for specific devices, these settings work along with settings made on the **Alert by Device Type** page.

   You cannot set the system up to send device alerts for specific desktop video endpoints. Polycom RealPresence Desktop and RealPresence Mobile endpoints are not displayed in the **Available Device** list.

9. To use the endpoint group name to identify which category of devices and device alerts should be sent as part of this profile, click **Alert by Endpoint Group** and configure one of the following:

   a. As needed, click **Filter** to filter the endpoint group list.

   b. In the **Available Endpoint Group** list, select the endpoint group to add to the profile.

   c. Click the down arrow to add the devices to the **Monitored Endpoint Group** list and configure one of the following:

      • To have all device alerts for all devices in the selected endpoint group sent as part of this profile, in the **Monitored Endpoint Group** list, select **Warning**, **Minor**, **Major**, and **Critical** for each endpoint group.

      • To have a subset of device alerts for all devices in the selected endpoint group sent as part of this profile, for the endpoint groups in the **Monitored Endpoint Group** list, select any combination of **Warning**, **Minor**, **Major**, or **Critical** for each endpoint group.

      • To have all device alerts for devices in a subset of endpoint groups sent as part of this profile, for each of the endpoint groups in the **Monitored Endpoint Group** list that do not have an alert level selected will not be included.

10. Click **OK**.

### Supported Device Types for Remote Alerts

This section lists all supported device types for which you can set an alert.

#### Supported Network Devices

- RealPresence DMA
- RealPresence Collaboration Server
- RealPresence Access Director
- RealPresence Web Suite Services Portal
• RealPresence Web Suite Experience Portal
• RealPresence Media Suite

**Supported Endpoints**
• V and VSX Series
• Cisco®
• HDX Series
• QDX Series
• CX
• LifeSize®
• Group Series
• ITP
• VVX
• SoundStation
• SoundPoint
• SoundStructure VoIP Interface
• RealPresence Debut
• RealPresence Trio Series
• RealPresence Centro
• Polycom Pano

**Associate a Remote Alert Profile With a User**

You can associate a remote alert profile with a particular user to track alerts associated with that user.

**Procedure**

1. Go to **User > Users**.
2. To search for a user:
   a. On the **Users** page, search for the user of interest.
      Searches for users are not case sensitive.
   b. To search both local and enterprise users, clear the **Local Users Only** check box and press **Enter**.
      The first 500 users in the database that match your search criteria are displayed in the **Users** list.
   c. If the list is too large to scan, further refine your search string.
3. Select the user you want to modify and click **Edit**.
4. In the **Edit User** dialog, click **Associated Alert Profile**.
5. Select the **Remote Alert Notification Profile** to associate with the user.
6. Click **Update**.

**Edit a Remote Alert Profile**

You can edit the settings for a remote alert profile.
Procedure
1. Go to Alert > Remote Alert Profiles.
2. Select the profile you want to edit and click Edit.
3. As required, edit the General Info, Alert by Device Type, Alert by Network Device, Alert by Endpoint, and Alert by Endpoint Group sections of the Edit Remote Alert Profile dialog.
4. Click OK.

Disable a Remote Alert Profile
You can disable a remote alert.

Procedure
1. Go to Alert > Remote Alert Profiles.
2. Select the profile you want to disable and click Edit.
4. Click OK.

Delete a Remote Alert Profile
You can delete a remote alert profile when you no longer need it.

Procedure
1. Go to Alert > Remote Alert Profiles.
2. Select the profile you want to delete and click Delete.
   The profile is deleted from the RealPresence Resource Manager system.

Disable System Remote Alerts
You can disable all remote alerts.

Procedure
1. Go to Alert > Remote Alert Setup.
3. Click Update.

Viewing and Deleting Network Device Alerts
The Alert View page only displays alerts from the following network devices:
- RealPresence DMA
- RealPresence Collaboration Server
- RealPresence Access Director
- RealPresence Web Suite Services Portal
- RealPresence Web Suite Experience Portal
- RealPresence Media Suite
Viewing Alerts

You can view the current state of alarms on the Alert View page. The initial Alert View page shows all alarms.

The alarm colors correspond to the following threshold levels:

- **Gray**  System has reached the Warning Value threshold.
- **Yellow**  System has reached the Minor Value threshold.
- **Orange**  System has reached the Major Value threshold.
- **Red**  System has reached the Critical Value threshold.

**Procedure**

1. Go to Alert > Alert View to display a list of current alerts.
2. Click Filter to filter the alerts by Source IP or Severity.
3. Select an alert.
4. Select View Details at the top to show details about the selected alarms.
5. Select Edit to add comments to a selected alert.

**Alert Types**

You can set the alert levels for some of the alerts generated by the RealPresence Resource Manager system events form the Alert > Alert Level Settings page.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alert Type</th>
<th>Alert indicates...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BridgeDown (Bridge Down)</td>
<td>A Polycom MCU has failed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DatabaseConnectionDown (Database Connection Down)</td>
<td>The connection to the database has been lost.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDAPConnectionDown (Enterprise Directory Connection Down)</td>
<td>The connection to the enterprise directory server has been lost.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDAPSystemAccountPasswordFail (Enterprise Directory System Account Password Failure)</td>
<td>The connection to the enterprise directory server could not be established because the account password was incorrect.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FailOverSE200 (Resource Manager Failover Occurred)</td>
<td>(In redundant RealPresence Resource Manager system configurations only.) The system has failed over from one system server to the other.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LicencesCloseToMax (Video License Capacity Threshold Exceeded)</td>
<td>(Non-Clariti Only) The video license threshold, which is set at 95% of capacity, has been exceeded.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alert Type</td>
<td>Alert indicates...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AudioLicencesCloseToMax (Audio License Capacity Threshold Exceeded)</td>
<td>(Non-Clariti Only) The audio license threshold, which is set at 95% of capacity, has been exceeded.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>License Capacity Threshold Exceeded</td>
<td>The number of available seats defined by the installed license is within 5% of the total license capacity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LicenseExpiration (License Expiration Warning)</td>
<td>The specified license will expire in less than 30 days.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LicenseExpired (License Expired Warning)</td>
<td>The specified license has expired or the license cannot be found.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RedundantServerNotRunning (Redundant Server Down)</td>
<td>(In redundant RealPresence Resource Manager system configurations only) The connection or synchronization between the primary and secondary server has been lost.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RedundantServerResourceStopped (Redundant Service Stopped)</td>
<td>(In redundant RealPresence Resource Manager system configurations only) The redundancy service has stopped. Contact Polycom Global Support when running into this alert.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BandwidthUsedSite (Site Bandwidth Threshold Exceeded)</td>
<td>The site bandwidth threshold, which is set at 90% of capacity, has been exceeded.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BandwidthUsedSubnet (Subnet Bandwidth Threshold Exceeded)</td>
<td>The subnet bandwidth threshold, which is set at 90% of capacity, has been exceeded.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BandwidthUsedSiteLink (Site Link Bandwidth Threshold Exceeded)</td>
<td>The site link bandwidth threshold, which is set at 90% of capacity, has been exceeded.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CertificateAboutToExpire (Certificate Expiration Warning)</td>
<td>The specified certificate will expire in 30 days. If the certificate is not renewed within 30 days, the alert continues daily.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CertificateExpired (Certificate Expired Warning)</td>
<td>The specified certificate has expired. The alert continues daily until the certificate is renewed or removed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMADown (DMA Down)</td>
<td>The RealPresence DMA system is unreachable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E164AliasAssignmentFailed (E164 Alias Assignment Failed)</td>
<td>Auto-assignment of an E.164 alias to a dynamically managed endpoint failed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SystemNamingFailed (System Naming Failed)</td>
<td>Auto-assignment of an endpoint name to a dynamically managed endpoint failed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DiskSpaceThresholdExceeded (Disk Usage Exceeded)</td>
<td>Disk usage exceeded the configured alert threshold.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPUUsageThresholdExceeded (CPU Usage Exceeded)</td>
<td>CPU usage exceeded the configured alert threshold.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alert Type</td>
<td>Alert indicates...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MemoryUsageThresholdExceeded</td>
<td>System memory usage exceeded the configured alert threshold.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(System Memory Usage Exceeded)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ProvisioningCloseToMax (System Capability Settings</td>
<td>The number of endpoints exceeds the system capability settings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for Managed Endpoints and Services Number Exceeded)</td>
<td>This alert is only available for the Virtual Edition.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AutoSystemBackupFTPFailed (Automatic backup failure)</td>
<td>The automatic system backup failed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LicenseCloseToMaxNoDMASync (Cannot sync endpoints</td>
<td>The system cannot sync endpoints from RealPresence DMA because the license</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>from DMA because the license threshold has reached)</td>
<td>threshold has reached.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CUCMDown (CUCM Is Unreachable)</td>
<td>The system cannot connect the Cisco Unified Communication Manager server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RedundancyDataSyncFailure (Fail to Synchronize Data</td>
<td>(In redundant RealPresence Resource Manager system configurations only) Data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>between Redundant Servers)</td>
<td>replication failed on the redundant servers. You can restart the server and try</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>synchronization again.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**The alert level for the following alerts cannot be changed.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alert Type</th>
<th>Alert indicates...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MonitorServiceStopped</td>
<td>The Monitor Service on redundant server stops running.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RedundantBothPrimary</td>
<td>Redundant servers have primary licenses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDRArchiveFail</td>
<td>The FTP of CDR archive files failed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VersionForcedInternal</td>
<td>The RealPresence Resource Manager version is not synchronized with the database</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>version. The system is using the internal database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AuditUsageThresholdExceeded</td>
<td>The audit logs exceed the size threshold. The system performs audit log maintenance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The old log files have been deleted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IDSDetected</td>
<td>The frequency of network intrusion events has reached or exceeded the threshold.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>See audit log for details</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DatabaseBackupFailed</td>
<td>Failed to back up the database. See audit log for details</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ConcurrentCallAboutToExceed</td>
<td>The number of the concurrent calls is going to reach the defined threshold.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ConcurrentCallExceeded</td>
<td>The number of the concurrent calls has exceeded the defined threshold.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alert Type</td>
<td>Alert indicates...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IncompatibleBundle4ep</td>
<td>The endpoint cannot be provisioned with the bundled profile.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SystemPasswordExpiring</td>
<td>The system credentials have not been changed in (number of days) days. Passwords must be changed in the next (number of days) days.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SystemPasswordExpired</td>
<td>The system credentials have not been changed in (number of days) days. Passwords should have been changed (number of days) days ago</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H323IDAssignmentFailed</td>
<td>Failed to assign the H.323 ID to the user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIPURIAssignmentFailed</td>
<td>Failed to generate SIP URI for the user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RemoteCDRServerDown</td>
<td>The connection to the remote CDR server is lost.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LicenseServerDown</td>
<td>The connection to the license server is lost.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LicenseAcquisitionFailed</td>
<td>Failed to retrieve the system license from the license server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TenantE164RangeFull</td>
<td>E.164 number range is already full in Area ({area name}).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TenantDeviceTypeE164RangeFull</td>
<td>E.164 number range for device type ({device type name}) is already full in Area ({area name}).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E164RangeFull</td>
<td>E.164 number range is already full.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DeviceTypeE164RangeFull</td>
<td>E.164 number range for device type ({device type name}) is already full.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LocalSysLogServerDown</td>
<td>The connection to the local syslog server is lost. The connection can not be recovered automatically.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MigrateLicenseFeatureAllocationFailure</td>
<td>Failed to migrate license feature allocation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MigrateInstanceFailure</td>
<td>Failed to migrate network instances.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NetworkDeviceIPConfigFailure</td>
<td>Network configuration Failed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NetworkDeviceLicenseConfigFailure</td>
<td>License server address provision failed or license refresh failed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NetworkDeviceConfigFailure</td>
<td>Failed to add, create or edit the network device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GroupSettingNTPFailure</td>
<td>NTP configuration failed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GroupSettingADFailure</td>
<td>Enterprise directory configuration failed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GroupSettingChangePasswordFailure</td>
<td>Failed to change password.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GroupSettingSNMPFailure</td>
<td>SNMP configuration failed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alert Type</td>
<td>Alert indicates...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TotalCPUUsageThreshold</td>
<td>CPU utilization of the system that the network instance (instance name) belongs to has exceeded the CPU usage threshold.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NetworkInterfaceUsageThreshold</td>
<td>Network interface bandwidth of the system that the network instance (instance name) belongs to has exceeded interface usage threshold.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StorageDiskUsageThreshold</td>
<td>Disk utilization of the system that the network instance (instance name) belongs to has exceeded the disk usage threshold.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VideoPortsUsageThreshold</td>
<td>Video port utilization of the system that the network instance (instance name) belongs to has exceeded the video port usage threshold.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AudioPortsUsageThreshold</td>
<td>Voice port utilization of the system that the network instance (instance name) belongs to has exceeded the audio port usage threshold.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CallUsageThreshold</td>
<td>Allowed calls of the system that the network instance (instance name) belongs to has exceeded call usage threshold.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NewPhoneSoftwareAvailable</td>
<td>Software updates for the phone (phone type) are available on the Polycom Hosted Server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RMXERROR</td>
<td>It returns the alert retrieved from the RealPresence Collaboration Server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MGCERROR</td>
<td>It returns the alert retrieved from the Polycom MGC system.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Delete Active Alert**

You can delete active alarms on the Alert View page.

**Procedure**

1. Go to Alert > Alert View to display a list of current alerts.
2. Select an alert you want to delete and click Delete 🗑️.
3. Click Yes to confirm the deletion.

**View Endpoint Event Status**

You can monitor endpoint alerts by viewing the endpoint event status.

You can also get e-mails when endpoint alerts happen by configuring the remote alert profiles and e-mail address.

**Procedure**

1. Go to Endpoint > Monitor View.
2. View the icons in the Status column:
   - **Error 🔄**: the event status is Error, its corresponding alert level is Critical.
   - **Warning 🛠️**: the event status is Warning, its corresponding alert levels are Warning, Minor, or Major. You can hover your cursor over the icon to see the error message.
Related Links

Configuring Remote Alert Profiles on page 571